VOLUME XXXIII JANUARY, 1924 NUMBER 134

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry, to the Professional Improvement of Its Officers and Men, and to the Advancement of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITED BY
JEROME W. HOWE
MAJOR OF CAVALRY

Copyright, 1924, by
The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, Washington, D. C. Editor, Major Jerome W. Howe, Cavalry. Managing Editor, Captain George A. Moore, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the postoffice at Washington, D. C., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

$2.50 per year; single copy, 65 cents. Canadian and foreign postage 25 cents, additional

MARQUIS' FAMOUS SADDLE EQUIPMENT

(Successor to RAOUL DUVAL, Saumur, France)

By special arrangement with M. Marquis, the U. S. Cavalry Association is prepared to accept orders for and deliver the following articles. Prices will closely approximate these given here; there may be small variations, due to rates of exchange, stamp taxes, transportation, consul's certificates in cases of large orders, etc. The duty of 35 per cent is included in these prices. The Association has been unable to get this equipment entered free of duty, since there is no provision in law for doing so. Due to the narrow margin of capital on which the Association operates, a deposit will be welcome upon ordering, and full payment will be required upon notification that equipment is in the possession of the Association and is ready for shipment to the customer.

FRENCH OFFICER'S FIELD SET

Military Saddle, Leather Panels (does not include girth, stirrups nor straps)	$83.00
Pommel Pouches, pair	18.50
Straps for Package	3.00
Grain Bag	3.00
Side Bag, each	8.75
Saber Carrier	2.75
Stirrup Straps, pair	5.00
French Regulation Military Girth	4.00
French Regulation Military Bridle with Halter	18.50
French Regulation Military Bit	3.00
French Regulation Military Snaffle	1.50
French Regulation Military Stirrups, pair	3.00
Name Plate, brass	.75

SAUMUR TRAINING EQUIPMENT

Saumur Saddle (does not include girth, stirrups nor straps)	60.00
Dee Ring, each	.25
Stirrup Straps, pair	5.50
Leather Girth	12.00
Ring Martingale	5.00
Breastplate	6.50
Standing Martingale for Polo	7.75
Saumur Bridle (does not include bit nor noseband)	11.50
Saumur Noseband	2.25
Snaffle Headpiece	4.50
Plain Rein, each	3.75
Plaited or Twisted Rein, each	5.75
Saumur Bit	3.00
Snaffle	1.25
Chantilly or Verdun Big Snaffle	3.75
Knife-edge Stirrups, pair	5.00
Saumur Whip	5.00
Solid Nickel Spurs	2.00
Spur Straps, set	.50
Head Stable Collar	5.25
Stable Rope	.50
Watering Bridle	5.25
Breaking Cavesson	4.50 to 5.25
Lounge, Rope	2.25 to 2.75
Lounge, Web	5.25
Sam Browne Belt	6.50
Map Case	5.25
Dubbin (grease for saddle), tin	.75
Brecknell's Saddle Soap, can	.50

In ordering give weight, height, kind of build, and manner of wearing stirrups, whether long, short, or medium.

Address: **UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION**

1624 H Street Northwest **Washington, D. C.**

CONTENTS FOR JANUARY, 1924

VOL. XXXIII, No. 134

	Page
ARMORED CARS WITH CAVALRY Major G. S. Patton, Jr., Cavalry.	5
CAVALRY IN THE WORLD WAR Colonel Kirby Walker, Cavalry.	11
THE CZECHOSLOVAK CAVALRY	22
THE UN-ROYAL MOUNTED	23
HILL FIGHTING IN MOROCCO Major Elbert E. Farman, Jr., Cavalry.	24
RESULTS OF FIVE ENDURANCE TESTS W. R. Brown.	30
INHERITANCE Lieutenant-Colonel Clarence Lininger, Cavalry.	35
WORLD WAR LESSONS IN CAVALRY PATROLLING	45
THE BRITISH CAVALRY IN PALESTINE AND SYRIA Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis, Cavalry.	47
FROM ACRE TO ALEPPO WITH ALLENBY Captain J. R. H. Cruikshank (Late 18th Lancers).	52
PRIZE ESSAY ANNOUNCEMENT	63
OLYMPIA, 1923, AND THE VIIIe OLYMPIADE Major J. A. Barry, 3d Cavalry.	64
CAVALRY ADVANCE INCIDENTS (Extracts from 3,000 Kilometers with the Guard Cavalry, By Dr. Vogel), translated by Colonel N. F. McClure, Cavalry.	70
MAJOR J. A. BARRY'S ARMY HORSE SHOW TEAM First Lieutenant P. M. Robinett, 3d Cavalry.	76
THE ARMY AT THE NATIONAL HORSE SHOW Captain V. L. Padgett, 3d Cavalry.	77
THE ROYAL WINTER FAIR OF CANADA	79
THE WILLIAM BOERUM WETMORE BEQUEST	80
EDITORIAL COMMENT: Keeping the Bushel Over the Light—A Few Observations on the Horse Supply and the Cavalry Officer—The Cavalry Fund	81
TOPICS OF THE DAY: Increase in Use of the Horse—Maneuvers of Fast-moving Composite Units—Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team—Subscriptions—Growing Army Forage in the Canal Zone—An Arab Horse Show—100 Per Cent Supporters	85
NEW BOOKS REVIEWED	91
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS	96
POLO	103
REGIMENTAL NOTES	108
THE NATIONAL GUARD	123
THE ORGANIZED RESERVES	124

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President:

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry.

Vice-President:

Brigadier-General STUART HEINTZELMAN, A. C. of S., G-4.

Secretary and Treasurer:

Major JEROME W. HOWE, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Brigadier-General JOHN P. WOOD, National Guard of Pennsylvania.
Colonel GEORGE C. BARNHARDT (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Colonel WILLIAM R. SMEDBERG, JR. (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Colonel HERBERT B. CROSBY, Cavalry.
Colonel LEON B. KROMER (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry.
Lieutenant-Colonel JOHN PHILIP HILL, Cavalry Reserve Corps.
Major JOHN C. MONTGOMERY (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Major JONATHAN M. WAINWRIGHT, 3d Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

(1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.

(2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.

(3) Honorary.

Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL; and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for $2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of $2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.



Photo by Hans

Courtesy "The Rider and Driver"

THE UNITED STATES ARMY TEAM AT THE NEW YORK STATE FAIR HORSE SHOW

Left to right: Major E. W. Taulbee, Major Sloan Doak, Captain A. P. Thayer, Lieutenants P. M. Robinette and M. E. Jones, and (seated) Major J. A. Barry.

THE

CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXIII JANUARY, 1924 No. 134

Armored Cars with Cavalry

BY

Major G. S. PATTON, Jr., Cavalry

GENERAL CARBON, I think the battle is ripe. Direct the 2d DEATHBOLTS to charge the enemy left.'

"So are the fates of nations settled!

"By this simple order, Lieutenant-General Alonzo B. Gasoline, seated at his green-lit desk in the gas-proof seclusion of his command car, loosed the two million pounds of petrol-propelled hate on the tottering flank of our doomed opponents.

"But how can a human dictaphone describe the inspiring majesty of the sight which soon unfolded itself before our eyes on the screen of our radio motion-picture projector, whose lense, high above us in the observation helicopter, commanded a complete view of the battlefield?

"As we gazed in haggard expectancy to the extreme right, our screen showed only the scorched hills, their blasted vegetation looming ghostly through the green haze of the gas clouds. In an instant, however, the line of our scout tanks appeared over the crest and dashed on the foe, while behind them, in perfect order, came the three ranks of our incomparable 2d. Long, solid lines of flame poured from their twin exhausts, attesting to the top R. P. M. of their motors, while the air above them frothed with waste oxygen from their fighting compartments.

"Instantly the enemy guns spotted them; great geysers of sand and mud burst in their ranks. One, I noted, cracked open like a walnut, while its doomed crew hurtled from it, only to sink like charred embers in the reek of the all-consuming gas.

"Despite my staff training, the battle lust grew on me. Moved by an unaccountable impulse, I switched on the auditory microphone, so that the sounds of the distant battle were as clear to me as were its sights. On thundered the tanks. Shell fire was impotent to check those dauntless chauffeurs! The enemy, too, realized this and played his last card. From the charred draw on his left appeared the solid mass of his reserve tanks, charging straight at the now disorganized DEATHBOLTS.

"Pandemonium broke loose. To the tock-tocking of the whirling caterpillars, the roar of the guns, the shriek of the motors, and the all pervading hissing of the gas was added the high, staccato hum of airplanes, as our supporting squadrons, flying low over the 2d, squirted liquid fire into the eye-slits of the enemy.

"All this takes long to dictate, but happened with amazing quickness. Nearer and nearer waddled the opposing lines, their rate of approach approximating 50 miles an hour. Could steel and rubber stand the shock? Then, with a slithering roar, they met. Sparks flew; track plates, shivered in a thousand fragments, filled the air, and so terrific was the impact that many tanks simply exploded, completely dissipated by the shock.

"The chaos of the mêlée lasted a full minute. Then we saw the third line of the DEATHBOLTS sweep through the ruck and on, over the enemy position, to victory."

Shall such battles occur? In view of past experience, it would be a bold man who would deny this possibility; but a bolder, perhaps, who would look for its immediate realization.

Yet there are soldiers, men of high mentality and war experience, who dream of such battles, while from these enthusiasts—insane, perhaps—on the one hand, the notions of mechanical warfare grade down to another class, to whom history and invention mean nothing and who banish all thought of mechanical achievements from their concepts of future wars. They, too, are insane.

As ever, the truth lies between—nearer, perhaps, to the lower than to the higher mark—at least for our generation.

Let us examine, in the first place, how mechanics has affected, or may affect, war; and then, pruning our fancies with the heartless shears of Fact and Finance, let us see how we may use some of the obtainable possibilities.

Ever since man first banded together with the laudable intention of killing his fellows, his movements have depended on means of communication. War has depended on roads. From very remote times, man has used wheels to aid his progress or the progress of his stores. The improvement of the vehicle and of the road has only affected this with respect to the rapidity and volume of traffic, not with respect to the direction of movement. Roads are, then, a very restrictive influence.

No matter what sort of wheels he uses, if there are no roads, he cannot move. If the roads are poor, he is little better off than in his bull-cart days. For example, it is quite safe to say that had General Grant possessed all the trucks in the A. E. F., he none the less could not have supplied an army in the Wilderness campaign much larger than the one he supplied with wagons. From a supply standpoint, then, wheels are no better than the roads. Ten per cent of the roads in the United States are improved. Tactically the same is true, with this added consideration: that while wheels add to the mobility

of troops on the march, they give no battle mobility. The cargo must dismount to fight, and that well out of range. Even rubber tires have not changed war beyond recognition.

We must now consider a more advanced wheel—the caterpillar tread. With such, we are not bound to roads and have, therefore, a great increase in mobility to the battlefield and on it. To move and feed great armies over roadless lands, we need but caterpillars. To augment our horse-borne squadrons with armored comrades, we need but caterpillars. To place our heaviest guns how and where we will, we need but caterpillars. *But*—one can almost hear the snipping of those fateful shears, Fact and Finance. Have we got the numbers or the type? Will we afford them? I have no brief against roadless tractors, nor do I hold with that churchmanlike conservatism too common in all armies; hence I am willing to admit that the time may conceivably come when, in the immutable cycle of military endeavor, we shall see small professional armies of highly trained mechanical soldiers, operating simple yet powerful machines, again dominate the battlefield as did their prototypes, the heavy cavalry of the armies of Belisarius and Narses. Or, again, we may see the roadless machine, with all its apparent potentialities, sink to a position analogous to that occupied by the submarine, which but a few years since was so touted as the future mistress of the sea. Who may hazard a guess?

From the standpoint, however, of practical soldiers of an economic nation; remembering, too, that we have a vast plant on different lines ready to our hand, it seems better to follow the maxim of Disraeli and "Compromise." Nor is this all. Should our enthusiasm for the novel and the mechanical carry us too fast, we might conceivably find ourselves in the situation of the lobster who, having in his haste for new glories sloughed off his old armor, finds himself forced to seek the seclusion of some rocky cave until his new plates have hardened. A cave for a nation of our size is hard to find, and a soft-shelled America might find many with an appetite for its unprotected abundance.

In seeking for the compromise above referred to, we shall endeavor to see how we may utilize certain mechanical means now existing and within the means of our limited financial resources. It would be interesting to pursue this study to all means and for all branches of the service. This, however, were over long for such an article and, further, presupposes a general knowledge far greater than that possessed by the writer.

We shall then simply confine ourselves to the cavalry for the arm, and to the armored car for the mechanical means, regretfully snipping off the tank from this discussion because, at the present time, *there is no tank available for issue in this country which can keep up with any unit of cavalry.*

It is true that an armored car such as we contemplate does not exist either, but it can be easily and cheaply constructed from existing motor vehicles, limited armor-plate, and machine-guns. It is simply an assembly proposition, not one of manufacture.

The armored car contemplated here is not one of those armored forts miscalled cars in Europe. They are too heavy, too expensive, and have unnecessary gun power. Such assault machines may be useful, but not for cavalry. For our purpose, we desire an armored car consisting of a stock chassis of some commercial two-ton truck, thus insuring an abundant and ubiquitous supply of spare parts; the engine, gasoline tank, driver, and gunner to be protected by armor capable of stopping rifle fire at 100 yards; pneumatic tires and demountable disk wheels, with one air-cooled machine-gun, preferably with all-round fire. There should be no roof to the gun compartment and no protective floor to this machine. It is realized that such simplicity will arouse the ire of every inventor. Unfortunately, inventors don't have to fight the things they make. Every ounce of extra weight put on an armored car or tank reduces its fighting strength many percent.

The question may then be asked: Why use armor at all? It is an apt question. The British light car patrols were unprotected Fords, mounting one machine-gun. They did excellent service. The protection above referred to would make these cars much more formidable than the Ford without greatly reducing its mobility. The expectation of life of the crew would be very high. We base this assertion on fact. On inspecting many tanks—British, French, and Americans—just after battles, we have frequently been unable to find even a single hit. The reason for this seems to rest on the following facts: Battle is not very dangerous—that is, the fire in battle is nothing like the fire of the target range; fire is a great defense. If you shoot rapidly at a man, with fair accuracy, he loses interest in his aim. Troops do not like to fire at tanks (or armored cars) at short range, because they somewhat erroneously think they will be destroyed. At long range, their fire is not effective and their bullets have little penetration. Movement! A quail is not doomed to death because he has no armor, neither is a destroyer. An armored car with cavalry is a land-destroyer.

There is no gainsaying the fact that an inch and a half of steel all around would be comforting. A No. 2 field range would also be most handy to a cavalry soldier caught at meal time far from camp. Both are unattainable comforts and for the same reason—weight.

To add further emphasis to a point apt to arouse controversy and also to accede to our national penchant for voting, it is confidently asserted that if men who have fought tanks in action were asked to voice an opinion, they would willingly dispense with 50 per cent added protection in order to secure 5 per cent added mobility.

Having described our weapon, let us by a series of concrete examples demonstrate its usefulness.

With a reconnoitering detachment: Such a detachment varies in size from a platoon to a squadroon, and precedes by, perhaps, a day's march large masses of cavalry. It acts with patrols covering its immediate front and, on advices given by them, secures information of the enemy main body. The detachment

itself advances by bounds, insuring its local protection by an advance guard, etc. Suddenly the point of the advance guard of our reconnoitering detachment, advancing as described, tops a rise and is fired on by enemy cavalry, who at once retire to the cover of the next rise, some thousand yards to our front. Lacking an armored car, our point must form as foragers and gallop the distance to where the enemy disappeared. In so doing it may sustain casualties from fire; in any case it will fatigue its horses. Were an armored car present with the main body, it could come up in short order, and, moving at speed and with comparative immunity, solve the situation as to the condition of the next ridge. At the same time its normal position with the main body would in no way add to the visibility of the point while en route.

There is, of course, the bogy of a concealed gun on the ridge in question, which, placed there by the supernatural acumen of the enemy, will blow the car to bits. Would it do less to the members of the original point? Or are the lives of four men in a car more worthy of protection than those of eight on horseback? Do we find isolated guns with small cavalry units? Of course, there is danger; but that is the common condition of war.

The last situation cleared up, the march resumes. Shortly, from the right front, comes the sound of distant firing. The commander of the detachment remembers that "knowledge is power." The speediest way to get the knowledge is to send the car. Again, it may be hit; so might a mounted patrol on the same mission. In fifteen minutes the car has made the round trip of six miles to the patrol and returns with a full report—perhaps also a corpse for identification.*

Shortly after this the detachment approaches a hill situated a mile and a half to the left of its route; rather too far for a security patrol to go; yet the map shows that from this hill a good view can be obtained. Again, the car goes quickly to the hill and has a look and rejoins the column without difficulty.

Next, on topping a long rise, the point gets its first view of the Red River, a mile to its front, and on the white road, half a mile beyond the bridge, sees about a platoon of probable enemy advancing at a brisk trot. Clearly the possession of the bridge is vital to the continuance of the mission. The car, rushing at thirty miles an hour, reaches the bridge and delays the enemy until the main body arrives, and is ready to charge if he is still in a nasty mood.

During the course of the day the reconnoitering detachment finds itself more and more crampted by the enemy cavalry. Finally its patrols can make no progress, and a regiment of the enemy has been definitely located. Here is a case where the cavalry mass in rear must intervene and remove the obstacle, so that the reconnoitering units may progress. The pack wireless is put up, but there is too much "static." A motorcycle messenger might be used, but in enemy country he may be sniped. The armored car will be safer and fully as quick.

* The Editor may be pardoned for recalling an occasion on which the author of this military fantasy did himself bring back an important corpse on his unarmored car—for identification.

At 8 a. m. the next day the 1st Cavalry arrives with Troop A, 1st M. G. Sq., and the 1st plat. A. C. Tr. No. 1 (three machines) attached. By 10 a. m. the enemy is met, and attack, using combined action, has been decided upon. The pivot of maneuver will consist of the advance guard and Troop A, 1st M. G. Sq., which will attack along the axis of movement.

The best fire position is a little rise occupied by the point. Just as the machine-guns move toward it, a troop of the enemy cavalry gallops for the position. The armored cars, however, reach it first and hold the enemy in play until the machine-guns are established.

The 2d Squadron moves under cover by a road to attack the enemy left; perhaps the cars precede it to insure the occupation of the departure position; roads permitting, they might even follow the charge, or else they might be held to lend fire strength to the pivot of maneuver, and, in the event of a successful envelopment, might later move up rapidly along the axis to join in the pursuit.

Many other situations suitable for the use of armored cars with cavalry can be imagined; such as in parallel pursuit, speeding ahead to harrass the enemy and delay him until the cavalry can cut him off.

In raids they would be useful for pivots of maneuver, distant reconnaissance, messages, transporting explosives, etc.

In delaying actions in rolling or wooded country, armored cars will be most valuable.

But, to be useful in any of the above capacities, the car must be mobile, practical, and simple of repair—not a costly, hypothetical monstrosity.

Now, bearing in mind our remarks as to wheels and their limitations, it is evident that our armored car must of necessity pertain to a cavalry force of such a size that some portion of it will always be on a road. This limits the permanent attachment of cars to calvary brigades and higher units. A suitable unit for a brigade would be an armored-car troop of nine cars divided into three platoons of three cars each.

They should be permanently of the cavalry, imbued with its spirit, ready to accept losses, and must remember always that their duty, in common with that of all cavalry, is TO CLINCH AND DESTROY.

ERRATA

ON PAGE 396 of the October, 1923, number, in the article "Cavalry Training in the C. M. T. C. at Camp Knox, Ky.," it was stated that Colonel Frank planned the course and was the camp commander. This was an error for which the JOURNAL asks pardon. Colonel Peter C. Traub, cavalry, was the commander of this very successful camp and was responsible for the course.

Cavalry in the World War

BY

Colonel KIRBY WALKER, Cavalry

AFTER every war it is important that the various branches of the military forces should check up and estimate the services rendered. This should be done not only from a historical point of view, but also for the purpose of deducing lessons or conclusions for use in future wars. It is desired to point out, however, the danger of forming fixed ideas of war from the long period of position warfare of the World War—a period of stalemate, a period when flanks rested upon impassable obstacles and maneuver was impossible. These conditions are unlikely to happen again until both armies have failed to obtain a decision by mobile operations. No nation and no general staff will voluntarily submit again to a war of attrition behind barbed wire, with all its attendant evils of inordinate length, immense casualties, great cost, and probable indecisive results, if it can be avoided. An army exists for war of maneuver, and for war of maneuver we must have, as in the past, horse, foot, and artillery, with modern armament and with every adjunct that science can evolve, such as airplanes, tanks, etc.—mechanical appliances which tend to maintain mobile conditions.

Considering the short period of movement warfare on the Western Front and the long period of stabilization, it is pertinent to inquire, Which was the more important? There are many critics, especially among the Germans, who believe that the German army made the greatest mistake of the war by committing itself to trench warfare on the line of the Aisne, and who believe that the German army should have withdrawn to the Meuse, with the view of refitting and renewing open warfare at the earliest possible moment, in which case there would have been greater and greater demand for well-trained cavalry, and that arm would have stood out prominently.

There are many who have the impression that cavalry was of little value during the World War. These have imperfect knowledge of the operations in all theaters, and it is evident that they minimize the events of the first few months of the war. It will be shown in the following pages that cavalry was employed in practically all theaters and was extensively and effectively employed.

Objection has been made that cavalry is an expensive arm. The reply to that objection is that a nation cannot avoid military expenses. Nothing is more expensive than defeat. It has been said that the development of scientific and mechanical weapons renders cavalry useless. On the contrary, these weapons give cavalry added efficiency.

Cavalry is an auxiliary arm and exists for the purpose of assisting the other arms to gain a decision. It is probably true that some of the higher cavalry commanders were deficient in dash, determination, and initiative. It

is also probably true that some of the higher commands had an imperfect knowledge of the employment of the arm, and either assigned impossible missions or failed to take advantage of cavalry opportunities for success. These defects, however, appear among the other arms as well.

Notwithstanding the flood of books, of more or less value, pertaining to the World War, the real history of the war is yet to be written, and when it is written the prediction is made that cavalry will occupy a more prominent place than has heretofore been accorded to it.

British Cavalry on the Western Front

The first task of the British cavalry (five brigades) after its arrival in France, in August, 1914, was to screen the British Army in its movements north of the Sambre River. This it did effectually and many useful reconnaissances were carried out from the protective screen, and valuable information as to enemy movements obtained. When the British and Germans came into close contact, the cavalry withdrew to the western flank. During the afternoon of August 24 the 5th Infantry Division, on the left flank of the British Army, having received orders to retire, was unable to break away from the heavy German pressure in front, and asked for assistance from the cavalry. The British 2d Cavalry Brigade, by a combination of mounted and dismounted action against the right flank of the advancing Germans, destroyed their initiative, delayed their further advance for a period of from three to four hours, and permitted the 5th Division to retire as ordered.

During the retreat of the British Army from Mons to the region southeast of Paris, the British cavalry was effectively employed in covering the rear and left flank, being almost daily engaged in rear guard actions. Field Marshal French, the British commander, speaking of the period of about August 26th, states: "The superb gallantry of the troops, and the skillful leading by divisional, brigade, and battalion commanders, helped very materially by the support given by Allenby, and, as I afterward learned, by Sordet and d'Amade, saved the Second Corps, which otherwise would assuredly have been pinned to their ground and then surrounded. The cavalry might have made good their retreat, but three out of five divisions of the British Army, with the Seventh Brigade, must have been lost. The enemy, flushed by this primary victory, would have pressed in on the flanks of the First Corps, cut off their retreat, and, continuing his combined front and flank attack, would have almost pushed the whole Allied Army off their line of retreat, and a stupendous repetition of Sedan might well have resulted." It is pertinent to note here the powerful influence exerted by the events of the first few weeks of movement warfare in order to bring forth the decisive Battle of the Marne.

During the advance to the Aisne the British cavalry preceded the British Army and engaged three divisions of German cavalry. When the fighting on the Aisne came to a standstill the cavalry withdrew to the rear of the British Army.

The British cavalry, then increased to a corps of three divisions, took part in the strategic maneuver termed the "race to the sea," in which it fought mostly dismounted and in trenches, in the Ypres region. Field Marshal French, in speaking of the period, October 14-November 1, 1914, states in part: "It is no disparagement, however, to the other troops engaged if I lay stress on the fact that it was the cavalry alone who, for more than a fortnight previously, had been disputing foot by foot every yard of the ground to the river Lys. They had fought day and night with the utmost tenacity, and the battles of October 31st and November 1st were but the climax to a long and bitter spell of heroic effort."

The stabilization of the lines from the North Sea to Switzerland limited the terrain, but not the activities of the British cavalry. The Cavalry Corps was retained as cavalry throughout the war and proved its value on numerous occasions. The cavalryman was probably the best-trained soldier in the British Army, and a reading of brigade and regimental histories will show that he was never idle. During the period of trench warfare the British cavalry was used to defend sectors dismounted; it was used quite frequently as a mounted reserve, ready for any task that might be assigned to it; it was used dismounted at times to fill gaps in the line, as witness the period of the German drive in March and April, 1918; it was used to exploit a success, as on August 8, 1918, and October 8, 1918; and there are numerous instances of its use in mounted shock action during battle, in pursuance of its rôle of assisting other arms to obtain a decision.

Field Marshal Haig, in his final dispatch, pays tribute to the value of the British cavalry, in part, as follows: "Touching on the rôle of cavalry, and in the light of the full experience of the war, the decision to preserve the Cavalry Corps has been completely justified. It has been proved that cavalry, whether used for shock effect, under suitable conditions, or as mobile infantry, has still an indispensable part to play in modern war. On the morning of the armistice, two British cavalry divisions were on the march east of the Scheldt, and before the orders to stop had reached them, had already gained a line ten miles in front of our infantry outposts. There is no doubt that had the advance of the cavalry been allowed to continue, the enemy's disorganized retreat would have been turned into a rout."

British Cavalry in Palestine

During the first three years of the war and while the Egyptian Expeditionary Force was advancing 150 miles east from the Suez Canal to southern Palestine, the British cavalry was constantly performing useful service in a rôle of security and information. During the building of the railroad and water-pipe lines eastward, it was the daily duty of the cavalry to protect the working parties in advance of railhead. The British cavalry, in combination with other arms, engaged in combat at the Suez Canal defenses in 1915, at the Battle of Romani in 1916, and in the two Gaza battles in 1917. The operations of capturing Magdhaba and Rafa, with practically their entire garrisons, at

25 and 30 miles distance from infantry support, were carried out by mounted troops alone. In May, 1917, the British right flank was rendered secure by the destruction of 13 miles of railroad track south of Beersheba, this operation being performed by the cavalry.

One of the important features of the plan for the attack of the Gaza-Beersheba front and the subsequent advance northward was the employment of a mass of cavalry on the Turkish eastern flank and later in the pursuit. General Allenby had at that time seven infantry divisions and the equivalent of four cavalry divisions. The preliminary operation, the capture of Beersheba in one day, was finally accomplished by a mounted charge of the 4th Australian Light Horse Brigade. After the infantry break-through on the eastern flank made by four infantry divisions, the Desert Mounted Corps, supported by two infantry divisions, took up a rapid pursuit of the defeated Turkish armies. These operations prepared the way for the subsequent capture of Jerusalem, December 8, 1917—a feat that stirred the imagination of the Christian world.

In February, 1918, one infantry and one cavalry division captured Jericho and drove the Turks to the Jordan River. This was followed in March and April, 1918, by two raids across the Jordan River, one on Amman and one on Es Salt. These raids were made by two cavalry divisions, in combination with other arms. The result was to cause the Turks to increase their forces east of the Jordan River, thus lengthening their front, and to become apprehensive of the safety of their line of communication. This result was still further enhanced by the occupation, during the summer of 1918, of the Jordan Valley by the Desert Mounted Corps.

In September, 1918, General Allenby had at his disposal seven infantry and four cavalry divisions. The central idea in his offensive plan was to make use of his great superiority in mounted troops by placing a mass of cavalry across the Turkish lines of communications and to destroy the Turkish armies instead of merely to complete a local success. The story of what happened is familiar to every cavalryman. Within 36 hours after the infantry broke through the Turkish defenses on the coastal plain the British cavalry were from 45 to 60 miles in rear of the former Turkish front line and were rapidly closing up all avenues of escape. Within four days the 7th and 8th Turkish armies were practically destroyed, to be followed shortly by the destruction of the 4th Turkish Army east of the Jordan River. The most relentless pursuit in history then began. Within 10 days Damascus was captured and within 36 days British cavalry occupied Aleppo (300 miles in an air-line from point of departure) and had cut the Bagdad Railway, the only line of communications between Constantinople and Mesopotamia, thus forcing Turkey out of the war. Out of an estimated total of 105,000 Turkish troops south of Damascus, about 90,000 passed through British cages as prisoners. It was probably the most complete victory that ever fell to the lot of a commander.

From beginning to end, the Palestine campaign afforded opportunity for the extensive and continuous employment of cavalry in every variety of operation. Cavalry was the decisive arm, but its operations depended on and were supported by the other arms. The campaign teems with instances of such mutual interdependence. It is probable that these operations will become a classic, for they constitute a nearly ideal example of the proper use of all the arms in combination and of cavalry in particular.

British Cavalry in Mesopotamia

The strength of the British cavalry in the Mesopotamian campaign varied from one regiment in 1914 to three brigades in 1918. This cavalry was usefully, and in some cases decisively, employed throughout the four years of the campaign. It was effectively employed in the beginning, up the Karun River, in the protection of the British oil interests; then later along the Tigris River, on the Persian border, in the retreat from Ctesiphon to Kut, and in the operations along the Bagdad-Kirkuk-Mosul road. In the Ramadie operation, September, 1917, the cavalry was decisive. While the infantry attacked the Turkish position in front a cavalry brigade, by an encircling movement, gained the rear of the Turks, stopped their attempt to break through to the rear, and caused the surrender of practically the whole garrison, a force of 3,500. The Khan Bagdhadie operation in March, 1918, was an exact repetition of what occurred at Ramadie, and caused the surrender of 5,200 Turks, again the whole garrison. In the closing operations of the campaign in October, 1918, the cavalry was again a decisive factor. The plans for the operations were made from the useful reconnaissances of the 7th Cavalry Brigade and the 32d Lancers (corps cavalry). Throughout the operations the cavalry (two brigades) took a conspicuous part, in close co-operation with other arms, by continually turning the Turkish flanks.

Finally, it was by the cavalry that the fruits of victory were effectually reaped. Two cavalry brigades succeeded in crossing the Tigris River and in taking up a position across the Turkish line of retreat. The Turks attempted to break through, but failed and surrendered the only large force still in Mesopotamia, about 9,000 men, thus ending the campaign.

French Cavalry on the Western Front and in Macedonia

France began the war with ten cavalry divisions and enough divisional cavalry for 79 infantry divisions. The mission of the cavalry divisions was to cover the mobilization and concentration of the French Army and to protect its left flank. This latter mission was accomplished by Sordet's Cavalry Corps of three divisions, which advanced into Belgium in the early days of August, 1914, obtained valuable information, and later passed to the left flank of the French and British armies, covering this flank on the retreat to the southeast of Paris. On account of hard marching and misuse by the higher command, Sordent's Cavalry Corps was ridden to a standstill during the month of August, 1914, and was thereby rendered inefficient during the Battle of the

Marne. During these events, however, the four cavalry divisions in Lorraine and Alsace gave efficient service in security and information and filled gaps between the 1st and 2d French armies. During the Battle of the Marne Conneau's Cavalry Corps of three divisions pursued the retreating Germans, entered the gap between the 2d and 3d German armies, and took possession of the Aisne bridges at three different points before the Germans had time to destroy them.

In the strategic maneuver called the "Race to the sea," when the west wings of both the Allied and German armies endeavored to envelop each other, the French cavalry probably rendered its greatest service. From September 19 to November 15, 1914, the two cavalry corps of Conneau and Mitry, operating without rest, and forming a mobile curtain from the Aisne to the Lys, covered successively the deployment of the 2d and 10th French armies, the British Army, and the 8th French Army. In the last act of this maneuver, closing the gap between the British Army and the North Sea, Mitry's Cavalry Corps gained a foothold on the Yser Canal, and for three weeks, fighting dismounted, held off greatly superior numbers of German troops advancing toward the coast.

The stabilization of the lines in the latter part of 1914 created a new situation. However, the French cavalry was often used as a mobile reserve and took its turn in the trenches. The divisional cavalry appears to have fulfilled its mission, according to the statements of officers of all arms. Most of the corps and division commanders of infantry complained that their allowance of cavalry was insufficient.

During and after the German drive of March, 1918, the French cavalry was extremely valuable. It was called upon frequently to march long distances to fill gaps in the line and to restore the situation. It was asserted that for distances of 100 to 120 kilometers large bodies of cavalry could march and arrive on the battlefield ready for action quicker than infantry, with its complete means, could be moved by truck or rail.

In the Flanders offensive of September, 1918, the 2d Cavalry Corps was able to complete and exploit the success of the infantry. Later, leading the pursuit, it forced the crossings of the Lys and Escaut, and finally, on November 11, the 4th Cavalry Division, at the head of the 2d Cavalry Corps, entered Grammont (25 kilometers from Brussels) more than 15 kilometers in advance of the French infantry. At the same time, in Lorraine, the 1st Cavalry Corps was ready to exploit the Lorraine offensive, which was to have been launched on November 14, 1918.

The French cavalry in Macedonia, consisting mostly of North African troopers, was usefully employed from the beginning of the Salonika expedition, but its greatest value occurred in the concluding operations of the campaign, in September, 1918, during which it achieved a fine strategic success. This French group of cavalry (corresponding to a reinforced brigade), exploiting the infantry success of breaking the enemy's front, pushing through the gap thus created,

and, making its way over a mountainous terrain without supplies, captured Uskub, on the line of communications, in the face of opposition, and cut off the retreat of the 11th German Army, a force of about 90,000 men. Bulgaria at this time (September 30, 1918) agreed to an armistice, and the personnel of the 11th German Army was surrendered. Most of the French cavalry, acting as army cavalry for the 1st Serbian Army, pushed on northward, and in the latter part of October was on the banks of the Danube. Its further activities were cut short by the collapse of Austria-Hungary, on November 4, 1918.

German Cavalry on the Western and Eastern Fronts

In August, 1914, the approximate strength of the German cavalry was 85,000 men and horses. Eleven cavalry divisions were formed and the additional squadrons were assigned as corps and divisional cavalry. Thirty-nine regiments of reserve cavalry were organized after the war began, being allotted mostly to infantry divisions. Stabilized warfare and the shortage of horses as the war progressed caused the dismounting of several cavalry divisions and their use as infantry divisions.

Ten of the eleven cavalry divisions were initially employed on the Western Front, and, organized into four corps, their mission was to cover the detraining, concentration, and advance of the seven German armies which were to operate against France. Cavalry Corps I (von Richthofen) and II (von Marwitz) were employed on the principal combat front, with the mission of screening the advance of the 1st, 2d, and 3d German armies, and of facilitating their rapid progress. They were able to carry out a continuous advance across enemy territory with a hostile population and to fulfill their tasks, some of the German cavalry patrols reaching the vicinity of Paris. It should be noted, however, that at the combat of Haelen, Belgium, August 12, 1914, between two German divisions and a reinforced Belgian cavalry division, von Marwitz threw his squadrons in ten successive charges, in close order, against dismounted troops in position and behind wire, thereby incurring heavy losses.

During the Battle of the Marne the 1st and 2d Cavalry Corps maintained liason between the 1st and 2d German armies and filled the considerable gap that existed between them. Their next task was to cover the withdrawal of the German forces to the line of the Aisne River.

After the battle of Aisne the German cavalry prevented the Allies from outflanking their right wing, and in a series of hard fights permitted the extension of the German front to the North Sea. From September 19 to October 18, the 1st, 2d, and 4th Cavalry Corps (a total of eight divisions) were engaged in daily combats from the Aisne to the Lys, and then to the sea, and rendered excellent service to the German cause.

During the first three months of the war the German cavalry divisions on the Western Front fought more than 180 engagements, not including patrol or other small encounters.

When open warfare gave place to position warfare on the Western Front, all except one German cavalry division were sent to the Eastern Front. Later, in

1917, three cavalry divisions were returned to the Western Front, took over sectors, were then dismounted (June, 1918), trained as shock troops, and from July to November, 1918, were engaged in battle on the Western Front.

In the March, 1918, offensive in France, the Germans were seriously handicapped by the lack of cavalry, as witness the statements of Ludendorff and others.

On the Eastern Front the 1st German Cavalry Division, in August, 1914, performed valuable service by forming a screen before the 1st Russian Army, thereby permitting Hindenburg to withdraw practically all the infantry opposed to that army, and to envelop and to destroy the 2d Russian Army. German cavalry on the Eastern Front played important rôles and rendered valuable service, as follows: Four divisions in the second German offensive in Poland (1914), notably at the battle of Lodz; from May to August, 1915, four divisions, on the left flank of the German armies in Courland, advancing from the lower Niemen 300 kilometers to the Dwina; in September, 1915, ten divisions in pursuit, during the general retreat of the Russian armies toward the Dwina and the Pripet marshes; in the German offensive of July, 1917, in Galicia; after the Russian debacle, the occupation of conquered territory (Ukraine).

In the Rumanian campaign, August 28-December 6, 1916, which ended in the crushing of Rumania, German cavalry played an important part. This cavalry was employed in the following rôles during the campaign: Security before the operations; covering an exposed flank during battle; co-operation in the frontal battle; filling a gap between two large units; masking troop movements; outflanking of enemy front; pursuit and exploitation. After the rupture of the Rumanian front the pursuit and exploitation by von Schmettow's Cavalry Corps (two divisions) was one of the determining factors of the campaign.

Italian Cavalry at the Battle of Vittorio-Veneto

After the Caporetto disaster of October, 1917, and during the retreat to the Piave River, the cavalry divisions of the Second and Third Italian armies did their work skillfully and gave their lives cheerfully. At various times this cavalry succeeded in holding up the enemy for a time that gave precious breathing space to the infantry and other retreating units at the river crossings.

It was at the Battle of Vittorio-Veneto, October 24-November 4, 1918, that the Italian cavalry rendered its most valuable service. On the rupture of the Austrian front the mission of the Cavalry Corps, four divisions, was to push forward in pursuit beyond the 10th and 3d Armies, in order to forestall the enemy at Isonzo River bridges. On October 31 the Cavalry Corps, having overcome the obstinate resistance of enemy detachments, debouched into the plain in advance of the 10th and 3d Italian armies. By 3:00 p. m., November 4, the hour and date of the armistice, the 1st Cavalry Division had closed the pass of the upper Tagliamento River at Pontebba; the 3d Cavalry Division had its advanced elements north and northeast of Cividale, approaching the Isonzo River, and the 2d and 4th Cavalry divisions had reached the crossings of the

lower Isonzo. Thus by mobility and well-directed charges against rear-guards, the Austrian avenues of escape were closed, entailing the capture of tens of thousands of prisoners and large quantities of material, and the mission of the Cavalry Corps was successfully accomplished. The marches of the 1st and 3d Cavalry divisions are especially to be noted, advancing between October 29 and November 4 distances varying from 125 to 168 miles, often without food or forage. In this battle the Italian cavalry crowned its war service by efficiently carrying out one of the most important of cavalry tasks, the pursuit of the enemy.

Russian Cavalry in the World War

Due to the turmoil existing in Russia since 1917 and the consequent lack of official reports, the history of the Russian cavalry in the World War remains in considerable obscurity. It is known, however, that the Russian cavalry was used extensively and in many cases effectively. It was employed on all the Russian fronts throughout the war. For lack of space, it will not be possible to note here the specific instances of its effective employment.

In March, 1917, just before the Russian revolution, 50½ cavalry divisions were distributed on the five fronts: Northern, Western, Southwestern, Rumanian, Caucasian. The Russian cavalry had expanded from the peace footing of 24 divisions, 7 independent brigades, and a few minor units—in all 756 squadrons—to the equivalent of 54 divisions—1,277 squadrons—and in addition had supplied a numerous corps and divisional cavalry to all infantry formations.

That this mass of cavalry, more than 200,000 men and horses, was not used with decisive effect upon its enemies may be attributed, in part at least, to the lack of initiative on the part of the higher leaders and to the lack of knowledge of the arm on the part of the Russian higher commands.

The Bolshevik-Polish Cavalry Operations of 1920

While this campaign was not a part of the World War, it followed soon thereafter, was fought mainly by troops engaged in the World War, and from a tactical point of view may be considered in connection therewith.

The Polish front was extended (950 kilometers), thinly held (22 divisions), and furnished with few reserves. This campaign therefore afforded a special case eminently favorable for the use of the Bolshevik cavalry, nine divisions in all.

The swampy region of the Pripet divided the field of battle into two clearly defined theaters of operation. In the southern theater the Bolshevik counter-offensive, in the early days of June, 1920, was begun by Budeny's Cavalry Army, five divisions, piercing the Polish front in the vicinity of Volodarka. Finding the terrain free, the two principal railroad lines to the west were cut and the Poles were compelled to retreat and form a new front about 200 kilometers to the rear. This also was penetrated by Budeny's cavalry on June 27, and the Poles were

again compelled to retreat to a new line, about 150 kilometers to the rear. Budeny again broke through the Polish lines about July 15 and was free to march his cavalry mass on Warsaw, the Bolshevik objective, but did not take advantage of his opportunity.

In the northern theater two Bolshevik armies attacked the Polish front, while the 3d Cavalry Corps, of two divisions, successfully enveloped the Polish left, and a withdrawal movement was turned into a rout. These tactics were pursued, the cavalry cutting the Polish communications to the north until the Warsaw front was reached.

The Bolshevik cavalry in the campaign against the Poles played the leading rôle. It obtained decisive results.

Cavalry on Various Fronts

Austria began the war with ten cavalry divisions and a numerous corps and divisional cavalry. Austrian cavalry served mostly on the Russian front, although a part was engaged in Serbia at the beginning of the war and later on the Italian front. Serbia had one cavalry division and a certain amount of divisional cavalry. The Serbian cavalry division did excellent work during the first Austrian invasion of Serbia in 1914. Rumania employed two cavalry divisions, besides its divisional cavalry, mostly on the Transylvania front, in the 1916 campaign. Bulgaria had two cavalry divisions in Mackensen's Army in 1916. French and Italian squadrons were successfully employed against the Austrians in Albania. Turkey, at the beginning of the war, had about 40 cavalry regiments, which amount was increased later by thousands of irregular Kurd and Arab horsemen. Turkish cavalry was engaged against the Russians on the Caucasus front, against the British in Palestine and in Mesopotamia, and against the Russians and Persians in Persia. Persian cavalry, organized by British officers, opposed the Turks in Persia.

Belgium had two cavalry divisions during the war. The 1st Belgian Cavalry Division successfully resisted the attack of the 2d and 4th German Cavalry Divisions at Haelen, Belgium, on August 12, 1914, causing heavy German losses. In the uprising of the Senussi tribes in 1916-17, in western Egypt, caused by Turco-German influence, four regiments of British Yeomanry and Australian Light Horse were successfully employed. During the South African rebellion, 1914-15, mounted troops were used by both sides. Mounted troops were used by the British in the campaign in the Cameroons, West Africa. In German Southwest Africa the Germans employed some cavalry, while the British made use of cavalry and other mounted troops to a large extent. Some of the British columns were composed of mounted troops altogether. In the campaign in German East Africa, which lasted practically throughout the war, the British successfully employed one regiment of East African Mounted Rifles (mostly British settlers) and two South African Mounted Brigades. These mounted troops, often engaged in turning movements and in pursuit, were important factors of British success in this region.

Conclusion

There are many lessons and conclusions, pertaining principally to armament and method of employment, to be deduced from the use of cavalry in the World War. For the purpose of this article, however, and in order to correct a too prevalent unappreciative belief regarding the value of cavalry in this war, only three conclusions are stated here:

1. *Cavalry was employed extensively during the World War:*

In considering the above statement, one should bear in mind the vast numbers of troops composing modern armies and the consequent smaller proportion of cavalry at the disposition of commanders than that allotted in former ages. Cavalry was in use in practically all the many theaters of operations. On August 20, 1914, on the Western Front, the Allies had 81 infantry and 12 cavalry divisions opposed to the 85 infantry and 10 cavalry divisions of the Germans. In the Battle of the Marne (including the fighting in Lorraine, September 5-10, 1914) the Allies used 76 infantry and 12 cavalry divisions against the German 68 infantry and 9 cavalry divisions. There was an enormous amount of cavalry in use on the Eastern Front. In March, 1917, Russia had 232 infantry and 50½ cavalry divisions distributed on her active fronts. At times there were approximately 20 German and Austrian cavalry divisions on the Russian front. In the Palestine Campaign, where the conditions were favorable for the employment of cavalry, a large proportion of cavalry compared to other arms existed, 4 cavalry divisions to 7 infantry divisions. In Africa where the operations extended over vast areas, some of the columns were composed wholly of mounted troops.

In support of the conclusion recorded above, it may be said that approximately 100 cavalry divisions were employed in all the theaters of operations. To this amount should be added many independent brigades and regiments not forming parts of divisions. The number of regiments and squadrons assigned as corps and divisional cavalry is indeterminate at this time, but was undoubtedly large. In addition, there were large numbers of irregular cavalry and other mounted troops employed in Southwest Asia and in the African theaters.

2. *Cavalry was employed effectively during the World War:*

It is not asserted that cavalry was successful in all its operations any more than other arms were always successful. Of two adversaries opposed to each other, it is obvious that one or the other must fail. However, cavalry did frequently accomplish its missions successfully, and was therefore effectively employed in those cases. It is not possible, within reasonable limits, to name all the cases of effective employment of cavalry that occurred during the World War, but a brief reference to some instances of such employment may not be amiss, in order to support the conclusion reached above.

Cavalry may be considered to have been effectively employed in the following cases: British cavalry on the retreat from Mons; in the advance to the Aisne,

in the race to the sea, and in the March, 1918, German drive; French cavalry in the race to the sea, in the German break-through of March, 1918, and in the Macedonian campaign of 1918; German cavalry in the advance through Belgium and northern France, in the Battle of the Marne, in the race to the sea, and on the Eastern Front, especially in the Rumanian campaign; Italian cavalry in the Battle of Vittorio-Veneto; British cavalry in Mesopotamia; British cavalry in western Egypt, in German East Africa, in the advance across the Sinai Desert, in the breaking of the Gaza-Beersheba front, in the pursuit to Jerusalem, in the break-through of September, 1918, and in the pursuit to Aleppo. No attempt has been made to name all the instances of the successful employment of cavalry, nor to mention any but the larger operations. There are innumerable cases of minor operations and actions in which cavalry units were successfully employed. To judge from available reports, it seems that, as a general rule, corps and divisional cavalry was effectively employed. Many infantry corps and division commanders complained that their allotments of cavalry units were insufficient.

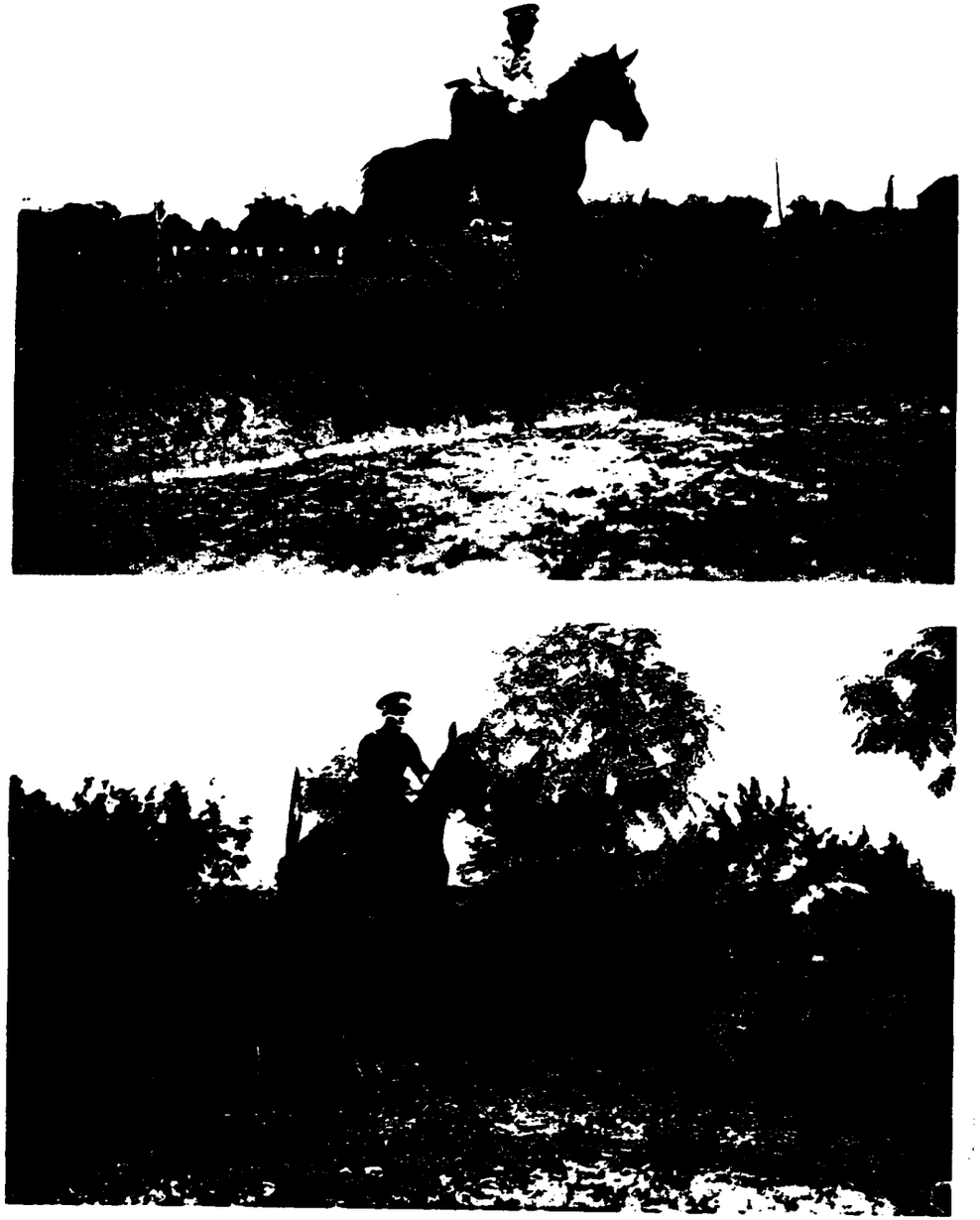
3. *Cavalry was, in many instances, decisively employed, being the determining factor in a campaign, in an operation, or in a minor action:*

It may fairly be said that in the Palestine Campaign the British cavalry, and in the Bolshevik-Polish Campaign the Bolshevik cavalry, were the determining factors. The Ramadi, Khan Baghdadie, and Shargat operations in Mesopotamia, causing the surrender of practically all the enemy engaged, are good examples of cavalry decisive action. The September, 1918, offensive by the British in Palestine is another excellent example. The minor actions in which cavalry alone or in combination with other arms exercised a decisive influence are so numerous and some of them so well known that no attempt will be made here to record them.

The Czechoslovak Cavalry

THE realization of the long-cherished hopes of the Czechoslovaks to become masters of their destinies, which was attained on October 28, 1918, put before their government many difficult problems. One of the chief tasks of the new republic, on the successful solution of which rested a great part of the safety of the country, was the organization of a new democratic army. The Czechoslovak legionaries, who during the World War fought with the Allies, form the real nucleus of the Czechoslovak Army. They were through all of the hardships of fighting and they are the torch-bearers of the liberty of their country. After the war they were demobilized and their places were filled with recruits who were instructed in the new democratic and republican ideas.

During the war the Czechoslovak Army in Siberia formed a cavalry division whose services as reconnaissance proved to be invaluable. This experience was



CZECHO-SLOVAK OFFICERS JUMPING



C. M. T. C. CAVALRY UNIT IN SUMMER CAMP

one of the motives which spoke for the organizing of cavalry in the new republican army. The beginning was very hard, as Austria concentrated all of her good horses near the fronts, and when the military collapse occurred Czechoslovakia had only a small number of horses on hand. Notwithstanding this handicap, the organization of cavalry commenced, and later horses for cavalrymen were bought, mostly from Rumania.

Today Czechoslovakia is proud of her splendid army, in which the cavalry ranks among the best units. Every year tournaments are held with the purpose of showing to the public the progress achieved by the cavalrymen. The pictures accompanying this article were taken at one of the tournaments held by the Second Cavalry Regiment at Olomouc. The showing of the cavalrymen proves the fine accomplishments of good training.

THE UN-ROYAL MOUNTED

There was I a'thumping and a-bumping in the saddle.
(What a fiendish animule a peaceful horse can be.)
Every little movement was remindful of a paddle,
Of a vicious paddle that my father used on me.

Trot! went the animule and thump! went I;
Trot-a-trot, trot-a-trot and thump! thump! thump!
How far away the earth did seem and close to me the sky,
Bang-a-bang, bang-a-bang and bump! bump! bump!

There was I a-perched atop the horse's sharp equator,
(Who in heaven ever called a horse a noble friend?)
Rising and a-falling like a skittish elevator,
Knowing when I started down what waited at the end.

Up went the animule and up went I,
Down again, down again and bang! bang! bang!
I thought of all my relatives and kissed each one good-by.
Batter-bump, batter-bump and clang! clang! clang!

Perched upon a saddle and a-swinging and a-swaying.
(Now I know just how a man about to hang must feel),
Cursing every horse that lives what times I wasn't praying;
I wonder what an apple thinks that some one starts to peel.

Post! said the riding master. Pest! said I.
One-a-two, one-a-two, and sock! sock! sock!
Oh, I was done completely and could only hope to die.
One-a-two, one-a-two, and knock! knock! knock!

—Courtesy N. Y. Sun and Globe, October 31, 1923.

Hill Fighting in Morocco

BY

Major ELBERT E. FARMAN, Jr., Cavalry

THE French occupation of Morocco, which had hardly begun in 1914, was continued throughout the war, in spite of the fact that the Marshal Lyautny was required to send most of his French troops to other theaters of operations. To take the place of French troops, he was obliged to use natives, both Moroccans, Algerians, and finally the German legionaires.

Each year, during the dry season, from April to November, columns of troops set out from the principal military posts in Morocco to continue the work of subduing the tribes which have not yet made their submission.

Early in May I arrived at the old fortress of Taza, in north central Morocco, to join one of these columns. This force was known as the Taza column and was commanded by Colonel Freydenberger. It had already started operations farther to the east before my arrival, so that the troops when I first saw them had been about a month in the field.

The operation which I observed was for the reduction of a small tribe known as the Beni-Bouzert. Their stronghold was located in the mountains, only some thirty miles south of Taza as the crow flies, but by the winding trails it was probably more than twice as far. To these Beni-Bouzerts all the irreconcilables of the surrounding country had joined themselves. Two previous attempts had been made to reduce them to submission, but they had both failed, due partly to the difficulties of the country and partly to the determination and fighting qualities of the Beni-Bouzerts.

As this expedition was only a preliminary one to larger operations, which were to continue all summer, the high command had decided that it should not be a failure, and therefore allotted to the commander of the column forces which seemed more than ample for the task, had it been only a question of defeating the Beni-Bouzerts. But it must be taken into consideration that their mere defeat was not sufficient; it was necessary to surround them, prevent them from joining with larger forces of unsubmitted tribes to the south, and bring about their complete surrender or destruction.

Most of the tribes of Morocco are very warlike. They resemble in many ways our Moros of the Philippines. They have always fought as a matter of course. They are fanatics and death means little to them. They will fight individually as desperately as any of our Moros, attacking with the knife forces ten times their number. They are much better armed than the Moros, for they have plenty of modern rifles and are supplied with quantities of ammunition. They are a hundred times more numerous than our Moros. They also have the great advantage of a large country into which they can retire when hard pressed. They had no artillery and, as far as I personally witnessed, no machine-guns. Their organization, like that of most savage

tribes, hardly existed. It consisted merely in attachment to some leader to whom usually some religious and supernatural power was attributed. Like all North Africans, they are cruel and delight in torture and mutilation, so that it is always a first rule to leave neither dead nor prisoners to fall into their hands.

The French policy has been, immediately after the occupation of any new region, to build forts, in order to make sure of holding the country. These forts are usually located on some commanding hill. They are well built of stone and give the garrison complete protection from the fire of small arms. The garrison consists of a platoon or more and usually has one field-piece. These forts are noticeable in the landscape in many parts of Morocco. Some are almost constantly in a state of semi-siege; but the thick walls and barbed-wire entanglements render them pretty secure against assault.

With Colonel Freydenberger, his chief of staff, and one other officer, I set out by auto from Taza one morning. After following the highway to Algeria for an hour at high speed, we turned off on a newly constructed trail into the mountains, to the south. The trail was well graded, but very rough, and in places the low-slung French cars had difficulty in passing. Winding back and forth, the trail climbed continuously until we were many hundreds of feet above Taza. The view of the valley of Taza, the mountains on each side, and far in the distance to the south the great range of the Atlas, all white with snow, was magnificent. We passed one small village of three mud hovels, near which were a few acres of cultivated fields and a herd of goats, some donkeys and camels. The only persons seen were children guarding the herds.

After a ride of several hours we reached a camp used as an advance base for the operations. The trail for autos ended here. The camp was surrounded by a loopholed stone wall six feet high, with a barbed-wire entanglement. On a hill half a mile away was one of the typical forts, the first since Taza. In a hollow were a few trees. From here on we were in hostile country.

A squadron of chasseurs d'Afrique was ready to escort us. Our bedding-rolls were placed on pack animals; we mounted; the squadron took up an advance-guard formation, and we started off. The trail followed up a valley, rising continually. It had evidently been passed over by many troops and some wheeled vehicles. We passed through a few clumps of oak here and there, but in general the country was as bare as the Big Bend of Texas, which it much resembles, and as rocky.

After about two hours, we overtook a battery of artillery, which was having a hard time on a steep grade. Twelve horses were required to get the guns up. In front of the battery we passed a battalion of the legionaires. They were halted and resting. I overheard many remarks in German as we passed. A few miles farther on was a pack train of many hundreds of mules. All these were led by dismounted men, usually one man for two mules. After a further steep climb, we entered an oak forest of several hundred acres. A rocky descent brought us to a narrow valley with a small stream of water and some

green grass. Through this valley we were able to trot a good deal, and another hour or two brought us to camp, where most of the troops had already arrived.

Hard experience has trained the French to be always prepared for surprise attacks on their camps; hence the camps, even for a single night, are always surrounded by a continuous entrenchment or parapet. This entails great labor on the part of the troops, but is carried out as an invariable rule. The location of the camp, in which there were about four thousand or more troops, had been chosen more for tactical reasons of defense than for the comfort of the troops. Though only a short distance away the valley was wide enough to have made an excellent camp, the site selected was on the steep, rocky sides of a narrow valley, so that the camp extended on both sides to the top of the ridge, which formed the line of defense.

The strength of Colonel Freydenberger's column was about 8,000 men and nearly 4,000 animals, most of them pack-mules, and in addition there were several thousand partisans. In the force were Senegalese, Moroccans, Algerians, legionaires (mostly Germans, with a few Russians and other nationalities), and a very few French. The largest permanent unit was the battalion. Temporary larger units were formed, called "groups." The officers and higher non-coms were French, except in the legion. Most technical soldiers, such as the telegraph and engineer units; also the gun-pointers in the artillery, clerks, radio operators, and all the aviation, were also French.

The cavalry consisted of about six squadrons, some of which were French (chasseurs d'Afrique), some Algerian spahis, some Moroccan spahis, and some belonged to the semi-regular native cavalry units called "goums." The French cavalry, composed largely of young recruits, was used as headquarters guard and escort. Their equipment was similar to that of the French cavalry in France. Their uniform was the historical one of the chasseurs d'Afrique with the impractical fez, which gives no shade whatever to the face or head. The native cavalry squadrons and the goums had the strange, and to me unridable, Arab saddle.

The uniform was really the Arab dress, which consisted of a turban and great cape, or bournous, and very baggy trousers. The goums had a blue bournous, the spahis a red one. The rifle was carried in the hand, usually resting on the pommel of the saddle. All the cavalry carried the short French carbine. The chasseurs carried a saber.

The horses were small, about 14.2 to 15 hands, apparently very tough and requiring little feed and water. They were mostly by government stallions, with a great deal of Arab and Barb blood. The horses appeared very well groomed and cared for. They usually received as grain barley and often no hay. It is surprising that they could have done so well with so little roughage. The very mountainous nature of the country in which the final action took place gave little opportunity for the employment of cavalry. Two squadrons formed the reserve and the remainder was used on reconnaissance and to escort

the trains, as the roads in the rear were not safe from attack. All transportation was pack.

The partisans were raised from all the friendly tribes in the neighborhood. They came under their native leaders, without army organization.

The pack transportation, as that of all other nations I have seen, could not compare with ours. In the first place, the pack was not sufficiently fast to the mule to allow him to go in liberty. Hence each pack animal had to be led, usually one man for two mules. In narrow mountain paths this was very difficult. This system requires too many men, and the speed and distance covered are necessarily limited by the dismounted leaders. The backs of the pack animals were in very bad condition. There were two kinds of packs. The French for the mountain artillery, machine-guns, and regular pack trains is the ordinary pack of the French Army. It appeared to be thoroughly bad and caused many sores. The second pack was the native one and was used on the requisitioned mules. It consisted merely of a tremendous thickness of padding, without any rigid frame or ribbing. It, of course, could not be kept off the withers. The pack-mules were small.

The operation contemplated the surrounding of the region held by the Beni-Bouzerts by the concentric advance of four main columns. The Beni-Bouzerts had made their homes in a few small valleys situated high in the mountains. In these valleys they found water and grazing for their flocks, and cultivated small bits of land. The day after our arrival in camp most of the troops of our column rested and gave time for the other units, which had greater distances to cover to reach their positions.

I spent the day wandering around the camp. From a short distance it looked just like an American army camp. The men were in pup tents; the officers had tents similar to our old wall tents. There were a few old conical wall tents, which looked as though they had been purchased from the American Liquidation Commission in France. A large part of the camp was taken up by the picket lines of the pack-trains. At closer view, there were many differences from our camps. First, the variety of uniforms and races; then the cooking by squad, which was general, instead of a company mess. On the cavalry picket lines the horses were tied by the foot to a ground line, instead of by the halter, and the horses were all stallions! the rules of sanitation, upon which we insist so much, were apparently unknown. Any water was drunk without thought of boiling or chlorination.

Our camp was only a few miles from the principal entrance to the valleys of the Beni-Bouzerts. This entrance was through a very narrow defile commanded on both sides by high peaks. The approach to the defile was across an open valley, then up a long, steep climb. The mountains commanding the defile, though very steep and rugged, were not inaccessible to infantry. There were, besides the main defile, several paths by which horses and pack animals could enter the valley from our side, and I was told also one or more entrances on the sides from which the other columns were approaching.

Detailed and minute written orders covering the actions of the several columns were issued two days beforehand. The attack was opened at 5:30 a. m. by an artillery preparation lasting till 7 a. m. This preparation was directed at the principal defiles and the hills immediately commanding them. At 7 a. m. the partisans, led by French officers, started forward. The jumping-off line was on a ridge. Across a deep valley from this ridge, and about three miles away, was the range of hills closing the entrance to the Beni-Bouzert country. A winding trail, everywhere exposed to rifle fire from the enemy, led up to the main defile. A mile to the right there was another, much more difficult, trail, also leading over the same ridge. At about 7 a. m. an airplane dropped a message, saying that only small bodies of the enemy could be seen.

The partisans started forward at a run, without any appearance of organization, though one could see that they remained in several distinct groups, evidently following a leader. The regular troops followed the partisans at a few hundred yards. With the colonel and his staff, I followed the regular troops. We took the more difficult right-hand trail. The descent from our ridge and the crossing of the valley required about an hour. We then had a very difficult climb, leading our horses up the rocky mountain side. Only a few shots were heard, and reports came back that the enemy had retired and left the entrance to their country open.

In spite of the absence of opposition, our progress was very slow, and it was about 10 o'clock before we had reached the summit of the ridge. The geological formation made progress very difficult, especially for animals. The rock strata was on end and alternate layers had weathered away, leaving deep crevasses and vertical walls.

There was still no sign of the enemy. The colonel and his staff, with one squadron of chasseurs, after reaching the ridge, took to the left and gained the main trail beyond the defile. The trail here ran through a valley and was good footing for animals. On our left the mountain side was covered with a live-oak forest. On our right, and only from 50 to 100 feet above the valley, was the rocky area from which we had just come down, and over which the main part of the infantry advance continued, while a squadron which had come through the main defile had already gone forward along the valley. With the squadron of chasseurs as advance guard, we continued up the valley, passing several wounded and a few dead partisans, who were being carried back by their comrades. This showed there had been some resistance, though we had as yet hardly heard a shot. After advancing about three of four miles, we left the valley and climbed to the rocks on our right. We soon came to a ledge parallel to our front. On this ledge the line, consisting of Moroccans, appeared to be halted. In front was a small valley in which several fires were burning—the villages of the Beni-Bouzerts. Beyond these fires was a high mountain, partly wooded and culminating in an apparently flat-topped peak on our right front. On the line of the fires lively rifle firing was going on. We had at last run into the enemy. The firing increased, and we began to see,

first, individuals, then groups, of our partisans coming back. A few minutes later they were all running to the rear. Fire was opened upon us, not only from the enemy in front but now and then we received bullets from our rear and right rear. Several men and animals near me were hit. Several hundred yards to our right were the legionaries. The squadron of chasseurs was to our left rear, covering the valley and the woods.

Following close behind our partisans, and hardly distinguishable from them, we would see individuals and groups of the Beni-Bouzerts. The retreat of the partisans so masked the fire of our line that the enemy was able to progress at first with little opposition. The bullets from the flank and rear were making our Moroccans a little uneasy. The colonel ordered a company which was in reserve to clear the woods to our left rear.

The partisans having unmasked our front, general fire was opened upon the Beni-Bouzerts. Their attack was, however, not against us, but to our right, where the ground was much more favorable for an attack. For fifteen minutes there was lively firing on our right and continued firing into us from a few hidden riflemen in our rear. A message came that our right was being driven in and had suffered many casualties, especially among officers. It was half an hour before the situation on our right became clear. The Beni-Bouzerts, following closely on the heels of the partisans, had advanced right up to our line. There had been a number of casualties—one company commander killed at a range of five yards and another wounded—and had it not been for the steadiness of the legionaries there would have been a serious setback. However, a company in reserve had re-established the situation and the Beni-Bouzerts had retired to the mountains opposite us. The enemy sharpshooters in our rear had not yet been found, and they continued to annoy us, occasionally scoring a hit.

The colonel directed the legion battalion to take the high flat peak to our right front. It was about 1,200 yards away. The legionaries were obliged, on account of the configuration of the ground, to scale this peak from the right; so that as they climbed up we saw them almost from the flank. With glasses we could see here and there Beni-Bouzerts dodging behind the woods and getting in good shots on the legionaries at very close range. Several Beni-Bouzerts were on top of the peak, and these shot down the first legionaries who reached the top. We watched these agile semi-savages dodge in and out behind the woods, often within a few feet of the legionaries, without the latter being able to see them. Then apparently the Beni-Bouzerts were reinforced from the other side of the peak, for they drove off the legionaries with some loss. All the time Beni-Bouzerts and legionaries were so close to each other that we could not assist by fire from our position.

As night was approaching and the command was much dispersed, orders were issued for it to assemble in several large, deep craters, just in rear of our position. By nightfall our column was jammed in these craters, well protected from any shots of the enemy.

The total losses in our little column, which had perhaps 1,500 combatants, had been considerable. The two mules carrying the headquarters mess had been killed and the attendant wounded. My horse, with my blanket, had fallen in a deep gully and been left for dead.

The night was disturbed by only a few shots. By daylight the troops were in position on the line held the afternoon before. Reports from the other columns showed they had had little opposition.

The tactics of the Beni-Bouzerts must be admired. Cut off on all sides by the concentric advance of forces many times superior to them, surprised by artillery preparation, they had done just what they would have been taught to do had they attended our service schools: They withdrew from the zone of artillery fire and retired till our troops were beyond effective support of their artillery. They then concentrated and made a determined attack on our weakest spot—an attack which almost succeeded.

Just after daybreak a messenger came from the Beni-Bouzerts to say that they would all surrender. The messenger was a short, wiry fellow with fine aquiline features. He was very dirty and tired, his clothes in rags, but he carried a French rifle in beautiful condition. The formal surrender ceremony consisted in leading a supposedly fat bullock, really the most miserable cow they could find, before the French commanding officer and cutting its front tendons, so that it fell on its knees in token of submission. The guns were turned in at the same time. The act of the French commander was typical of French conquest in Morocco. He required the defeated Beni-Bouzerts to protect the trails through their country and to be responsible for its proper police.

Results of Five Endurance Tests

BY

W. R. BROWN

THE following data, gathered from the official records of 102 horses, of all breeds, entered in the five endurance tests for the United States Mounted Service Cup, which have been held in the East, is here presented for the consideration of those asking for facts rather than bias or opinion from preconceived ideas, or planning to select and train horses for future tests of this kind:

Test 1—held October 14 to 18, 1919, 306 miles in 5 days, between Fort Ethan Allen, Burlington, Vt., and Camp Devens, Mass., 14 entries, all breeds—was won by Arabian mare *Ramla,* 14-3, 850 pounds, ridden by Albert W. Harris, of Chicago, for W. R. Brown, Maynesboro Arabian Stud, Berlin, N. H., owner, in 51 hours 26 minutes, carrying 200 pounds. Score: Speed, 23 6/25; condition, 50/50; feed, 19 3/25; total, 92.9 per cent. *Ramla* repeated the following year for 260 miles with 245 pounds in 51 hours.

Test 2—held October 15 to 19, 1920, 306 miles in 5 days, between Fort Ethan Allen, Vt., and Camp Devens, Mass., 27 entries, all breeds—was won

by Thoroughbred grade *Mlle. Denise,* 15-2½, 980 pounds, ridden by Major Stanley Koch, of Washington, for himself as owner, in 46 hours 57 minutes, carrying 245 pounds. Score: Speed, 36 1/40; condition, 40/50; feed, 6 9/10; total, 83 per cent.

Test 3—held October 10 to 14, 1921, 310 miles in 5 days, between Camp Alfred Vail, Redbank, N. J., and Washington Monument, D. C., carrying 245 pounds, 17 entries, all breeds—was won by Arabian gelding *Crabbet,* 15-2, 925 pounds, ridden by Jack Humphrey, of Maynesboro Arabian Stud, Berlin, N. H., for W. R. Brown, owner, in 49 hours 4 minutes, carrying 245 pounds. Score: Speed, 29/40; condition, 55/60; total, 84 per cent. *Crabbet* took fifth prize in the 1919 test and fifth prize in 1920 test.

Test 4—held October 8 to 13, 1922, 300 miles in 5 days, at and around Fort Ethan Allen, Burlington, Vt., 21 entries, all breeds—was won by Thoroughbred *Vendetta,* 15-2½, 1,012 pounds, ridden by Major Louis Beard, of Front Royal Va., for J. Watson Webb, of Brandon, Vt., owner, in 45 hours 17 minutes, carrying 225 pounds. Score: Speed, 39/40; condition, 56/60; total, 95 per cent.

Test 5—held October 15 to 19, 1923, 300 miles in 5 days, at and around Avon, N. Y., 23 entries, all breeds—was won by Anglo-Arab demi-sang *Gouya,* 15-3½, 983 pounds, ridden by Ted Collier, of Maynesboro Arabian Stud, Berlin, N. H., for W. R. Brown, owner, in 45 hours, carrying 225 pounds. Score: Speed, 40/40; condition, 58/60; total, 98 per cent. *Gouya* went 90 miles in 1921 test and 300 miles in 1922 test.

Cup won permanently by W. R. Brown, Maynesboro Arabian Stud, Berlin, N. H., through three winnings.

One hundred and two contestants started in the five tests, of which 24 had 50 per cent or more of Arabian blood; 27 had 50 per cent or more of Morgan blood; 36 had 50 per cent or more of Thoroughbred blood; 9 were Anglo-Arabs, a mixture of Thoroughbred and Arab, with 4 Kentucky saddle horses and 2 Standardbred or Trotting horses. This gives a sufficient number of Arabs, Morgans, and Thoroughbreds for comparison, but not enough Kentucky or Trotting-bred horses to make a fair comparison; so that the last two will be left out.

While it is true that many unsuitable horses were entered, this was equally the case in Arabs, Morgans, and Thoroughbreds, and the interest was sufficiently keen and enough money was spent by the backers of the different breeds to secure, in most instances, the best specimens possible and give them adequate training; so that it is idle to say that the breeds were not well represented. In some instances horses and riders were brought from long distances and were trained for some months by their owners at the place where the test was to be held. It is interesting to note in this connection that there are perhaps not over 300 Arabs in this country to be drawn upon and a relatively small number abroad, while there are perhaps 4,000 Morgans in the United States and 16,000 Thoroughbreds; so that the opportunity of selection among Arabs was vastly less.

As to age, horses of all breeds averaged close to eight years, the most desirable age at which to test the maximum power of a horse. In height, Arabs and Morgans averaged 15 hands, with Thoroughbreds and Anglo-Arabs averaging 16 hands. Grades of all breeds averaged 15-2, which is probably the most efficient height for a test of this kind, taking into consideration the ratio of speed, load, and distance.

In weight at the start, Arab blood averaged 903 pounds, Morgan blood 961 pounds, Anglo-Arab blood 1,000 pounds, and Thoroughbred blood 1,025 pounds. The smallest horses were pure-blooded Arabs, who averaged 860 pounds, and pure-blooded Morgans, who averaged 918 pounds, the largest being the Irish Hunters, who averaged 1,074 pounds. The average weight of all horses was 976 pounds, which, it will be assumed, is the best weight for the speed, load, and distance.

The load carried in the first test was 200 pounds; in the second and third, 245 pounds; in the fourth and fifth, 225 pounds, being theoretically the weight of the ordinary cavalryman, varying from 130 to 175 pounds, plus the ordinary equipment, with saddle, of 70 pounds. The average load carried in all five tests was 230 pounds, and all horses in each test were required to carry the same load. The ratio of load carried to the weight of the horse is most interesting when compared with the distance accomplished, the speed attained, and the condition at the finish, as shown by the following table:

	Carried per cent of his own weight.	Average distance.	Average rate per hour.	Average lameness. Per cent.
Average, all horses.....	23.6	222	6.	58
Average, Arab blood.....	25	245	5.4	25
Average, Morgan blood.....	23½	224	6.	52½
Average, Anglo-Arabs	23.2	194	6.5	55
Average, Thoroughbred blood..	22.1	218	6.3	85
Average, pure Arabs.....	26	218	5.3	15
Average, pure Morgans.....	24.6	245	6.	39
Average, pure Thoroughbreds.	23.	200	6.5	90

From the above it will be seen that a very considerable weight handicap was placed upon the smaller horses of Arab and Morgan blood, but that they succeeded in carrying the same load a relatively longer distance than the larger horses, with less leg trouble of all kinds, but at the sacrifice of speed, in which the horses of Thoroughbred blood surpassed. An equal, if not superior, rate of speed was attained, however, by the Anglo-Arabs (the Thoroughbred-Arab cross), as was demonstrated in the last test. This soundness of leg and constitution in the Arab was also demonstrated in the ability to repeat, Arab blood having finished 1 horse 4 times, 1 horse 3 times, 1 horse twice, and 5 horses once, as against Morgan blood having finished 1 horse 3 times, 1 horse twice, and 5 horses once; and as against Thoroughbred blood having finished 1 horse 3 times, 2 horses twice, and 8 horses once.

RESULTS OF FIVE ENDURANCE TESTS

Concerning the number of finishing horses out of the starters and the number that *took* prizes (*all* horses making the distance are called finishers):

Average.	Number starters.	Number finishers.	Per cent finishers	Per cent prizes.
All horses.....	102	43	42	30
Arab blood.....	24	14	58	41
Thoroughbred blood.....	36	15	42	33
Morgan blood.....	27	10	37	18½
Anglo-Arabs	9	3	33	22
Pure Arabs.....	13	6	46	38
Pure Morgans.....	18	8	44	22
Pure Thoroughbreds.....	20	7	35	25

Feed being a feature in the first two tests, with a 25 per cent and 10 per cent score, it was found that horses with Arab blood were consuming at an average of one-quarter to one-half only as much food as larger horses of other blood in doing the same work, and kept in equally as good condition.

From tables showing the results of these tests the following conclusions can be fairly drawn: That the Arab possesses more endurance and weight-carrying ability and low feed consumption, with freedom from unsoundness, than any other breed, but that when handicapped with a larger proportion of his weight is obliged to proceed at a slower pace; that the Morgan possesses many qualities of the Arab, but in a less degree; and that horses of Thoroughbred blood excel only in speed; that the Arab grade, particularly the Trotting and Thoroughbred cross, obtains more height and size, is up to more weight and can achieve speed, but is not as sound as the pure Arab; that the Morgan grade is larger than the pure Morgan, but is inferior; that the Thoroughbred grade varies only from the Thoroughbred in being somewhat shorter (with the exception of the Irish Hunter) and making somewhat less speed; that the legs of the pure Thoroughbred are subject to lameness from the concussion of carrying heavy weight over long distances on hard roads, even although their nerve, courage, and recuperative ability, especially as to recovering of weight, are unexcelled; that the Morgan in himself makes a very good endurance horse, but is not prepotent enough to be impressive in the grades; that a mixture of Arab and Thoroughbred blood can equal both in endurance and speed and is a desirable cross, as it furnishes registrable blood that can be gone on with, increases the size of the Arab and decreases the size of the Thoroughbred, and gives assurance of a fixed and prepotent type; that such a conclusion has been arrived at in a general way in France and other continental countries where stallions of both breeds are used, as in the U. S. Remount, and particularly in Hungary, where a superior native horse has been produced by the admixture of these two bloods over the past century; that, whatever our predilections for some breed may be for certain services, only selfish want of patriotism and consideration for our soldiers in the extremity of war will allow us to blink the facts brought out in these tests and keep us from acting in full measure upon them.

AVERAGES, 5 TESTS, 102 CONTESTANTS

	Number.	Age.	Height.	Weight.	Pounds carried.	Ratio to weight. Per cent.	Miles.	Time.	Miles per hour.	No. made distance.	Per cent made distance.	No. took prizes.	Per cent of prizes.	Prizes. 1	2	3	4	5	6	No. of horses hors or fevered tandem.	Per cent. of horses hors or fevered tandem.
Pure Arab	13	9	15	860	226	26	218	39:31	5.3	6	46	5	38	2						2	15
Grade Arab	7	8	15	918	229	25	263	47:15	5.5	4	57	8	43		1	2		2		2	29
Arab-Standardbred (Trotter)																					
Cross	4	9	15–2½	1,026	228	22	305	49:46	6.1	4	100	2	50		1	1				2	50
Total Arab	24	8.3	15	908	227	25	245	43:29	5.6	14	58	10	41	2	2	2	2	2		6	25
Pure Morgan	18	8	15	918	226	24.6	245	41:40	5.8	8	44	4	22		1			2		7	39
Grade Morgan	9	7	15–2	1,046	227	21.7	183	28:46	6.3	2	22	1	11	1	2	2			1	6	66
Total Morgan	27	7.7	15–2/3	961	226	23½	224	37:22	6	10	37	5	18½	1	1	2		2	1	13	48
Pure Thoroughbred	20	8	16	1,024	227	23	200	30:36	6.5	7	35	5	25	1	2			2		10	50
Grade Thoroughbred	9	8	15–2	906	231	23	215	37:15	5.7	3	33	3	33	1	2	2				7	77
Thoro-Standardbred Cross (Trotter)	3	8	15–3	1,053	232	22	288	43:00	6.6	2	66	2	66				1		1	3	100
Irish Hunter	4	9	16–1	1,074	225	21	265	39:35	6.4	3	75	2	50				1		1	2	50
Total Thoroughbred	36	8	16	1,025	227	22.1	218	34:18	6.3	15	42	12	33	2	2	2	2	2	2	30	83
Total Anglo-Arab	9	8	16	1,000	232	23.2	194	30:00	6.5	3	33	2	22	1				1		5	55
Total Kentucky Saddle	4	10	16–½	1,075	230	21	210	32:15	6.5	1	25	1	25			1				4	100
Total Standardbred (Trotter)	2	7½	15–¾	896	245	28	135	28:00	5.2	0	0									1	50
Grand Total	102	8	15–2	976	230	23.6	222	36:36	6	43	42	30	30	5	5	5	5	5	5	59	58

Inheritance

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel CLARENCE LININGER, Cavalry

MODERN thought takes account of the influence of heredity. We may safely affirm that American Cavalry did not spring into existence full blown, but that it has a spirit and habit of mind which have been influenced by the past and are not wholly due to present thought and conditions. Back of the American Cavalry there is a story of gallant feats of arms, but they are so near and bear such a close personal relationship to him that unless the cavalryman examines them closely he may not appreciate certain aspects fully.

By reviewing cavalry episodes of three different wars we may discover some of the causes of our beliefs or actions or may be able to erect a standard by which to measure ourselves. Assuming that cavalry should be aggressive in operations and active on the field of battle, let us see how American Cavalry has observed these principles.

KING'S MOUNTAIN, SOUTH CAROLINA, OCTOBER 7, 1780

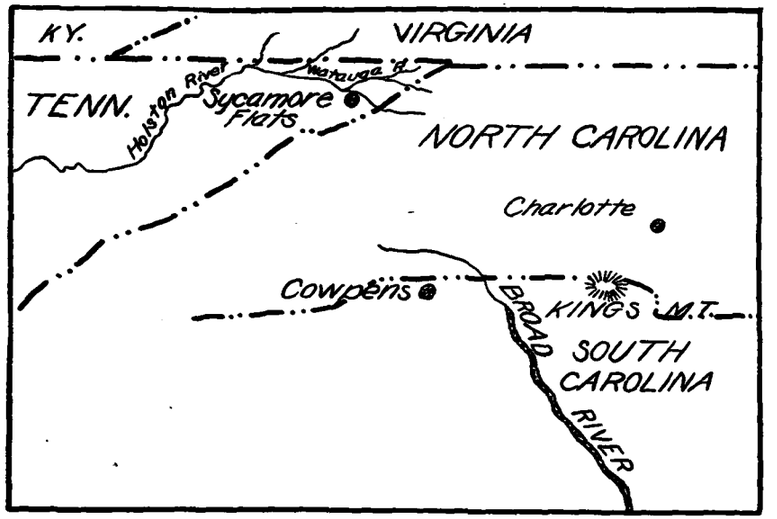
The year 1780 was developing darkly for the Revolutionists. The British held most of the important places of the north, except the Hudson, which they almost obtained through Arnold's treason. In the south, Charleston fell and Gates was crushed at Camden. Cornwallis, largely through the aid of the Tories, was spreading his power over the Carolinas in a merciless campaign, attended with fire, sword, and hangings. The French were blockaded in this country or were unable to sail from France.

One of Cornwallis's ablest lieutenants was Ferguson, who in September and early in October was in the west with a well-organized and well-equipped command of about 1,100 men, of whom it was said he was the only one who was foreign-born. The severity of his campaign stirred the Revolutionists, and a threat to "march his army over the mountains, hang their leaders, and lay their country waste with fire and sword" roused the men of the frontier, the Backwater Men, to action.

The answer to Ferguson's threat was that on Monday, September 25, 1780, a mounted force of over 1,000 men assembled at Sycamore Flats, on the Watauga. Horsemen from the western Carolinas and Virginia, from northern Georgia, and from the mountains of Kentucky and Tennessee united to repel the invaders. The force consisted of independent companies or small regiments, chiefly the militia of the counties, but with a sprinkling of troops which were constantly in the field. True to the nature of these men, they decided to take the offensive. In the beginning there was no unity of command, but in a few days Colonel William Campbell, of Virginia, who commanded the largest regiment, was elected to lead the whole. There was still no regular system of supply,

and the resources of the country through which the march lay were relied upon to keep the command afoot.

The next day, on a crisp autumn morning, the march began, which led the troopers through the virgin forests, where the horses trod upon a carpet of leaves, across mountain streams that threatened to sweep them away, into deep



valleys heavy with silence, and to commanding points, from where the world lost itself in the blue of the distance. Once when the prey seemed within grasp it was found to have escaped, but with fresh information came renewed faith and renewed determination. As the march continued, other troops joined.

After sunset, on October 6, the command arrived at Cowpens, a place made famous later by Morgan's defeat of Tarleton. Here a spy brought word that Ferguson was going to camp that night at King's Mountain. Now a lesser organization took place and only about 900 of the strongest and best were selected for the crowning act of the drama. At 9:30 p. m. the selected ones mounted and moved out.

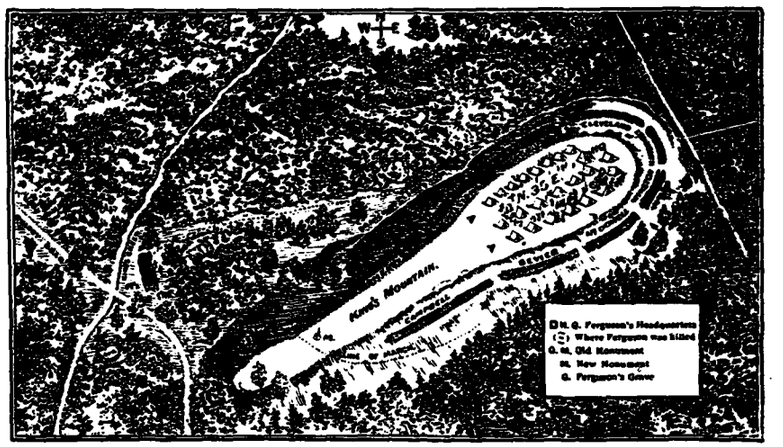
The night was very dark and before long a rain set in that lasted until noon next day and at times was very hard. The men had difficulty in keeping their guns and powder dry and were able to do so only by using their blankets and hunting shirts, thus getting wet and cold themselves. Some time after daylight there was a short halt for a light breakfast. Some had rations in their saddlebags, but others had only the corn which could be gathered in the fields.

The march was resumed shortly and information gleaned from inhabitants, a captured messenger, a foraging party, and finally one of Ferguson's outguards, put the Loyalists in possession of unusually full information. Ferguson was

resting in fancied security on the top of King's Mountain, confident in his own good fortune, in the training and previous successes of his men, and in his position. "I am on King's Mountain," he declared. "I am king of the mountain, and God Almighty himself cannot drive me from it."

As information arrived it was at once transmitted to the men. Even Ferguson's dress was described, so that he might be made a target for their unerring rifles. Their imaginations were fired and their enthusiasm aroused. The rate of march was unconsciously quickened. Only the reported strength was kept secret, so that it would not appear as though superior forces were lying in wait. Without halting, the leaders assembled and formed a plan of action. The decision was a very simple one, namely to surround the height and attack. No avenue of escape was to be left open.

An opportunity was given the men to quit the ranks and go home, but no one left. Colonel Campbell then gave necessary orders to the higher officers and gave them, so far as possible, in the presence of the men. A final general order was issued: "Fresh prime your guns, and every man go into battle firmly resolved to fight until he dies."



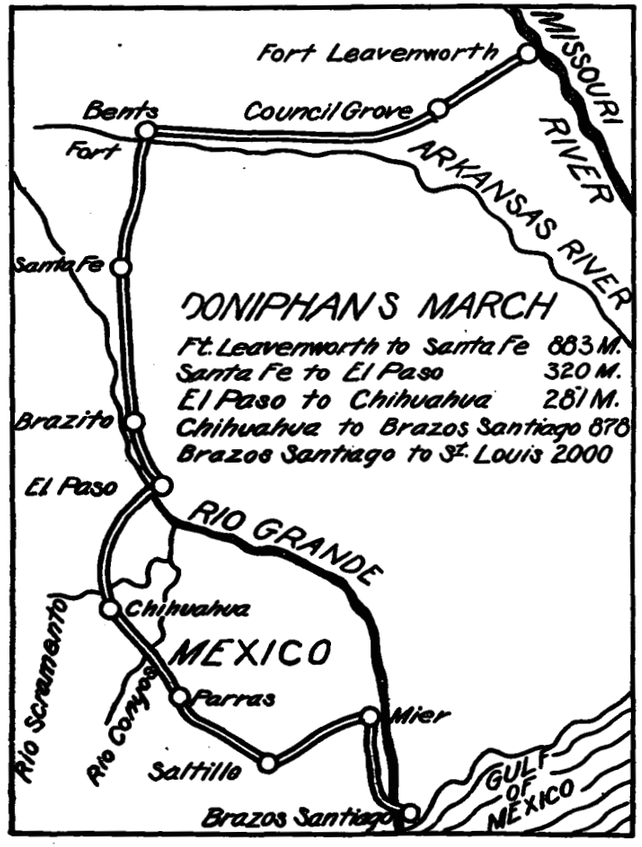
Except for a small group the forces designated to make the frontal attack dismounted, tied their horses to trees, and formed double rank. The officers placed themselves in the lead and conducted their commands toward the scene of action. The mounted group made a spirited charge upon the British main guard, killed and wounded some, and drove the remainder up the mountain. The dismounted line soon arrived and at mid-afternoon the battle broke in its intensity. In the meantime the elements assigned the missions of attacking the enemy flanks and rear rode rapidly to their positions, and soon the hostile camp was assailed from all directions.

Three times the dismounted lines, struggling over boulders and fallen timbers, surged to the edge of the flat top which crowned the mountains, and as many times gave way before the bayonet. But the deadly rifles of the Continentals had taken their toll. The British chieftain had met his death and his most valiant subordinates were dead or wounded. The white flag appeared.

Many days of riding—fifty-four miles in a final day, a night, and a part of another day—a complete encircling of the enemy, a sharp hour and victory again, as in ages past and those to come, rested upon the banner of fast-riding, long-enduring horsemen who dared. The rising tide of invasion stopped and sank away.

SACRAMENTO, MEXICO, FEBRUARY 28, 1847

When the war with Mexico broke out, one of the measures decided upon by the United States Government was the occupation of Santa Fe. Colonel Stephen



W. Kearney was selected to command the expedition, and the force primarily assigned was a portion of his regiment, the 1st Dragoons, and some volunteers. The latter consisted of the 1st Missouri Volunteer Cavalry and two companies of light artillery. The volunteers were hastily organized and consisted of bold, hardy, and energetic young fellows, who selected a prominent citizen, Alexander W. Doniphan, as their colonel.

On June 5, 1846, Kearney started the expedition off by sections from Fort Leavenworth, Kansas. The route lay across country to Council Grove, and then followed the famous Santa Fe trail. The Indians were troublesome; heat and shortage of water and rations added to the difficulties of a long march; but on August 18 Santa Fe was entered, after Mexican resistance had disappeared before the threat of battle.

Before long Kearney started to California with a small force. Other troops were coming on from the east, and Doniphan was ordered to join General Wool at Chihuahua. Before he could comply, however, he was called upon to pacify the Navajos, which he did after a notable seven weeks' campaign.

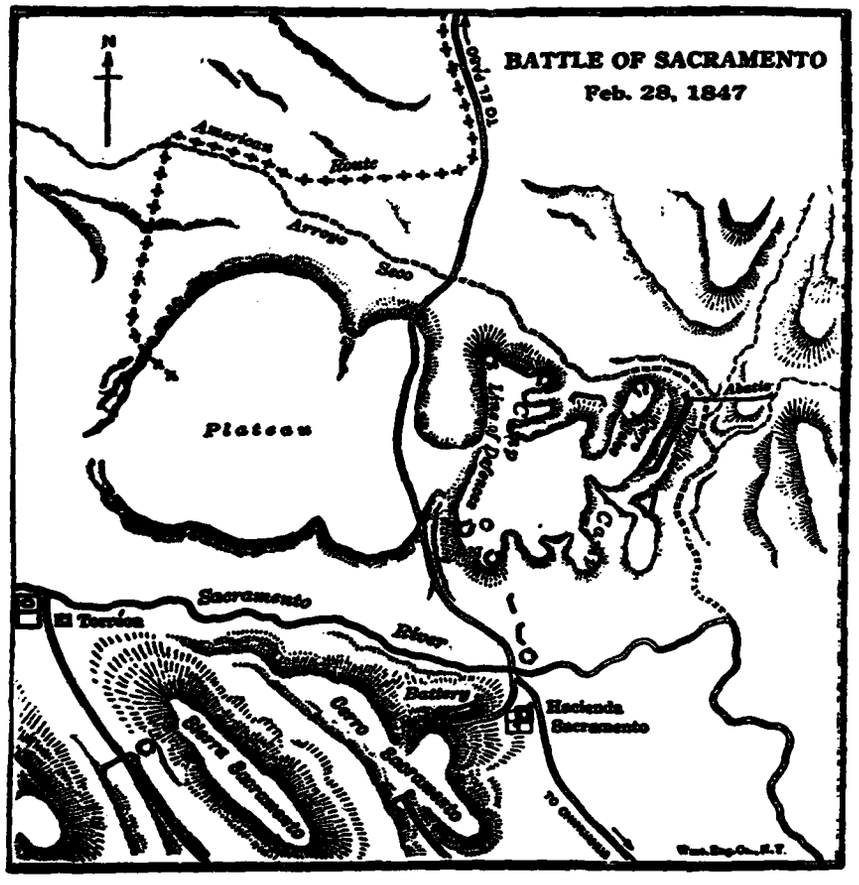
Finally he started and on Christmas day was in camp, carelessly exposed, at El Brazito, about thirty miles north of El Paso. Suddenly Mexican troops appeared, and, in overweening confidence, made the mistake of demanding Doniphan's surrender. This gave the Missourians time to seize their weapons. In about half an hour the Mexicans were in full flight to El Paso, pursued fruitlessly by fifteen or twenty mounted men. The next day El Paso became American.

Soon it was learned that Wool had been stopped at Saltillo, but Doniphan, in one of the boldest military decisions of our national history, determined to go forward with his part of the plan. The expedition that set out from El Paso on February 11, 1847, was truly an extraordinary one. There were nine hundred soldiers, of whom seven hundred belonged to the 1st Missouri Cavalry, one hundred to a force made up at Santa Fe, and one hundred to the artillery. In addition, there were about three hundred traders and teamsters who had been sworn into the service by Doniphan. The troops had been without pay and had to provide themselves with almost everything in the way of clothing and equipment, so that as their column moved out it presented a motley but picturesque appearance. Accompanying the command were over three hundred wagons loaded with merchandise, which the adventurous traders of the West wished to dispose of in Chihauhau.

Winding south day after day through the mountains and over the deserts of Chihauhau, suffering heat by day, cold by night, thirst and fatigue, the force found itself, in the early afternoon of February 28, 1847, approaching the Sacramento River, eighteen miles north of the city of Chihuahua. Here the Mexicans had built fortifications, planted artillery, and stationed their force of all arms, estimated by some as high as 4,200 and acknowledged by the Mexicans themselves to contain 2,000 men. Delirious with anticipation of triumph, they awaited the Americans.

That day the wagons of the latter marched in four columns of about one hundred each. Between the columns marched the artillery and most of the troops. The companies of Reid, Parsons, and Hudson, which were considered to be cavalry and not merely mounted men, covered the front and flanks.

Coming in sight of the Mexicans, Doniphan rode forward to reconnoiter. The position looked impregnable from the front, so he turned the main body



sharply to the right, allowing the advance guard to continue a short distance farther, and moved the caravan over country difficult for maneuver, even of troops unencumbered with transport. Crossing a deep arroyo, they ascended to a plateau.

The Mexicans had moved out to intercept the Americans when the latter were observed turning off the road. The cavalry of the former led, followed by

infantry and artillery. Coming within range, Doniphan's artillery opened. After a few rounds the Mexican cavalry fled and their infantry and artillery returned to the defenses.

The Americans now took the aggressive. The artillery, supported by the cavalry, was ordered forward to bombard the works. Now occurred one of those remarkable exploits, so sudden and surprising as to leave the enemy unprepared to act effectively. Only one cavalry captain received the order; but, without waiting for the others, he with his company galloped furiously upon a redoubt, dismounted on the breastworks, and engaged the defenders with pistol and rifle. The other two cavalry captains, seeing the charge, sent and obtained permission to do likewise. For a time the Mexicans were too strong and numerous for the attackers, but the howitzers came up and the redoubts were entered. After a brief struggle, resistance was broken and the battle was at an end on the north bank of the river.

From the south side of the River Mexican artillery was firing from a redoubt on a high piece of land. American artillery went into action against it, and a flanking party scaled the steep side of the hill, while another group galloped up the road to its rear. Success here terminated the battle of Sacramento. Pursuit followed, but night soon fell and the command reassembled on the field so brilliantly won. One American was killed and five wounded. Three hundred Mexicans, probably, were killed and as many wounded. Next day Chihuahua was occupied without resistance.

This short tale cannot be ended without a few words of the further wanderings of this command. About the end of April it departed for Saltillo and reported to Wool; then it went on to Taylor at Monterey. Marching northward to the Rio Grande, some set out to drive the horses and mules overland to Missouri, while the bulk of the command sailed for New Orleans, and thence up the Mississippi and Missouri to their homes.

"They had built a large stone into the edifice of American prestige in Mexico, and had gained for themselves a notable place in military history."—(THE WAR WITH MEXICO, by Smith).

BRANDY STATION, VIRGINIA, JUNE 9, 1863

The great movements which preceded Gettysburg had begun two days previously. On the above date Longstreet and Ewell were at Culpeper Court House. Stuart, with his cavalry, was, as usual, out in the direction of the Federal forces. Daybreak found him with the bulk of his division at Brandy Station, while his detachments watched the crossings of the Rappahannock.

Uncertain of what was transpiring south of that river, the Federal cavalry and some infantry, under Pleasonton, assembled on its left bank during the day and night of June 8, 1863. With the coming of dawn the 1st Federal Cavalry Division (Buford) and the Reserve Brigade crossed at Beverly Ford and moved on Brandy Station. A little later than that the 2d Cavalry Division (Duffié) crossed at Kelly's Ford and moved on Stevensburg. The 3d Cavalry

Division (Gregg) followed and moved on Brandy Station. A detachment of infantry followed the cavalry across the river at each ford.

There was little opposition to the Federals at the river. The first serious fighting occurred between the northern column and Jones' brigade, when the latter rushed to the defense of some exposed artillery. "The cavalry did its work well," says the brigade commander, "but with considerable sacrifice."

The battle then grew in intensity. Hampton came up on Jones' right and W. H. F. Lee on his left. It was horse against horse, horse against foot, foot against foot, with artillery in support of both. Losses were heavy and the issue yet undecided.

Meanwhile the southern Federal column was approaching Brandy Station close upon the heels of the Confederate messengers bearing the news to Stuart. This general decided to make his real stand on Fleetwood Hill, north of and overlooking Brandy Station. With this plan in mind, he posted artillery on its crest and sent for three of his five brigades. The other brigades he left to oppose the Federals elsewhere.

As the 3d Federal Cavalry Division approached Brandy Station, Gregg saw Stuart's assembled squadrons and ordered the commander of his leading brigade (the 2d) to charge. "The whole brigade charged with drawn sabers, fell upon the masses of the enemy, and, after a brief but severe contest, drove them back, killing and wounding many and taking a large number of prisoners. Other columns of the enemy, coming up, charged this brigade before it could reform, and it was driven back" (Gregg).

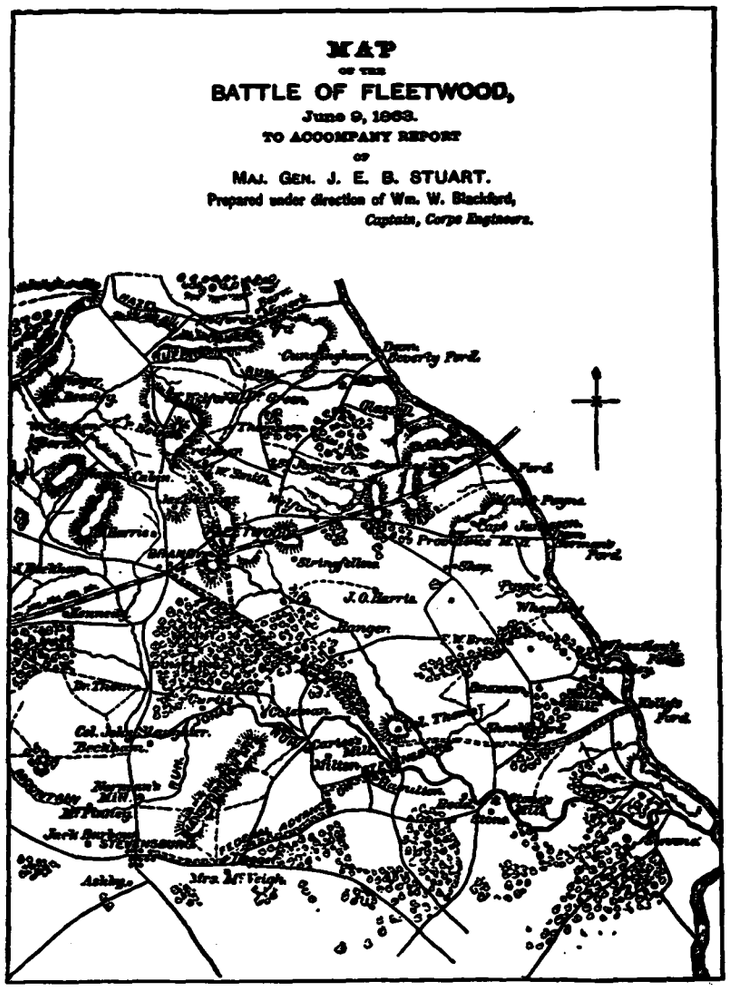
The 1st Federal brigade then charged and was momentarily successful, but fresh columns of Confederates arrived. "Thus for an hour and a half was the contest continued, not in skirmishing, but in determined charges" (Gregg). The Confederate cavalry charged and put out of action some of the Federal artillery. The contest was too unequal to be longer continued. The 2d Federal Cavalry Division had not come up; Gregg fell back and later united with Buford's left.

The necessity of Stuart's concentration against Gregg lessened the resistance in front of Buford, and this officer took advantage of it. No sooner had Gregg drawn back, than Stuart found this new danger menacing him; Buford's division and the infantry skirmishers appeared on Fleetwood Hill in his rear.

"At this moment General W. H. F. Lee engaged the enemy in a series of brilliant charges with his regiments, alternately routing the enemy, and, overpowered, falling back to reform. This continued until Munford's brigade, which, having been anxiously expected, arrived opposite this portion of the field and was ordered in at once to attack in flank. The enemy fell back, and Munford's sharpshooters pressed him all the way to Beverly Ford, on the left. Our whole line followed the enemy to the river, skirmishing with this rear, and our line of pickets was re-established that night. Our infantry skirmishers, advancing through the woods, did not engage the enemy" (Stuart).

Thus closed the main battle of Brandy Station, but while it was in progress, far off on the Federal left were occurring lesser events that resulted more favorably to the Federals, but did not alter the great issue.

The 2d Federal Cavalry Division, upon crossing the Rappahannock in the morning, moved on Stevensburg. A battalion of the 6th Ohio Cavalry, sent ahead to gain possession of the town, entered it and was then forced back. The next two regiments of the division were ordered to charge. In doing so they cut the 4th Virginia Cavalry in two and made considerable captures. The



division was still pressing forward when it was recalled. Arriving too late to participate in the fighting about Brandy Station, its most important mission was that of covering the withdrawal across the Rappahannock.

It is difficult not to dwell at length upon tactical lessons, but we would soon be drawn beyond the scope of this study. Our thought at this moment is less of the higher leaders than of the brigade and regimental commanders and of the bold spirits who followed them where the fight was thickest and where death was reaping a great harvest, where mass met mass in mad array and sabers were dimmed with blood.

Each side claimed a great victory, each claimed great tactical and strategical results. We shall let the issue pass. What *was* accomplished was that the flower of American cavalry, divided against itself, had spent the day in material self-destruction but in a purification and elevation of spirit which placed it at the pinnacle of the cavalries of the world.

. . . . . .

This short recital of three illustrious incidents does not contribute new historical data. Everything touched upon is already well known, but we perceive therein matters of great interest to the American cavalryman. We behold the influence of the spirit of the actors in these deeds. Always it was the same—a great desire to close with the enemy; to cast not discretion, but inertness, to the winds; to act with all the swiftness of which man and horse were capable. This was not the spirit of one generation, but of three.

In campaign our cavalry were aggressive. They sought combat, riding to seek the enemy, not for hours only, but sometimes for days and weeks. Speed increased as the distance to the enemy decreased. Nor were they limited to one type of action, but they used whatever type and wielded whatever weapons gave promise of the most effective results. If terrain or unfavorable conditions required them to dismount and fight it out on foot, they did so without hesitation. The pistol and saber were as familiar to their hands as the rifle. In action, their activity was that of the horse and rider, and not that of the man alone, whether the mission were to encircle the enemy or to penetrate quickly into his ranks.

If we in the immediate past have been troubled with doubts and have been prone to think of ourselves too much as mounted riflemen, has it not been because the achievements of our cavalry on the battle-field were obscured? Our great ability on the ground dimmed the vision of our ability on horseback, and somehow we lost sight of the fact that, though we should be able to move rapidly before reaching the field of battle, the true need of our mobility lay on the field itself.

The cavalrymen of yesterday bequeathed those of today many things, but nothing greater than this heritage of activity. It brought them and their arm honor and glory, which they have transmitted to the cavalry of today. The enjoyment of this heritage entails the responsibility of maintaining it untarnished.

World War Lessons in Cavalry Patrolling

AUSTRIAN SOURCES, 1916

(By Permission of the Military Intelligence Division, General Staff)

A squadron that has gone through nearly two years of war, that has been almost wiped out time and again, has picked up some lessons undoubtedly vital. The squadron in question now goes through its daily task with hardly a casualty; the team work is unsurpassed. Like many fighting men, its members and officers have difficulty in putting into words just how they do it; what they have been able to tell is set down below.

Formation and Leading of Patrols

A PATROL should have a strength of 20 to 25 men and should cover a space 1,000 yards wide by 500 deep, not counting connecting files to the rear; this formation for an open, fenceless country like Galicia or Poland. Men should ride in pairs, somewhat separated. Near the enemy, cavalry patrols should never ride on a road. The map should be studied for cover, observation points, etc., and the necessary route; the latter should be hidden. Patrols that keep the road are shot down; they haven't a chance.

If there are no peasants to be seen in a village, there is something wrong. Patrols should not ride into the village, but around; or, if it must be examined, dismounted patrols should be sent through the houses, from house to house, by the side doors or windows, not along the streets. Every house must be searched for machine-guns in cellars or lofts. Russian Cossacks rarely accept attack except to further plans for a trap or ambush. When met, the Cossack dismounts and fires. In the beginning, this was not done by the Austro-Hungarian cavalry, but it is now. The Slav imagination is a prolific inventor of ruses. (The Russian has no monopoly of invention.— (The Editor.)

Patrols and detachments when fired upon should take it calmly and not get in a hurry to do something. A sudden rush for cover may only further the enemy's plan or at least add confusion to the situation, which must develop before proper measures can be taken to meet it. In any case, nothing could be quite so unseemly for a soldier as to be shot while running like a scared hen.

It takes a deal of experience to teach men to *see* properly, particularly as the enemy makes every effort to conceal himself and his works. When fired upon, or when the enemy is seen, hunt cover, lie down, watch and wait, hours if necessary. Here again patience is half the battle. Maybe in half an hour a head will be seen; then another in quite a different part of the field; then another. After a prolonged study of the neighborhood, familiarity may develop a feature that looks like a line. Study it! Further back, other heads may appear or men be seen going forward or creeping back, showing a second line. Of course send back word at once, when stopped, and later other reports. It is often impossible

to send written messages; hence the men must be able to transmit correctly verbal messages. Proficiency requires considerable training, but proficiency must be had.

Patrols should be taught to report everything. Complaint is made principally of the lack of reports. Negative reports are as necessary as positive. They at least show that the patrol still exists, where it is, and that no enemy has been seen. For the commander, this may be information of the greatest importance. It is a good rule to require a patrol to report at least once every two hours. A message should never be sent back by less than two men.

Cavalry Patrols Sent Out at Night Do Not Patrol

Cavalry patrols should never be sent out at night, but at dawn, with instructions to return at nightfall. Out over night the horses and men get no rest and the next day they are almost worthless. Fresh patrols should be sent out each day. The principal mission of a patrol is to see, which it cannot do at night. If commanders persist in requiring night reconnaissance by mounted patrols, the latter will learn to march out about one thousand paces and there wait for the glimmering of dawn to carry out their work. The squadron had this lesson sharply administered early in the war by a painful experience in which it lost its commander. One night, after some preliminary reconnaissance of a village, the squadron marched in and the command stopped in the square. No one had been met. No lights had been seen. An orderly dismounted and knocked at a door, holding in his hand a small flash-light. Suddenly the door was opened and a volley from within the house dropped the orderly on the threshold. This was a signal for a fusilade from all the houses. The commander was shot and the squadron lost heavily before it could be withdrawn from the village.

Near the enemy a day of riding on patrol is a dangerous and nerve-racking experience, requiring great physical exertion and the use to its utmost of every trained faculty. For efficiency's sake alone, it should not be continued without a break for more than a day at a time. More and more, mental and physical exhaustion is being guarded against. When permitted, it means a permanent loss in strength and a falling off in the factor of efficiency.

If the cavalry fails to observe in war the lessons it learned in peace as to the care of the horse, money spent on its training has been a useless expense. It would do as well to put up foot troops. At the outbreak of a war, fresh horses, fresh men, and traditions of dash and glory sometimes result in an at least temporary disablement of the cavalry force. Later by hard experience, it learns better. This at least has been the war experience of the cavalry of one army which in war failed to justify the confidence it had enjoyed in time of peace.

The British Cavalry in Palestine and Syria

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry
(Observer with British Army)

THE ADVANCE TO ALEPPO

THE great drama of Damascus closed in fitting climax on the morning of October 2, 1918, when the 3d Australian Light Horse Brigade made its final mounted charge against the enemy near Duma, some eight miles northeast of the ancient Arab city. Galloping six miles across an open plain, the entire brigade charged with the sword, cut through the enemy column, killing a large number and capturing 1,500 prisoners, 3 guns, and 26 machine-guns. The city itself being in an uproar as a result of celebrations by the Arabs, who imagined that their own valor had been an important factor in the campaign, the British made an imposing formal entry with large detachments of cavalry and horse artillery, thus allowing the inhabitants to see the "Who's Who" of the conquering forces and giving them something to think about. On the following day General Allenby himself arrived, and the presence of the Commander-in-Chief put a final quietus upon the turbulent Arabs, who, beyond a doubt, estimated the situation as did a certain British non-combatant, who, in speaking to the writer afterwards, said: "It seemed a bit critical with those wild Arabs carousing all over the place, but when I heard 'The Bull' had arrived in town I knew we would have quiet."

But there were still some Turks at large and their prompt destruction or capture necessitated further work by the cavalry and its companion fighting forces. Some 20,000 Turks, of whom 8,000 were combatants, straggled northward toward Aleppo. They were disorganized, had no regular transport, and were lacking in the normal accessories of fighting forces, though they eventually gathered some 35 guns for their final efforts around Aleppo. In addition to this normal objective of an enemy force, there was a political end to be attained, and that was the occupation of as much enemy territory as possible before the enemy government threw up the sponge—a gesture which, obviously, must soon be made. Furthermore, an advance was advisable for yet another reason and that was the simplification of supply. Three cavalry divisions were at Damascus, supplied by motor trucks from Haifa, on the Mediterranean, and from other points south, over a very bad, round-about road of more than 100 miles. The railroad from the south was being repaired and the local resources of Damascus were considerable, but in spite of this an improvement was necessary. The port of Beirut lay 75 miles west of Damascus and was connected therewith by a road and a railway. The Commander-in-Chief decided to seize Beirut and acquire this shorter line of communications.

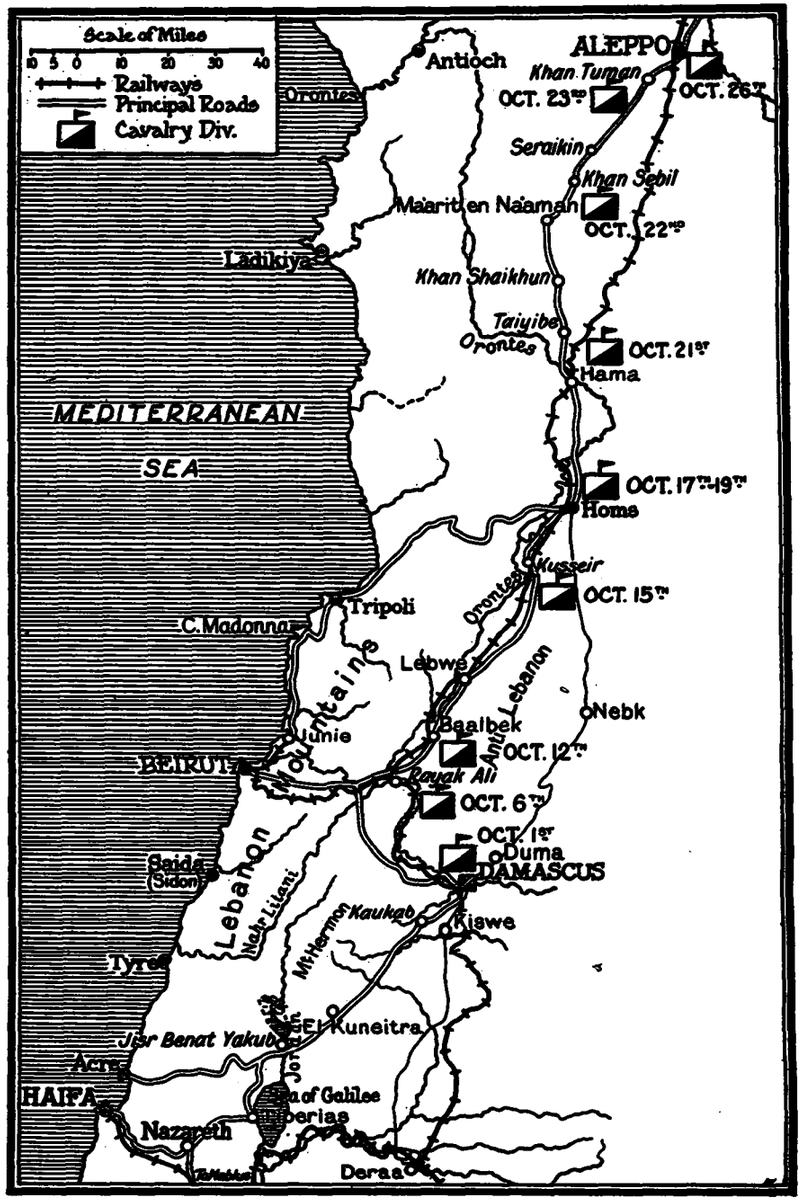
In the meantime much sickness had brought to the Cavalry Corps those casualties which an experienced enemy had been unable to inflict. Over 200 miles of marching in twelve days, much of it by night, with all the strain of

fighting and of responsibility, several days spent in the Jordan Valley around Beisan and north of the Sea of Galilee—mosquito-infested regions—had resulted in a great outbreak of malaria in the 4th and in the Australian Cavalry divisions. Influenza also took its toll. These two divisions had also an undoubted inheritance of weakness from their long service in the Jericho sector of the Jordan Valley prior to these operations. The 5th Cavalry Division, on the other hand, had come to the September advance comparatively fresh, and so it was that this division seemed the logical one for the last, long reach to Aleppo.

For the seizure of the railroad westward and the port of Beirut, the 4th and 5th Cavalry Divisions moved out of the Damascus area on October 5th, and at noon of the 7th the armored cars of the 5th Cavalry Division entered Beirut. French war ships also came into the harbor, and the next day (October 8) the 7th (Meerut) Division of Indian Infantry arrived from Haifa after a five days' march. The advance of the two cavalry divisions included the occupation of Rayak, the junction where the railway coming down from Aleppo branches to Damascus on the east and to Beirut on the west. In three days the railway to the sea, the port itself, and the intervening area had been taken over, the small enemy detachments continuing their long trek to the north.

By this time the malaria-stricken 4th Cavalry Division had reached its limit of achievement for the time being and, as the Australian Division had remained in Damascus, the 5th Cavalry Division assumed responsibility for the capture of Aleppo. General Allenby's Army, so rich in outstanding personalities, seemed always to produce an appropriate leader for each of its many brilliant enterprises. This was especially true in the case of Major-General MacAndrew, who commanded the 5th Cavalry Division. The writer had the good fortune to know General MacAndrew and to discuss with him on many occasions the question of cavalry employment. Like most of his colleagues, he was very unassuming, with an easy, genial, and most friendly manner. The great value of cavalry was not a question of debate with him; he took it for granted as a necessary part of that grasp of military matters essential to a qualified general officer. He believed that Americans, by temperament, were especially suited to cavalry work and expressed regret that we were prejudiced against the lance, in the use of which his Indian troopers were so adept. That a very bold spirit lay behind his placid, friendly manner was proved by the Aleppo operations. That Fate has an inexplicably cruel side was revealed by his being burned to death in Aleppo, the city of his final triumph.

Although the Turks and Germans retreating on Aleppo were weak and disorganized, they were superior in numbers to the reduced 5th Cavalry Division and, as the latter must anticipate operations 100 miles in advance of any support, General MacAndrew was given a force of 24 armored cars (Rolls-Royce) and 3 light-car patrols (Fords, carrying machine-guns). The division at this time comprised less than 2,000 sabers, and the horse batteries' personnel was barely sufficient to man the guns. The country over which they were to advance had many wide, open spaces with a surface like that of Mesopotamia, where the armored cars had operated so successfully.



ADVANCE OF THE FIFTH CAVALRY DIVISION TO ALEPPO, OCTOBER, 1918

The division was organized in two columns—"A" and "B." Column "A" consisted of Division Headquarters, the 15th Cavalry Brigade, the 3 batteries of armored cars and 3 light-car patrols. Column "B" included the 13th and 14th Cavalry Brigades. Provision was also made for a divisional air service, to enhance the combat value of the cavalry, conserve its energy, and quicken its communications. As in the Damascus advance, the air force had its gas and supply trucks moving forward, maintained its landing ground establishments, and was always at the Division Commander's call. By October 12 the entire division had arrived at Baalbek, the ancient Heliopolis, and effected its double-column formation in the shadow of the Temple of Jupiter, where the fierce horsemen of Jenghiz Khan and, later, those of Saladin had flashed their scimitars seven hundred years before. Marching about 17 miles per day, on the average, the two columns concentrated October 17 at Homs and prepared for the last 115 miles to Aleppo.

Over southwest of Homs, some 75 miles, lies Tripoli, a Mediterranean port, to which a very bad, but passable, road leads from Homs. This port had been seized on October 13 by the XXI Corps Cavalry Regiment, marching up the coast, followed by Weir's Brigade of the 7th (Meerut) Division of Indian Infantry. This provided a shorter route by which the cavalry at Homs could be supplied. Looking back over the entire 1918 advance of the Cavalry Corps from Jaffa up through Syria, it will be observed that the successive taking over of lateral roads leading from Mediterranean ports eastward to the cavalry's line of advance further inland, but roughly paralleled to the coast, was very much like slipping new rungs into a ladder; so in 1918 the simile of "rungs of a ladder" visualized the creation of supply lines quite as effectively as the simile "spokes of a wheel" visualized the scheme of 1917, when the Cavalry Corps swung partly around the circumference on its Beersheba-Jaffa advance, while the supply lines shot out successively like the spokes of a wheel from the railhead hub in the Gaza area.

Thus far not much opposition had been encountered. At Rayak 177 Turks and Germans had been captured, together with considerable airplane, engineer, and railway material and 2 guns; at Beirut 660 Turks had surrendered and 500 had given themselves up at Homs. Burned railway buildings and some 30 burnt airplanes were found along the enemy's line of retreat. On October 19 the division renewed its advance from Homs and three days later the armored cars caught up with the enemy rear guard at Khan es Sebil. The Turks had six motor trucks, in which were machine-guns, and one big armored car. All these vehicles were equipped, through necessity, with steel-tired wheels, and during the 15-mile running fight which followed they outdistanced the British pneumatic tires when rough, rocky roads were encountered, but the British cars caught up with them on the better stretches and captured the armored car, one of the trucks, and thirty Turks.

Early on the morning of the 23d the column resumed its advance, the cars engaging enemy cavalry at Khan Tuman, about 10 miles south of Aleppo. The British cavalry reconnoitered close in to Aleppo and discovered an enemy

force of between two and three thousand, with guns and machine-guns, holding trenches across the road about three miles south of the city. The redoubtable Captain Macintyre, of many light-car patrol adventures, was sent into the enemy lines with a demand for surrender. After several hours amiable entertainment and a good dinner in his honor, Captain Macintyre was sent back by the Turks with a note to General MacAndrew which was found to read as follows:

> "The commander of the Turkish garrison of Aleppo does not find it necessary to answer your note."

With only a small fraction of his division at hand, General MacAndrew established himself in front of Aleppo, reconnoitering the enemy positions on the 24th while awaiting his remaining brigades. These came up on the evening of the 25th. That night the Arabs of the Emir Nasir succeeded in entering the city, where they fought it out hand to hand with the Turks, their old-time enemies and coreligionists. The next morning General MacAndrew occupied the city, establishing himself there with the armored cars and the 14th Brigade. But at 10 o'clock that morning the 15th Brigade, under Brigadier-General Harbord, operating west of Aleppo, had a spirited engagement with the enemy. General Harbord had received information that "about a thousand 'scallywags' with two small guns" had left Aleppo moving to the north. Relying on this information, General Harbord moved to intercept the enemy on the Aleppo-Alexandretta Road. Engaging at first dismounted, the Mysore Lancers, supported by the Jodhpur Lancers, launched a mounted charge with fire support from one battery of armored cars. Through a mistake, the armored cars broke off the engagement, and the Mysore Lancers, after charging clear through the enemy's flank, found their weight insufficient to continue the mounted fight and had to take up a dismounted position. But their charge had revealed that the enemy's real strength was about 3,000 infantry, 400 cavalry, and some 35 guns, instead of a "thousand 'scallywags' and two guns." This fight continued on into the night, when the enemy withdrew to the west. Keeping touch with this and other smaller enemy forces, the British troops continued their advance northwest and northeast of Aleppo, but the announcement of the armistice with Turkey on October 31 brought an end to hostilities.

In 38 days the 5th Cavalry Division had marched 567 miles, fought 6 engagements and taken 11,800 prisoners and 58 guns. It had lot 39 officers and men killed, 160 wounded, and 9 missing. Of its 8,971 animals, its losses were: Killed in action, 157; died, 327; destroyed, 237; wounded and evacuated, 63; evacuated for other disabilities, 902; missing, 234—a total of 1,920, or a percentage of wastage of 21.41. The records of General Allenby's Army show that 80 per cent of the evacuated horses were returned by veterinary hospitals as fit for reissue, and this percentage would bring the above wastage to an even lower level.

The long campaign had been characterized by a degree of skill in battle management and in conservation of horses so remarkable that, with a very short period of rest, the Cavalry Corps could have continued its victorious advance for further hundreds of miles had the war continued.

From Acre to Aleppo with Allenby

Being Further Extracts from the Diary of a Subaltern under Allenby in Palestine*

BY

Captain J. R. H. CRUIKSHANK, B. A. (Camb.), F. R. G. S.
Late 18th Lancers

DAMASCUS, *October* 3, 1918.

TODAY has been proclaimed a day of rest by the division. There are lots of things to be done, though, as inspecting sick horses, completing ammunition, and re-equipping; but, apropos of that, it means the strain of expecting to push on every minute into the unknown is over for twelve hours. That is one of the effects which tell on the men more than anything else, in long advances or retreats, however fine they are.

We departed from Acre at 5 a. m. on September 26 to march on Tiberias. Before marching, "Captured by —th Lancers" was carefully engraved on all the field guns and machine-guns captured by the regiment, after which they were very ceremoniously parked in the square.

"C" Squadron, which I had been put in charge of, as B——— was remaining as Military Governor, was detailed as advanced guard to the brigade. Threading our way across country, over narrow paths all day, we reached the main Tiberias-Nazareth road late in the afternoon, where the brigade bivouacked for the night. "C" Squadron was detailed to put out outposts for the night astride the road. We were off again, though, at half past 2 in the morning, and five hours later came down the steep slopes to the edge of the Sea of Galilee. As I passed the adjutant he gave orders to off saddle, water, feed, and be ready to march again in two hours. It was a race, we realized, against time to stop the remnants of the Turks from making any organized resistance at Damascus.

The Australian Division, which was leading the column, was just moving off along the Damascus road as we arrived. They had some hard fighting getting into Tiberias. I went through the kit in my saddle-bags and raked out what I could to save my pack-horses. Even horses' eye-fringes went overboard. I had a Cook's Guide-book, which told all about the sea, which I threw it into. Near by was Capernaum and Bethsaida, and through them one knew ran the greatest of Galilean thoroughfares, the Via Maris, pouring a steady stream of life.

Why is the name of that foreign emperor, Herod, first embalmed in a most sordid flattery, still buried in obscurity and silence? Life, both physical and mental, was more in current in the cities of our Lord's choice than in that

* An earlier installment was published in the CAVALRY JOURNAL for April, 1923.—THE EDITOR.

of Herod's. Nevertheless, while Bethsaida and Capernaum have passed away, Tiberias endures; and the name of the morbid tyrant still stamps a region from which that of Jesus has vanished. The obvious reason is the black acropolis above Tiberias.* Capernaum, where Matthew sat at custom, depended on the great road, and faded when commerce took a new direction. But as Tiberias was the only defensible site, being at once on the lake and on a hill, it necessarily became the seat of the government of the province, which in time, of course, took from it its designation. But Christ went up these roads to rule the world.

At 1 o'clock the brigade moved off again, skirting the shore first, and then beginning the long climb up the mountains surrounding the sea. Along the road lay Turkish horses, already rotting and stinking. Behind us the sun set, turning the rugged mountains pink. It was on one of these, too, we knew that the Transfiguration of Christ took place. Darkness came, and on the hills across the Sea of Galilee one could see huge fires blazing—probably stores set on fire by the Turks retreating east of the Jordan, or perhaps burning villages.

The climb must have been heart-breaking for the horses, and when, at last, level stretches were reached we had to push on at the trot. The dust became like a thick cloud, choking and blinding one. Peering into the darkness, one could see now and then an abandoned horse half lying, with his nose touching the ground, or perhaps still standing with his head between his knees. It was 10 o'clock when the Jordan was reached and the regiment formed "mass" to camp for the night.

Next morning, that was September 28, orders came at 5 o'clock to be ready to march at short notice. During the morning "Frazzles" arrived by one of the ration lorries to take over "C" Squadron. It was marvelous, how the lorries got up to us. One saw our airplanes passing over to bomb the retreating Turks. We had to wait for the Jisr Benat Jacub Bridge over the Jordan to be repaired by the Royal Engineers, as the Turks had damaged it and the fords were too difficult. It is the ancient bridge of Jacob's daughters, there, you know. The Australians had quite a lot of fighting getting across. In the meantime we bathed in the river, but at noon the brigade galloper came with orders to saddle up. While we were crossing the bridge an enemy airplane bombed us, but without hitting anything. There was another long climb before us, and when darkness came it became very cold at the altitude we had reached. The plateau we were on was first covered by very rocky ground, and then undulating pasture land, intersected by numerous streams rising in Mt. Hermon, and the column was continually fired on by the Circassians who dwell on this plateau. Our goal that night was El Kuneitra, which was made by midnight.

The Turk bombed us again the following morning at about 7, but again he missed. We didn't march during the day. We had to make Damascus by

* When Saladin took Tiberias, in 1187, the citadel did not yield to him till after the Battle of Hattin.

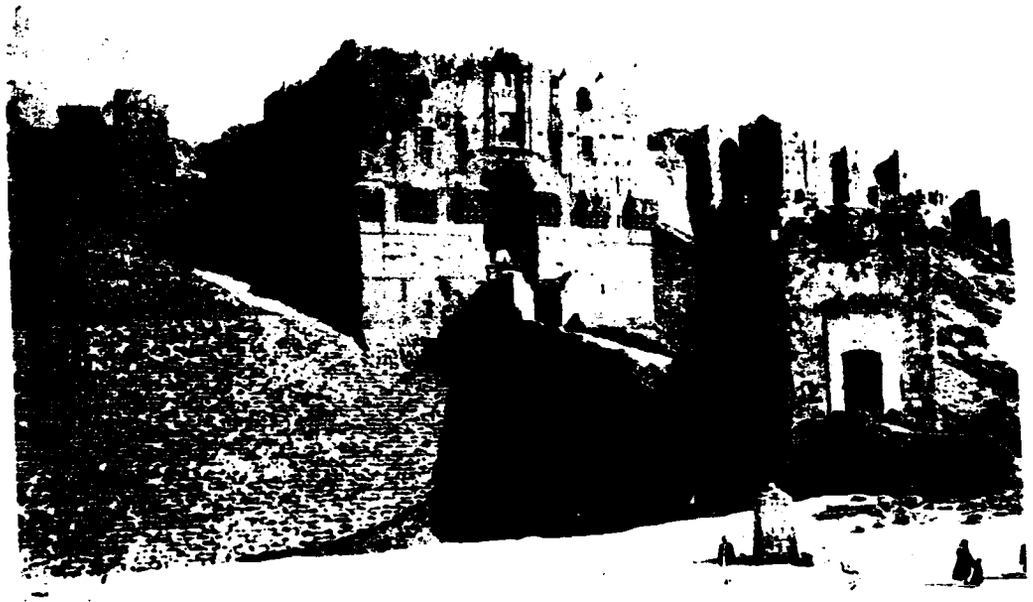
next day, and I think the idea was to do a surprise night march. I explored the town for requisitioning, but it had been thoroughly looted.

The only thing was to get as much sleep as possible, which we all did. About mid-day there was a small earthquake. Even the ground was trembling under the impetuosity of our pursuit! Airplanes, which were landing and going up most of the day near us, reported the remnants of the Turks were a pitiable sight; but they had an entrenched line across the road a few miles on. We heard that 3,000 Austrian cavalry were on their way from Aleppo to check us. It was a rumor too good to be true, of really meeting mounted troops.

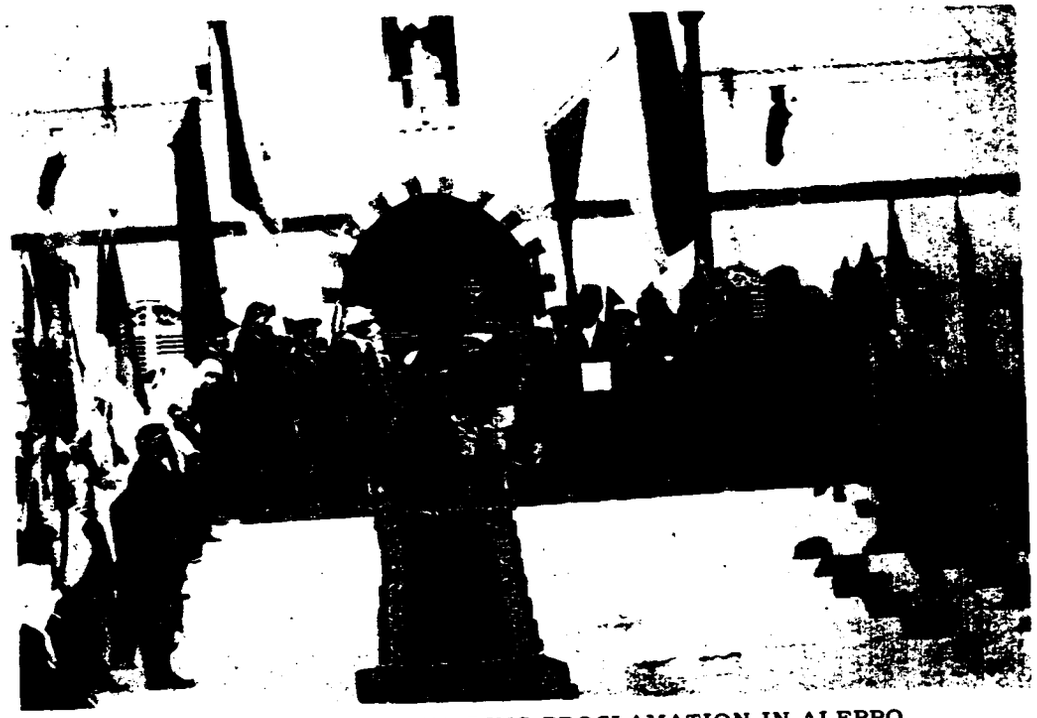
At dusk the march was continued. Twelve miles were covered before a halt came, and there we stayed till dawn arrived, when the Australians had turned out the Turks on the road. It was a bitterly cold night, with a cutting wind blowing off Mount Hermon, which towered up to the west of us. White patches of snow lay along the summit. Major M——— and I were at the rear of the regiment. Walking along the column and seeing the men lying asleep in dark groups, which looked like bundles on the road, with their horses' reins looped over an arm or a foot, was a very weird sight when one tried to realize it. In the distance one heard the rattle of machine-guns and once a gun fired, the flash lighting the sky.

As dawn broke we rode on, passing the remains of the Australians' flight—scattered enemy ammunition, wrecked German machine-guns behind stone "sangars," a broken field telephone, a few dead horses, and a few dead Turks. Two field guns were captured and about 180 prisoners, including some Germans. As they plodded back past us, an Australian grinned and said, "They didn't pretend to be so tired last night." We passed through Sasa at noon and just beyond here I saw our ambulances arriving to collect Turks and Germans wounded in the pursuit. The Australians had gone on to get astride the Beyreut-Damascus road to cut off any retreat from Damascus, and when we reached Kaukab, on the Southern outskirts of the city, we suddenly struck off toward Kiswe, to the east. I stayed with the division to lay out a camp for their return. It was a magnificent sight, seeing the division arriving. Everything was used to help the pursuit along, from German lorries and Austrian staff cars to Turkish ponies and donkeys. The regiment came back about 10 o'clock that night with a few prisoners. Its patrols had got in touch with the 4th Cavalry Division pursuing up the railway, which had started from the east of the Sea of Galilee at Deraa. The Turks were caught between the two converging columns and were being driven into the arms of the 14th Cavalry Brigade of our division, which had gone to Sahnaya to receive them. We could see the batteries of the 4th Division dropping shells among the Turks, who were no more than a rabble.

In Damascus itself enormous "dumps" were blowing up, with huge explosions and the flames leaping up hundreds of feet high, some spreading out mushroom-shaped from the bursting shells. At moments it was almost as light as day.



THE CITADEL AT ALEPPO



GENERAL ALLENBY READING PROCLAMATION IN ALEPPO



GOUYA

Winner of 1923 Eastern Endurance Test Ride. Owned by W. R. Brown, Berlin, N. H.

			Le Sancy	Athlentic
		Ex Voto (Thero)		Gem of Gems
	Velox (Anglo-Arab)		Gold Rod	Bend'or
				Penance
			Melse (Arab) (Foaled in Orient)	
Gouya, 1916 42-18% Anglo-Arab Demi Sang		Va-Longtemps (Anglo-Arab)		
			Valencia	Kheehan (Arab)
				Velleda (Anglo-Arab)
		Perchoir (demi sang)		
	Jenima (demi sang)			
		Orange (demi sang)	Ereille (demi sang)	

Bay Gelding foaled April 2, 1916, at St. Palais, arrond. Mauleon, depart. Bas Pyrennes, France. Purchased of the Baron Palermino at Pau. President Anglo-Arab Horse Club of France.

The corps and the Arab Army next morning entered Damascus at 6 a. m., amid the wildest enthusiasm. It was exactly like practice maneuvers on a bright, sunny day. I saw the corps staff standing on a knoll, directing operations. Heliographs flashed from one hill to another, and one saw the brigades and division moving across the Damascus Plain in the approved, elaborate, fighting formations. On the outskirts of the city a big electric power station and wireless were still smouldering. Broken shells and twisted pieces of metal, blown for hundreds of yards by the force of explosions, lay scattered over the ground everywhere. The streets and miles of the bazaars of the city were packed with cheering crowds. Every officer was clapped. Grapes, pomegranates, figs, food, and drinks were showered on the men. Yet amid all this scene the business of war was going on. I saw an Indian officer, with some men, smashing down the doors of a building to collect prisoners. Opposite this scene were shops carrying on their trade. A man was measuring out grain as it has been done for the last 2,000 years, "well pressed down, heaped up, and running over."

It was an old scene for the oldest city in the world to see a victorious army marching through the "street called Straight!" Parallel to us moved an unending stream of pitiable prisoners. There were so many that they were herding along like sheep, without guards, to a place of concentration. I saw them squatting in the marble courtyards of the mosques, where they had taken refuge, and often one saw on the pavements those dying of hunger or dead. I saw one stop at a shop and hold out his hands for food. The shop-keeper, without glancing up, sullenly shook his head, and one could see by the poor devil's expression, as he crawled on, that he had expected nothing else.

Just as I reached the center of the city, firing broke out behind us. It sounded as though we were being fired at from the windows of houses, and a bullet struck a shutter near. I saw the frightened Moslem women gliding away into the safety of side streets. Then the crowds broke into redoubled cheering, as the King of Hedjaz's troops came in sight, carrying their banner of red, green, yellow, black and white, representing the five great branches of Mohammedanism. They were gorgeously dressed in silks, riding at a slow canter through the street on their beautiful Arabs, swaying their bodies gracefully from side to side, singing, cheering, and firing their rifles off into the air.

Before the day was finished I rode through miles of the most lovely gardens and orchards I think I have ever seen. It was like a fairyland, after the desert, to see the pretty lanes and glens, the sheep and cattle in beautiful fields, clear little streams running everywhere, the men drying grapes in their vineyards and the women coming out of their villages and gardens, with children clinging shyly to their gowns, to give the men fruit, as they rode past. In this charming country an outpost line was held that night, and yesterday the whole brigade came back south of Damascus again to this pretty village, El Judiede, to rest. There was a state entry into the city yesterday. The Colonel, Besfor

and Boothe, in command of a composite squadron, representing the regiment, rode in the procession.

The Commander-in-Chief came to divisional headquarters today. Could any one have a more splendid or more human commander, who comes up with his advanced troops so quickly? He has issued the following order of the day:

> "I desire to convey to all ranks and all arms of the force under my command, my admiration and thanks for their great deeds of the past week, and my appreciation of their gallantry and determination, which have resulted in the total destruction of the VIIth and VIIIth Turkish armies opposed to us.
>
> "Such a complete victory has seldom been known in all the history of war.
>
> "(Signed) E. H. ALLENBY,
> *"General, C. in C.*
>
> "26TH SEPTEMBER, 1918."

Great news came today that Menin, in France, was taken, Lille outflanked, and that Bulgaria had unconditionally surrendered. It's difficult to believe we are really winning at last. It is rumored Turkey will probably give in within 48 hours. Anyway, we shall push on to Aleppo, and Constantinople if necessary. One wonders what will happen. We hear the Arabs have gotten Beirut.

BAALBEK, *October* 12.

I spent my birthday at Rayak, a few miles south of here. It is the junction of the railways from Beirut, Damascus, and Aleppo. The brigade, under the colonel, with the regiment leading, captured it on the evening of the 6th, in a thunderstorm, two days before my birthday. From the amount of firing that went on, one would have thought there was a battle, but it was only the Arabs welcoming us.

It had been rumored there were 3,000 Turks waiting for us. There were a few wandering disconsolately about the town and a few dead in the streets. Some were treacherously murdered by marauders and a great many killed by our bombing machines.

Our airplanes had done good work bombing the retreating Turks, but one saw evidences as well, everywhere along the roads from Damascus, of stragglers who had been robbed and left to die. Many had died of fatigue, no doubt. Some were still living, and these the ambulances collected. A huge ammunition dump in the station had blown up, making a chaos of everything in the vicinity. Unhappily, some of the men have got hurt clearing the shells off the road.

What a place to spend a birthday! Anyway, it dawned bright and sunny. I was just admiring it from my bivouac, when there was a whizz-whirr-bang and a crash! A German airplane had coolly circled round, dropped its bombs, and buzzed off again. Luckily, only three horses were blown sky high and

some one's bivouac riddled, the owner being absent at the psychological moment. Not quite the birthday greeting one would always choose, though. In the afternoon B———, M———, C———, and I explored the near-by airdrome, where there were thirty burnt Boche machines. They all had wooden landing wheels, just as their lorries have steel rims instead of the rubber tires the Boche is so short of. One of our own airplanes came down while we were there. The pilot wanted to loot a magneto. He told us he had come from Haifa. It seemed to us to be an appalling distance behind. The infantry, he told us, were marching up the coast by the Ladder of Tyre and Sidon to Beirut, and that marines had already landed there. The best news,



18th Lancers Resting by Sea of Galilee, September 27, 1918

though, was that the Flying Corps were going to bomb Homs, 60 miles beyond us, in retaliation for the morning's bombing.

We covered the fifty miles from Damascus to Rayak in two marches, bivouacking one night at a place called Khan Meizelun. B——— picked up one of our propaganda sheets there, written in Turkish, with pictures of prisoners being well treated by us. P———, who fought against fever till he fell off his horse, had to leave us here and go into hospital at Damascus.

Rayak to Baalbek, where we are now, is only a day's march. The armored cars took over 500 prisoners, who had surrendered to the inhabitants. The people had built triumphal arches, which were studiously ridden round, not out of modesty, mind you, but because the horses shied at them!

Tomorrow we are going on to Homs. Today we have been completing our grain supplies from huge Turkish government stores, which are found in every town and village. Often it is stored in the churches of the locality

from which it has been taken, while the inhabitants died of starvation. Like the expeditions of old, now that our communications are so long, we are living, to a certain extent, on the country.

Baalbek, the ancient Greek Heliopolis, was very lovely this evening, with the sun setting across the valley. Looking from the rising ground to the north of the town, where our camp is, one could see the great pillars and stupendous ruins of the sun-worshippers' temples, rising above the roofs of the houses.

To the west are the Lebanons—cold, forbidding—turned pink with deep mauve shadows brought out by the setting sun. At the foot of these great mountains lies the valley we are in, dotted with pretty little villages. It is one of the most fertile valleys in the world. The inhabitants tell us the hills are full of minerals, but under Turkish misrule they have never been developed.

OCTOBER 20.

A mail has caught up with us, as this is our fourth day of rest at Homs. The London *Morning Post* of the 21st and 23d are full of the first days of the advance. Splendid news from France—Zeebrugge, Lille, and Ostend fallen, and the King and Queen of the Belgians have gone back to the latter city!

What nonsense about peace! It can be nothing but unconditional surrender. How heart-breaking if a mess is made of things now. Let's push on and give them all we can! News has come, too, that the 21st Cavalry Regiment has reached Tripoli, on the coast.

As usual, we heard 10,000 Turks were waiting for us here; but again, as usual, there were only a few, smelling rather badly, lying dead around the station buildings, which had been bombed and burnt. We are following the railway now, doing easy marches, having crossed the water-shed between the Nahr Litani on the south and the Orontes on the north, following the valley of the latter river past Rible, or Riblah, as it is called in II Kings, where you remember, the nobles of Judah were brought to the King of Babylon and slain.

The Orontes, which is very deep and swift, flows past our camp here and eventually into the Mediterranean at Antioch. We go for a swim in it every morning.

The advance is becoming a sort of triumphal procession. Sumptuous banquets are prepared in the villages we pass through, and the officers of the brigade are invited *en masse* with the result that an indigestion epidemic has started. A healthy sign, though, because the 4th Cavalry Division, on the road behind us, is so reduced in strength by sickness that they are staying at Baalbek to reorganize and rest. Stomachs, in this country, are so easily affected! "Frazzles," looking as black as thunder, had to leave when at Baalbek, and even "Crumps," who had never been ill throughout the war, had to be sent down the day before we reached Homs.

The Australians are still at Damascus, over a hundred miles away, and, as time is of such importance, we are going to push on alone to Aleppo. Our

always well-informed intelligence officer makes it quite plain that Liman von Sanders is organizing 8,000 Turks and Germans to make a stand there; but, he adds, there is much movement, it seems, toward Constantinople. The Austrian consul has already left Aleppo. In fact, there seems to be such a panic that motor lorries are being used on the railways to get away. There's sure to be a fight, and I am back with a squadron again, which is the only place to be, if there is likely to be fighting. Could any one be luckier in such an advance?

Homs gave us a very enthusiastic welcome. The crowds lining the streets seemed to be more Eastern in appearance than those at Damascus. The scarlet fezzes of the men, the brightly colored silken shawls and scarfs of the women, in the dazzling white sunlight made a pretty scene. There seem to be two distinct classes among the Syrians; those seemingly very well-to-do, well dressed and well fed, while the others are in rags, thin and starved. One sees the latter lying in the streets of the narrow bazaars, covered with flies and sores. It is in the filthy villages we pass through, one sees this misery so much, especially among the children. The sights of war one does not mind so much; but the sight of little children, with pallid, shrunken faces, wrists and legs so thin that they look like the bone itself—little children on the verge of death from starvation because of misrule—makes one thankful to be alive to help turn out their oppressors. I believe the American College at Beirut, under Turkish restrictions, of course, has been able to alleviate their sufferings a great deal. "Tank Gawd you come," is an expression one hears very often.

One is struck by the number of inhabitants who can speak fair English. Yesterday B——— and I were exploring in the bazaar for silks and souvenirs, when we met a man who spoke with the rankest of American accents and insisted on calling every one "My dear." "My dear, if you'd bin here two days ago, you could have got oll the grain y' wanted." This was said to Major M——— who, being one of the finest soldiers of the Indian Army (he received a second bar to his D. S. O. a few weeks later), hardly appreciated the affectionate term. Relics like that of our Western civilization are rare, though, in such good bazaars as those of Homs.

A German airplane comes over to look at us every morning to see how far we have advanced. They've wisely learned not to drop bombs now; but yesterday morning it seems even the mere sight of a German machine irritated the Royal Air Force so much that two of our fighters went up and chased him. They were a playful couple, for they first shot a hole through his petrol tank, and then dropped Very lights on him, bringing him down this side of Hamah, and the last they saw was the pilot and observer being chased by Arabs, so that their end may be conjectured.

A signal message has come with the sad news that our Brigade Staff Captain, who was evacuated sick at Damascus, has died of malaria there. Malaria has been one of the worst enemies on the advance; but this division has been the luckiest so far, in escaping with a very light percentage.

ALEPPO, *October* 28.

Did you ever hear of Hamah? Hamath is its Biblical name. We entered it about midday on the 22d, having marched the morning before from Homs. A span of the old stone bridge over the Orontes at Er Rastan, where we bivouacked at night, was destroyed, but the engineers had it repaired when we crossed in the morning. Hamah is a very unhealthy place. The intelligence summary, circulated before we arrived, says the Turks never made any military use of it on their line of communications for this reason; but it is a very pretty town, with a large covered-in basaar, lying in the valley of the Orontes, surrounded by lovely gardens. There are five great Persian water-wheels, the largest water-wheels that I have even seen, used for irrigation. Their diameter must be fully 100 feet. The current of the river drives them around slowly, while small troughs on the outer rim of the wheel carry the water up, and as the trough turns over pours the water into a small canal, elevated on a high stone wall and leading to the fields. One can hear these enormous wheels creaking and groaning round on their huge axes two miles away. It seems almost a successful attempt at perpetual motion, for they have turned for hundreds of years and will probably go on turning for centuries more, before friction asserts itself enough to destroy them and, of course, providing the river does not run dry.

At Hamah we got maps of the country beyond us. They were good maps of 1:250,000, made up from reports of exploration parties, but a note at the bottom warned us that places were only marked approximately. From Hamah we pushed on for three days, covering over 50 miles—long marches for tired horses—through an undulating country, sometimes barren and rocky, sometimes cultivated, but dreary withal. The villages were scattered and the largest only a jumble of conical mud huts, looking in the distance something like a small British camp of bell tents. Water was scarce and the little found in the very deep wells in the villages was brackish—a problem when a division had to water.

On the first day we were interested in watching our bombing machines flying Aleppo-wards to "strafe" the Hun; but the last two days we seemed to have been left to our own devices, as though we were alone in this vast barren country, riding and plodding on and on, feeling more cut off from the civilized world with each mile. We moved in squadron column, the Colonel riding in front, the batteries only keeping to the road. It was a very fine sight to see the brigades moving across hte country, with their generals riding in front and the advanced guards spread out beyond us. It was rumored that 3,000 Turks were entrenched just south of Aleppo, and that an officer with a flag of truce had gone through the lines into the city, calling upon the Turkish commander to surrender. He had been most courteously treated, and returned with a polite note saying they were most grateful for the offer, but preferred to keep the city a little longer, at least to uphold Turkish honor; but all the Germans, whom we both cordially hate, had left the town for Constantinople.

On the morning of the 24th, just as we were reaching Khan Suman, sixteen miles south of Aleppo, one of our planes circled low over us, with the observer hanging half out of the machine, looking for the general, whom, when he had been spotted, he promptly bombed with a streamer. The general, who passed the news on, told us that a detachment of the Arab Army had forced its way into the city, reaching the eastern outskirts; the 15th Brigade had got astride the Alexandretta road to the north and northwest and the railway to the north was reported cut. The next day, which was yesterday, we expected to fight; so were off at dawn, moving round the west of the town, in battle array, till the main Alexandretta road was reached, a few miles outside Aleppo, where we halted. "Booby traps" in the town and mines on the road were continually blowing up? A little after noon the colonel, who had been to see the general, brought the news that the Turks' rear guards, numbering about 7,000, with some guns, had retired during the night to a distance of eight miles from us. The Mysore and Johdpur Lancers charged them before they left, but they were not strong enough to complete the victory. Colonels H———, R———, and A——— were killed. The only thing left to do was to bivouac in an old outpost line, which we did last night, but after a few days' rest I expect we shall go after those Turks and push on to Alexandretta. From September 19, the day the attack opened, to yesterday makes 39 days, and in that time we have ridden 500 miles. The Divisional General has sent this message round to us from General Allenby: *"Congratulations to you and all ranks of the 5th Cavalry Division on capture of Aleppo."*

ALEPPO, *October* 31.

In fifteen minutes the armistice concluded with Turkey goes into effect. An hour ago the news came. I was walking around stables, looking at all our poor horses' sore backs. The division has only lost 21 per cent of its horses. One feels that the horses who have taken part, and especially those who have died, are absolute heroes.

"Any volunteers to ride out and have a last fight before the hour?" asked Major M———, coming down the lines as the word "peace" was passed along the squadron lines. It will take some time to realize it, especially as our outposts are remaining out just the same. Yesterday a hostile plane came to bomb us, but he dropped all his bombs and turned tail when he saw our own machines leaving the ground. The 14th Cavalry Brigade have gone to occupy Muslimie, the junction of the Baghdad Railway, a few miles away. It used to be a great politician's pet scheme once to occupy it by landing from the coast, and the scheme led to the downfall of a great soldier who opposed it.

There are elaborate trenches on the slopes of the hills at Alexandretta, which in face of this is significant.

B———, who, I forgot to say, resigned the governorship of Acre to come and fight, catching us up at Baalbek, is among the immediate awards, getting the M. C. There are three altogether: "Crumps," who we hear is safe in Alexandria, and B———; Major M——— has a second bar to his D. S. O.

B——— and I have been into the town. The thing to do, it seems, is to have lunch at Baron's Hotel. It is really funny to sit at a table, and not squat on the ground, to eat one's food. Together we climbed up to the slopes of the old citadel, as the huge wrought iron doors over the drawbridge were closed. It is surrounded by enormously thick stone walls and bastioned towers, from one of which the King of Hedjaz's flag is flying, and on the ground we found the Turkish flag. The citadel is rather like Edinburgh Castle, rising above the town.

The bazaars of Aleppo are some of the finest in Asia. Can you imagine a long, narrow, cobble-stoned street, made dim by being covered over by a roof, only shafts of sunlight being able to stream in at intervals through the few holes in the roof? The cobbles are so slippery that it is difficult to walk; along the edge are the boxlike shops of the bazaar; and, above all, the indescribable odor of vegetables, spices, silks, and Eastern ware that one must smell to know. Scavenger dogs lie sprawling in the way. A Syrian, riding a tiny donkey, barges his way along, with a string of camels gaily decorated with beads. A magnificent leader, a bell tinkling from his neck, shoves through the crowd. This street is a moving swarm, a shouting, gesticulating crowd of all nationalities—Armenians, Circassians, Jews, Copts, even a German medical officer on parole, and some of our own Indian prisoners, taken in Mesopotamia and released on the capture of the town by us. There were 23 British and Indian altogether. They say that but for the Swiss consul here, who has done so much for them, many would have died of starvation. The Turks told them every day how far we had advanced, and not till the Germans began to leave the town could they believe it.

What irony it is! For in this town one sees the railway, the magnificent new station, and modern houses—all part of the German plan to open up the East and make a Mittel-Europe. All this German installation falls to the Allies, acclaimed by the inhabitants, who have turned against the builders.

The first mail we have had since marching from Homs reached us yesterday. My *Atlantic Monthly* for September reached me. One likes getting it anywhere, but doubly so in the middle of Syria.

Telegrams have passed between the Commander-in-Chief in France and the Divisional General. The division sent heartiest congratulations to the Field Marshal on his glorious victories in France and very much regretted their not being there to play their part, while the Commander-in-Chief and all ranks of the armies in France sent congratulations on the brilliant work of this Cavalry Division in Palestine, adding that they had never ceased to regret the departure of the splendid squadrons from France during the critical battles of the year there.

The gun on the citadel has just boomed 12 o'clock. The armistice with Turkey has begun. Now that the war is over on this front, let us hope we shall go back again to France soon.

ONE HUNDRED DOLLARS
FOR THE BEST PLAN!!!

A Prize Essay Contest

Prizes, $100.00—$60.00—$40.00

An enthusiastic Reserve Cavalry Officer has in mind the general idea of an actual competitive test in the "COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS." He wants to know what the Cavalry Service thinks is the best plan for holding such a test. So he is willing to pay $200.00 in order to ascertain the service view.

THE MISSION OF THIS PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST IS TO GET A PLAN TO TEST COMPETITIVELY COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS. SUBJECT OF ESSAY: "A PLAN FOR A TEST IN THE COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS."

CONDITIONS OF ESSAY CONTEST

By a "SMALL CAVALRY UNIT" is meant any unit not exceeding a Troop in size. The plan must be practicable. It is preferable under the Plan to permit all Cavalrymen and all Cavalry units in the continental United States to compete in the actual Test. Such Test need not take place at one location or at one time. The Test could take place in the year 1924 or extend over the next several years. The fact that the approval of the *War Department for the Test under the Plan would likely be necessary and desirable must be considered.*

Essays to be not over 2,000 words, submitted to Secretary of Association not later than February 20, 1924, in triplicate, typed, double-spaced, with two-inch margin all around. Illustrations may accompany the essay. Essays will be signed with nom de plume; nom de plume and writer's name and address to be enclosed in sealed separate envelope attached to manuscript. Author's name should not appear on manuscript or elsewhere, except in the sealed separate envelope. Essays will be judged by committee of Executive Council of Association. All members of U. S. Cavalry Association are eligible to submit essays. All manuscripts will be available for use, if desired, by Editor, and if not prize-winners and if printed in CAVALRY JOURNAL, will be paid for at usual rates. In case no essays suitable, in opinion of judges, are received, no prizes will be awarded. Judges will consider, in a lesser degree, also literary merit, interest, instructional value, original thought and research, presentation, readability, and attractiveness.

KEEP FIRMLY IN MIND THAT THE MISSION OF THIS PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST IS TO GET A PLAN TO TEST COMPETITIVELY COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS.

SOME SUGGESTIONS FROM THE DONOR OF THE PRIZES FOR THE ESSAY CONTEST.

In order to get a proper answer to the question of what is the best kind of Plan for testing aggressive COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS, it would seem appropriate to take into consideration:

1. Tactical knowledge and leadership in handling one's own unit or another unit; or

2. The personal qualities of the individual, as shown in, for example, cross-country riding, boxing, polo, fencing, big-game shooting, scouting, horse jumping, athletic team development, etc.; or

3. Both (1) and (2). It would appear that the Plan should cover the following points:

1. A name should be given the Test, perhaps the name of some American Cavalry leader made famous by his leadership of a small Cavalry unit.

2. *Eligibility of Competitors.*—All Cavalrymen of the Army of the United States might be permitted to enter, or, in the event that this is found to be impracticable, some limitations might be imposed.

3. Who will be the judges of the Test.

4. Conditions of the Test.

5. *Prizes.*—Should the prizes be given to individuals, to units, or to the leader and his unit in some proportion? What should be the disposition of the prize money by the winners? Should it be understood that the winner, if an individual, will use it for some purpose directly connected with his profession, such as purchase of mounts, a hunting trip, etc.?

The donor is not dogmatic in these details; these are merely the points which arise in his mind as to the Test, plans for which are to be submitted in the Prize Essay Contest.

NOTE.—Should a feasible plan be found for such a Test, it is possible that $1,000.00 will be available as prizes to be awarded competitors in leadership.

Olympia, 1923, and the VIII[E] Olympiade

BY

Major J. A. BARRY, 3d Cavalry

Late Director, Department of Horsemanship, The Cavalry School

LAST June I had the pleasure of attending the International Horse Show at Olympia, London. Since the United States hopes to be represented there in 1924, a brief description of the more important classes to which we are eligible may be of interest to some of the readers of the CAVALRY JOURNAL. There are two charger classes—heavy and light weight. "Horses must be unclocked, broken chargers, having passed school," and must be property of the Government or an officer. They are judged on conformation, action, gaits, and schooling. They are not required to jump. The school movements are very simple and elemental. Handiness is required and a "big" horse is essential. I should say that horses in the two classes averaged more than 16–1.

The important jumping classes are: The King George V Gold Challenge Cup, the Prince of Wales' Cup, the Daily Mail Cup, the Canadian Gold Challenge Cup, and the Connaught Challenge Trophy. The last named is open to British officers only. The King's Cup is open to the officers of all nations. Horses must be the property of an officer or his government. The cup must be won three times by the same rider.

Grey Fox, ridden by Captain de Laissardière, France, won, giving the Captain his second leg on the cup, he having won in 1920 on *Dignité.* A rider can ride only one horse. In the Prince of Wales' Cup the same conditions pertain as in the King's Cup, except that in the former a team of three officers compete. A nation cannot enter more than one team. Contestants ride the course individually. The team aggregating the least number of faults is the winner. Italy won.

The Daily Mail Cup is open to all—civilians and military. It is jumped in several sections, the winners in each section getting money prizes. The cup is competed for on the last night of the show by the ribbon winners in each section. The same horse may be entered in any or all sections. *Don Chisciotte,* ridden by Captain Count Bosarelli, Italy, won. The same horse was in Italy's Prince of Wales' Cup team and made the best score. He is an Irish horse, heavy, rather awkward, but truly a remarkable jumper. He went clean in the Daily Mail Cup, made a half fault in the Prince of Wales' Cup, and went clean in the Canadian Challenge Cup—a total of a half fault in four times over the course (32 jumps). On two occasions, having just made a short turn, he was "in bad" at a 4′–9″ jump, and each time he cleared it from a trot. He carried his head very low, almost at his knees. He was at all times beautifully ridden.

The Canadian Gold Challenge Cup was won by *Don Chisciotte.* This class is open to all officers; cup to be won twice by same officer. In all jumping

classes horses must carry at least 154 pounds. In all the above-named classes except the Daily Mail Cup the horses must be the property of an officer or his government. In all of these classes except the Prince of Wales' Cup (team event) the winner went clean, and he was the only horse to do so. A description of the ring and jumps will show that only a "real" jumper (and he must have luck) need apply.

The ring is 300 by 75 feet. A good bit of this area is taken up by decorations, so that the maneuvering area is about 275 by 65 feet. Two minutes is allowed to complete the course. Overtime disqualifies. The time is ample. The rider enters, takes track to right, and first jump is a wide brush with bar, on far side, 4′–6″; the second jump, in middle of short side (very short turn), is a post and rail, 3′–8″; then change hands and on diagonal take railroad ties (on stone wall), 4′–9″, and a style, 4′–6″; round the turn, change hands and on diagonal take a wattle gate 5 feet and triple bar, 4′–9″, with about a 9-foot spread; then round turn over the second jump again, and down long side over a 5-foot, four-barred white gait to exit. Slips (small laths about 18 inches long, that fit the jump) are placed on all jumps. If a horse gets over a jump without a refusal or run-out and without knocking down a "slip," his score is perfect. The knock-down of a slip is a half fault, the knock-down of the obstacle or any part of it is, in front, 4 faults; behind, 2 faults; first refusal is one; second, two faults, and third, out. It is a very difficult course, as evidenced by the fact that each of these classes had upwards of 75 entries and in none of them was there more than one clean performance.

This year England, France, Belgium, and Italy were represented. Next year, I was told that, in addition to those nations, Sweden, Norway, Switzerland, and the United States were expected. It may not be out of place here to note the various styles of jumping. The Italians, as usual, rode with a very short stirrup, and their saddles have knee rolls; the Belgians and French rode with about a "middle stirrup," the English with what we would call a very long one, under the circumstances. The Italians had beautiful hands and, in my opinion, are well nigh perfect over the jumps. I do think, however, that their lack of legs not infrequently results in refusals. However, "it's difficult to eat your cake and have it, too." More legs mean longer stirrups; longer stirrups increase the danger of "getting behind" your horse, and to be "behind" on this course is fatal.

The Belgians invariably made a very smooth and workmanlike performance. Their horses were quiet, possibly a little too quiet, and they rode well. I was told that the same riders on the same horses had won more than their share last spring at Rome and Nice. At Olympia their horses appeared a little stale and were not prominent. The French rode very vigorously, manifestly having more leg-drive than any other of the contestants. Their horses were not too calm and their champion, *Grey Fox,* went very fast, being vigorously ridden with hands, legs, and seat.

The English jump in a style that is peculiarly their own, and certainly with them it's not ineffective. They "bottle up" (as they say) their horses

until within an incredibly short distance of the jump, and then "pop" them over. Some of them are very expert and made excellent performances. Their style of jumping, properly done, appears to me very difficult. I was astounded to see them "dance" or "prance" a horse to within 30 feet of a 4'–9" triple bar, widely spread, and pop him over; and this with a very long stirrup. They employed the same tactics in the "outside" show at Richmond. In talking with one of their best riders, he explained to me that their aim was mainly directed at a handy horse, and that their style of jumping was consistent with that aim, in that it required a horse to jump "from his hocks," which, of course, induces haunch engagement and handiness. The English won the Prince of Wales' Cup in 1922 and were second in the same event this year.

Italy was represented by 7 officers and 18 horses; France by 4 or 5 officers and about 12 horses; Belgium by 3 officers and about 6 horses; England, being at home, had, of course, a very large representation.

As to the horses: I thought the English had by far "the class of the field." *Don Chisciotte* was easily the outstanding jumper, as shown, but it appeared to me that under his rider many other horses would have had a good chance of doing as well. In the Daily Mail Cup sections, which comprised, first and last, all the jumpers of the show, nearly every type of horse was represented. They ranged in height from a 14-2 pony to a 17-3 horse. There were harness horses and riding horses; long ones and short ones; heavy and light; blood and the lack of it, illustrating again the fact that they jump in all sizes, shapes, and kinds. I think one exception only must be made: I've yet to see a high-class jumper with crooked, weak hocks. The converse, of course, isn't true.

I was much impressed with the English and Irish horses. I've never before seen so many long-necked, big-boned durable horses of quality. In a class of about 60 police horses from the London force, one could have picked many excellent hunters. I inspected them for more than an hour and would, as Director of the Department of Horsemanship at our Cavalry School, have gladly allowed any Britisher to pick 50 from the 500 worked there in exchange for my pick of 50 from the 60 shown. The answer, of course, is blood. The English have been in the horse game a long time and *know* (without further experiment) the proper type of charger and hunter, and they know and use the sires that will produce them. I think by far the majority of horses which sufficiently impressed me to cause inquiry came from Ireland. I was told that the "late unpleasantness" there had materially decreased the colt crop, both in quantity and quality.

Olympia is the best-conducted and most perfectly organized show that I have ever attended. Classes are run off like clock-work; no confusion, excellent stabling, and the most conscientious judging. All conformation classes are judged "preliminarily" in the morning; there the judges *ride* saddle horses, charges, and hunters and get a good general idea how they will rate the horses in the actual judging. The show proper usually starts at 2 p. m. and

ends about 11 p. m., with a short intermission for dinner. The judges, in consequence of their morning's work, are able to handle classes very quickly. The Association of English Horse Shows requires that all jumping classes be judged as outlined above—that is, all jumps are provided with slips and the only faults are those *printed* in the catalog. There a contestant doesn't have to ride for *his* judge. "Performance only to count" means that judges may consider faults in jumping and nothing else. These faults are printed in the catalog and are for ticks, knock-downs, refusals, run-outs, and falls. You may jump your horse from a stand, walk, trot, gallop, or run; as long as he is under control and comes within the time limit, it matters not. The audience can and does keep accurate scores and can tie the ribbons just as well as the judges. This system has made jumping classes at Olympia great favorites. They are the most popular of all the classes, and the audience is very enthusiastic. With us, "performance only to count" means anything the judge made decide. Many of the officials at Olympia told me that their present system had absolutely eliminated all the protests and other disagreeable features formerly met in jumping classes. I am convinced that this system is partly responsible for the large number of high-class jumpers found in England and on the continent.

Hunter classes in England are not jumped. Hunters are judged on conformation, manners, action, gaits, and the ability to carry weight. This obviates the necessity of a "balance" between a well-shaped horse with a fault over the jumps and an inferior horse with a perfect jumping score.

At Olympia I was accorded every courtesy. All officials were anxious that I see all to be seen, and because of their courteous efforts on my behalf, I think I did.

While in England I visited the Cavalry School at Weedon and, although the students were off on a short vacation, I had the pleasure and profit of seeing their riding instructors and others of their Olympia entries at work, schooling their horses over jumps. The horses at Weedon were far superior in every way to the horses at our Cavalry School. It will take years for us to catch up to them, and the way to do it is just exactly what our Remount Service is attempting—good sires on big-boned, sound mares.

VIII[e] Olympiade

The Olympic games in 1924 will be held near Paris, at Colombes, in July. The "Equestrian Games," July 21-27, will have three classes, as follows:

1. *Championnat Equestre.*
2. *Concours Individuel de Dressage.*
3. *Concours d'Obstacles.*

In addition there will be international polo.

The United States will enter the first and third classes. It will not enter the second class. I have no information concerning polo arrangements.

The first class, "Equestrian Championship," is a three-day event, consisting

of three different phases, a phase being held each day. A rest day follows each phase. Each nation is represented by a team of four amateurs (not restricted to officers), the three highest scores to count.

The First Phase (first day) is "training," which in general consists of the various school movements up to, but excluding the "change of lead." The horse must be calm and amenable, yet spirited. This phase is held uot of doors, weather permitting, the area being 60 x 20 meters. Time, 8 minutes. Horses are shown individually.

The Second Phase (second day) is a test of the training, stamina, condition, and cross-country ability of the horses and the judgment of their riders. This phase has several subdivisions, as follows:

(*a*) 4⅜ miles on roads at 9 miles per hour.
(*b*) Over steeplechase course, 2½ miles at 20⅝ miles per hour.
(*c*) On roads 9⅜ miles at 9 miles per hour.
(*d*) Cross country, over natural obstacles, 5 miles at 16½ miles per hour. Obstacles to be not less than 3′–8″ in height nor more than 3′–10″. In breadth obstacles will not exceed 12 feet.
(*e*) A ride of 1½ miles (to the finish) at not less than 12½ miles per hour.

Overtime in any one of the subdivisions is penalized a half point for each five seconds. A credit of a half point is allowed for each five seconds under time on the steeplechase course and the cross-country ride. Ten points is maximum credit allowed on each of those rides. Penalties at obstacles on the steeplechase course and the cross-country ride are:

Fall of rider	10 points.
Fall of horse and rider	5 points.
First refusal or run-out	3 points.
Second refusal or run-out	6 points.
Third refusal or run-out	Elimination.

The Third Phase (third day), jumping in the stadium, 12 obstacles of various kinds, including ditches 10 feet wide with perpendicular sides, fences, sunken roads, water, etc.

A first glance may lead to the impression that this is not a difficult class, but I am sure that a careful study will convince any horseman that it will require a good horse to make a creditable performance throughout the course. The second day is difficult and will require a horse of blood. No cold-blooded horse can do it—I've seen them try. The total distance is only 22½ miles and the time allowed—2 hours, 2 minutes and 42 seconds—is very liberal for the distance, but the way the ride is divided makes it a good test for any fit, well-bred horse. All horses must carry 165 pounds.

Class III, "The Prize of Nations," is a team jumping contest in the stadium, each nation being represented by a team of four amateurs (not limited to officers), three highest scores to count; horses to carry 165 pounds. There are 16 obstacles; minimum height, 4′–2″; maximum, 4′–8″. Broad jumps will

not exceed 13 feet. (In 1920 all jumps were at maximum.) The course must be covered at the rate of 15 miles per hour, which will include stops, turns, etc. This class requires a jumper only; he may be of any breed, shape, or age, but he must be able to jump—high, broad, and clean.

Class II, which we will not enter, is an individual schooling class. We have no horses suitable therefor.

For *Class I* we would like to take over at least six horses. We are now working for this class with *Allahmande*, owned by Major George S. Patton; *Ky*, owned by Major E. W. Taulbee; *Tango Dance*, owned by Captain V. L. Padgett. They are all thoroughbred chestnut geldings and have given good accounts of themselves at Eastern shows, including the National. We have hopes of having loaned to the team for its use the chestnut thoroughbred gelding *Submersible;* also the roan mare *Aline*, at Fort Riley, and possibly *Rebecca*, from the same place, may also be available. Their suitability will be decided upon at "The National" in November.

Mr. O. W. Lehman, of Chicago, has most generously loaned his chestnut mare *Sure Fire*, an excellent jumper. We have hopes of making from her a utility horse, one that can go in either class. She now belongs in Class III. For Class III, in addition to *Sure Fire*, we are now working *Nigra*, a black Irish mare owned by the Cavalry School; *Dynamite*, a gray 10-year-old gelding, recently purchased; *Miss America*, a bay 5-year-old mare, recently purchased, and *Joffre*, a bay gelding developed and shown by the American forces on the Rhine.

We have just returned from a six-week trip, having made Rochester, Syracuse, Springfield, Brockton, and Bryn Mawr. The horses named above all made good records on the trip. We have received at this date (November 1) the Government horse *Cyrus*, which Troop C, 107th (Ohio) Cavalry, most unselfishly loaned to the team. The horse has won many ribbons as a jumper in the West, but has not been shown in the East. We will take him to the National, and there will get a line on his ability in competition with our other horses. We are most grateful to Captain Richmond, commanding Troop C, and to Colonel Lathrop, commanding the regiment, through whose good offices we obtained the horse. It is probable that *Jack Snipe, Babe Worthen,* and *Logical*, from the Cavalry School, will also be taken as jumpers.

There will probably be at least eight nations, and possibly more, competing in the Equestrian Games of 1924. The probability of the United States winning is not one whit more than the mathematical chances indicate, and then the winning nation must have the "breaks" of the game. Olympia is just as hard as the VIIIe Olympiade and probably a little harder.

Cavalry Advance Incidents

The following narrative consists of portions of an account entitled *3,000 Kilometers with the Guard Cavalry*, by Dr. Vogel, the division chaplain, translated by Colonel N. F. McClure, cavalry, with the assistance of Master-Sergeant Harry Bell, U. S. Army, retired. For the benefit of officers on duty at Fort Leavenworth and Fort Riley, it should be noted that Colonel McClure has deposited two copies of the complete translation of this material at the General Service Schools and the Cavalry School. This lively and interesting diary has sufficient repute to be used as one of the many sources for the newly published British "History of the Great War Based on Official Documents" (compiled by Brigadier-General J. E. Edmonds). Incidents of the advance through Belgium, taken from this same source, were published in the CAVALRY JOURNAL for April, 1923.

FROM THE FRENCH FRONTIER TO THE MARNE, 1914

AGAIN the march was forward, and only with difficulty could we be sure of our footing and of keeping closed up, because of the many damaged places in the road. Suddenly to the right of us there was firing. The General turned: "Officers' patrol from the Guard-Dragoon Brigade, report here." . . . "Go and find out where the shooting is coming from." The patrol rode on and came to the next town. It seemed to be free of the enemy, and on the street we saw no one but the inhabitants. From one of the first of the larger houses the flag of the Red Cross waved, but it was suddenly dropped from the window and fire was opened from the building. Two troopers tumbled down and the leader had his horse shot from under him. In this manner did the French fight against their German "Barbarians."

The division halted in the meanwhile at Landrecies; the male population of the town, as well as any suspected bicyclists that might be in any of the houses, were assembled for safe keeping in a shed and a guard placed over them, so as to secure ourselves against any attack that the Franctireures might make. In among those who were placed in the shed was an elderly gentleman of a better station in life. His wife was beside herself with fear, for she thought nothing else but that he was to be shot. A compassionate soul went to quiet and console her. "De not be afraid, madam, he will come back." In passing through the house the good Samaritan espied in a wall cupboard of the passageway a roasted chicken. Hunger hurts; it is painful, and the inner necessities had been, since yesterday morning in Binche, very scantily supplied; so he seized and carried his booty unostentatiously from the house and secured it in a pocket of his saddle-bags. Afterwards some of the officers appeared and desired, for money and good words, to eat and have breakfast with the old lady. She brought them bread, butter, milk, and then she recollected the cold chicken; so she hastened to put it before them. She opened the wall closet—but what a surprise! Only the outline could now be traced in the cold grease of the platter. At first she was speechless with astonishment, but then with real French temperament she burst forth: "Oh my God, he was here; he slept here, my little

rooster. Oh, gentlemen, I would have liked very much to have given you this rooster, but he is gone from the dish. Nothing left! Nothing left! Gone, gone, gone!"

In the afternoon there was still much riding to be done. In hamlets, woods, and fields we sought the enemy, but without result. At last, toward 5 o'clock, we encountered the enemy. Our advance guard squadron, Captain von Tiedemann commanding, came riding into the town of Marbais. English and French sharpshooters suddenly showed themselves before them and opened a heavy fire upon them from the village streets. To go through or to attack was not to be thought of. The Cuirassiers made for cover, therefore, and, for the first time since war began, dismounted to fight on foot. But now the bullets began to whistle over and about headquarters, which, with the Corps Headquarters, always followed immediately behind the advance guard. Fortunately, the enemy aimed too high, so that they hit the leaves of the road trees and the insulators of the telegraph poles. Had the enemy aimed correctly, the result would have been heavy losses among the headquarters group.

"Machine-guns to the front," rang out the command of the detachment commander, Captain von Munchhausen. Quickly they were brought to the fore, put into place and immediately the rattle of their shooting could be heard. The 1st Guard Uhlan Regiment to the north and the 3d Guard Uhlan to the south of the main highway were sent in. From all the houses there came heavy shooting, without our being able to see much of the enemy. In consequence of this the sharpshooters now went into action. Without any let up, our shells kept whining over us and into the town, and it soon started to burn in many places.

The remainder of the 1st Guard Cavalry Brigade was brought up and placed in readiness. It was later verified from prisoners taken that Marbais had been held by one French and two English battalions. Toward 6 o'clock the enemy fire had ceased and the division was able to enter the town.

As a lance corporal of the sanitary detachment of the Guard Riflemen Battalion went into the school to see if it was large enough to serve as a first-aid station, he found it chock full of Englishmen, who had slept there throughout the entire battle. "Hands up!" cried our corporal, and a colonel and 92 men were thereupon made prisoners.

In a shed were a supply of brand-new English overcoats. There was need for more room; so the overcoats flew out in a big arc, and whoever had hands grabbed one. The entire 1st Guard Dragoon Regiment of the Queen of Great Britain and Ireland, whose lord is the King of Great Britain and Ireland, shared in the partitioning out of those very practical coats—truly a very unwilling present of the great chief to his Prussian regiment. (NOTE.—The Queen of Great Britain and Ireland was honorary colonel of this Prussian regiment.)

In Thasuiers and in Thierrach the headquarters obtained quarters. The opportunities for sleep in the villages, crowded with troops, were indeed ex-

tremely limited, and those to eat were likewise small. One sat alone in a secluded sport, ate a little rooster quietly, disappeared into a stable, shoved the newly found Englishman's overcoat under his tired head, and slept the sleep of the just on France's inhospitable soil.

In Pursuit of the Enemy

That day (August 27) the 4th Squadron of the Guard-du-Corps Regiment sent the acting first sergeant, Passeik, with eight men as a patrol from Noyelles, near Thaisnières, in the direction of St. Quentin. A few kilometers in front of that city this patrol encountered French skirmishers and had to turn about. Shortly thereafter appeared a platoon of hostile cuirassiers to capture our troopers; but the latter charged the threefold superior force and killed six men and five horses, the remainder fleeing. In the subsequent pursuit another cuirassier was shot and one captured. Had Sergeant Passeik not immediately charged so intrepidly, he and his men would undoubtedly have been captured.

The subsequent march of the division led from La Groise, by way of Wassigny, Beauhaine, Sebancourt, and Chateau Beautroux, to Homblières, where we arrived toward 1 p. m. The cyclist company, under Captain von Kretschmann, was, as usual, in the lead; it drove hostile stragglers out of every village, it cleared every bridge of obstructions, and thus, in conjunction with the advance guard squadron, opened the road for the division, so as to enable it to get quickly to St. Quentin. We received information in the afternoon, south of the city, on the road leading to Itancourt, that British cavalry and artillery were at Urvillers. The Uhlans were sent straight to that place for attack, with two batteries and the machine-guns, while the Dragoons, going around to the east, advanced against the southern exit to block the road to the fleeing enemy and capture them.

In the meantime the Squadron von Mutius and the Battery von Zitzewitz halted on the main St. Quentin-Vendeuil road to prevent the French forces from coming out of the city. We plainly saw through field glasses the red breeches of individuals and squads running around the place and many escaping from it. A few shrapnel were sent in their direction; some were captured. "Well, how do you like the situation?" the squadron commander asked the prisoners. *"Eh bien, nous sommes sauvés,"* was the reply." For them the war, with all its dangers, was at an early end.

With the same task, the squadrons von Schlick and von Gayling stood at Neufville-St. Amand. In the afternoon hostile skirmishers from St. Quentin, about two battalions, deployed against these squadrons, and support appeared necessary. Lieutenant-Colonel von Kleist first started two squadrons, then three, of the Guard-du-Corps, two guns of the battery of Captain von Zitzewitz, and one platoon of cyclists against them. We soon heard a French trumpet-call, and every one thought, "Now it starts." The opponent showed remarkable skill in adapting himself to the terrain and working his way forward. A corporal of Jägers was the first to start the attack with his squad. Ensign

Solms joined immediately with 25 men of the Guard-du-Corps, and soon the entire squadron followed. Fighting dismounted, the men worked forward quickly by rushes, the French firing too high. When the enemy put in his reserves, Captain von Zitzewitz took them under a well-aimed fire. The first round struck a haystack. The French could be seen emerging like a swarm of bees from behind it and fleeing. The enemy was driven back with loud hurrahs. The engagement ended at 7 p. m., the hostile forces being completely dispersed. Dead and wounded covered the field, the latter begging earnestly not to be killed. When our officers handed them here and there a few cigarettes, their fear of death changed at once to joy, and they narrated everything concerning their life, and it appears that each of them had from six to eight children at home! It is a remarkable fact that during the entire action not a single French officer was seen. According to the statement of a prisoner, they belonged to the battalions of the French 10th Territorial Regiment; had been detrained at 11 a. m. that morning in St. Quentin, issued uniforms, and started at once against us to prevent any attempt on our part to leave the city and move southward. It was learned that the rifles of the killed and wounded, which were found about 150 meters from our skirmishers, had not been disturbed in the matter of setting the sights; that the sights had remained at 600 meters throughout the action, which probably accounted for our rapid success.

The officers' patrol of the 1st Guard Uhlans, under Lieutenant von Kalckstein, sent out to reconnoiter the crossings of the canal between the Somme and Oise, encountered strong forces occupying these crossings. Riding toward Castres, the patrol leader was seriously wounded. He directed his patrol to continue the reconnaissance, while he dragged himself to the road in the darkness, where he was found by the train of an infantry division the next morning and taken to a hospital.

By the next morning the division had reached, with the Uhlan Brigade in the advance guard, the little city of Ham, when it was reported that British forces were between there and Golancourt. The 2d and 4th Squadrons of the 1st Guard Uhlan Regiment, under Major von Edelsheim, and the 3d and 5th squadrons, under Colonel von Arnim, went ahead—the former around the left, the latter around the right, of Ham. The two squadrons under Colonel von Arnim had a protracted fire fight with two machine-guns in position near the exit of the village. Lieutenant Prince zu Bentheim and two Uhlans were wounded and three horses were killed. In the afternoon the enemy evacuated the village, and his attempt to take a position at Guiscard was prevented by a flank attack executed by the 1st Guard Dragoon Regiment.

Lieutenant von Arnim, of the 1st Guard Uhlans with a mounted patrol, was successful, by pretending to be British, in capturing a French auto-truck, with three chauffeurs, and bringing it back to the division, passing close to a French outpost on the Soissons road.

Another patrol, under Lieutenant von Treskow, was successful also in its mission to blow up the important Soissons-Paris Railroad. The patrol succeeded in getting to the railroad and interrupted it shortly before the arrival

of a train, so that further traffic on that line was impossible for the next 48 hours.

At 4 p. m. the patrol under Lieutenant Count Wedel, of the Squadron von Mutius, received French infantry fire from Crecy le Mont. The commander of the advance guard, Colonel von Bärensprung, had the advance guard and the squadron under Count Hahn advance dismounted against that village. The garrison was found to be weak, but the approach to the chateau was difficult, because the stone walls and barricaded windows protected the garrison. The Guard-du-Corps Regiment wanted to assault the chateau, and, in imagination, already divided the spoils of the wine-cellar, but higher headquarters did not approve the attack and directed the artillery to smoke the enemy out. This was done so thoroughly that our Guard-du-Corps lost its hopes of that champagne altogether.

For the next day orders arrived from Army Headquarters to advance southward via Soissons and reconnoiter toward Château-Thierry. At the assembly station of the division also appeared the reconnoitering squadrons of Captain von Levetsow, the patrol under Lieutenant Count Fugger, and the pioneer detachment, which had joined forces with the squadron on its return through that unsafe country. The light wireless station attached to the squadron had been able to locate the position of the division by wireless. The pioneers especially had long been waited for, because the question was of gaining a rapid crossing over the Aisne at Soissons and because we expected that the bridges would have been destroyed by the enemy. Under the orders of Lieutenant-Colonel von Tschirschky, a detachment was now started against the city to force a crossing. This detachment consisted of the 3d Guard Uhlan Regiment, two batteries, the Guard Jäger Battalion, and the pioneer detachment. The division followed at an interval of one hour, leaving a rear guard at Leuilly, under General Count von Rothkirch, consisting of the 1st Guard Uhlan Regiment, the Guard Rifle Battalion, the cyclist company of the Guard Jägers, and two guns.

Orders reached us at noon, and direct from Field Marshal von Bülow himself, to cross the Marne at Jaulgonne. The bridge there was still crowded with the hostile trains. The advance-guard squadron under Captain von Letzevow was sent against this crowd, the squadron being followed by one battery and the guard machine-gun battalion. The squadron dismounted to fight on foot and opened fire. The enemy was driven off before the bridge could be blown up. Towards 5 p. m. the Dragoons and Jägers charged a hostile machine-gun and a number of skirmishers which still defended the crossing. They soon had to give way also; the hills on the opposite bank were occupied, and the division crossed the river in the evening.

Our first sergeant (of reserve), Dorn, a Berlin merchant, was charged with our subsistence. He had lived in London prior to the war, but had gotten out of there in good time. And where it seemed that nothing was to be had, Dorn knew what to do; it is remarkable where he found things. Our Captain

once remarked, "He could certainly bring a roast out of a dung-heap." And when the higher officers had to be satisfied with straw, not so Dorn; he always had a feather bed. During that ride he confided in me how it was done; it was simple; he speculated with the compassionate hearts of the women! In fluent French he would narrate to the people in Belgium, and always in the kitchen, where the best ears are found for robber tales anyway: "Eight weeks ago I married the daughter of a division commander in Brussels. We both were so happy; then along comes this war; and now this poor Belgian girl sits all by herself in Berlin and I"—here he would drop a tear—"am compelled to fight against my dear wife's relatives." Deeply sympathizing with the hard fortune of the compatriot in Berlin and made tender-hearted by the attitude of the young married man, other tears would flow. "Oh, this terrible war. It is sad, very sad for us, for you, for the whole world." And then out would come all kinds of good things to eat—bread, eggs, ham, and whatever else had been hidden; the poor man was condoled with and fed and he took along whatever he could carry. And since arriving on French ground he tells the same rigmarole, with the difference that he had married his "little wife" in Paris—but the success was always the same.

After quite a search the next morning we found a bridge far downstream. Over lonely wood roads we then rode, via Carlepont and Cuts, to Blérancourt, an out-of-the-way place. There the horrors of war were not yet known; all inhabitants were in their houses and looked out curiously when we watered our thirsty horses at the ancient well on the small market place. The men purchased eatables, and whoever wanted it could have also the services of a hairdresser. To serve all the customers, the wife of the barber went along the row of men sitting down, lathering their faces, while the husband followed, shaving the men, and then the wife would come along again, collecting the pay. It was told afterward that many a man had allowed himself to be lathered, and that the barber had made a good bit of money. We then rode on and got as far as the village Trosly-Loire, where we had to await the end of the fighting between Coucy le Chateau and Leuilly. The horses were kept saddled throughout that night in bivouac and the men were always in readiness to mount at a moment's notice.

During the course of the next forenoon we reached Soissons. The old distillery was still burning and all electric wires were on the pavements of the streets. The city looked as if badly used. The colored French soldiers had not started their retreat without plundering. The inhabitants that remained were grateful and felt safe in the presence of the Germans. Through the narrow streets now rolled trains and regiments without end. The houses trembled as the heavy guns passed and the streets were clouded with the smoke from the passing field kitchens. We halted in the park in the outskirts, on the Boulevard Jeanne d'Arc, and I had an opportunity of visiting the fine cathedral, the historic place where once Chlodwig was baptized by the Bishop Remigius. Opposite the cathedral, on the whitewashed wall of a house, was written in

large letters in tar: "Regiment 31—1870-1914." Well, we were on the victorious trail of our forebears.

We started the next morning at 5 a. m. It was hot, on this ride from the Aisne to the Marne. At Fère en Tardenois we heard the enormous explosions with which the departing enemy blew up the bridges. That was our objective. In the village of Mont St. Père, above the city Château-Thierry, we encountered portions of the 5th Cavalry Division. We watered and fed the horses. A French camp has been at the bridge. The Division, in conjunction with the Guard Rifles, had opened a surprise fire on it from the hills on the Marne. The French evidently wanted to keep open for themselves the road across the bridge and therefore attacked with four battalions. But in vain! They fled in complete dissolution very soon and blew up the bridges behind them, though they were still full of Turcos.

We crossed the Marne at the Varennes railroad station. Then we halted in an orchard and ate; but this time meal was scant. Yesterday plenty, today what we can find. The cavalry should in war "live off the country"—provided it finds anything to live off of. Later on, our field train came through. I joined it and arrived at Division Headquarters in Crèzancy. It was a fine evening on the Marne. Vineyards as far as the eye could see. The evening light faded; the full moon threw its silver sheen over everything; entire Nature so fine, so warm, so peaceful; only the men therein so unpeaceful.

Major J. A. Barry's Horse Show Team at the Fall Shows

BY

First Lieutenant P. M. ROBINETT

WITH the best jumpers from the American forces in Germany, a few privately owned mounts, a few jumpers from the units stationed at Fort Myer, and one horse from the Cavalry School, as a nucleus, Major J. A. Barry began the training and selection of his mounts for the Olympic Games, to be held in July of 1924. This training began on July 15, 1923.

On September 1 the team, composed of Majors J. A. Barry, Sloan Doak, C. P. George, E. W. Taulbee and H. Kobbe, Captains A. P. Thayer, and V. L. Padgett, First Lieutenant P. M. Robinett, Sergeants John Currie, Q. M. C., and James Sullivan, 3d Cavalry, and Privates Louis Bonsa, 26th Infantry, and Arthur F. Gilday, 12th Infantry, departed for the fall horse shows, which were to prove the desirability of the mounts for the big task of next year. The horses were *Nigra*, Cavalry School; *Morgan* and *Hood*, War College Detachment; *Jeff* and *Prominent Tom*, General J. J. Pershing; *Allahmande*, Major G. S. Patton, Jr.; *Joffre, Black Boy, Cantigny, Donn, Irish Lad* and *Dick*,

American forces in Germany; *Tango Dance*, Captain V. L. Padgett; *Brown Boy*, First Lieutenant P. M. Robinett; *Dynamite*, purchased from Mr. Raymond Belmont, and *Buddy*, Remount Service of the Quartermaster Corps. In addition to the above, Troop F, 3d Cavalry, was showing *Red Wing, Red Bird, Squaw, Gaylord, Custer*, and *Geasmont*.. The winnings of these latter horses were important in a number of shows. At Bryn Mawr Major E. W. Taulbee's *Ky*. joined the stable.

The success of the trip may best be judged by considering the list of winnings which follow. At the Rochester (N. Y.) Exposition Horse Show, the team garnered 8 firsts, 8 seconds, 7 thirds, 1 fourth, and 1 ninth. At the New York State Fair Horse Show, Syracuse, N. Y., 17 firsts, 17 seconds, 10 thirds, and 15 fourths were captured. The team won at the Eastern States Exposition Horse Show, Springfield, Mass., 12 firsts, 9 seconds, 7 thirds, 8 fourths, and 6 fifths. In the Bryn Mawr (Pa.) Horse Show, 8 firsts, 5 seconds, 9 thirds, and 7 fourths fell to the lot of the Army. Again, at the Brockton (Mass.) Fair Horse Show the team did the usual and won 14 firsts, 19 seconds, 12 thirds, 11 fourths, and 4 fifths, and 3 sixths.

The Army at the National Horse Show

BY

Captain V. L. PADGETT, 3d Cavalry

THERE was a greater number of army entries this year than ever before at the National Horse Show which began in New York City on November 10th and lasted through the 17th. Competition between officers in the military classes was very keen. The army entries in the open classes did exceptionally well.

The army was represented in the following general classes: Polo Mounts, Polo Brood Mares, Qualified Hunters, Green Hunters, Suitable to become Hunters, Open Jumping, Remounts, Troopers' Mounts, Officers' Chargers, Officers' Jumping, Artillery Teams, and Horse and Mule Pulling Contests. Exhibitions were given daily by a rough riding team from Troop F, 3d Cavalry.

The Fort Myer team, of which Major Barry was the head, consisted of Majors Sloan Doak, E. W. Taulbee, C. P. George, Captain V. L. Padgett, Lieutenants P. M. Robinett and M. E. Jones. Major Brown's Fort Riley team was composed of Captains F. C. Waters, O. I. Holman, J. T. Duke, H. L. Earnest, C. C. Smith, and Lieutenant F. L. Carr. West Point sent Captains V. V. Tayfor C. De Witt and Lieutenant H. C. Mewshaw. Other military entries included Colonel Louis B. Ballantyne, Brigadier General Mortimer W. Bryant, Squadron A (N. Y. N. G.) and Headquarters Troop, 51st Cavalry, all of whom put up excellent performances.

In the Artillery classes there was one gun team from the 7th Field Artil-

lery, six teams from the 10th Field Artillery and one team each from West Point and the 16th Field Artillery.

Following are the ribbon winners:

POLO CLASSES

Polo Pony Mares; 8 entries; *Ella* (George) 1st; *Mescal* (Mewshaw), 3d. Polo Mounts (up to carrying 190 pounds); 6 entries; *Ella* (George), 1st; *School Boy* (Taylor), 4th. Polo Mounts (lightweight); 3 entries; *Madras* (Mewshaw), 1st; *Marvel* (Taylor), 2d; *Vampire* (De Witt), 3d. Polo Mounts (heavyweight); 4 entries; *Ella* (George), 1st; *School Boy* (Taylor), 2d.

OPEN JUMPING CLASSES

Pair of Hunters or Jumpers; 15 entries; *Cyrus* (Taulbee) and *Miss America* (Robinett), 4th. Three Hunters or Jumpers; 13 entries; *Nigra* (Padgett), *Cyrus* (Taulbee), *Miss America* (Robinett), 1st; *Morgan* (George), *Joffre* (Doak), *Dynamite* (Robinett), 3d; *John Bunny* (Smith), *Jack Snipe* (Waters), *Babe Wartham* (Brown), 4th. Jumping (5 feet); 21 entries; *Nigra* (Barry), 1st; *Jack Snipe* (Waters), 4th. The Commodore Cup (triple bars); 29 entries; *Morgan* (George), 1st; *Proctor* (Holman), 3d; *Jack Snipe* (Waters), 4th. Touch and Out; 59 entries; *Miss America* (Barry), 3d; *Jack Snipe* (Waters), 4th.

MILITARY CLASSES (ENLISTED MEN)

Cavalry Remount (open); 8 entries; *Cantigny* (Sergeant Smith, Fort Myer), 1st; *Brett* (Captain Pulley, West Point), 3d; *Golden Dick* (Squadron A), 4th. Troopers' Mount; 8 entries; *Brett* (Captain Pulley), 2d; *Cantigny* (Sergeant Smith), 3d. Troopers' Mount (sweepstakes); 9 entries; *Brett* (Captain Pulley), 2d; *Cantigny* (Sergeant Smith), 3d; *Golden Dick* (Squadron A), 4th.

MILITARY CLASSES (OFFICERS')

Charger (Colonel Frank B. Keech Cup); 18 entries; *Ky* (Taulbee), 1st; *Allahmande* (Barry), 2d; *Gaylord* (Robinett), 3d; *Tango Dance* (Padgett), 4th. Charger (Bowman Challenge Cup); 11 entries; *Ky* (Taulbee), 1st; *Allahmande* (Barry), 2d. Charger (Overseas Cup); 18 entries; *Proctor* (Holman), 1st; *Tango Dance* (Padgett), 2d; *Ky* (Taulbee), 3d; *Allahmande* (Barry), 4th. Charger (Squadron A Cup); 12 entries; *Allahmande* (Barry and Doak), 1st; *Tango Dance* (Padgett), 2d. Jumping; 45 entries; *Miss America* (Barry), 1st; *Squaw* (George), 2d; *Jeff* (Robinett), 3d; *Pleasanton* (De Witt), 4th. Jumping in Pairs; 11 entries; *Joffre* (Doak), *Tango Dance* (Padgett), 1st; *Raven* (Carr), *Babe Wartham* (Brown), 2d; *Cyrus* (Taulbee), *Miss America* (Robinett), 3d; *Moses* (Brown), *Tarry Not* (Carr), 4th. Jumping (Beresford Challenge Cup); 40 entries; *Miss America* (Barry), 1st; *Jeff* (Robinett), 2d.

NOTE.—Fort Myer and West Point teams had no entries in the qualified hunter classes and Fort Riley had no entries in the polo and artillery classes.

Due to an injury received when *Allahmande* fell during the first phase of the Squadron A Challenge Cup, Major Barry was unable to ride in the remainder of the classes.

Total ribbons won by teams: Fort Myer, 16 firsts, 8 seconds, 11 thirds, 4 fourths, 1 fifth; total, 40. Fort Riley, 1 first, 1 second, 2 thirds, 6 fourths; total, 10. West Point, 2 firsts, 7 seconds, 3 thirds, 3 fourths; total, 15. 7th Field Artillery, 2 thirds. 105th Field Artillery, 2 fourths. Squadron A, 2 fourths.

The Royal Winter Fair of Canada

BY

Captain V. L. PADGETT, 3d Cavalry

UPON the close of the National Horse Show a riding team from Fort Myer, under Major J. A. Barry, went to the horse show at Toronto. The members of the team were Majors J. A. Barry, Sloan Doak, and E. W. Taulbee, Captain V. L. Padgett, Lieutenants P. M. Robinett and F. L. Carr. In addition to the above, Captain F. H. Bontecin, O. R. C., of Port Chester, N. Y., who was at the show as a civilian, rode in uniform in all the military classes. This show lasted from November 20 to 28 (inclusive), during which time the American team was cordially received by the civilians of Toronto and by the officers of the Canadian Royal Dragoons. The competition in the jumping and hunter classes was of the highest quality, over a very sporty course of jumps. The number of entries in the different classes was very large.

Following are the Army winners in the different classes. Only three places were awarded, except in the jumping stakes.

Best Trained Saddle Horse; 16 entries; *Ky* (Taulbee), 3d place.

Officers' Charger; 19 entries; *Tango Dance* (Padgett), 2d place.

Officers' Jumping; 54 entries; *Cyrus* (Taulbee), 2d place; *Bally MacShane* (Bontecin), 3d place.

Corinthian Class (Hunter); 60 entries; *Tango Dance* (Padgett), 2d place.

Pen Jump; 45 entries; *Jack Snipe* (Carr), 2d place.

Open Jumping; 83 entries; *Nigra* (Padgett), 1st place; *Miss America* (Robinett), 3d place.

Jumping Stakes; 49 entries; *Miss America* (Robinett), 1st place; *Nigra* (Padgett), 3d place.

Jumping Stakes (5-foot class); 35 entries; *Nigra* (Padgett), 1st place; *Miss America* (Robinett), 4th place.

Jumping Stakes (Touch and Out); 45 entries; *Nigra* (Padgett), 2d place; *Miss America* (Carr), 3d place.

The performances of *Miss America* and *Nigra* in the four open jumping classes were unusually consistent. *Nigra* tied for first place in the two classes in which she did not win. *Miss America* tied for first place in the Touch and Out class. The following horses competed in the different classes, but did not place: *Proctor, Allahmande, Joffre, Dynamite, Jeff, Morgan,* and *Cantigny.*

Due to an injury received at the National Show, Major Barry did not ride at this show.

THE WILLIAM BOERUM WETMORE BEQUEST

THE CAVALRY ASSOCIATION, by the terms of the will of Mr. Wetmore, is left a bequest of $2,500. This former officer was born in England and was graduated from the U. S. Military Academy in 1872. He raised, in Philadelphia, Pa., and vicinity, the "Wetmore Regiment of Pennsylvania Volunteers" for the Spanish-American war, but finally had to disband it, as preference was given to the National Guard, who filled up the entire quota of the State. On the outbreak of the war with Spain he offered his services to the government for any position to which they might choose to assign him. Friends wanted him to raise his regiment from Rhode Island and Fall River, but, finding the State's quota full, he decided to raise one in Pennsylvania. He opened a recruiting office, all his men being physically examined, and had a regiment ready for the war, but unfortunately Pennsylvania's quota was at this time also full, and, finding it impossible to get to the front, he got as many men as possible to join vacancies in other Pennsylvania regiments, even sending two companies to fill up one that was short. He then offered to take command of a battalion of troops in one regiment and put his men in, and it was accepted; but it was found the State's quota was full. He was a member of U. S. Military Service Institute; U. S. Naval Institute; U. S. Cavalry Association; American Numismatic Society, New York; National Academy of Design, New York; American Geographical Museum of Art, New York; Chamber of Commerce, New York; American Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York; New England Society, New York; Order of the Cincinnati; Order of Society of War of 1812; Naval Order of the United States; Order of Veterans of Indian Wars of the United States.

This money is a very welcome addition to the funds of the Association. Like the other funds, it will be used to further in general the aims of our body. All cavalrymen might keep this act in mind. If such a practice could be built up by our members, means would always be available for support for the Olympic team, polo, endurance rides, and the many worthy ends which all cavalrymen like so much to see consummated.

Editorial Comment

KEEPING THE BUSHEL OVER THE LIGHT

WE WERE VERY RECENTLY holding an important series of Cavalry Division Maneuvres "out in the sticks." They were given a little publicity in the *Boston Transcript,* and no doubt have been featured in some of the papers of the Southwest, with stray notices appearing elsewhere; but it can be taken for granted that the country as a whole has been blissfully ignorant of the warfare that was waged last fall along the Rio Grande, the scene of military operations that in 1847-8 kept the press of the country full of references to chaparral and alkali dust, pretty *mestizos* and proud *caballeros.*

A month earlier the Quantico Marine Brigade fought over the battles of Stonewall Jackson's Valley. And everybody knew what was doing.

It is almost superfluous to point out the desirability of directing public attention to our military activities. They are not our concern alone. The Regular Army, whose organizations were engaged in these maneuvers, is now clearly recognized as merely the nucleus of national defense. Our war army of the future is the great body of citizenry—organized reserves as far as they will go, and then plain Mr. Jones and Mr. Johnson—millions of him. Plain Mr. Citizen (to say nothing of the Reserve Officer and the National Guardsman) is the man we need to keep interested and informed about our military activities. How many of him are aware of even the mere fact that the only mobilized Cavalry Division in the country recently staged a maneuver covering several weeks and a thousand miles or so? And it is safe to assume that even the infrequent individual who may have known that the mimic warfare on the border was going on was quite unable to obtain any slightest information about it.

War Department makes fine speeches that have for their purpose to educate the people of the country to our need for national defense and to appreciate the significance and general scope of our National Defense plans and our Army of the United States. Probably most of them appeal to the average Mr. Citizen as so much governmental propaganda, to be let out of the other ear as fast as possible.

Do we make the most of our material for appeal? It should not be difficult to arouse a thrill with a description of hard, rapid marches through desolate waste lands, with sharp patrol encounters, cavalry combats, feats of wireless, difficult supply stunts. We hope, and do not doubt, that some motion-picture companies have been enabled to "get this stuff," so that the scenes of this maneuver will be shown before the eyes of spectators from Maine to California. But we were disappointed in the newspaper publicity.

Is it out of place to suggest that every organization should follow the example of the 6th Cavalry (whose action in this respect has come particu-

larly to our attention) and designate a live, earnest, enthusiastic "publicity agent?" And that this officer be impressed with the need to find out what the newspapers *will* print and *want* to print, and then furnish them with good, live, cavalry stuff? The newspaper man's plaint, everywhere, is: We do not "tip him off". We don't send him the story. This should be easy to remedy. Organise your publicity, O you little troops, and you squadrons and regiments; and oh, you Division, tell your story and chant your numbers!

SOME OBSERVATIONS ON THE HORSE SITUATION AND THE CAVALRY OFFICER

"THE POWER OF AN ARMY as a striking weapon depends on its mobility. Mobility is largely dependent on suitability and fitness of animals for army work." This quotation from a statement by Field Marshal Sir Douglas Haig, appearing in Captain Sidney Galtrey's book, "The Horse and the War," applies with particular emphasis to the cavalry arm of the service.

A cavalry command has two assets—fire power and mobility. No cavalry commander can ever be satisfied with inferior weapons and defective ammunition; no more can he, nor will he, tolerate inefficiency in the care and use of these weapons. By the same token, he can never be satisfied with inferior mounts, nor can he tolerate inefficiency and carelessness in the care and use of such mounts as are furnished him. Mounted officers have but little to do with the class of mounts issued to them. They have all to do, however, with their care, their condition, and their use. A mediocre mount, properly cared for and judiciously use, will perform fair service, whereas a splendid horse in the hands of a careless and ignorant master, will soon lose his ability to serve and will become a casualty.

The Remount Service is charged with the responsibility of furnishing suitable animals for the mounted service. As to draft horses and mules, there is no difficulty in obtaining an abundant supply of fairly high-class animals. There is no reason why the army's supply of these should not be of the very highest order. On the other hand, to secure a sufficient number of high-class riding horses, to meet even the peace-time requirements of the service, presents a very difficult problem. Quoting again from Captain Galtrey's book, the following is the contribution of Brigadier-General T. R. L. Bate, who held a high position with the British Remount Commission in America: "Experts have known for some time, and our purchasing activities have proved beyond contention, that the cavalry horse, as we know him in England, does not exist in North America in any numbers which are appreciable for war requirements. What has been bought as cavalry are the best that can be procured, but that is all." The experiences of our own purchasing officers, in both peace and war, furnish abundant proof of the accuracy of General Bate's observation. There are many natural causes for this scarcity of good riding horses.

In early colonial times, when even dirt roads were scarce, the trails and paths were but poorly adapted to use by the wheeled transport; consequently

there was a demand for riding horses. As the population increased and as roads were improved, the use of carriages became more general, with a consequent demand for the harness horse. This demand for the harness horse continued to grow with the development of the country, until within our own generation the motor made its advent. As the motor was perfected and as its use became more general, there came a decrease in the demand for the light horse that was at that time being produced in such large numbers.

The riding horse has been a pioneer—a breaker and maker of trails, so to speak. Behind him have come improved roads, with wheel transport and harness horses. In all frontier countries he is the animal *par excellence*. In those parts of our western country that today are undeveloped from an agricultural point of view, the riding horse still holds sway, although in many parts his type, action, and endurance have deteriorated through unscientific breeding methods aimed at increasing his size and his bone.

One might ask, What is being done to improve the light-horse situation in this country today? The answer is that the Government has undertaken to encourage the breeding of a type that will meet the present-day and future demands by placing throughout the country pure-bred stallions of riding type. The method followed is the same as that which produced the Waler, one of the outstanding successes of the war. The Government's breeding program is still in its very infancy and will require a number of years to produce definite, tangible results. However, it is on the right track and must ultimately have such an effect on the light horses of the country that our cavalry of the future can be mounted on horses suitable and well adapted for the work required of them.

Mounted officers and others who are interested in this work can assist by taking care of what is furnished them and by constructive criticism, as well as by demanding a bit of blood in their own private mounts. This is often difficult and expensive to obtain, yet by refusing to be satisfied with a common, mediocre mount, and by being constantly on the lookout for a likely prospect, the average officer can keep himself very well mounted. By insisting on breeding, conformation, and good temperament, the mounted officer helps to create a demand for that type. In these days of economy, it is difficult to secure a sufficient appropriation to keep the tactical organizations up to anything like a peace-time allowance in suitable animals. Hence the mounted officer can assist by refusing to buy Government horses and by going into the open market for his own mounts.

Why do we seek type and conformation? Because it has been the universal experience of horse-users that those possessing type and conformation are more likely to prove useful. But this is not always the case. Many horses that are good to look at are poor ones to use. The true value of a horse is more or less intangible. By weighing a steer, one can arrive at a close approximation of his value. With a horse, it is different, for here one is judging character as well as size, shape, and make.

How do we judge character in mankind? We judge man by his countenance, by the shape and make of his face, and by his actions. By the same outward signs of inner character, one forms his opinion of the horse, provided, of course, he does not have the opportunity for a thorough trial. But even a trial does not always prove the intelligence and character of a horse. In the hands of some riders, even a fine, intelligent horse will behave like a fool, because it is said that horses sometimes take on the qualities of their users. A trial is not always possible, however. Assume we are selecting a polo prospect. We find one of splendid type; his breeding and appearance furnish ample indication of his speed and ability. We mount him and find that his mouth is unspoiled, and we assume that he is one that will surely make. We spend a year in his training and development, only to find upon putting him in a game that he is too cowardly to meet another horse.

How might we have found this out before we had spent so much time and energy in his training? From several such experiences, the writer has the following to offer, not as definite conclusions but merely as observations: He bought two geldings, very much alike and possessing, so far as he could see at the time, all the essential qualities of very high-class polo ponies. Both turned out to be cowards, both had effeminate heads, and when turned out with other horses permitted themselves to be bullied by any horse in the herd. They have never been seen to attack another horse. These two ponies were never struck by mallets and had received no injuries from other ponies in playing. They were cowardly from the very beginning. It is an old saying that one swallow does not make a summer, but yet the writer cannot help but wonder if he should not have foreseen this from the shape of the heads and from their actions when turned out with other horses. No doubt there are many other indications of the presence or the lack of courage, which is really an essential quality in an officer's mount, be he charger, hunter, or polo pony. The experiences and observations of cavalry officers on this line would be very interesting.

Let us, then, remember that a supply of proper riding horses will accrue when there is a definite demand for them and not before. Let every cavalryman in buying his own private mount help to make this demand, and then let each cavalryman be a missionary, a zealot—a salesman, if you will—for the breeder and dealer in good-blooded riding horses.

THE CAVALRY FUND

IT IS VERY GRATIFYING to be able to say that the Cavalry Fund is still growing, and that the movement is gaining impetus. Since the last issue the following contributions have come in: 6th Cavalry, $300; 12th Cavalry, $64; 4th Cavalry, $49; 11th Cavalry, $100; 13th Cavalry, $75, and 14th Cavalry, $40, as well as several individual contributions amounting to $8. These amounts are for general purposes and are in some cases in addition to sums sent in for the Olympic team and for the Army polo team.

Topics of the Day

INCREASE IN USE OF THE HORSE

REPORTS FROM THE PRINCIPAL live-stock markets of the country, just made public by the United States Department of Agriculture, show that there has been a third more horses and mules sold during the first eight months of 1923 than were sold in the same period of the previous year. The figures, to be exact, are: total sales, 319,392, an increase of 80,341 head, or 33.6 per cent. Furthermore, sales for this period in 1922 increased 16.3 per cent over the corresponding figure of 1921.

Where do these horses come from? From farms and ranches of North and South Dakota, Nebraska, Kansas, Oklahoma, Iowa, Missouri, Illinois, Indiana, and Ohio chiefly, with a considerable number from Montana, Wyoming, Colorado and Texas, and a few from States farther west.

Where do they go? To farms in Southern and Eastern States, into cities, logging camps, and mines. Cities and farms take most of them. City horse-population statistics are surprising to those who are accustomed to seeing the great moving mass of automobiles in down-town and residential sections, but do not visit the wharves, freight stations, and warehouse districts, where the great bulk of any city's commercial hauling is concentrated. Here horses are supreme.

Dealers complain that there are not enough good, heavy draft horses, suitable for city hauling, coming into the markets. Surveys of the Horse Association of America show that the quality of commercial horses is improving. Transportation users have learned that a good horse will give better service and will last longer than a cheaper one. Furthermore, they say that quality horses have a decided advertising value.

Glenn M. Averill, President of Cedar Rapids National Bank, Cedar Rapids, Iowa, in a recent interview with a representative of the Horse Association of America, said:

> "Fewer tractors are in use in this part of Iowa than five years ago, and the majority of farmers around here, who do own them, now use them solely for belt power. *Tractors are not a profitable investment for any farmers, for they do not replace any horses;* and I know whereof I speak, because I own an 800-acre farm about seven miles from Cedar Rapids, live on the farm myself, and it is operated under my personal direction.
>
> "I have kept an exact account on my farm, precisely as in other businesses in which I am interested, and while I have owned two tractors, I have found them less reliable and much more expensive than horses in all field-work, and my farmer is of the same opinion—in fact, declares that if it were not for silo-filling, threshing, and other belt-power work, he would not have one on the farm. Even as it is, we have discontinued entirely the use of tractors in our field operations.

"Motor trucks are unwise for farm use. With care in planning farm-work, arrangements can easily be made to do virtually all the road hauling with teams when they are not needed in the field; and here again I speak from experience, for *I have two motor trucks, which were put into use with the idea that sufficient saving might be effected to justify their cost. No such saving has resulted.*

"I would not buy another tractor for field-work, nor motor truck for farm use; and I am advising all farmers who ask my counsel accordingly.

"I know of a place where 198 tractors are stored which were made to sell at $1,500 each, and we recently refused to lend $100 apiece on them.

"Furthermore, I am of the opinion that most of the peddling in towns—by which I mean hauling, which involves frequent stops to pick up or deliver merchandise—should be handled with horses, and I am pleased to notice that there is an increase in horses used in Cedar Rapids in such work."

MANEUVERS OF LARGE, FAST-MOVING COMPOSITE UNITS

FURTHER INTERESTING EXPERIMENTS in Italy are taking place which are of supreme importance to all cavalry. The first rapid-moving unit was tested out last year in the Friuli district. Results were so interesting that the Ministry of War decided to repeat the program this year on a large scale.

Under the direction and supervision of General Grazioli, a further test of rapid-moving units with a high degree of offensive power is being made at the present time in the zone between the Mella and the Adige rivers, about thirty miles northwest of Verona, in the neighborhood of the old boundary line. Here the terrain is flat in the southern part and crossed by many rivers, while in the northern part there are hills and woods.

The present Rapid-Moving Division consists of two cavalry brigades composed of four cavalry regiments mounted, one cavalry regiment motor-transported, four groups of artillery, of which two are motorized and two horse-drawn; one regiment of Bersaglieri cyclists, divided into the battalions; one section of armored cars, two squadrons of reconnaissance airplanes, and one section of engineers.

The maneuvers, which will last about two weeks, are divided into two periods, the first devoted to the training of said rapid-moving unit while in the second a complete infantry division and airplanes of all types will take part. The infantry division will work both together and against the rapid-moving unit. The purpose of the maneuver is to study the practical functioning of the new unit, special attention being given to the results obtained with the motor trucks for troop transportation.

Four hundred men and officers of the National Safety Militia have been detailed to take part in these maneuvers.

CHIEF OF CAVALRY'S RIFLE TEAM

THE PLACE OF THE Tenth Cavalry on this team was won by Private William A. Clayton, Troop G, 10th Cavalry.

SUBSCRIPTIONS

THE ASSOCIATION has made very good progress in some directions during the past year in the matter of extending its membership. In this period the number of Reserve officers has risen from 160 to 265, and in the National Guard the advance has been from 135 to 185. The total number of Reserve and National Guard cavalry officers is about 2,500 and 600 respectively. These gains have been scored mainly by the cordial and unceasing co-operation of the Regular officers on duty with these components, backed up in most cases by the commanding officers of the units. Among Regular Army officers, however, there has been a loss of 100, and the number of members has dropped in this class from 850 to 750. There are at this time about 1,025 Regular cavalry officers. In spite of this loss, the total paid subscription list of the Association was on September 30, 1923, within 25 of the highest it has ever been, which peak figure was reached on March 31, 1923.

The management desires to thank the regimental representatives, the officers on duty with the Reserve and the National Guard, the commanding officers of the units in all three components of the army, all concerned, for their unfailing support in spreading the circulation of the JOURNAL. With the continued help of each member, our membership will continue to grow. Without this assistance, the office in Washington can do little. It takes personal solicitation in almost every case to get the results, and this work can at best be only supplemented by the management.

GROWING ARMY FORAGE IN THE CANAL ZONE

ACTIVE STEPS are being taken by the War Department, in co-operation with the United States Department of Agriculture, to determine the possibilities of producing hay and forage for the use of army horses and mules in the Panama Canal Zone, and to put that branch of the department on a self-sustaining basis, so far as forage supplies are concerned. Dr. Charles V. Pipe, agrostologist in charge of forage crop investigations for the Department of Agriculture, whose work in 1910 resulted in placing the Philippine Department of the Army on an entirely self-sustaining basis, recently made a trip to the Canal Zone on a similar mission.

While in the Canal Zone, Dr. Piper arranged to have experiments made in growing various tropical grasses which he considers likely to succeed, leaving seeds and some living plants and giving specific instructions as to the procedure necessary to follow to determine their suitablity for the purposes that are sought to be accomplished.

At the present time no hay is put up in the Canal Zone, but much Para grass and Guinea grass is used as green feed by the Panamanians. The problem of producing hay from these grasses in the Canal Zone, and particularly in the case of Guinea grass, is to grow it so that the grass will be of the desired quality when the season is right for curing. Guinea grass should be cut for

hay preferably when three to four feet high, at which stage it will consist largely of leaves and young stems. With increasing height, the proportion of coarse, inedible stems will increase rapidly.

Para grass, like Guinea, has a high reputation as a nutritious grass and is found in considerable areas on overflowed lands. Some of this grass is on land a foot or more above the lake, while much is floating in shallow water. Apparently there is a sufficiently large area to furnish all the hay needed in the Zone, if it can be economically cut and cured. This seems entirely feasible if the grass is cut, allowed to cure one day, and then hauled on scows to some convenient place on high ground to complete the curing. The very large area of this grass and the purity of the stand make it very desirable to test out fully ways and means of harvesting it cheaply, as, everything considered, it is the most promising immediate solution of the hay problem in the Zone.

A number of other grasses are suggested in the report by Dr. Piper as possibilities and are based on data from similar soils and climate, but the facts will not be ascertained concerning them until experiments have been completed.

AN ARAB HORSE SHOW

AMONG "THE" EVENTS in the Sudan are the annual horse shows of Arab tribes in S. Kordofan, but up to date these have been held so far away from rail-head that it is only a few lucky ones of the Sudan civil and E. A. who have been able to attend. These shows are organized mainly by the Governor of Kordofan Province in conjunction with the P. V. O., and serve the double purpose of enabling the civil officers of the province to collect at one time and in one place a large proportion of the male population of their district and thus to keep their finger on the pulse of general feeling; and, secondly, it gives the P. V. O. an opportunity of selecting and buying remounts and of taking steps to improve the breed. The two best-known shows are at Abu Zabad and at Muglad, in late November and early December. Of these, the former, by far the best, is about 100 miles from rail-head at El Obeid, and the latter nearly 300 miles. Abu Zabad is the show center for the Messarieh Arabs, and Muglad for the Homr. The procedure is much the same at both places. As soon as the British inspector has fixed a date with the Nazr, or head sheik, of the district the Arabs begin to concentrate with their horses many days before the show and form huge encampments. There are large open maidans at both places, with water in plenty in convenient lakes. A number of grass huts are quickly put up for any British officials who may be present. On the appointed day, very early in the morning, the Arabs, mounted on their horses, form up on three sides of a hollow square in double rank, with their sheiks in front. It is forbidden to carry arms, but most of the Arabs carry small flags of gay colors and dress up in their Sunday best, of white gibbahs and emmahs, while many of the sheiks array themselves in their presentation robes of scarlet or black and old gold. On the whole, it is an imposing parade of 4,000 and upward of mounted Arabs, who, despite their lack of training, manage to preserve a

marvelously good and steady line. The governor or his representative, accompanied by his staff, now rides slowly round the square, exchanging greetings and a kindly word with the sheiks of each troop. After the parade the governor takes position on a miniature grand stand on the blank side of the square and the Arabs ride past at the walk, in column of four, saluting as they pass by dropping the heads of their flags. Their discipline and orderliness are remarkable, and their horses well under control, as, troop by troop from the right of the square, they wheel, break into column of sections, and file slowly past, to reform eventually in their original position in the square. This maneuver, of course, gives the onlookers the best opportunity of judging the general stamp and quality of their animals. The senior and generally best mounted and equipped troops ride by first, with their best horses at the head of the column and rather a tailing off at the rear, which, of course, is more marked toward the close. After the march past, and the square reformed, there comes the final ceremony of the morning. The square closes up as closely as possible; the Nazr with his head sheiks rides slowly forward into the center to salute the governor and make a speech. The governor returns the compliment and the parade is over. In the afternoon are held the horse-races, open to all the Arabs. Generally a limited number of entries are allowed from each section, and these are run off in heats on the first day. The distance is three or four furlongs in the straight, and the excitement is intense. The riders generally ride a finish in the first furlong, and their grass-fed mounts blow up before they pass the post. It is also not unusual for a bunch of three or four to ride one another off and take a purler into the long line of spectators.

The morning of the second day is devoted to judging the best horses—divided into two classes—mares and stallions. This is rather disappointing; they are a much better lot taken as a whole than taken individually, but it does not do to be too critical. The general appearance is good, considering that the horses are grass-fed with a handful of durra thrown in, but they are pig fat and out of condition. The average size is about 13.2 and under. Most of them show the usual faults of Sudan C. B.'s both forelegs set too close and hence no chest; coarse, thick necks, and too long in the back. They look much better when being ridden, as the big Arab saddles hide a multitude of faults, and the cruel Arab bits make them arch their necks, while they are more inclined to prick their ears and show some interest in life. The horses are all unshod, and as the Arab has no idea of keeping the hoofs cut and trimmed properly, so the feet are all too long and sometimes club-footed. The animals are all long-maned and tailed and quite innocent of grooming. Many a likely-looking remount has been spoilt by old saddle galls, badly-placed or worse healed branding-marks, or old firing-marks, the Arab's universal cure for all ailments. Not by any means are all the horses shown for sale, and, with few exceptions, the Arabs will never part with their mares. Unless times have been very bad, the wily Arab is careful not to produce his best stallions at all in case pressure or persuasion may lead him to sell; hence the average stamp of the mares is

sometimes far superior to the stallions. The Sudan Veterinary Department has taken steps already to improve the breed, and several old polo and racing pony stallions have been sent down; but the trouble is that horse sickness is rife in that country at certain times of year, and the C. B. ponies alone are immune.

The animals of the Messarieh tribe show more quality than the others and are more carefully selected for breeding. For example, the second-prize winner of the Homr tribe in 1921 would not have been in the first hundred at the Messerieh show the same year. There is a story that the Messerieh Arabs captured many of the ill-fated Hick's Pasha cavalry horses in the 'eighties and so show a distinct touch of the Syrian Arab strain to the present day. The finals of the races are run off on the afternoon of the second day. The third day is generally devoted to buying. As all the mounted troops of the E. A. in the Sudan are now mounted on Sudan C. B.'s or Abyssinian mules, a large number of Army Remounts is always required, while the demand for private animals is steadily increasing. As a polo pony, the Kordofani C. B., with one or two notable exceptions, is entirely outclassed even, as far as Khartoum, where the Syrian Arab and Gyppy C. B. are fairly free of horse sickness. Against their size and speed the Kordofani is nowhere; but as a trek pony or for polo in outstations he is the very thing. He is cheap, he is easy to make for polo, and inured to the hardships of scanty water, no green grass three-quarters of the year, and corn that grows on the spot. He is immune from horse sickness and the score of lesser evils that plague his better-bred brother. So the poor man whose lot it is to serve at the back of beyond can justly take off his hat to the Kordofani C. B. There, where the natural barrier of horse sickness area has ordained that all shall ride the same class of mount; where the hard sandy grounds are the best of their kind and there for the choosing, is a good spot for the man with the lean pockets.—*H. C. Maydon* (*Major*), in *"The Field," "The Country Gentleman's Magazine."*

100 PER CENT SUPPORTERS

It is with great pleasure that the Eighth, Twelfth, and Thirteenth Regiments of Cavalry are noted as having every officer and troop a paid-up subscriber to the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

New Books Reviewed

HISTORIQUE DU 2E CORPS DE CAVALERIE. By General Boullaire. Paris, 1923. (Price, $2.50.)

Review by General de Lacroix, Translated from "Le Temps" of July 26, 1923

In *Le Temps* of July 12, I showed, from material contained in the work of General Boullaire, what was the rôle of the Cavalry Corps during the period of trench warfare, how it had been of a special nature—the consequence of special necessities—but which rôle was always carried out in that spirit of readiness for any emergency which must, in all circumstances of war, keep alert the mind of the commander, spur him to activity, and stimulate his ideas.

The constant modifications made during the first three years of the war in the organisation of the larger cavalry units had prepared them for the rôle of STRATEGIC RESERVE, of mobile reserve, which they so brilliantly carried out in 1918.

Marshal Petain summed up their action in these terms, in the *Ordre au Jour*, which he addressed to them at the end of the war:

"When in 1918 the enemy made his decisive effort, these corps (of cavalry) were thrown into the battle at several different times. NOYON, MOREUIL, KEMMEL, the OURCQ, will remain glorious names in the history of Robillot's Corps, while Feraud's Corps will always glory in the thought of CHÂTEAU-THIERRY and the valley of the MARNE. The least that can be said is that the firmness of purpose and will of the commanders in those trying hours was always equal to the valor of the troops."

Of all those operations which General Boullaire describes so clearly in his historical review of the 2d Cavalry Corps (General Robillot), those of KEMMEL and those of the OURCQ are the most interesting to study.

On the 8th of April, 1918, the 2d Cavalry Corps is assigned to the 10th Army (General Fayolle), which has just returned from Italy and is concentrated south of the SOMME. At this time the 2d Cavalry Corps has its three divisions at full strength in the Department of Seine-Inférieure around NEUFCHATEL-EN-BRAY. April 12 it crosses the Seine east of ARGENVILLE and its heads of columns arrive at the river AUTHIE. The next day it reaches the region of FAUQUEMBERGUES, to the south of ST. OMER. In these two forced marches (110 and 100 kilometers) the 2d Cavalry Corps did not lose a man nor a horse.

The battle was raging on both sides of the Lys, from BETHUNE to NEUVE-EGLISE. The front had been broken at EASTAIRES, at the junction of the 1st and 2d British armies. The line AIRE-HAGENBOUCK-FLANDERS HILL (from CARLSBERG to KEMMEL) must be held at any cost. General Rubillot, placed under the orders of General Plummer, has at his command the 133d and 28th Infantry Divisions in the vicinity of STEENWORDE and POPERINGHE. The first of these divisions is to march on BAILLEUL, the other on KEMMEL. The cavalry divisions (2d, 3d, and 6th) are to fill in the interval between the two infantry divisions.

"While waiting, the cavalry reconnoiters and sizes up the situation, assures contact between its own elements, ties in with the English and French units, which up until then had lacked close touch. It makes arrangements for the relief of the most sorely tried units; it prepares the organisation of the ground and the development of the second position."

The High Command may thus, in perfect safety, regain its control of the battle, reconstitute its reserves, and bring into action the reinforcements (34th, 39th, and 154th French Divisions) which are hastening up. The 2d Cavalry Corps, thanks to the corps troops at its disposal, organises the supply of food and ammunition, evacuation, and

traffic control in the rear areas—a helpful and useful activity of commanders and staffs. The front is stabilised and its organisation is begun. But between the 25th and the 30th of April the French troops meet and stop two German attacks supported by formidable bombardments using toxic gases. The telephone, radio, and visual signaling apparatus are all put out of action. Cavalry officers and couriers keep up the communication from the front, through the various echelons of command, to a depth of 7 or 8 kilometers.

"A few reconnaissances sufficed to indicate the best routes to be followed; the intelligence of the rider and the training of the horse do the rest. Avoiding by small detours the zones for the moment being shelled, the cavalrymen, by increasing the pace, make up the time so lost and succeed in getting through in spite of all difficulties."

The dismounted cavalry works and fights in intimate liaison with the infantry; its fire losses reach a third of its effective strength. When the breach is closed and the corps and divisions, hurried on to the field, have had time to settle down, to get their bearings, and to bring all their energies into action, the rôle of the cavalry on this particular part of the front is finished. It withdraws little by little; it retires to reorganise, that it may be ready to move out again instantly, its units reconstituted, in order to play again its rôle of emergency assistance in another part of the theater of war. So, the 2d Cavalry Corps leaves the Flanders hills on the 5th of May and by short stages returns to the region of NEUFCHATEL-EN-BRAY, which it had left on April 12.

On May 27, 1918, there was a new attack in force by the Germans—this time on the CHEMIN-DES-DAMES. The enemy is rushing toward SOISSON, CHÂTEAU-THIERRY, and REIMS. The 2d Cavalry Corps is called eastward in great haste. General Robillot joins the staff of the 6th Army on May 31, at THILPOST, near MEAUX. He receives orders to get in touch with the 26th Infantry Division at LA FERTÉ-MILON, the 11th Corps at LONG PONT, and the 7th Corps at CHEZY-EN-ORXOIS. The enemy, while pushing his offensive toward CHÂTEAU-THIERRY, is redoubling his effort toward the west, and is threatening to outflank the forest of VILLERS-COTTERETS from the south. To oppose this move, the 6th Army is to take the offensive—the 1st Corps, on the left, in the direction of Vierzy; the 2d Cavalry Corps in the center, toward REMY-BLANZY; the 7th Corps on the right, toward OUCHY-LA-VILLE; the 11th Corps is to bar the forest of VILLERS-COTTERETS. At 9 o'clock in the evening the command post of the general commanding the 2d Cavalry Corps is established at NEUCHELLES (to the south of MAREUIL-SUR-OURCQ). The headquarters squadron soon establishes communication with LA FERTÉ-MILON (26th Infantry Division), MAREUIL (3d Cavalry Division), and ETREPILLY (6th Cavalry Division). These stations, manned by personnel from the divisional command posts, follow those command posts wherever they go. This system, complete and modified according to circumstances, will be found functioning throughout the whole series of operations. At certain critical times it will be the only permanent and regular means of communication.

The first contact takes place June 1, the enemy debouching to the north and to the south of TROESNES, where the 26th Division has barred the way. The general commanding the 2d Cavalry Corps directs his divisions to be active over their entire front, to keep in close touch with events, to keep constant liaison with neighboring units, to develop their service of security and reconnaissance, to study the terrain with a view to their eventual participation in the battle, and to be prepared to organise a well-marked line of defense.

The night of June 1–2 is employed in bringing interdiction fire to bear on sensitive points and most probable places of enemy assemblage, in concert with the artillery of the 11th and 7th Corps. The 2d Infantry Division arrives in the region of MAREUIL. June 2 new forces are coming into line. The following day the enemy reacts to our operations by violent attacks between FAVEROLLES, TROESNES, and MONTGRAVOY. Our losses are considerable, but the enemy's mad rush is stopped, while our own front stiffens more and more. A first position, then a second, is organised. General Boullaire thus sums up these operations on the Ourcq:

"Three days of forced marches (200 to 215 kilometers for the main body of the divisions) bring the 2d Cavalry Corps, with all its combat elements, onto a front, about 15 kilometers, almost denuded of troops, and into contact with two—later with three—German divisions (one of which is the Guard Division), which have been moving forward since May 28 without meeting any resistance. Soon thrown into the combat, gathering in the infantry elements, retreating with difficulty before an enemy superior in numbers, the cavalry divisions and the 26th Infantry Division (engaged piecemeal as the battalions were unloaded) cling to the ground, slow up the enemy's advance, attack in their turn, and, after five days of battle and of rapid shifts, stop the rush of the enemy, until then victorious."

The 2d Cavalry Corps will again be called on to take part in the second battle of the MARNE, with the 10th Army, from July 18 to August 20; in that of MONTDIDIER with the 1st Army, from August 5 to September 16, and in the operations of the Army Group of Flanders, under the orders of the King of the Belgians. Brilliant achievements to add to those illustrious ones described in the history of the 2d Cavalry Corps—a book to read and to study, clearly and vividly written, and which reflects great credit on its author, General Boullaire, for the lessons he has drawn.

At the end of the year 1918 the two cavalry corps were dissolved. They had demonstrated the necessity for their organisation, in view of their employment as a mobile strategic reserve, and had shown what power their action might have under valient leaders, faithful to the traditions of discipline, devotion, and bravery which have always been the attributes of the French Cavalry—traditions which, I am convinced, it will preserve and perpetuate.

MILITARY MOTOR TRANSPORTATION. Coast Artillery School, 1923. 408 pages, index, photos, and drawings.

The matter in this volume covers generally the basic principles of motor vehicle construction and operation, and in detail the construction, operation, and care of the standard Army Motor transportation assigned to the Coast Artillery. In this latter respect this book is supplementary to the Ordnance Department handbook on the different kinds of motor vehicles.

The book is well illustrated with photographs and has many fine drawings. It is written in a simple style. Its readability contributes much to its efficacy.

OFFICIAL HISTORY OF AUSTRALIA IN THE WAR OF 1914-18. VOL. VII, SINAI AND PALESTINE. By H. S. Gullett. Illustrated. 844 pages. Angus & Robertson, Sydney, Australia.

A Review by Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis, U. S. Cavalry

This remarkable volume is a real addition to the history of the World War, as distinguished from the many carelessly compiled "histories" which are thrust upon an unsuspecting public. Mr. Gullett describes in a pleasing manner, but most accurately and in detail, the many battles and exploits of the Australians and New Zealanders as they fought their way from the Suez Canal to Damascus during 1916, 1917, and 1918. The book is peculiarly valuable to American cavalrymen, who already have a general reading knowledge of Allenby's campaigns in the Holy Land, because Mr. Gullett has been at great pains to collect the detailed phases of scores of cavalry battles, great and small. In his descriptions, supplemented by the 77 maps and 88 photographs which are included in the book, there is a great store of original material for exercises and problems far outweighing in real value any possible product of the brilliant inner consciousness. Having been on the ground himself and having had access to the best records and to the participants themselves, Mr. Gullett has given us a very human and vivid picture. He has taken the time and trouble to get the statements of captains, lieutenants, sergeants, corporals, and privates. Mentioning them by name, he follows the exploits of ground scouts in front of a charge, tells what squadron leaders did, relates the adventures of

patrols and so on, literally inspiring the reader to ride alongside these individuals. The Australian's life in camp, his horsemastership, his resourcefulness during those long years of deprivation, his battle discipline and craftiness, all these and many other details of the great war picture are brought before the reader.

It is interesting to note that Mr. Gullett is a real historian, as proved by his courage in handling certain delicate subjects which heretofore have been side-stepped by British writers. He discusses without reserve all phases of the unfortunate first and second battles of Gaza, which were fought before General Allenby assumed command. The few instances of an unpleasant character which occurred after the arrival of the great Commander-in-Chief are squarely met by the historian. He does not hesitate to record the lack of real affection between the English and the Australians. He makes no concession to political tact in dealing with the Arab, but plainly puts that individual down as being very close to worthless. The reviewer joins heartly in this estimate.

It was a pleasure to meet Mr. Gullett during the Palestine campaign and to be impressed by his sincerity, his earnestness, and his intelligence. It is gratifying now to observe that he has given us this comprehensive and vivid history of the deeds of his very gallant countrymen.

HINTS ON HORSEMANSHIP. By Lieutenant-Colonel M. F. McTaggart, D. S. O. (Fifth Lancers). Sketches. 166 pages. J. B. Lippincott Co., 1923. (Price, $2.00.)

This book challenges American Army thought. The author states as his sole object to point out common errors in horsemanship, to explain the basic principles on which good riding is grounded, to train man and horse to ride better to hounds, to instil in his reader a more sympathetic treatment of horses, and to reduce the abuse of whip and spur. If one can not ride a certain horse satisfactorily, let some one else try it; do not experiment with more severe bits, etc., in trying to ride a horse which you are not fitted to ride.

The writer believes that the basis of riding is balance and that this depends largely on the length of stirrup. The stirrup leathers should be always perpendicular, the weight well forward, with quite a bit on the stirrups. He emphasises strongly the importance of keeping the knees always "pointed." One should ride as long a stirrup as possible and still keep the knees pointed. Reins should be as long as possible after the rider is assured that the body will remain well forward. The greater the effort demanded of the horse and rider, the shorter the reins and the farther forward the weight should be.

The author does not believe in trotting without stirrups and with blanket and surcingle. The matter of grip, he thinks, is overemphasized by many. Position and balance are needed much more than strength in our muscles. He derides the idea of gripping with the thighs and maintains that we grip with our knees. Awkwardness in the saddle is nearly always caused by unnecessary use of muscles. One the contrary, freedom should be taught. He distinguishes between grip and pressure; the latter should always be present. Grip means definite physical effort. By pressure is probably meant the natural friction unnoticed by the rider and horse, caused by a correct position of the body, length of stirrups and reins. The word supple is not found in the book.

Jumping should be a slow process for the horse, starting with low rails and much variety as one goes along. The horse should never be crowded in this training. Teach him confidence gradually. The rider should especially have a well-forward position on landing from a jump. The approach is taken up in great detail, since the writer deems this by far the most important part of the jump. Here again he states that balance, not grip, is the important thing and that complete freedom for the horse by not interfering with reins, legs, and body is essential. He advises the constant and frequent use of the camera, particularly in jumping, to show one his defects.

Hands are made, not born, he says, and one has good hands who possesses balance, confidence, and sympathy. The author advocates the use only of simple double bits;

only standing martingales, because they leave the reins, keep horse from throwing his head when approaching a fence, and prevent horse from jerking reins over his head. The high intelligence of the horse is insisted upon. Children should not ride before the age of eighteen.

The subject of horse management receives the benefit of the writer's experience in a series of short notes, among which are how often and long to hunt a horse, drinking when hot, blanketing, bran mashes, colic, pulling tails, docking (heartily disapproved). In distance riding he advises the trot for the most part, leading when walking, no short halts, and when halting, unsaddling, watering, and feeding.

The reasons for these views are given and, coming from one of Colonel Taggart's success in the show ring, in racing, and in the military profession, they arrest attention and make one consider.

MY RHINELAND JOURNAL. By Major General Henry T. Allen, U. S. A., Rtd. 23 illustrations, 571 pages, index. Houghton Mifflin Co., 1923. (Price, $6.00.)

The daily record of events, impressions, guesses, deductions, pleasures, burdens, trials of a soldier, administrator, and diplomat in a very important position which seems to have extremely well handled for his government. One can not read this diary without seeing and understanding how present conditions in Europe developed. The fears, hates, hopes, loves, apprehensions, desires of each nation are easily communicated to the reader without prejudice on the part of the author. His own duties and successes are set forth. The activities of some of our own countrymen, visitors to those troubled regions, leave one in a not too proud state of soul.

The impressionistic pen portraits of the leading politicians, statesmen, soldiers, and diplomats of these last five trying and momentous years present an ever appetisingly changing diet for the reader who tires of politics, either grand or petty, with which the book of necessity is replete. Here and there the economic status of the States is touched upon, but this factor is not one in which the author impresses one so largely as being deeply versed. It is very difficult to appreciate sometimes how busy General Allen was and how he actually did perform—and satisfactorily to his government—so many duties, arduous physically as well as mentally.

The social life of those very full days is deliciously related and one wonders whether Europe takes matters really as seriously as it might, though the leaders only come before us in these pages.

The book is kaleidoscopic; recall, it is a diary of a man well read in the world's interests and affairs; the author is trained to observe. His style is pleasing, the quality of English is high, and the linguistic ability of the author is easily revealed.

The reviewer can conscientiously say that every page kept his interest and made him want to read the next page, perhaps to see what famous personage would disclose his genius, and sometimes, alas! his failure to measure up to his reputation.

The most valuable aspect of the volume is the chronological narration of the present political development in Europe. Here it is, step by step—the aftermath. The child could almost see it grow. Fear on the part of one nation, unwillingness on the part of another to be ousted from its century-old leadership, desire of another to resist relegation to a more helpless position, the growing pains of the child-giant of peoples, the yearnings of the lesser brethren in the "family" of nations to live their lives self determined (?), the stirring of revivified countries, all these ethnological phenomena day by day enroll before the peruser of General Allen's Journal, and that such a morose story is withal interesting testifies to the quality of the author's effort.

The book is quite courageously frank in some places. The account impresses one as being a truthful relation of the facts involved and the beliefs of the writer. (This would seem to be not the least valuable attribute of a book.) An excellent index further enhances the value of this well-illustrated, worth-while contribution to the biography of the World War. The reader is convinced easily as he reads.

THE PROBLEM OF ARMAMENTS. By Arthur Guy Enock, M. Inst. Mech. E. The Macmillan Company, 1923. 126 pages, Appendices, Index. (Price, $1.50.)

The thesis of the author is no more war. His desire is that there be no more, and that is the reason for writing this book. In this volume are given the costs of war in lives, money, commodities, labor, and suffering. There are many valuable tables of data and statistics from which the author draws various conclusions. It seems to the author that the price paid for war should so convince the world that war does not pay—that there should be no more war. The writer speaks of the natural man and the ordinary citizen and their reasons for maintaining armaments. The growth of warlike expenditures in the last generation, the special effort put forth during the World War in the munition factories, on the farms—in fact, in every activity of the engaged nations—the development of the chemical industry, and the use of gas in war—all these are revealed in their relations to his thesis. He shows the nationalist point of view, the burden of taxation caused by war, the attitude of the conscientious objector, the utterances of prominent men of all nations on the problem of war and its prevention, and his belief that some sort of arrangement like the League of Nations might help to settle disputes amicably. The author believes that preparation for war—or against war, as all nations now put it—is one of the prime causes of war.

Foreign Military Journals

Journal of the United Service Institution of India, July, 1923.

This issue contains an interesting proposal of a heterogeneous cavalry division which is set forward as mobile, though it has some horse-drawn 5.9" howitzers. The author thinks that the strategic reconnaissance days of the arm are past, as well as the days of shock action by large bodies. He would relegate the use of the lance to museums, and he tries to show that cavalry must be trained much as infantry hereafter, since it will largely fight as infantry. Mobility is all that will distinguish cavalry from infantry. Cavalry divisions and corps should be kept under the finger of the high command, in the rear, for raiding purposes and to make quick break-throughs at critical moments. In the latter case he would characterise cavalry as a "mobile *corps d'elite*."

There is a dissertation on the use of smoke, developing the idea that man is yet a daytime animal, though great strides have been made in night operations, and that the skillful use of smoke will permit daylight maneuvers which formerly had to be attempted under cover of darkness, since the weapon produces conditions of night for the enemy, while preserving those of day for oneself. The history of the use of smoke in war is reviewed briefly on land, sea, and in the air. The various smoke-producers are enumerated and the advantages and disadvantages are set forth. Finally, the need of further development is urged in peace time, so that hastily improvised methods will not be used in war time in this branch of the science any more than in the others.

Journal of the Royal United Service Institution, August, 1923.

In this number is found the first part of "A Record of the Battles and Engagements of the British Armies in France and Flanders, 1914-1918," by Lieutenant E. A. James, a most useful chronological compilation of the war as participated in by the author's countrymen. It is largely from official sources. The war is divided in seven phases; the phases, into operations; and under the operations appear the battles, actions, incidents,

and "affairs," which terms represent in a descending scale, as promulgated by the British Government, the relative size and importance of the engagements. With each encounter appear the dates and places of its occurrence and the units participating therein. Foreign troops co-operating with the English are also enumerated. The effort furnishes a succinct and readily followed sketch of its subject, and as a part of a World War general bibliography it is a good tool. The two concluding phases are promised for the November number of this periodical.

Captain A. W. G. Wildey, M. C., R. G. A., discusses in "Some Notes on the German Advance to the Marne, 1914, with Particular Reference to the Communications," the lack, singular to him, of fuller reference in German sources to the administrative questions facing the Germans in connection with their scheme of invasion of France and its execution. He dwells on the change of direction of Von Kluck's army on August 30, 1914, and asks whether, after all, though the evidence has not yet appeared in the form of German administrative orders, this and other movements were not forced on the Germans in their origin by administrative necessities. These notes are premised on a study of the railway systems of northern France. The author's presumptions as to the Germans' probable reasoning in these operations are interesting and are an attempt, as Lieutenant James states, to explain movements which seem to be at variance with accepted strategy.

There appears, among notices of books, a review of the "History of the 5th Royal Irish Lancers," a book by Colonel J. R. Harvey, D. S. O. (Gale & Polden, Aldershot), which shows through what a regiment can pass in two and a half centuries. The activities of this unit on the Western Front in the World War are rather fully set forth, thus bringing to the notice of the public one more set of facts concerning the use of the arm some in their ignorance or prejudice would dispense with or relegate to an insignificant rôle. It seems that this organization's work in this least promising theater for the cavalry is well worth perusing.

Cavalry Journal (British), October, 1923.

Major-General Pitman continues his diary of the activities of the Second Cavalry Division in the defense of Amiens in the spring of 1918. A fine example of the brevity of the instructions that can be issued to a cavalry division is found in the form of a 43-word telephone order from corps headquarters for the division to attack across a river and drive out the enemy from a wood. In this action there are many good examples of combined mounted and dismounted fighting by the cavalry. One squadron noticed about 300 enemy retiring from the wood and, attacking boldly at once with the sword, killed many of them, charging through twice.

In an article on a delay action by a mobile force of all arms we see again the principle of fast-moving composite units. The author states that no one in the British Army now has had experience in moving war, and he expressly leaves out of consideration the Palestine campaigns because the enemy were not well supplied with all aids to modern war. The mission of cavalry remains the same, but the methods must change. A brigade should never again by day be concentrated on the field of battle, because of the air service. The best delaying action is denying a road. A battery of artillery is added to the cavalry brigade in order easier to reduce the rate of march of the pursuing infantry by half. A battalion of infantry in lorries is added to form the holding attack, so that the cavalry can threaten the flanks of the infantry and keep itself from being outflanked. Much emphasis is put upon a series of information-collecting points. Tanks and light-armored cars also are added the latter for reconnaissance. Wide and persistent flank reconnaissance is the main means of safety in delay actions. All retirements must be thought out and reconnoitered. Wireless is cited as a possible aid in keeping up communication between elements in such an operation. Cavalry in such actions must never be content with passivity. "Waspish" is the epithet applied to the author's conception of cavalry's manner in delay actions.

Wing-Commander L. A. Patterson, D. S. O., etc., gives a gripping account of a bombing raid in which his plans are compelled to fight their way going and coming. In this story the heart of the airman is seen, and one feels proud to wear the same uniform with them. Throughout also the Briton. The writer should take up short-story writing as a profession. One runs rarely into this sort of things these days.

The Italian Cavalry School at Tor Di Quinto is described in this number as offering a course as a refresher, to give some cross-country riding and to give a bit of hunting. Work is not strenuous and not much is required of the horses in the way of training. The hunting is very pleasant and not costly to the students, as the Rome hounds are used. The Italian seat is good for show jumping, as is the method of training horses, but in mounted combat the author thinks that the Italians would stand no chance with men and horses trained in the English fashion. In spite of the forward balance of the Italian horse, the forelegs are good—perhaps due to the good going and fitness of the horses. Horse management at the school is good; the horses are hardy and big. They water frequently and feed *twice* a day. The ration is five kilos each of oats and hay. Straw bedding is used and is let down permanently, and though it gets quite rotten beneath, the top layer is clean and the feet are in good condition.

In a short article on swordsmanship, Mr. Elliott favors the thrusting type of saber and recommends that the weapon be lighter, and that the hilts be made in several sizes, so that the small men can handle it better.

Reviews by Captain Royden Williamson, 1st Cavalry Brigade

***Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires*, May and June, 1923.**

The pursuit is the principal topic which Major Peteau, in his cavalry study, "Nous faut-il une Cavalerie," discusses in the May and June issues of *Le Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires*. He exposes the error of those who conclude that the pursuit was impossible in the final campaign of the World War on the western front and gives as his reasons for his affirmation, that it was the very readiness of the Allied cavalry to take up the pursuit of the German forces, which were on the point of breaking, that was one of the principal causes of Germany's request for an armistice. He calls attention to the fact that it was the remarkable pursuit by the Italian cavalry in the battle of Vittorio-Veneto, of the French cavalry in Macedonia, and of the British cavalry in Palestine which ended the war in those theaters.

Modern mechanical appliances, which some would substitute for cavalry, the author then discusses and points out the limitations of each. The airplane, revolutionising as it is, in his opinion is not constant for maintenance of contact. It cannot seize or hold a position and is not dependable for reconnaissance of woods. It works on reconnaissance of discovery, while cavalry works on reconnaissance of contact. Thus these two arms do not oppose, but rather complete, one another.

The railroad and the auto-truck, indispensable for troop transportation, are bound to their respective routes, and troops while being transported in them cannot cover themselves, scout in advance, or engage promptly with all their means of action.

Tanks, which some believe combine the effectiveness of infantry, cavalry, and artillery, are not self-sustaining, are very expensive, quickly used up, require crews of high technical skill, and can neither explore, maintain contact, nor occupy positions. In their present state of development, Major Peteau holds, they cannot replace cavalry.

Cyclist organizations, while unquestionably effective and capable of rendering valuable service where good road nets exist, are stopped by many obstacles quite readily negotiated by cavalry; and so they, too, cannot play the rôle of the mounted troops.

***Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires*, July, 1923.**

In the concluding installment of Major Peteau's instructive discussion, "Nous faut-il une Cavalerie?", which has been appearing in the *Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires*,

he continues, in the July number, the subject of mounted combat. Numerous examples of successful mounted action during the World War, notations of the respective losses and the results achieved in each instance being listed, the author contends that it is now possible to draw certain definite conclusions from the engagements mentioned, showing that combat *à l'arme blanche* was resorted to much more frequently during the last war than is commonly supposed; that under reserve of certain conditions the charge, for a given unit, gave results more prompt, more certain, and more decisive than did fire action, but that when attempted over unfavorable terrain mounted action miserably miscarried.

"From the teachings of the war [he writes], it follows that the mounted atack can be executed with success:

"(*a*) Against cavalry of equal or inferior strength which accepts this form of combat.

"(*b*) Against infantry disorganized or demoralized, or when surprised while marching or at rest, or infantry that is extenuated or short of ammunition, the frequent consequence of a too powerful or too prolonged offensive effort. The attack against infantry in possession of all its means is warranted only in the most critical circumstances.

"(*c*) Against artillery in column or in an exposed position.

"So much for the objective. As to the realization of mounted action, there must be, if it is to succeed:

"(*a*) Indispensable preliminary reconnaissance, to complete on the ground the information of the enemy given, to decide upon the effectives to put into action, direction of the charge, lines of approach, etc.

"(*b*) Partial neutralization of the enemy by fire of artillery, 37 millimeters, machine rifles and machine-guns, as well as rifle fire by the dismounted cavalry elements.

"(c) Surprise.

"(*d*) A curtain of foragers preceding the attacking force to draw fire or give warning of obstacles.

"(e) Echeloning of the charging force in depth, habitually to about 200 meters' distance.

"(*f*) Speed increased progressively, ardent determination to close and the attack pushed home. To about face in front of the enemy is more fatal than an advance to an open grave.

"(*g*) The approach march, if in support of infantry, should be made at the pace of that arm up to the moment of launching the mounted attack, since the infantry constitutes the last echelon of the charge."

If these conditions are so rarely found, as many critics of cavalry utility contend, as to condemn in the minds of many the possibility of charges mounted, Major Peteau adds that, after all, the principal element of success lies in the dash of the leaders; that "cavalry spirit" is indispensable, and that "a cavalry which, resorting to dismounted combat through lack of the firm, fixed desire to maneuver, to exploit to the utmost the possibilities of its rifles and machine-guns, with the resolve to utilise its horses and its sabers, is no longer cavalry."

Not less vigorously does the author discuss the other rôles of cavalry employment, the covering of a retreat or the delaying of a pursuing force, extending of flanks and threatening of lines of communication in the course of offensive battle, filling gaps between large elements of the army in battle and exploiting the infantry's success.

Again citing instances of the services rendered by the cavalry during the last war in all of these types of action, he asks:

"Could the cavalry have done more?" It would seem as if the service performed was inestimable. It was certainly underesteemed. If this or that division may not have given its utmost, the historian, who should be an impartial judge, will seek the reasons and adjudge those responsible. But he cannot incriminate the arm.

"The *mounted* service, moreover, can never be dethroned by machinery. Neither can the violence of modern fire power diminish the rôle of cavalry. On the contrary, the constant development of modern technical skill and of the power of firearms, on condition that the cavalry is provided with them, far from diminishing the rôle of cavalry, has remarkably enlarged its field of action and its modes of employment. 'The cavalry,' as Marshal Foch has written, 'will always find, at the moment when nerves are stretched and its force and vigilance absorbed or worn, the occasion to act appropriately.'

"Let us have a cavalry, then, a cavalry strong in numbers, powerful in armament, mobile through the quality of its horseflesh and the instruction of its members, irresistible in the faith which animates it, and useful through the skill of its chief."

La Revue Militaire Générale, September, 1923.

Students of tactics, both major and minor, who have been brought up on "the enemy will be attacked wherever met," will find food for thought in the article of Lieutenant Colonel Allehaut in *La Revue Militaire Générale* (Paris) for September 15. He writes on the rencontre engagement and its evolution under the conditions of modern war.

The form of military operations most frequently conceived before 1914, he says, was where the two adversaries, animated by the same offensive spirit, were disposed in long columns of route and preceded by advance guards of reduced artillery power, also moving in column, both armies having for their mission the task of throwing themselves at the throat of the enemy whenever and wherever he was encountered, in order to oblige him to reveal his strength and dispositions. Then the main bodies would deploy, go into action, and the general engagement would ensue. The hypothesis was, of course, that the enemy would do the same.

Thus troops in the beginning of the war conducted themselves as if they were invariably to meet an adversary in movement like themselves, progressing on roads in column up to the moment of contact and having to improvise from the instant that contact was established their modes of action, and particularly that combination of infantry and artillery employment which is the fundamental condition of success.

This concept, the author shows, was based upon a basic error—failure to realize the effects of fire. The lessons of the war prove that more and more frequently one of the antagonists is led to halt on ground of his own choosing, take post there to receive the shock, and seek to secure the double advantage of choice of terrain and priority of deployment, with his system of fire completely organised. The other side, engaged in driblets, without equal or superior fire support, is inevitably decimated while its artillery is seeking positions.

What should be the form of advance, particularly for forces advancing with flanks covered, the most usual condition for large units, the author then describes. From the moment that the aviation determines contact to be impending, which should occur within twenty-four hours if the forward movement of both forces continues, such dispositions are taken as will insure a great fire power in order that the means to dispute the advantages of priority of deployment by the enemy may be employed from the earliest possible moment, should the enemy be encountered in position.

The method of such deployment is then described in detail. Artilleries of division, corps, and army advance by bounds in zones fixed by higher authority and previously designated. In rear of the front-line divisions, the large reserve elements of corps and army follow the forward movement, distributed and articulated with a view to ultimate maneuver and reinforcement. The rôle of the cavalry is treated, with emphasis upon the value of its services in determining through reconnaissance the contour of the hostile main line of resistance.

Although essentially a study of higher tactics, the article throws much light upon many misconceptions of tactical dispositions that is instructive not alone to possible future corps commanders, but to those who, while entertaining no such expectations, may find it profitable to keep abreast of modern tactical thought. It is a serious, but highly interesting, presentation of the newest principles in the art of handling combined arms in meeting engagements.

La Revue des Deux Mondes (Paris), June 15, 1923.

Among all leaders of rank who rose to eminence during the World War, there are none who fail to voice their belief in the continued importance of the cavalry arm; but

if the mounted service requires a brief for its justification it has it ready to its hand in the vigorous answer to its opponents, contributed to *La Revue des Deux Mondes* (Paris), in its issue of June 15, 1922, by the Inspector General of French Cavalry, General Féraud.

This article resembles so strikingly in its form and features the study of Major Peteau, elsewhere reviewed in this number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL, that readers of the two will be apt to consider whether the Belgian author did not utilise this study of General Féraud as one of his authorities. The same scholarly review of the work performed by all the cavalries in the last war and the same deductions mark the two writings.

General Féraud's article bears the title "Our Cavalry, its Evolution in the Course of the War—*Its Future.*" It is with the question of its future that we are most especially concerned. If the principal force of the cavalry service lies henceforth in fire power rather than, save in exceptional cases, in shock, it is, nevertheless, the writer declares, the same characteristics which it will utilize, namely, speed, which permits of surprise; and suppleness, which permits of rapid deployment. That is why it is incessant in its demand for an increase of its means of fire power, doubling today the number of its machine-guns and cannon.

"Tomorrow," he continues, "it will adopt, as it has shown it knows how to do, all the perfected means which industry will devise for war, and it will adapt itself to them. Far from opposing the development of mechanism, it asks it to aid it in its mission. Cavalry calls upon the airplane to reconnoiter for it and complete its investigations by more distant action; upon the tank to aid in progressing through the first lines of enemy resistance to enable it to gain contact with the hostile main body; to the motor truck to bring up behind it the infantry reserves to hold the results of its own advance or to prolong its operations."

None of these can replace the horse, General Féraud maintains. "Cavalry has not yet found a substitute. The truth is the new instruments of war are not to replace the old arms—infantry, cavalry, and artillery. They will enter into them. Thus we shall have, not new arms, but the old ones with new means of action."

The historical résumé of the work of the cavalry is vividly sketched. Four achievements of incalculable value the author enumerates as having been wrought by the cavalry in the race for the sea, the failure of the Germans to take Calais, the preservation of Belgium and its army, the protection of British maritime communications, and the saving of Flanders, Artois, Picardy, and the north of France.

Revue de Cavalerie, July-August, 1923.

"Let us banish the heresy that modern war, perfectly organised and equipped, employs nothing but force. Let us remember that in our times, as always, speed, mobility, surprise still play their parts—parts of increased value, because they have all the power of modern armament at their service and act upon the morale of armies, particularly those armies less solidly forged than heretofore through reduced periods of service and training."

This is the doctrine Captain Daubert proclaims in the continuation of his article, "Cavalry and Aviation," in the *Revue de Cavalerie* for July and August. He urges the need for the utmost development of co-operation between the two arms and the possibilities that lie therein.

Critical moments on the western front are cited where a closer liaison between the air service and the cavalry would have brought the latter up more promptly to exploit local successes which might have led to incalculable results. Infantry and artillery, as he reminds us, have not the suppleness of maneuver to re-establish a situation in a defensive battle or to resume the initiative in an advance. And aviation and cavalry, when operating singly, are equally insufficient.

But, combined, these two constitute a force capable of holding on, of ceding ground

indefinitely with breaking, and of holding a victorious advance in check. As for the pursuit, the author calls attention, among other instances, to the co-operation of the aviation with the British cavalry in Palestine and invites consideration of what might have been the effect upon von Kluck's army at the Marne, his communications cut, his couriers astray, and his reserves being shelled, had Cornulier-Lucinière's division been provided for their famous raid with cavalry aviation.

This same number of the *Revue* contains a further account of the exercises for large units of cavalry at the Camp-de-Mailly. Of greater interest to American readers, however, is the recital of the maneuvers of the 4th French Cavalry Division in September of last year in the Rhineland, particularly as to the employment of auto-cannon, which played an important part in the program.

One instance from the text may be mentioned:

"Having to reconnoiter a village, the squadron commander detaches a platoon. It advances rapidly. Upon coming to a crossroad, each of its four cars instantly lays on a road. In a few seconds the village is covered and all four roads are swept with fire. Had the operation been real, any enemy infantry, surprised by so brusque an attack, would have been annihilated. It was a true example of the employment of auto-cannon in fire and movement, but principally movement. The British mission which witnessed this operation applauded its smartness."

The account of the operations of the Regiment du Marche de Spahis in the operations under Colonel Dupertuis in Morocco is continued.

An article on the French veterinary service in campaign by Vétérinaire-Major Caritte is interesting, both for the account of the French field organization and the equipment carried in the various echelons, but especially for the policy indicated, namely, to aim to treat sick and wounded animals as far forward as possible in order to avoid the encumbering of roads which evacuation to the bases entails.

Some excellent views of competitors in the Concours Hippique International de Nice of last spring are given. The American horses entered appear to have been admired, but were lacking in disposition, although the mare *Isba*, Lieutenant de Freminville (France) up, took second to Major Caffaratti's (Italy) *Tresor* for the Grand Challenge cup offered by the Duchess of Aosta. *Tornado*, ridden by Lieutenant de Brabandière (France), is another American horse, described as presenting a fine silhouette, well put up, and with excellent gaits, but showing bad manners.

Details for the Olympic internationals are promised in the next issue.

Revista Militar, Buenos Aires, August, 1923.

Under the title "Field Equipment of a Cavalry Officer," Captain Hector Pelesson, of the Argentine cavalry, contributes a timely essay to the *Revista Militar*, Buenos Aires, for August, which every young cavalryman might find to his profit. Rather than the articles of equipment which the regulations of all armies call for, Captain Pelesson enumerates those moral and physical qualities which every true cavalryman must possess to be worthy of the name, and which it should be his constant endeavor to perfect and keep ready for the field. These he puts down as health, equestrian skill, virtuosity—which he describes as the habit of study in order to know how to apply in war what is learned under conditions of peace, and the ability to express in brief and lucid orders the results of rapid estimates. Finally he gives resolution, calmness, audacity, self-confidence, and initiative. While these are by no means all, he holds that only by constant striving to develop and improve these qualities can one be ready upon short notice to declare with honesty and in conscience, "my field equipment is ready."

Memorial de Caballeria (Madrid), August, 1923.

Little of particular interest to readers outside of Spain appears in the August number of *Memorial de Caballeria*, Madrid. But one exception to this impression should be made.

Comandante José Bermudez de Castro, of the Spanish Cavalry, writes of the horse shortage of his country, and his review of it and its remedy sounds like an echo of our own problem in America. It is gratifying to note this Spanish authority ranges himself uncompromisingly among those who hold that the only true solution to the problem lies in the thoroughbred. He makes a strong plea for the introduction of only the best blood lines and even opposes the Anglo-Arab as a type of doubtful return to mate with native Spanish mares.

The new drill regulations of the British Cavalry Service are continued in review in this issue, the sections presented being those relating to machine rifles. The use and employment of these weapons in mounted attack, in dismounted action in both open and position warfare, and as anti-aircraft defense are discussed.



Polo

WASHINGTON FALL POLO TOURNAMENT

A very successful polo-fest entertained the Capital City this autumn. Invitations were sent out by the War Department Polo Club to various Army polo teams for the Washington Fall Polo Tournament, to be held October 13 to 20, inclusive. The following teams entered: Fort Bragg, Fort Humphreys, Fort Myer, Second Corps Area, Third Corps Area, and the War Department team. All ponies were stabled at Fort Myer; also, the officers were put up there. The schedule of games for the week of polo was as follows:

(A) Saturday, October 13.....Fort Bragg *vs.* Fort Humphreys
(B) Monday, October 15..... War Department *vs.* Third Corps Area
(C) Tuesday, October 16.....Fort Myer *vs.* Second Corps Area
(D) Wednesday, October 17.....Winners (A) *vs.* Winners (B)
(E) Wednesday, October 17.....Losers (A) *vs.* Losers (B)
(F) Friday, October 19.....Losers (C) *vs.* Winners (E)
(G) Saturday, October 20.....*Finals*—Winners (C) *vs.* Winners (D)

All games were played under the Army handicap. The first preliminary game (A) turned out to be a very exciting and fast game.

LINE-UP AND SUMMARY

Fort Bragg (13)	*Fort Humphreys* (12)
No. 1 Lieutenant W. H. Metts	No. 1. Major R. S. Thomas
No. 2. Lieutenant John Gross	No. 2. Captain W. F. Tompkins
No. 3. Lieutenant H. D. Baker	No. 3. Captain E. F. Shaifer
No. 4. Major R. C. Batson	No. 4. Major J. A. Dorst
Goals earned.....13	Goals earned..... 9
By handicap..... 0	By handicap 3
Total 13	Total 12

The second preliminary game (B) turned out to be a rather one-sided game and from the spectators' point of view not particularly interesting. However, it gave the War Department team an opportunity of practicing goal shooting, which it seemed to need badly.

LINE-UP AND SUMMARY

War Department (32)		*Third Corps Area* (18)	
No. 1. Major J. C. Montgomery		No. 1. Colonel O. W. Bell	
No. 2. Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin		No. 2. Captain T. E. Price	
No. 3. Major J. K. Herr		No. 3. Lieutenant E. Herendeen	
No. 4. Major H. D. Higley		No. 4. Major E. Shryock	
Goals earned	32	Goals earned	1
By handicap	0	By handicap	17
Total	32	Total	18

The third preliminary game (C) was played Tuesday, October 16, with Fort Myer on the long end.

LINE-UP AND SUMMARY

Fort Myer (16)		*Second Corps Area* (6)	
No. 1. Lieutenant B. G. Thayer		No. 1. Lieutenant J. P. Neu	
No. 2. Lieutenant M. E. Jones		No. 2. Major A. L. P. Sands	
No. 3. Lieutenant I. L. Kitts		No. 3. Captain W. I. Rasor	
No. 4. Lieutenant F. L. Hamilton		No. 4. Major A. G. Rudd	
Goals earned	16	Goals earned	4
By handicap	0	By handicap	2
Total	16	Total	6

As it was desired to give as many teams as much play as possible, it was decided to give a consolation prize to the winner of the three losing teams in the three preliminary games.

On Wednesday, October 17, Fort Bragg met the War Department in the semi-finals (D) of the main tournament.

LINE-UP AND SUMMARY

War Department (23)		*Fort Bragg* (22)	
No. 1. Major J. C. Montgomery		No. 1. Lieutenant James Bevans	
No. 2. Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin		No. 2. Lieutenant John Gross	
No. 3. Major J. K. Herr		No. 3. Lieutenant H. D. Baker	
No. 4. Major H. D. Higley		No. 4. Major R. C. Batson	
Goals earned	23	Goals earned	4
By handicap	0	By handicap	18
Total	23	Total	22

In the above game Fort Bragg put up a hard fight and forced the War Department to work all the way through. It was not until the last thirty-six seconds of play that the War Department tied the score, and during the extra time Major Herr put over the winning tally.

On the same date the consolation was started (game E).

LINE-UP AND SUMMARY

Fort Humphreys (19)		*Third Corps Area* (2)	
No. 1. Major R. S. Thomas		No. 1. Colonel O. W. Bell	
No. 2. Captain W. F. Tompkins		No. 2. Captain T. E. Price	
No. 3. Captain E. F. Shaifer		No. 3. Lieutenant E. Herendeen	
No. 4. Major J. A. Dorst		No. 4. Major E. Shryock	
Goals earned	17	Goals earned	2
By handicap	2	By handicap	0
Total score	19	Total score	2

Due to inclement weather, Friday's game was postponed; so the bill carried a double-header on Saturday. Fort Humphreys showed some marked polo and handily won the consolation prize in the form of a replica of a polo mallet, which was presented to the winning team by Colonel H. S. Hawkins.

LINE-UP AND SUMMARY

Fort Humphreys (11)		*Second Corps Area* (4)	
No. 1. Major R. S. Thomas		No. 1. Captain C. W. Yuill	
No. 2. Captain W. F. Tompkins		No. 2. Major A. L. P. Sands	
No. 3. Captain E. F. Shaifer		No. 3. Captain W. I. Rasor	
No. 4. Major J. H. Dorst		No. 4. Lieutenant J. P. Neu	
Goals earned	10	Goals earned	4
By handicap	1	By handicap	0
Total score	11	Total score	4

The finals of the main tournament were held the same afternoon, before an audience of about three thousand people.

LINE-UP AND SUMMARY

Fort Myer (21)		*War Department* (9)	
No. 1. Lieutenant B. G. Thayer		No. 1. Major J. C. Montgomery	
No. 2. Lieutenant M. E. Jones		No. 2. Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin	
No. 3. Lieutenant I. L. Kitts		No. 3. Major J. K. Herr	
No. 4. Lieutenant F. L. Hamilton		No. 4. Major H. D. Higley	
Goals earned	4	Goals earned	9
By handicap	17	By handicap	0
Total score	21	Total score	9

The aggressiveness and fine hitting of the Fort Myer team was of an exceptional caliber, which accounted for this well-earned victory. Silver vases were presented to the winning team by Mrs. J. L. Hines, wife of the Deputy Chief of Staff, Major General John L. Hines.

Although the War Department carried a large handicap, the general tendency of its play was to speed up the tournament, which it is believed was accomplished.

POLO IN THE NATIONAL GUARD CAVALRY OF ALABAMA

By First Lieutenant Charles M. Hurt, Cavalry

The National Guard Cavalry units in Alabama are fast becoming polo enthusiasts; teams have been organized in several of the units and in a short while will be heard from throughout army circles.

In the spring of 1923 polo was started by the instructor, 1st Lieutenant Charles M. Hurt, Cavalry. A few mallets and balls were ordered and practice was started. The units had at this time only twelve horses per troop. The greatest progress has been made at Birmingham, Ala. The Birmingham Sabers, Captain J. C. Carter commanding, have played several practice games and also participated in a game held in Birmingham between the local association and Fort Benning. The troop team played two periods against the doughboys, using their own horses, and did well.

The cavalry instructor, together with the instructor of infantry and Colonel L. O. Mathews, Q. M. C., who is on duty with the Organized Reserves, have staged two real matches in Birmingham during the summer months. On one occasion the 6th Cavalry, from Camp McClellan, played the locals, who were got together by Lieutenant Hurt, to a close score of 3 to 2. This game was held in July. In September the Fort Benning team engaged the local team and lost the first game 7 to 4; this match was held September 22. The Benning four obtained permission to stay over through the 24th and another match was played, using all local players and the Birmingham Sabers four, the Benning team winning this match by 9 to 8. These games were exhibition affairs to acquaint the local populace with the ancient sport. The Birmingham team was composed of army officers who were stationed near by, the army teams furnishing the animals.

The attendance at these games was very gratifying and the interest wonderful. Local jewelry companies gave loving cups to the winning teams. The Bromberg Trophy was won by the 6th Cavalry and presented to Lieutenant-Colonel D. D. Tompkins. The Job-Rose Trophy was won by the local team and was presented to Lieutenant Charles M. Hurt. After each match the players were entertained by the Association at buffet dinners and dances at the Country Club.

Now that each National Guard cavalry unit has thirty-two cavalry mounts, practice games are held each Sunday. These matches are of great interest to the men in the units and advertises the National Guard as it has never been advertised before. All the Regular Army units have greatly co-operated in this work and have helped the One Army Idea to a great extent. The Sixth Cavalry, by bringing their mounts and players to Birmingham and also playing with Birmingham Association against Fort Benning; the Infantry School by coming to Birmingham with their ponies and playing two matches, have practically put polo over in Alabama's metropolis.

The Alabama Cavalry comprises one complete machine-gun squadron, commanded by Major William Jeffrey, from Andalusia, Ala.; one Headquarters Troop, commanded by Captain J. C. Carter, and Troop C, 109th Cavalry, commanded by Captain Richard Burleson. These units have all made creditable records while at camp and for their annual armory inspections.

THE POLO PONY

The polo pony—the fighter of the horse world! Can higher praise be bestowed? Yet there are varieties of fighters.

The polo pony fights with his head up and his eyes open—the finest kind of fighter. He fights, too, where all the world may see.

He fights with definite rules. These rules are man-made, but soon the trained pony knows them better than all, except the very experienced riders.

He has a great sense of honor in his play. He may push and bump, but he may not kick or bite. He knows right from wrong and may often be a model to those who ride him or look on.

These remarks refer to the polo pony—not to the animal who may pass as such because he has a clipped mane and a plucked tail.

A fighter—that implies courage, grit, determination. Watch him as he comes down the field at top speed. He is following the ball—has the right of way. Across his path are others. He does not waver. He knows they should (but may not) clear the way for him. He keeps on, and they part as the waters before a racing boat.

Coming at a large angle is a pony of the other side. They are about to crash. They do crash. They bound apart as two billiard balls. Again they meet, and each puts all his heart and weight and soul into pushing the other, determined that his rider shall be the one to hit the ball.

Mallets are waving in the air like so many windmills, but into the midst of them he goes. It may mean a nasty blow on the head or the knee, but it is all a part of the great game.

It is near the end. The score is tied. An extra pound of weight, an extra foot gained may decide. Great-hearted, he gives—just for the word of praise—the stroke of satisfaction.

Can you witness or go through a hard-fought game, winning or losing, and fail to have a lump in your throat for the little fellows who minute after minute and period after period have poured forth their all with such spontaneous generosity?

Courage, fire, the will to excel—these are the foremost qualities of the polo pony. He is truly great when he combines them with the agility of the cat and the speed of the race-horse.

Deep in the hearts of the best of us, the worst of us, the most indifferent of us, there is a burning affection for this ancient friend of man and we are the better for sharing with him a brief hour.—*From the Junction City Union.*



Regimental Notes

FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Marfa, Texas

Colonel Le Roy Eltinge, Commanding

Colonel A. V. P. Anderson, the former regimental commander, being ordered to Fort Leavenworth to attend the Staff and Command School, on August 12, Colonel Le Roy Eltinge arrived at Camp Marfa and took command of the 1st Cavalry.

The regiment was in the field from September 9 to 15, in the country south of Marfa. Several problems in minor tactics were solved by the various components of the command. Men and horses returned to Marfa in excellent condition, fit for the maneuvers of the 1st Cavalry Division, which followed. The regiment acquitted itself proudly during the maneuvers and the period of sport that followed, winning its full share of battles in the field and taking several blues in the sports and races.

A number of visitors stayed here to observe the maneuvers, and were favorably impressed with the cavalry tactics employed as well as the keen and enthusiastic interest and work shown by both officers and men of the whole division.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Colonel Charles A. Romeyn, Commanding

During September the officers of the regiment, temporarily on detached service at the summer training camps, and Troop C, commanded by Captain Byrne, which was on duty at Fort Leavenworth, returned to the post.

Troop A and the band section of the Service Troop, under Captain Creed, left Fort Riley on September 9, en route to Hutchinson, Kans., by marching—a distance of 136 miles. After ten days of mounted exhibitions at the Kansas State Fair, the detachment returned to the post on the 25th. The regimental band has made itself quite popular throughout the State and is kept constantly on the move in order to fulfill engagements at various fairs and community celebrations.

Troops C and F began their range practice in September. Due to the constant calls for demonstration details, this phase of troop instruction has to be carried on under many handicaps. However, the results to date have been very satisfactory, and these organizations are well on the way to attain the required percentage. The chief function of the regiment is that of furnishing demonstrations for the Cavalry School. To date, these have varied from patrol problems to combat exercises in which a war-strength squadron, reinforced by machine-guns and artillery, was employed. Besides demonstrations for the department of tactics, the regiment also has furnished details to illustrate the various principles of musketry.

Headquarters Troop is constantly engaged in demonstrating the methods employed in cavalry communication, operating at times in conjunction with the air service. In spite of the large amount of preparation entailed, Lieutenant Thornburgh still finds time to arrange interesting night problems for his organization. Messengers are sent to cover unknown routes over difficult ground, performing missions that may fall upon the cavalry in time of actual warfare. These problems usually include from 30 to 50 miles of skillful riding and require much good horsemanship and common sense. Prizes for the winners and a K. P. for the losers have stimulated much interest among the members of the troop.

On November 10 Troop G, under Captain Pulling, left for Alma, Kans., to take part in the Armistice Day celebration. A crack monkey drill squad and demonstrations of

mounted work entertained numerous spectators. The troop returned to Fort Riley on November 15.

Each organization has developed a distinctive exhibition drill of its own, so that upon short notice we may turn out a platoon or troop to take part in the numerous complimentary rides that take place at the Cavalry School.

Troop B, under Lieutenant Comfort, furnished a mounted escort to General Dumont, of the French Army, upon his arrival at the post in October. Troop E, under Captain McDonald, performed a similar function for Major-General Duncan on November 9, during the convention of the Kansas Reserve Officers.

The following letter of commendation was received through the Commandant of the Cavalry School:

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—OFFICE OF THE COMMANDANT

FORT RILEY, KANS., *October* 18, 1923.

Subject: Commendation.

To the Commanding Officer, Troop B, 2d Cavalry (through Regimental Commander):

1. General Dumont, of the French Army, particularly requested me to express to you and to your men his appreciation of the splendid exhibition that you put up in the riding hall and the splendid appearance you made as his escort.

2. It gives me great pleasure to express my own appreciation in conveying the thanks of General Dumont.

(Signed) EDW. L. KING,
Brigadier General, U. S. Army, Commandant.

THIRD CAVALRY—Headquarters and Second Squadron, Fort Myer, Virginia

Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, Commanding

Troops E and G returned from Camp Dix and Camp Meade September 11 and 12, respectively, and on the 16th half of the cavalry went to the target range at Fort Humphreys. They were relieved by the other half ten days later, and at the completion of the rifle season the mounted pistol practice was held. All the troops had returned to the post by October 18. On the whole there was marked improvement in the rifle marksmanship records. Pistol dismounted was on a par with other years, while very excellent results were attained over the mounted pistol course, which was fired for the first time in three years. Troop G qualified 100 per cent; Troop F, 97.5 per cent, and Troop E, 96 per cent. This is all the more remarkable when it is considered that half the men were recruits and only a few days were devoted to the preliminary instruction for both men and horses.

The Third Corps Area held a rifle competition from October 13 to 19. Fort Myer was represented by a team consisting of one officer and five enlisted men, one of whom, Private Hays, Headquarters Troop, placed fourth, winning a bronze medal. At the completion of this individual competition, a team composed of the first ten officers and men shot a match against the Maryland State Rifle Association Team. This was won by the Third Corps Team, which included Private Hays, Headquarters Troop, and Corporal Lynch, Service Troop.

In the endurance ride, held at Avon, N. Y., October 15 to 20, Major Scott, the Post Quartermaster, came in second, on *Pathfinder*. Corporal Major, of Troop E, was third, on *Goose Girl*, while Major J. M. Wainwright and Private Day, of Headquarters Troop, also rode but did not finish. The whole cavalry service should be proud of the achievements of these two soldiers, an account of which appears in another part of the JOURNAL.

On October 18 a polo hop in honor of the visiting polo teams at the Washington tournament was held, while on the 30th the first of the series of monthly hops for the winter was given. The second regular hop took place on November 22.

Throughout the fall Troop F's horseshow squad has put on its now famous rough-

riding stunt at the following shows: Allentown and Bryn Mawr, Pennsylvania; Brockton, Massachusetts, and Madison Square Garden, New York City.

Two special riding hall exhibitions have been given to date, one for the convention of the Bankers' Association October 30 and the other for the convention of surgeons, November 14. December 7 a pay ride will be held for the benefit of the Army Relief Society, and this will probably be followed by the regular weekly rides on every Friday thereafter till the end of March.

Although the troops at Fort Myer have been photographed and movies shot of them hundreds of times, a new twist was furnished on October 31 and November 2. David Wark Griffith, the well-known director of "The Birth of a Nation" and "Way Down East," is producing a historical romance film called "America." In connection with this production Mr. Griffith needed some two hundred trained horsemen and horses to take the part of General Morgan's Rangers. Special costumes were provided; also old-time muskets and double lunches one day by mistake. The work consisted of pictures taken from all angles of several charges. In some instances the troops were called upon to attack a represented enemy, Britishers, firing blank ammunition at them. While it was a picnic for the officers and men, the short vigorous charges, followed by prompt reforming out of disorder and charges against a represented enemy, firing at the advancing men and horses, also proved very beneficial from a tactical standpoint.

November 1 the troops took part in the parade in Alexandria, Virginia, prior to the laying of the Washington Masonic Memorial cornerstone. The student officers from the Engineering School at Fort Humphreys visited us on November 7 to witness a demonstration given for their benefit by a combined war-strength troop.

THIRD CAVALRY—First Squadron, Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

Lieutenant-Colonel Herbert S. Mann, Commanding

The squadron left Camp Devens, en route to Fort Ethan Allen, on September 17. Troop C, which had gone to Worcester on September 14 to participate in the annual field day of Worcester Police Department, rejoined the squadron at Fitchburg, on the 17th. The march overland of 206 miles was completed in nine marching days. With the exception of about two rainy days, the weather was all that could be desired. The march was conducted along the lines indicated by the Cavalry School's pamphlet, "Cavalry Marches." The excellent condition of the men and horses upon arrival was highly indicative of the value to the service of the pamphlet above mentioned.

Immediately upon arrival, the completion of record range practice was resumed with the rifle and pistol, mounted and dismounted. The rifle record practice and record pistol practice have been completed. Troop B obtained the highest average for rifle practice, 91.66 per cent, being followed a close second by Troop C, with 91.10 per cent. In dismounted pistol firing B troop also led, with an average of 65 per cent. In the mounted pistol firing the Headquarters Detachment led the squadron with 100 per cent qualified.

The team which the squadron sent to the Worcester Horse Show was very successful, capturing four blue ribbons, the open jumping class, light and heavy weight polo pony classes, and the officers' charger class, three red ribbons, four yellow ribbons, and three whites. Too much cannot be said in appreciation of the reception and courtesy extended by the Worcester Fair authorities through the president of the horse show, Mr. John R. Washburn.

On Constitution Day, at Keene, N. H., during the march to Fort Ethan Allen, through the courtesy of the municipal authorities, outdoor exercises were held to commemorate the adoption of the Federal Constitution. Addresses were made by the mayor, the judge of the local court, and the squadron commander. Aided by a local band, a formal guard mount was executed, after which the representatives of the local government were entertained by the command.

On September 29 the officers at Fort Ethan Allen, upon invitation from the Royal

Canadian Dragoons, garrisoned at St. Johns, P. Q., attended a mounted field day staged by the dragoons. The showing made by the Canadian troopers was excellent. Our officers were afforded an opportunity to inspect the stables and quarters of the Canadian organisation, and the comments made were most favorable.

On October 31 a post horse show was held, to which the Canadian officers were invited. Fortunately, several of them were able to accept. In all mounted events but one, non-commissioned officers jumping, the cavalry took away the blue. A very pleasant reception and dance was held on that evening, with the Canadian officers as guests of honor. Their scarlet dinner jackets added a brilliant hue to the occasion.

Troop A participated in the Armistice Day parade, which was directed by the Burlington Post of the American Legion.

The Corps Area Commander, Major-General Andre Brewster, made a visit of inspection to the post on November 14. The cavalry and field artillery organisations were inspected dismounted in the morning. In the afternoon both cavalry and field artillery drills were exhibited. This was followed by exhibition riding, in the riding hall, of all the mounted officers under the direction of Lieutenant-Colonel Mann, and the program was concluded with an exhibition drill by one platoon from Troop B. Upon his departure, the General expressed himself as well pleased with his inspection and congratulated the command upon the creditable showing which had been made.

On Thursday, November 15, Troop C, with three officers, forty men, and forty-three horses, returned from Haverhill, where the troop took an active part in the three-day military maneuvers celebrating Armistice Day. The troop proceeded by rail from Fort Ethan Allen on November 10, arriving in Haverhill the same evening. The troop put on exhibitions of cavalry drill and musical drill on the 13th, which were viewed by a crowd of 10,000. On the following day the troop participated in a review of all the Regular Army troops and gave an exhibition of monkey drill, trick riding, pyramids, mounted wrestling, and Roman riding. The troop, which is a black-horse troop, gained the name of "The Black Watch Cavalry," and the newspapers referred to it by that name in all of their news items.

Sunday mornings the officers and ladies have been taking part in paper chases and controlled rides. On Sunday afternoons round robin polo games have been played. The squadron officers are determined to win the second leg on the Camp Devens cup next summer.

With the advent of the snow, which is expected daily, the post schools will be commenced, as well as equitation classes in the riding hall for officers and non-commissioned officers.

Ground is being prepared for a large outdoor skating rink, which will add to the winter sports this year.

FOURTH CAVALRY (Less First Squadron), Fort McIntosh, Texas

Colonel Howard R. Hickok, Commanding

Polo was again started at this station in September, after the summer's lay-off, due to the intense heat. The team has been working hard all the fall in preparation for a polo tournament to be held at Fort Sam Houston, Texas, in December.

Troop F of the regiment returned to this station from Camp Marfa, Texas, on November 2. This troop was in the field continuously from August 27 to November 2, marching during that time from this station to Camp Marfa, Texas, attending the maneuvers of the Cavalry Division, and returning to Fort McIntosh. The troop marched approximately 1,275 miles on the trip, and returned with horses and men in fine condition. The Corps Area Commander, Major General Lewis, inspected the post on November 5.

Supplementary target season for all troops at this station who did not fire during the regular target season began on November 13. The regiment is determined this year to qualify the maximum number of men in all three arms—the rifle, pistol, and machine rifle.

FIRST SQUADRON—Fort Sam Houston, Texas

Major Donald A. Robinson, Commanding

The post and garrison inspection of this squadron was made by Major General Ernest Hinds, commanding the Second Division and Fort Sam Houston, on September 11. The field and tactical inspection of the squadron was made by General Hinds on September 19. From September 24 to October 9 the squadron was on a practice march, during which it visited the county fairs at Seguin and Gonsales and gave exhibition drills and other exercises at these two places.

The squadron attended a review of the Second Division by Major General E. M. Lewis, commanding the 8th Corps Area, on October 10, and on that date and October 12 was inspected by the Corps Area Commander in the course of his annual inspection of troops of the Second Division and Fort Sam Houston. On October 22 the squadron and the 4th Field Artillery marched to Lewis Ranch, on the Camp Stanley maneuver reservation, and went in to camp at that place in preparation for a maneuver with the Second Division.

The squadron and the 4th Field Artillery participated in a maneuver with the Second Division on October 24 and 25 as a part of the Corps Area Commander's annual tactical inspection of that command. The squadron marched to Camp Bullis on October 26, and went into camp at that place in preparation for supplementary rifle and pistol practice. Supplementary practice was begun October 29 and concluded November 26. On the completion of supplementary practice the squadron returned to its station at Fort Sam Houston and took up its winter training program.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Lieutenant-Colonel J. T. Sayles, Commanding

The regiment returned from Marfa on October 21, after participation in the joint maneuvers of the First Cavalry Division in the vicinity of Marfa from September 24 to October 3. The regiment marched six hundred miles in going to and returning from Marfa, and considerable additional mileage was covered during the actual maneuver period. Men and animals were in excellent condition at the termination of the march, despite the poor roads and rough country traversed and the poor weather conditions encountered.

Colonel W. D. Forsyth relinquished command of the regiment on October 28, 1923, after actively commanding since August 5, 1921. The officers and men of the regiment keenly feel his loss and hope the time is not far distant when he will return to us. Before departure, the officers of the regiment presented Colonel Forsyth with a handsome gold watch as a token of their esteem.

The regiment is now engaged in supplementary season range practice. Approximately one hundred men are required to fire the record course with the rifle, and progress made to date indicates a high percentage in the number to qualify.

The junior polo team won the division championship in the junior tournament, completed at Fort Bliss on November 18, defeating the 1st Cavalry team in the final game, the score being 9 to 5. The team had previously defeated teams from the 7th Cavalry and division headquarters.

The regiment has entered a team in the Eighth Corps Area Low Handicap Tournament to be played at San Antonio during the Christmas and New Year's holidays.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Colonel Robert J. Fleming, Commanding

On September 13 Colonel Fleming returned to Fort Oglethorpe, after having spent the past summer at Camp McClellan, Alabama, as executive officer. He was accompanied by

Brigadier General Edwin B. Winans, recent Camp Commander at McClellan, who remained as his guest until the morning of September 15. This latter date marked the return of Headquarters and the Second Squadron from Camp McClellan by marching. Lieutenant-Colonel Oscar A. McGee was in command of these troops, with Major Charles W. Foster commanding the Second Squadron. The march was completed in very good time and the condition of the men and animals was excellent.

On the same date as mentioned above, Troop C, Captain Renn Lawrence, reached the post from its return march to Camp Knox. Likewise this troop was in good condition upon arriving at its destination, with men in high spirits upon return to their home station. Shortly after the return of Troop C the regimental commander received a letter of commendation from the Commanding Officer, Brigadier-General Dwight E. Aultman, at Camp Knox, Ky. Captain Lawrence and his troop were commended for their services rendered during the summer training period, for their high order of discipline and efficiency, for their instructional value, and, in closing, General Aultman stated that he would appreciate the return of this troop, should he command the camp the following summer.

The 6th Cavalry sent to Fort Des Moines one officer and four enlisted men for competition for places on the Cavalry Rifle team. In the final elimination the three men stood as follows:

Sergeant Jim Adams, Troop F, 6th Cavalry, 2d place; Captain Wade C. Gatchell, 6th Cavalry, 20th place; First Sergeant J. E. Lovely, Troop E, 6th Cavalry, 34th place.

As only 19 riflemen were taken to Camp Perry, Sergeant Adams was the only man of the 6th Cavalry to make the squad, and we are proud to say that he also succeeded in making the final ten men that represented the cavalry in the National Rifle Team Match. He made a score of 281, which was second high score on the Cavalry Team. Besides shooting as a member of the Cavalry Team, Sergeant Adams took places in the following matches:

200 Yards Free Rifle Match, 15th place; score, 94; prize, $4.00.

National Individual Pistol Match, 37th place; prize, bronze medal.

On September 18, 1923, the regiment, under Lieutenant-Colonel McGee, participated in exercises commemorating the sixtieth anniversary of the Battle of Chickamauga. The famous attack and charge up Snodgrass Hill was re-enacted, the 6th Cavalry representing the Confederates, while the R. O. T. C. students of Chattanooga, under Captain Van Dyke Ochs, represented the Union forces. After this brilliant attack had been executed, the cavalry made two charges with sabers drawn, which met with much applause from the assembled veterans. On the same date the 6th Cavalry band gave a special concert during the barbecue luncheon in Chickamauga Park, which was attended by more than 4,500 people. The following day the 6th Cavalry took part in the parade of Spanish-American War Veterans in Chattanooga. Fully 3,500 persons took part in this parade.

Among the attractions in Chattanooga the first part of October was the large Interstate Fair. The secretary of the fair very kindly included in his program a number of military races, two a day, for members of the 6th Cavalry, on the dates of October 1, 2, 3, and 4. The length of these races varied from one-quarter to one mile, and they soon became one of the most popular events of the fair. Headquarters Troop succeeded in winning the majority of places. In addition to participating in these races, the 6th Cavalry band rendered special concerts at the fair grounds on October 4 and 5.

On October 12, 1923, Brigadier-General A. J. Bowley, acting commander of the Fourth Corps Area, arrived at Fort Oglethorpe, and on the following morning he inspected and reviewed the 6th Cavalry. Following this, he witnessed a combat problem executed by the regiment in Chickamauga Park. Upon conclusion of this exercise, General Bowley went to the Catoosa target range, where he inspected the First Squadron, under Lieutenant-Colonel McGee.

There was a field day, held in accordance with our training program, on October 27. The relative standing of the troops was as follows:

Troop F, 38; Troop A, 29; Headquarters Troop, 23; Troop C, 17; Service Troop, 15; Troop E, 3; Troop G, 3; Troop B, 1.

The regiment regrets the departure of its adjutant, Captain Charles H. Dayhuff, and Mrs. Dayhuff. He was ordered to Jacksonville, Fla., on recruiting duty. Shortly afterward Captain Vernon M. Shell, who recently commanded Headquarters Troop, was appointed as the new regimental adjutant.

A fatal accident occurred on the evening of November 7, when Sergeant Norman Bidner, Service Troop, was struck by a passing truck on the La Fayette-Chattanooga Pike, dying as a result of his injuries. Funeral services were held on November 9 at 3.15 p. m.

On Armistice Sunday special services were held in the chapel at Fort Oglethorpe. Chaplain Henry N. Blanchard was assisted by the American Legion and its auxiliary, the Chickamauga High School Chorus, and the Chattanooga Musical Society, in a program which was one of the most complete in the history of the chapel. Colonel Fleming presided and made a short address, and then very appropriately introduced the principal speaker, Mr. Alex W. Guerry, former commander of the local legion post. Mrs. William Fritts and Mrs. G. F. Milton, Jr., rendered special music in addition to the special orchestra and chorus.

Armistice Day was observed at Fort Oglethorpe on November 12, when, at 12 o'clock, the national salute of 21 guns was fired, with troops and colors saluting and the band playing the national anthem. For a period of one minute before 12 all troops stood at parade rest, and upon the completion of the national anthem and salute they were paraded before the commanding officer.

The band and Troop A, 6th Cavalry, Captain W. G. Simmons commanding, participated in Armistice Day ceremonies in Rome, Ga. These troops were sent by special invitation and request, and their appearance and conduct were most highly commended by all who saw them. A letter of appreciation and commendation was also sent to the regimental commander by the city officials of Rome for the services of these troops.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

After having been in the field since September 15th the regiment returned to Fort Bliss on October 19. Both horses and men reached Fort Bliss in good condition. The regiment took the field on September 15 to participate in maneuvers of the First Cavalry Division in the Big Bend country, south of Marfa, Texas. Following an eight-day march the Seventh Cavalry entered the maneuver area as a part of the Brown Forces (Second Cavalry Brigade) under command of Brigadier General Joseph C. Castner, operating against the White Forces (First Cavalry Brigade) under command of Colonel Walter C. Short. The two-sided maneuver lasted five days. During this period Major General Robert L. Howze acted as chief umpire pro tempore. The sixth day constituted a concentration march by the whole cavalry division on Alamito Creek, Texas. There the division rested for one day before entering upon a one-sided maneuver comprising the whole division. On the following day the division, under command of General Howze, engaged in the one-sided maneuver which lasted for three days, and in which the artillery and machine guns supported the cavalry. Ball ammunition was used in this maneuver while blank ammunition was used in the former. At the termination of the one-sided maneuver, on October 3, the division marched into Camp Marfa, Texas. There the troops remained for a rest and recreation period until October 9, when the units of the First Brigade began the march to their home stations and the advance and 4th echelon of the division set out for Fort Bliss, Texas. The units of the Second Brigade began their return march to Fort Bliss on the morning of the 10th. While the troops were at Marfa

each day was devoted to competitive games and events. Each unit of the division had entries in all events. There were also civilian entrants in some events.

The baseball and polo tournaments, prize fights, horse races and steeple chase were enjoyed by both the civilians and the military. Perhaps the most interesting and spectacular feature of the sojourn was the review of the whole First Cavalry Division on October 5, by General Howze and a number of distinguished visitors. The civilian populace turned out en masse from miles around the countryside to see the review. There were many social events during the visit of the troops, the most prominent of which were the banquet tendered General Howze, his staff and officers of the division by the citizens of Marfa, and the reception and dinner dance given by General Howze and his staff in honor of the civilians and prominent citizens of Marfa.

The Seventh Cavalry acquitted itself with credit in the maneuver, and Colonel Fitzhugh Lee received very favorable comment from General Howze and General Castner. The umpires with the regiment also spoke in complimentary terms. Major Stephen W. Winfree, commanding the Second Squadron, and Major Howell M. Estes, commanding the First Squadron, were the recipients of letters of commendation from General Castner, commander of the Second Brigade.

Major-General E. M. Lewis, commander of the 8th Corps Area, and Major-General Robert L. Howze, commander of the division, commended the division very highly on its splendid showing in the maneuvers.

On September 8 the regimental baseball team played its final and deciding game for the championship of the post league. Amid applause and the rousing strains of "Garry Owen," the team came off victorious, having defeated the 82d Field Artillery 3 to 1. This game was said to be the best that had been played on the local diamond, and one of the best army games of several years. The post league trophy, a large, handsome silver cup, was presented to the team by General Howze in an excellent presentation speech. During the tournament the team was handled by Lieutenant John B. Cooley, regimental athletic officer. Shortly after the close of the tournament Colonel Fitzhugh Lee complimented the team with a banquet.

Since the return from maneuvers a division football team has been formed and put through some intensive training. This is a heavy, fast team and great things are anticipated for it. A number of Seventh Cavalrymen are on the team. Captain R. H. Gallier, 7th Cavalry, is one of the coaches.

The First Cavalry Division Junior and Senior Polo Tournament recently occupied the attention of every one. The tournament opened on November 4 and closed on November 18. The Senior Tournament was won by the First Cavalry Division Headquarters team; the Junior Tournament, by the Fifth Cavalry team from Fort Clark, Texas. The Seventh Cavalry senior team, though eliminated early in the series, made a good showing. The team: Major Stephen W. Winfree, 1; Lieutenant J. H. Walker, 2; Captain John A. Hettinger, 3; Major Howell M. Estes, 4; and Lieutenant H. E. Bodine, Jr., substitute. The junior team composed of Lieutenant W. W. Yale, 1; Lieutenant H. E. Bodine, Jr., 2; Lieutenant S. P. Walker, 3; Lieutenant John B. Cooley, 4; and Lieutenant V. F. Shaw, substitute, lost to the junior team of the 5th Cavalry after a hard-fought game by a score of 7 to 5. Three members of the junior team had never played in a game before, while a fourth member had had very little experience.

The regimental headquarters, the band, and one squadron, participated in the Armistice Day parade in El Paso. Colonel Lee was in command of the troops from Fort Bliss.

142 men and 4 officers went on November 14 to the Doña Ana target range, 28 miles north of Fort Bliss, for supplementary target practice.

The regiment is now very busy pursuing the new drill schedule, which went into effect on November 14. This includes both dismounted and mounted drill.

The Non-commissioned Officers' Club met on November 12 and elected officers for the ensuing six months. Those who will preside over the destinies of the club for the next six months are: President, Sergeant William W. Morrison; secretary-treasurer, Sam

Goldsmith; board of directors, Sergeants William L. O'Brien, Benny Witt, and Samuel S. Simonds. Colonel Lee favored the club with a few remarks.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Abraham G. Lott, Commanding

On September 12 the regiment was a complete unit. The men on special duty from the various troops were returned to their respective organisations. Troop B, which had garrisoned Camp Furlong, Columbus, N. M., since July 25, 1923, left Columbus on September 8, marching by way of Deming, N. M., and reached Fort Bliss just before noon on the 12th.

On September 15 the regiment, marching as a part of the 2d Cavalry Brigade, commenced a ten-day hike to Ryan, Texas. Upon arrival at Ryan peace conditions ceased. The following five days were spent in two-sided maneuvers against the First Cavalry Brigade. Contact was gained on the first day, and that night the regiment bivouacked at Fisher's ranch. When dawn broke the following morning and revealed to that part of the regiment not on outpost a strange guidon floating next to the regimental and national standards, with a white one and a red "C," the entire work took on a new aspect. From that time on both officers and men looked on the maneuvers enthusiastically as being genuine competition. Then followed a series of one-sided maneuvers in which the division operated against an outlined enemy.

The maneuvers as a whole were eminently successful, being far better than any before held the First Cavalry Division. This was due, first, of course, to the carefully laid plans of the division staff, and, second, to the co-operation and enthusiasm which made the carrying out of these plans possible. The skill with which the unit was led and the enthusiasm displayed by all ranks enabled the command to pass through this important phase of its training in a highly satisfactory manner.

Following the maneuver period, the regiment marched to Marfa as part of the division, where a review was held, followed by four days of sports. There again the 8th was brilliantly successful, by winning the polo tournament and every jumping event in the horse show but one, and by showing well in the majority of other events. This splendid record was marred by only one defeat, in baseball, after the team had advanced to the finals.

An instance of superb performance was given in the horse show, when entries from Troop E alone took first, second, and third places in the championship jumping event.

The march home from Marfa to Fort Bliss was commenced on October 9, with every one, from the brigade commander to the newest recruit, anxious to get there. The Sunday stop-over at Hot Wells was spent mostly in shivering and keeping dry. The sun finally reappeared about 9 o'clock Monday morning, and the remainder of the hike was quite uneventful. On arriving at the garrison, October 19, a week's holiday for men and horses was relished with much gusto.

On the first Sunday in November the regiment opened the senior tournament for the 1st Cavalry Division championship by defeating the 1st Cavalry in a hard-played game, in which the 1st Cavalry had a three-goal lead at the end of the third period. The following Tuesday the 5th Cavalry met the 8th and suffered a decisive defeat. Fortune turned on Sunday, when the teams lined up against Division Headquarters for the finals. Three games in one week was more than the ponies could stand, and the team was thoroughly outmounted throughout the game. The junior four, using the same ponies, went down to defeat in their first game the following week.

With the ending of the polo tournament the regiment's strength was materially reduced by sending 210 men and 10 officers to the new rifle range in New Mexico for firing record in the supplementary season. Upon their return, about December 1, the entire regiment will settle down for a long winter of training and school.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Major Joseph F. Richmond, Commanding

The regiment has settled into the routine work of the school year at the Cavalry School with only three vacancies in strength. Sergeant William McCoy, of the band section, and Master Sergeant Thomas Rucker were retired with appropriate ceremony, at the 9th Cavalry Club, on September 22 and November 17, respectively.

On November 16 the regiment celebrated the anniversary of its arrival at this post from the Philippines. A roast-pig dinner was served at the 9th Cavalry Mess, at which all officers of the regiment, with their wives and guests, were present. The dinner was prepared and served under the direction of Staff Sergeant Elijah McCarthy and Mess Sergeants John Bolin and Winter Washington and was very successful. Following the dinner, all repaired to the 9th Cavalry Club, where a splendid program, under the direction of Master Sergeant Thomas Rucker, assisted by Staff Sergeant Morris Brown, the band leader, was rendered. The evening closed with dancing to the music of the 9th Cavalry Jazz Orchestra, directed by Sergeant Clyde O. Andrews, of the band section.

The 9th Cavalry farm has been enlarged by the addition of a fine new, entirely modern farm house built from Funston salvage lumber by the able hands of Lorenzo P. Shaw, private, first class, and William Mershon, of Headquarters and Service Troop, respectively. The painting was done by Fred Miller, private, first class, and Walter Williams, and the plumbing was installed by Sergeant Jackson Kendall, all of Headquarters and Service Troop. Sergeant Randall Ephraim, assisted by Sergeant Lonnie Pitts, built the fences. The farm is now well stocked with hogs and cows, awaiting the call of Staff Sergeant McCarthy to be ready for the 9th Cavalry Mess.

The thirty-five sets of quarters in Rileyville (the 9th Cavalry Colony) have all been given a new coat of roofing tar. Painting of the houses is rapidly progressing, directed by First Sergeant William Smith, and Rileyville is about ready for winter. The regimental insignia has arrived, which, together with shining brass buttons and belt buckles, makes all 9th Cavalrymen fairly conspicuous when the sun is shining.

Preparations are now under way for a great Thanksgiving dinner and program, to be followed by a dance at the club. As a surprise on the E. & R. Theater program Sunday night, November 18, the 9th Cavalry band appeared and played four numbers between the pictures. Their neat appearance and splendid playing brought down the house. They responded as a final encore with the 9th Cavalry hymn.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Colonel J. C. Rhea, Commanding

Troop G returned to the post on September 9, from Camp Harry J. Jones, Douglas, Arizona, where they were engaged in salvaging that camp since February 13, of this year.

Troop B left the post on September 10 for Naco, Arizona, where they are engaged in salvaging the camp at that place.

The 25th Infantry arrived in post on September 14 for a month's stay at the target range camp in preparation for the annual tactical inspection by the Corps Area Commander. During their stay here the 10th Cavalry held several field problems in conjunction with the 25th Infantry. It was a fine opportunity for field work with another branch of the service and both the cavalry and infantry officers expressed satisfaction with the results obtained.

Several delightful dances were held at the Officers' Club with the 25th Infantry officers and their wives as our guests.

A baseball league was formed this summer with a team from each battalion of the 25th Infantry and from each squadron of the 10th Cavalry. The 2nd Squadron won

the pennant with the 1st Squadron landing in second place, which was very gratifying to the cavalrymen.

It was with great regret that we bid farewell to the infantry on October 8, when they started pounding the sand back to Nogales, Arizona.

Polo has been started with a dash this season. A handicap tournament of four teams is now in progress. At the close of this tournament a regimental four will be selected and games arranged with outside teams. Present prospects indicate that the Buffaloes will bellow very loudly this winter in polo.

Major-General Edward M. Lewis, accompanied by Lieutenant-Colonel S. B. Gleaves and First Lieutenant Morgan E. Jones, A. D. C., arrived in post on October 4, for the annual tactical inspection. On the afternoon of the fourth the general reviewed the regiment, which was followed by an inspection of the troops on the drill grounds. The next day the regiment maneuvered against an outlined enemy. We camped that night in Garden Canyon. The next day we maneuvered against the 25th Infantry. The excellent results of the inspection were very gratifying to the Corps Area Commander. The General reported that the preparedness of this command for active field service was satisfactory.

Major Frank K. Chapin has joined the regiment. Captains Lisle, Shipp, Everett, Maas, Taylor, J. B. Shannon, Dockler, and Stewart have joined the regiment from the Cavalry School. Second Lieutenant William Biddle joined recently from the Military Academy.

Colonel J. C. Rhea has been assigned to the regiment and will assume command on his arrival the end of November.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California

Colonel H. J. Brees, Commanding

From 2.00 p. m., September 9, to 3.00 p. m., September 10, a team from the regiment competed in the greatest horse race on record—a race for a distance of 259 miles, across mountains and plains, in daylight and dark. It was the last lap of the recent revival of the old pony express. Although the Army Team, as a competitor for the whole distance, had been withdrawn, as satisfactory arrangements could not be made, the Commanding General, Ninth Corps Area, ordered the 11th Cavalry to compete with the civilian team across the State of California.

The distance of 259 miles was divided into 34 relays, varying in length from one to twelve miles. It was run by the winners, the civilian team, in the elapsed time of 13 hours and 45 minutes, and by the 11th in the elapsed time of 14 hours and 5 minutes. The average speed of the winning team was 18.83 miles per hour. At least 75 per cent of the horses used by the winners were thoroughbreds, while those used by the 11th were all public mounts except two, which were private mounts and part thoroughbred.

The regiment has been engaged since October 1 in small-arms practice. Every effort is being made to better the records made last year.

Troop C, Captain H. A. Buckley commanding, returned from duty with the training camps at Camp Lewis on September 7. Troop E, Captain H. E. Pendleton commanding, returned from San Francisco on October 27, after having spent three months in giving exhibition drills, etc., at fairs in central California and at the American Legion Convention in San Francisco.

It is expected that Troop G will return to the post from San Diego next month. This will be the first time the regiment has been collected in one post since 1916.

The troops are considerably under strength and it will not be possible to carry out troop, squadron, or regimental drills until after the recruits who are *now coming* in are turned to duty. Eighty-nine recruits have reported since November 1, and every effort is being made to get them into shape to assign them to organizations.

Colonel H. J. Brees joined and assumed command of the regiment on September 17. Lieutenant-Colonel H. C. Tatum joined on August 22 and has been appointed regimental executive officer. Major C. B. Haseltine joined September 18 and has been assigned to command the Second Squadron. Captains Redner, Hawley, Gibbs, and Adamson joined the regiment after the completion of the summer training camps. Captain Gibbs has been appointed regimental plans and training officer, Captain Redner has been assigned to Troop A, Captain Adamson to Troop B, and Captain Hawley to Troop C.

The ladies of the post have undertaken the job of redecorating the Officers' Club, in order to make it more attractive and of more use to the social life of the post.

TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold and Sam Fordyce, Texas

Colonel John M. Morgan, Commanding

Colonel Morgan assumed command of the regiment on October 1, relieving Colonel Sedgwick Rice, who retires for age March 25, 1924. Colonel Rice has commanded the regiment since March, 1920. Colonel Morgan has previously served as an officer of the 12th Cavalry, having been the first commanding officer of Troop G when the regiment was organized in 1901.

At noon of September 29 the entire Fort Brown command assembled in a small grove on the reservation and tendered to Colonel Rice a farewell luncheon. Talks were made by Colonel Rice, Colonel Morgan, and other members of the regiment.

The Fort Brown football team has established a splendid record during the present season, and great interest has been shown in football by the entire command. The team now stands undefeated, having won games from Brownsville, Weslaco, Fort Ringgold, and McAllen. However, one game with Weslaco was a scoreless tie.

The Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold and Fort McIntosh boxers assisted the Hidalgo County fair at Mission, November 13, by participating in the bouts arranged by the fair. Private McCormick, of Headquarters Troop, 12th Cavalry, defeated Hansen, at Fort McIntosh, in a ten-round bout. Private Crane, of Headquarters Troop, 12th Cavalry, defeated Cowan, of Fort McIntosh, in a six-round bout. Private Cook, of Troop G, 12th Cavalry, scored a knockout in the seventh round against Private Foerster, of Troop B, 12th Cavalry. Corporal Shipman, of Troop C, 12th Cavalry, was defeated by Private Schokes, of Fort McIntosh.

Major-General Edward M. Lewis, the Corps Area Commander, accompanied by Lieutenant-Colonel Samuel R. Gleaves, General Staff, and First Lieutenant Morton McD. Jones, cavalry, conducted the annual tactical inspections of the Fort Brown and Fort Ringgold commands during the period from October 29 to November 1.

Supplementary pistol practice was commenced November 1 and has been completed with splendid results. Supplementary rifle practice was commenced and will be completed before December 15.

Renewed interest has been taken in polo by the 12th Cavalry during the present quarter. The Fort Brown and Fort Ringgold squads have been practicing consistently. On Armistice Day Fort Ringgold defeated Fort Brown at Fort Ringgold by a score of 6 to 4, and on November 14, at Mission, Fort Ringgold won from Fort Brown by a score of 6 to 2. Fort Brown was handicapped in both games, due to a fall which injured Lieutenant Maddox in the first chucker of the Ringgold game and prevented his playing again for a few days. The teams included the following players: Fort Ringgold—Captain Blatt, First Lieutenants Rodwell and Barriger, and Sergeant Yestnic. Fort Brown—Captains Houghton, Harshberger, Rathjen, and Lieutenants Buckland, Maddox, Rapp, and Burnside.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel J. J. Boniface, Commanding

Troop G, commanded by Captain Larson, has returned from a very successful trip to Fort Douglas, having been there in connection with the Reserve Officers and the C. M. T. camps. The last days of this march was made in heavy rains and deep mud. The troop arrived back at this post at 10.00 p. m., having covered 54 miles that day. The morale of the officers and men was exceptionally high and the condition of the horses was excellent. Total distance marched was about 1,000 miles.

The polo team went to the fall tournament at Fort Riley and made an excellent showing, more especially considering the fact that it was a new team and the players had had but little practice together.

Colonel Harper, who commanded the regiment for about three years, went on leave, prior to retirement, on October 1. Colonel John J. Boniface assumed command upon the departure of Colonel Harper. Prior to Colonel Harper's departure, a mounted review, followed by a dinner, was tendered him by the officers and ladies of the regiment, when he was presented with a beautiful watch and chain as a token of their esteem.

The officers and non-commissioned officers schools and equitation classes were started the first of November and every one is busy mornings and afternoons. The commissioned personnel of the regiment has been largely changed this fall, about fifteen officers having been detailed with the Organized Reserves and to the Cavalry School.

On the 5th of November sixty recruits were thankfully received, and they are undergoing instruction under Lieutenant Leng. The regiment completed the supplementary rifle firing the first of November. We are now engaged in the supplementary pistol firing, and if the blizzards hold off will complete it by the last of the year.

A ladies' riding class has been organized by Colonel Boniface, officers of the regiment having been detailed as instructors. About thirty ladies from the post and from Cheyenne are attending the classes and are very enthusiastic.

Boxing has started in the regiment and several excellent cards have been planned for the winter months. The first show was held on November 19, and a part of the proceeds is to be donated to the Cavalry Fund as the share of the 13th Cavalry. The regiment is engaged in field problems two days of each week.

Much work is being done in preparation for the regimental horse show to be held about January 15, 1924. Upon completion of this show a riding team and musical drill squad will go to Denver to compete in the annual show at that place.

During the past polo season the officers of the 13th Cavalry have played an average of two games each week during the entire season; usually there are three full teams present for all games. During October a team composed of Captain Dodge, Captain Shafer, Lieutenant Febiger, and Lieutenant Jones went to Fort Riley to take part in the two tournaments held by the Cavalry School. This team had played together very little, due to the loss of Captain Whittaker and Lieutenant Voight from the first team. In spite of the loss of these two players, the 13th Cavalry representatives made a creditable showing, winning three games out of the five which they played. Each member of the team has expressed himself as very highly pleased with the treatment accorded them while at Fort Riley.

The regiment is planning to have a big tournament at Fort D. A. Russell during the latter part of June or the first part of July, 1924. Seven teams, including Fort Riley and Fort Leavenworth, have expressed themselves as desirous of participating. An effort will be made to have the 11th Cavalry, 14th Cavalry, and several civilian teams present. One new polo field is being made in preparation for this tournament. With the present interest in polo of all officers at Fort D. A. Russell and the continued support from the citizens of Cheyenne, this tournament is sure to be a big success.

ESTABLISHED 1818

Brooks Brothers
CLOTHING
Gentlemen's Furnishing Goods

MADISON AVENUE COR. FORTY-FOURTH STREET
NEW YORK
Telephone Murray Hill 8800

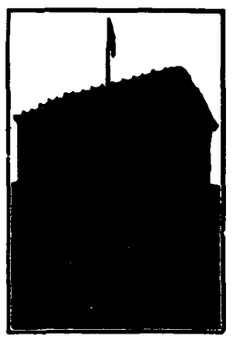
The Making to Measure of Uniforms
for Officers of
the United States Army

has been an important feature of our business since its foundation
We have always taken pains to keep abreast of new requirements and conditions
Our materials are of the best grade and our prices are moderate
Civilian Clothing Ready made or to Measure for Dress or Sporting Wear
Furnishings, Hats, Shoes, Leather Goods and Liveries

Send for "Historic American Buildings"

BOSTON
TREMONT COR. BOYLSTON

NEWPORT
220 BELLEVUE AVENUE



BROOKS BROTHERS'
Building, convenient
to Grand Central, Subway,
and to many of the leading Hotels and Clubs

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel H. La T. Cavenaugh, Commanding

From September 1 to 15 the 14th Cavalry was engaged in rifle practice, with the exception of Troop G, which was marching from Fort Snelling to Fort Des Moines.

On September 19 the 14th Cavalry, less First Squadron, left Fort Des Moines and marched to Fort Omaha, Neb., to take part in the Ak-Sar-Ben Carnival week celebration of October 1 to 6 of the city of Omaha. A few days previous to this Battery B of the 9th Field Artillery also left Fort Des Moines for the same destination, but by a different route.

The 14th Cavalry marched via Booneville, Earlham, Stuart, Adair, Atlantic, Oakland, and Council Bluffs, staying over night in each town except Atlantic. At Atlantic the regiment remained over a day to rest and put on some exhibition drills. The famous bareback squad of the Headquarters Troop, 14th Cavalry, which has exhibited at various fairs in Iowa, gave an exhibition of bareback riding and pyramid riding to music. Troop F gave their fancy saddle exhibition drill. A picked-up baseball team from the regiment played a similar team from Atlantic, and after a scoreless game for seven innings the Atlantic team scored twice to a single tally by the 14th. After the first three days, when the roads were very muddy with intermittent rains, the march was made with good weather conditions.

While in Omaha the regiment and Battery B, 9th Field Artillery, took part in the parade of October 2 in the morning and gave exhibition drills during the afternoon. *Marshal Ney*, owned by Major William H. Shepherd, 9th Field Artillery, and ridden by Captain Carmichael, 9th Field Artillery, gave an exhibition of fancy high jumping. *Red Dog*, a government horse, ridden by First Sergeant Brown, of Headquarters Troop, 14th Cavalry, was also featured in a special jumping event. The 14th Cavalry and the 9th

Field Artillery track teams took part in the 7th Corps Area field track meet held on October 2. They finished fourth and third, respectively, the 3d Infantry from Fort Snelling winning the meet and the 17th Infantry placing second.

On October 3 nearly all of the men of the 14th Cavalry were dressed up in various colonial costumes and took part in the pageant parade staged by the Ak-Sar-Ben officials. On October 4 and 5 the Fort Des Moines polo team, composed of Captains Tobin and Williams and Lieutenant Judge, of the 14th Cavalry, and Captain Lawhon, of the 9th Field Artillery, played the Infantry team of Fort Snelling, composed of three 3d Infantrymen and one former 3d Infantryman. The Fort Des Moines team had no difficulty in winning both games, the first by a score of 10 to 0 and the next by a score of 13 to 6. A beautiful trophy in the form of a silver loving cup was presented to the winning team by Mr. George Brandeis, of Omaha.

On October 6 the regiment started on its return trip. The march back was made in seven days, with no stop-over. A short march was made on October 9 to Anita, and the exhibition drills, including some extra jumping, were given in connection with the home-coming week at Anita. Since October 12 preliminary practice, followed by record practice with the pistol, both mounted and dismounted, has kept all troops busy, with the exception of Troop G, which has been engaged in rifle practice. Troop G spent the summer training period at Fort Snelling, returning to the post, after a march of 301 miles, on September 25.

The results of rifle and pistol practice and saber instruction of the 2d Squadron, Headquarters, and Service Troops of the 14th Cavalry were as follows:

RIFLE MARKSMANSHIP

Experts.	Sharpshooters.	Marksmen.	Unqualified.	Per cent.
99	70	122	11	96.38

PISTOL—MOUNTED

180	42	20	8	96.8

PISTOL—DISMOUNTED

77	72	76	77	74.5

SABER INSTRUCTION

Experts.	Excellent swordsmen.	Swordsmen.	Unqualified	Per cent.
62	75	34	12	93.44

The regular winter training program was inaugurated November 1 with, in addition to the regular instruction, two ladies' riding classes for the ladies of the post and prominent horsewomen of Des Moines, and a gentlemen's riding class for prominent Des Moines business men. On November 10 the 14th Cavalry took part in the exercises preceding the Drake-Coe football game as an Armistice Day celebration.

National Guard

MORE PUBLICITY AND MORE PEP

The following recommendations are offered by the Executive Committee, Ohio National Guard Association:

All organizations are urged to clean up and pep up; get only high-grade men into the outfits; make your drill night an attraction, not a bore; invite groups of business and professional men and other good citizens to visit the armories.

As much as possible, keep in touch with the parents of your men.

Get your outfit in good condition and show them in public as often as convenient.

Newspapers will gladly give you space for good news items; these should be available at least once a week; this is a desirable asset to any organization.

See to it that your chamber of commerce has a live military committee who understand our game; no chamber of commerce is complete without a military committee.

In communities where there are officers of the several components of the army, clubs should be formed and get-together meetings held at stated periods, with the idea of cementing the friendship of the Regular Army, National Guard, and Reserve.

Ask the Reserve Officers to make use of your armories and take part in your drills and schools. Show them that we are playing the game with them.

Several outfits have successfully put on military shows; these are interesting and instructive to the people of the community as well as the organizations presenting them.

Company reunions may be held, to interest some of the past members of the company. One company in a small town got out 110 ex-members, ranging in age from 21 to 65 years. These were divided into groups, according to age, and each group was drilled in the manual of arms and close-order movements. This reunion was held on a regular drill night of the company. Lunch was served, and much was accomplished in the way of boosting the outfit.

SERVICE TROOP, 116th CAVALRY, IDAHO NATIONAL GUARD—FALL GYMKHANA

On Armistice Day the Caldwell Service Troop entertained over 600 people at the Recreation Park at Caldwell, Idaho, in many daring and spectacular exhibitions of horsemanship. Much credit for the success of the afternoon is due to Sergeant M. Anderson, U. S. Cavalry, instructor assigned to duty with the Idaho National Guard. There were 25 men, 15 women, and 10 girls entered in the program, and some of the best marks were made by the weaker sex. Captain M. G. McConnell, commanding this unit, supervised the show. He was loyally supported by the progressive business men of the city, especially in the donation of prizes and by the management of the grounds, who loaned the space also for the period of training.

The winners of the more noteworthy classes were: Competitive high jumping, Private Collins; ladies' jumping, Miss Farrer; mounted wrestling, 1st Platoon; polo ball race, Private H. Scott; pony express race, Sergeant Hinds.

SECOND ANNUAL SHOW OF TROOP M, 1st CAVALRY, N. Y. N. G.

This interesting event was held in the armory at Geneseo, N. Y., on October 13. The program was largely attended and the competition was quite keen. Major Winthrop Chandler, M. F. H., headed the committee and Brigadier-General Harold C. Bickford, of Buffalo, and Mr. George B. Hulme, of Halesite, L. I., judged the events.

Of the more important classes the following are the winners: Model cavalry horse, to be shown in hand, *Rance*, H. V. Colt; officer's charger, *Classmate*, Mrs. W. A. Wadsworth; trooper's mount, *Montes*, U. S. Government; open jumping, *Flanders*, Colonel Donovan; championship jumping, *Flanders*, Colonel Donovan.

The Organized Reserves

151st MACHINE-GUN SQUADRON, ALBANY, NEW YORK

By Captain M. S. Williamson, Cavalry, Executive Officer

October 6th, the officers of the 151st Machine-gun Squadron, 61st Cavalry Division, journeyed to Plattsburg by motor and the following day fired a rifle and pistol match with the officers of the 26th Infantry.

The Reserve Officers were met by the Commanding Officer, Colonel Milo Corey, and his staff, on their arrival and served with a hot buffet lunch. They then went to the range, but found it too dark to do any shooting. Upon returning to the post they were treated to a fine chicken dinner, followed by an evening of the finest entertainment. The bachelor officers of the post can rightfully boast of a fine orchestra and entertainers. After this evening of general "getting together," it is felt that a stronger tie was made between the brothers from the two components. We of the Reserve feel that a better understanding may be had throughout the country by similar assemblies. This was the first shooting match that has been held in the corps area between the Regulars and Reserves. This same reserve organization has fired several matches with the National Guard in Albany.

Sunday morning we fired the rifle match, and in the afternoon the pistol match. Out of a possible 1,200 points with the rifle, the Regulars won by 200 points. Out of a possible 1,721 points with the pistol, the Regulars won by 312 points. Considering the fact that we were shooting some officers on the Reserve team that had not fired since 1918, and that we fired strange rifles after a long ride in the wind, we are not discouraged one bit by the score.

The teams were represented by eight members from each organization. The Regulars demonstrated their ability, no doubt, and it is a demonstration of what we in the Reserve, with practice, will be able to put across, we hope, in the next match. The 26th will come to Albany to fire the return match soon.

Enough cannot be said of the excellent spirit shown by the Regulars all throughout our stay. Every one, from the Commanding Officer on down, made the visit one that will long be remembered by their brother Reserve Officers. The squadron here is commanded by Major G. V. Schenck, who is corporation counsel of the city of Albany. The squadron team is composed of the following officers: Captain E. C. Niles, Lieutenants E. H. Leggett, T. W. Cassavant, R. N. Clicquennoi, H. E. Marston, J. J. Lyons, W. F. Toole, and E. B. Winchester. All of these officers are World War veterans who served with distinction.

WEARING OF THE UNIFORM BY RESERVE OFFICERS

The policy of the War Department, as will be seen from Revised Army Regulations 600-40, is to encourage Reserve Officers to wear their uniforms on all occasions where military dress is proper and in good taste. The revised regulations cover all the functions where a Reserve Officer should appear in uniform, and specifically those cases where a Reserve Officer is also a member of the Regular Army or the National Guard.

That part of these regulations relating to the wearing of uniforms by Reserve Officers is quoted, the changes from the original regulations being printed in italics.

EXTRACT

22. *Officers' Reserve Corps.*—*a.* Except as otherwise prescribed, a Reserve Officer on active duty will wear the uniform, including insignia, prescribed for officers of the Regular Army.

b. (1) Reserve Officers *not members of the Regular Army or National Guard*, not on active duty and within the United States or its possessions, may wear the uniform on occasions of military ceremony, *at social functions of a military character, at informal gatherings of the same character*, and when engaged in the military instruction of a cadet corps or similar organization, or when responsible for the military discipline at an educational institution. Such Reserve Officers may also wear the uniform when attached to an organization for target practice, when visiting a military station for participation in military drills or exercises, or *when assembled for the purpose of instruction.*

(2) Reserve Officers not on active duty, and outside the United States or its possessions, will not, except when granted authority, wear the uniform. Such officers, on occasions of military ceremony or other military functions, may, upon reporting to the nearest military attaché and having their status accredited, be granted authority to appear in uniform.

(3) Field clerks, warrant officers, and enlisted men of the *Regular Army who hold commissions in the Officers' Reserve Corps may wear the uniform of their grade in the Officers' Reserve Corps, as follows:*

(a) When undergoing voluntary training designed for Reserve Officers, which they have been authorized to take by their department or corps area commanders, and in going to and returning from this training.

(b) When attending meetings or functions of associations formed for military purposes whose membership is composed largely or entirely of officers of the Army of the United States or former members of the service.

The uniform of the reserve grade will not be worn by field clerks, warrant officers, and enlisted men of the Regular Army in an office of the military establishment or at places where they would come into contact with troops of the Regular Army, or of the National Guard when called into Federal service, except when the wearer is on active duty as a Reserve Officer or as is otherwise authorized in this paragraph.

(4) *The rules stated above will apply also to warrant officers and enlisted men of the National Guard holding reserve commissions and not on active duty as Reserve Officers, when the National Guard is called into the service of the United States; but when the National Guard is acting as a State force, these individuals may wear the uniform of their reserve rank as prescribed in b (1) above, when not actually on duty with the National Guard, except at places where, or on occasions when, the wearer would come into contact with other members of uniformed troops of the National Guard of his State.*

c. Members of the Officers' Reserve Corps will provide themselves with field uniforms with insignia of the branch in which commissioned, for use when ordered to active duty. Other than clothing, everything needed by such officers will be issued to them when on active duty, except such articles as they may have previously purchased from the War Department.

35. *General Provisions.—c* (As changed by C 1, AR 600-40). Reserve Officers and officers of the National Guard in Federal Service will wear the same insignia as officers of the Regular Army.

CAPEWELL HORSE NAILS

have for years met the needs of the most particular shoers and horse owners.

Nearly half a century of use in a great variety of work has *proved* Capewell nail superiority.

First-class shoers everywhere take pride in the fact that they use these nails.

No nail so well adapted for shoeing *Army horses* and *mules*—no nail so dependable and safe as **The Capewell.**

The Capewell Horse Nail Co.
Hartford, Conn., U. S. of A.
LEADING HORSE NAIL MAKERS OF THE WORLD

New Chart of Horseshoes

=

Printed in colors on a card 17" x 24½".

Exact reproduction of 30 shoes worn by famous trotters and pacers.

=

FREE

Address our Hartford office.

INSIGNIA
EMBLEMS MEDALS
COATS-OF-ARMS
IN BRONZE, SILVER, GOLD

HIGHEST GRADE OF ENAMEL WORK

SHOULDER PATCHES
PENNANTS BANNERS
RIBBON BADGES

Special Attention to Regimental needs.

A. H. DONDERO, Inc.
310 Machinists' Building
Washington, D. C.

ARABIAN SADDLE HORSES
Suitable for Riding, Driving, Cavalry
With Beauty, Gentleness, Endurance



Year	Entries in all Events	Distance in Miles	Test	Pounds Carried	Time Hrs.	Time Min.	Prizes Awarded Maynesboro
1913	9	154	Continuous	180	30	40	1st, 3d, 4th
1914	4	40	"	200	3	38	Stable Test
1918	2	162	"	200	31	5	Stable Test
1919	18	306	Five Days	200	51	26	1st, 3d, 4th
1920	27	306	" "	245	52	47	2d, 5th
1921	17	310	" "	245	49	4	1st, 3d, 5th
1922	22	300	" "	225	45	20	4th
1923	23	300	" "	225	45	0	1st, 6th

Winning U. S. Mounted Service Cup
Registered Gen. S. B.: Am. S. B.: Arab S. B.
At Stud Exportable duty free For Sale
MAYNESBORO ARABIAN STUD ∴ Berlin, N. H., U. S. A.

VOLUME XXXIII APRIL, 1924 NUMBER 135

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry, to the Professional Improvement of Its Officers and Men, and to the Advancement of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITED BY
GEORGE A. MOORE
CAPTAIN OF CAVALRY

Copyright, 1924, by
The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, Washington, D. C. Acting Editor, Captain George A. Moore, Cavalry. Managing Editor, Captain George A. Moore, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Washington, D. C., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

$2.50 per year; single copy, 65 cents. Canadian and foreign postage 25 cents additional

Time Limit Extended to May 10, 1924

ONE HUNDRED DOLLARS FOR THE BEST PLAN!!!

A Prize Essay Contest

Prizes, $100.00—$60.00—$40.00

An enthusiastic Reserve Cavalry Officer has in mind the general idea of an actual competitive test in the "COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS." He wants to know what the Cavalry Service thinks is the best plan for holding such a test. So he is willing to pay $200.00 in order to ascertain the service view.

THE MISSION OF THIS PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST IS TO GET A PLAN TO TEST COMPETITIVELY COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS. SUBJECT OF ESSAY: "A PLAN FOR A TEST IN THE COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS."

CONDITIONS OF ESSAY CONTEST

By a "SMALL CAVALRY UNIT" is meant any unit not exceeding a Troop in size. The plan must be practicable. It is preferable under the Plan to permit all Cavalrymen and all Cavalry units in the continental United States to compete in the actual Test. Such Test need not take place at one location or at one time. The Test could take place in the year 1924 or extend over the next several years. The fact that the approval of the *War Department for the Test under the Plan would likely be necessary and desirable must be considered.*

Essays to be not over 2,000 words, submitted to Secretary of Association not later than May 10, 1924, in triplicate, typed, double-spaced, with two-inch margin all around. Illustrations may accompany the essay. Essays will be signed with nom de plume; nom de plume and writer's name and address to be enclosed in sealed separate envelope attached to manuscript. Author's name should not appear on manuscript or elsewhere, except in the sealed separate envelope. Essays will be judged by committee of Executive Council of Association. All members of U. S. Cavalry Association are eligible to submit essays. All manuscripts will be available for use, if desired, by Editor, and if not prize-winners and if printed in CAVALRY JOURNAL, will be paid for at usual rates. In case no essays suitable, in opinion of judges, are received, no prizes will be awarded. Judges will consider, in a lesser degree, also literary merit, interest, instructional value, original thought and research, presentation, readability, and attractiveness.

KEEP FIRMLY IN MIND THAT THE MISSION OF THIS PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST IS TO GET A PLAN TO TEST COMPETITIVELY COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS.

SOME SUGGESTIONS FROM THE DONOR OF THE PRIZES FOR THE ESSAY CONTEST.

In order to get a proper answer to the question of what is the best kind of Plan for testing aggressive COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS, it would seem appropriate to take into consideration:

1. Tactical knowledge and leadership in handling one's own unit or another unit; or

2. The personal qualities of the individual, as shown in, for example, cross-country riding, boxing, polo, fencing, big-game shooting, scouting, horse jumping, athletic team development, etc.; or

3. Both (1) and (2). It would appear that the Plan should cover the following points:

1. A name should be given the Test, perhaps the name of some American Cavalry leader made famous by his leadership of a small Cavalry unit.

2. *Eligibility of Competitors.*—All Cavalrymen of the Army of the United States might be permitted to enter, or, in the event that this is found to be impracticable, some limitations might be imposed.

3. Who will be the judges of the Test.

4. Conditions of the Test.

5. *Prizes.*—Should the prizes be given to individuals, to units, or to the leader and his unit in some proportion? What should be the disposition of the prize money by the winners? Should it be understood that the winner, if an individual, will use it for some purpose directly connected with his profession, such as purchase of mounts, a hunting trip, etc.?

The donor is not dogmatic in these details; these are merely the points which arise in his mind as to the Test, plans for which are to be submitted in the Prize Essay Contest.

NOTE.—Should a feasible plan be found for such a Test, it is possible that $1,000.00 will be available as prizes to be awarded competitors in leadership.

CONTENTS FOR APRIL, 1924

VOL. XXXIII, No. 135

Page

THE MANEUVERS OF THE FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION, SEPTEMBER-OCTOBER, 1923 133
Major Adna R. Chaffee, General Staff Corps.

NATIONAL GUARD AS AID TO CIVIL AUTHORITY 163
Brigadier-General Jacob F. Wolters, 56th Cavalry Brigade.

COLONEL ALONZO GRAY'S UNIQUE PREDICTION IN 1910 172

THE PONY EXPRESS 173
First Lieutenant George L. Caldwell, Veterinary Corps.

THE DOMICILE OF PERSONS IN THE ARMY AND THE NAVY 180
Albert Levitt.

A FEW SUGGESTIONS FOR HANDLING TWO- AND THREE-YEAR-OLD COLTS 187
Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service, Quartermaster Corps.

OBTAINING AND MAINTAINING ARMORY DRILL ATTENDANCE 191
Captain Russell L. Test, 176th Field Artillery.

THE OHIO CAVALRY 195
Brigadier-General Paul L. Mitchell, 54th Cavalry Brigade.

BY THEIR HORSES YE SHALL KNOW THEM 199
Ex-Cavalryman.

1924 EASTERN ENDURANCE RIDE 204

GERMAN CAVALRYMEN AS PRISONERS OF WAR IN FRANCE 212
Lieutenant-General von Poseck, German Army.

EDITORIAL COMMENT:

AN APPRECIATION OF MAJOR HOWE—CO-OPERATION—FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION MANEUVERS—SENDING CONTRIBUTIONS FOR PUBLICATION EARLY 215

TOPICS OF THE DAY:

THE CAVALRY FUND—VALUABLE ACCESSIONS TO THE LIBRARY OF THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—PRIZE ESSAY TIME LIMIT EXTENDED—ORGANIZATION AND FUNCTIONS OF THE VETERINARY SERVICE IN CAMPAIGN—MINUTES OF THE MEETING OF THE BOARD OF SPONSORS OF THE 1924 (EASTERN) ENDURANCE RIDE—RIDES 139 MILES IN 17 HOURS' RIDING TIME—ONE HUNDRED PER CENT SUPPORTERS—ARTICLE ON FEEDS AND FEEDING—SABER PAD APPROVED BY WAR DEPARTMENT—SERVICE HEADQUARTERS IN ST. LOUIS, MO. 217

NEW BOOKS REVIEWED 222
FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS 226
A GREAT NEED (BOOK ON POLO) 236
POLO 237
THE CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES 240
REGIMENTAL NOTES 241

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President:

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry.

Vice-President:

Brigadier-General STUART HEINTZELMAN, A. C. of S., G-4.

Acting Secretary and Treasurer:

Captain GEORGE A. MOORE, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel WM. J. GLASGOW, Cavalry.
Colonel JAMES H. REEVES (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Colonel HERBERT B. CROSBY, Cavalry.
Colonel LEON B. KROMER (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Colonel WILLIAM P. DRAPER, Cavalry Reserve Corps.
Colonel ARTHUR C. COLAHAN, 103d Cavalry.
Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry.
Major JOHN C. MONTGOMERY (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Major JONATHAN M. WAINWRIGHT, 3d Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

(1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.

(2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.

(3) Honorary.

Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for a least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL; and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for $2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of $2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.



Courtesy of Lieutenant-Colonel W. A. Graham, J. A. G. D.

Hunting and Camping Party from Fort A. Lincoln, D. T., at Little Heart River, 1875

Left to right:

1. Lieutenant James Calhoun, 7th Cavalry
2. Mr. Sweet (son of Leonard Sweet, Chicago)
3. Captain Stephen Baker, 6th Infantry
4. Boston Custer (youngest brother of General Custer)
5. Lieutenant W. S. Edgerly, 7th Cavalry
6. Miss Watson
7. Captain Myles W. Keogh, 7th Cavalry
8. Mrs. Jas. Calhoun (sister of General Custer)
9. Mrs. George A. Custer (nee Elizabeth Bacon)
10. General George A. Custer
11. Dr. H. O. Paulding, M. C., U. S. A.
12. Mrs. A. E. Smith
13. Dr. G. E. Lord, M. C., U. S. A.
14. Captain T. B. Weir, 7th Cavalry
15. Lieutenant W. W. Cooke, Adjutant, 7th Cavalry
16. Lieutenant R. E. Thompson, 6th Infantry
17. Dr. Miss Wadsworth, of Chicago
18. Captain Thomas W. Custer, 7th Cavalry
19. Lieutenant A. E. Smith, 7th Cavalry

Nos. 1, 7, 15, 16, 17, 18, and 19 were killed at the battle of the Little Big Horn, June 25, 1876.

Nos. 2, 12, and 18 were guests of General and Mrs. Custer.

THE

CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXIII APRIL, 1924 No. 135

The Maneuvers of the First Cavalry Division, September-October, 1923

BY

Major ADNA R. CHAFFEE, General Staff Corps

(Assistant Chief of Staff, G-3, First Cavalry Division)

SINCE the organization of the First Cavalry Division, in September, 1921, the annual training scheme of the division, as prescribed by General Howze, has contemplated the assembly of the division in the fall for a period of field inspection and divisional maneuvers. In 1922 preliminary plans were considered having in view the concentration of the division near Deming, New Mexico. Due to the movement of the 1st Cavalry from Douglas to Marfa and the exchange of the 5th for the 10th Cavalry among the regiments of the division, the attempt to bring about a concentration in this year was abandoned. The division was forced to content itself with maneuvers near Fort Bliss, in which one brigade was merely outlined.

The Division Commander has felt that the main reason for having an organized cavalry division among the units of the army is to be enabled to concentrate it annually, first, to give instruction to division, brigade, and regimental commanders in the handling of their units for protracted periods in the field; second, to give officers of all grades a visualization of the employment of cavalry under war conditions; and, third, to give instruction to all grades in the service of supply, as nearly as possible under war conditions.

The first consideration for the successful maneuvers of a cavalry force of this size is an adequate terrain. During early April General Howze, accompanied by a staff officer, visited three areas in the vicinity of Marfa which seemed to be available for maneuvers. The area between Shafter, Casa Piedras, and the Rio Grande, while offering good watering facilities along the river and a terrain that could not be damaged by maneuvers, was considered too far from railhead and likely to be excessively hot in late September. The ranchers in the triangle Marfa-Fort Davis-Apline would not fall into line. Finally, all efforts were bent on securing an area immediately to the south of Marfa, lying generally between Marfa-Ryan-Shafter-Alamito. (See Sketch No. 1.)

On June 14 Colonel A. V. P. Anderson, commanding the 1st Cavalry at Marfa, informed the Division Commander that he could depend on the use of this area for maneuvers without any expense to the Government. The extent of the area is roughly that of the land area of the State of Rhode Island. It is practically free from trees except along a few water-courses. Near the G., H. & S. A. R. R., on the north, it is a level plain, from which rises gradually to the south a succession of east-and-west ridges, terminating in the foothills of the Chenati and Cienega Mountains. The drainage of the area is, in general, from west to east. A succession of small, dry arroyos, which after rains become streams to be reckoned with, feed Alamito Creek, which flows along the east boundary of the maneuver area. The whole region is a fine grass country, supporting some of the best herds of Highland Hereford cattle in west Texas. The footing in the draws is soft and springy, while that on the top of the knolls is covered with small stones. The higher hills are rocky and difficult for mounted troops. Water in the area was from one fairly reliable stream and scattered windmills, earth tanks, and dams. The Marfa-Ryan, Marfa-Ruidoso, Marfa-Presidio, and Marfa-Lajitas roads extend through the area to the west, southwest, and south like the fingers of a hand. All of these, being suitable for motor traffic, furnished avenues of supply.

In June a rapid reconnaissance of the area was made to draw up the problems in a general way and to further assist in gaining the good-will of the ranchers toward the maneuver project. At the same time the engineers of the division started work on a survey of the maneuver area. The existing Progressive Military Map was found to be excellent as to natural topography, but roads, fences, and names of localities had changed to such an extent that a new map was necessary. This map was reproduced for the maneuvers by the Topographical Section of the office of the 8th Corps Area engineer upon a scale of 1/125000 for distribution to include platoon leaders, and 1/21120 for use of artillery, machine-guns, and staffs.

In August staff officers again visited Marfa, riding the maneuver area on horseback, to fit the details of problems to the ground, to see that all ranchers understood just what was to happen, so that there would be no last-minute controversy, and to arrange matters of supply.

As soon as the field-work on the maneuver maps was completed, the engineer detachment constructed about twenty-five additional gates in the fences of the area to be traversed by the problems and located these and all other existing gates accurately on their maps. Just prior to the arrival of troops in the area, all gates were flagged so that they would be visible for some distance to troops and patrols.

The 1st Cavalry Brigade, less the 1st Cavalry, left Fort Clark on September 10 and arrived in Marfa on September 22, covering a distance of 283 miles. Pack Train No. 22 (Q. M. C.) and Troop F, 4th Cavalry, accompanied this column. During the early stages of the march the heat, particularly in the narrow gorges near the Pecos River, was very trying on men and horses. Heavy rains at night made the roads difficult. During the latter stages the



MAJOR GENERAL ROBT. L. HOWZE, COMMANDING FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION



OBSERVERS: Left to Right—Col. W. J. Glasgow, Office Chief Cavalry; Brig. Gen. Paul B. Malone, 2d Division: Maj. Gen. Ernest Hines, Comdg. 2d Division: Colonel Charlton, British Military Attache; Maj. Gen. Edward M. Lewis, Comdg. 8th Corps Area: Brig. Gen. Edward L. King, Commandant Cavalry School: Maj. Gen. Robt. L. Howze, Comdg. 1st Division.



CHAMPIONSHIP TEAM, FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION, DIVISION HEADQUARTERS

Left to Right—1. Major Adna R. Chaffee. 2. Colonel K. D. Holliday. 3. First Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin. 4. Major W. W. Erwin. Substitute, Captain H. E. Featherstone.

column encountered rocky roads which made quite a few horses appreciably footsore on entering Marfa. A day's rest on the soft ground at Marfa worked marvels, however, in remedying this condition.

Owing to the inability of the G., H. and S. A. R. R. to supply tank cars (at several halts) sufficient for the whole Fort Bliss command, the troops from Fort Bliss marched towards Marfa in two columns, both columns leaving Fort Bliss on September 15. On this date the 2d Cavalry Brigade, with a detachment of the division trains, marched 30 miles to Fabens, while the special troops, artillery, engineers, and the remainder of the trains halted at Ysleta, 13 miles. The latter thereafter followed the 2d Cavalry Brigade at one day's march until Valentine was reached. Here the brigade rested one day, September 22, while the second column caught up, and on the 23d the two columns moved together to Ryan.

On September 19 and 20 a motor convoy consisting of the 27th Ordnance Company, 49th Motor Transport Company, and the motors of the 2d Division Air Service, attached to the 1st Cavalry Division, were sent through from Fort Bliss to Marfa. On the 20th the planes of the air service were flown to Marfa, covering in two hours the distance which consumed eight days for their comrades on the ground.

The Fort Bliss columns were favored by excellent weather. Both men and animals reached Ryan in excellent condition to start on the maneuvers.

Radio formed the principal means of communication between Division Headquarters, the home stations, and the several columns on the march. In the early stages, when the distance between Division Headquarters and the 1st Cavalry Brigade was too great for direct communication, messages were sent back by the field radio sets with each column to motor sets left at their home stations. The Corps Area net then handled the message between Fort Bliss and Fort Clark, and it was again relayed by the motor set at the station to the field set of the addressee. The motorized sets, when the relay need had passed, promptly caught up to their columns. The 13th (now 1st) Signal Troop superimposed a service buzzer on the Western Union circuit paralleling the line of march and by this means disposed of a large volume of traffic between the moving headquarters of the division, Fort Bliss, and Camp Marfa. It is worthy of note that this instrument was used for direct communication between Fort Bliss and Marfa, a distance of 200 miles of wire line, without other battery equipment than that contained in the instrument itself. This is believed to be a record employment of the service buzzer.

In order that the two cavalry brigades, who were to oppose each other in the two-side maneuver, should have as little knowledge as possible of each other's progress towards Marfa, separate field and administrative orders governing their marches were issued by the division. In addition, each was given a separate field code and each a separate radio wave-length. One of the radio sets of Division Forward Echelon worked entirely with the 1st Cavalry Brigade, while the other set handled the business directly by the 2d Cavalry Brigade and the Division Rear Echelons.

To economize rail shipments, forage and rations to the greatest extent possible had been accumulated in advance of the Fort Bliss column by means of Motor Transport Company No. 49 and the division trains. Nevertheless, some hay and wood shipments had to be made for the Fort Bliss columns and rations, in addition, for the 1st Cavalry Brigade between Fort Clark and Marfa.

All columns were on a garrison-ration basis until Marfa and Ryan were reached. When the maneuvers started, on September 23, all troops were placed on a field-ration basis and a daily automatic supply was inaugurated.

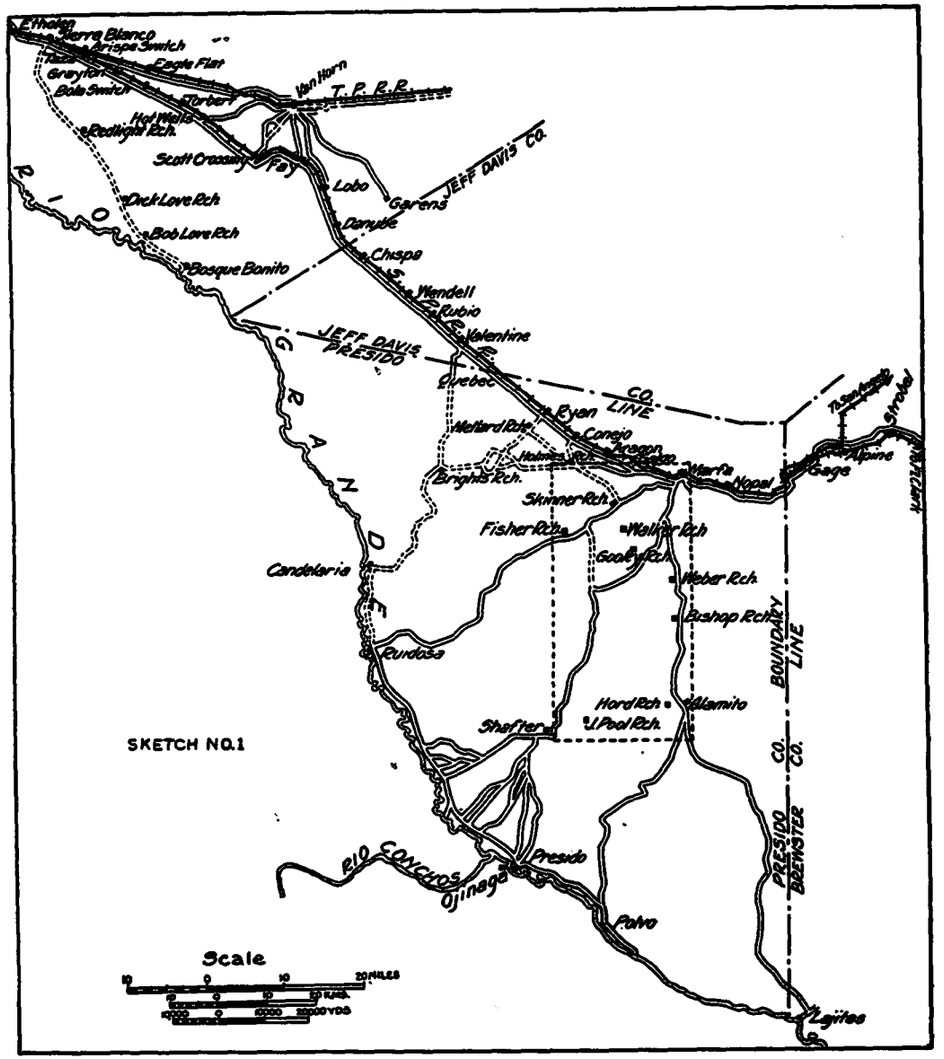
The Commanding General of the 8th Corps Area, Major-General Edward M. Lewis, planned to utilize the maneuvers to make his annual tactical inspection of the troops of the 1st Cavalry Division. Accompanied by several staff officers, he arrived in Marfa on September 24 and was thereafter quartered in the field with the Advance Echelon of Division Headquarters.

In order that the conduct of troops on the private property constituting the maneuver area should be closely controlled, wanton damage eliminated, and the restrictions imposed by certain land-owners observed, a "Terrain Guide" had been prepared in advance, printed, and distributed down to platoon leaders. This little book, also, by reference to the numbered water sources on the maneuver maps, gave a description of the water supply of the area. It was thus of value in aiding the commanders on both sides to determine the night dispositions of their commands. The general rules governing the tactical conduct of the maneuvers, giving the markings of opposing forces, the umpire system of control, umpire communications, rules for contact, etc., were also drawn up in advance and distributed to platoon leaders. Troop commanders were required to explain these documents, as well as the tactical situations, in detail to their men. It is believed that the interested attitude of the man, favorably commented upon by many observers, was largely due to this knowledge of what was going on.

The Division Commander, Major-General Robert L. Howze, was Chief Umpire of the two-side maneuvers. He was assisted by certain members of the division staff. The Advance Echelon of Division Headquarters functioned during this period as the headquarters of the Chief Umpire. The 8th Corps Area detailed sufficient officers as assistant umpires to provide one with each brigade, regimental, and separate unit headquarters and one with each squadron. These officers, after a conference with the Chief Umpire in Marfa on the evening of the 23d, joined the units to which they had been assigned either at Marfa or at Ryan.

Other observers and guests, both military and civilian, were quartered in the Officers' Club and "The Jones House" at Camp Marfa. These visitors were brought daily, by automobile, to a point near the scene of probable contact. Here they found their horses and orderlies and, later in the day, a lunch. A detachment of Troop F, 4th Cavalry, looked after the visitors' quarters and mess in Marfa, while the remainder of the troop cared for their horses and supplied the orderlies in the field, moving from place to place with the Advance Echelon of Division Headquarters.

The period of two-side maneuvers was continuous, day and night, from September 24 to 28, inclusive. On September 23 the following general situation was issued to all troops (see Plate No. 1):



"BREWSTER COUNTY forms a WHITE STATE, which has just declared war upon a BROWN STATE whose boundaries are those of EL PASO, JEFF DAVIS, and PRESIDIO COUNTIES. The country south of the RIO GRANDE (RED) is friendly to the WHITE STATE and is momentarily expected to enter the war as an active ally on that side.

"WHITE forces are reported to be concentrating near ALPINE, and on September 20 a WHITE cavalry regiment was known to have crossed the frontier and seized MARFA, collecting supplies and information in that region.

"On the above date a strong BROWN cavalry force was reliably reported to have reached LOBO from the northwest, and other BROWN forces were reported to be assembling near SIERRA BLANCA and HOT WELLS."

At the same time WHITE and BROWN special situations were issued to the respective sides, as follows:

WHITE.—"The 1st Cavalry Brigade is attached to the 1st (WHITE) Infantry Division. The 1st White Division is assembling at ALPINE.

"On September 20 the 1st Cavalry was pushed forward from ALPINE to MARFA to gather supplies at that point and to reconnoiter to the north and west.

"On September 22 the remainder of the 1st Cavalry Brigade arrived in MARFA.

"The WHITES have information that a strong force is being concentrated at OJINAGA by the RED STATE south of the RIO GRANDE, and that the RED STATE intends to declare war on the BROWN STATE on the 23d of September."

BROWN.—"The 1st Cavalry Division (BROWN), consisting of the 2d Cavalry Brigade and 13th Cavalry Brigade (imaginary), concentrated at SIERRA BLANCA, covering the detrainment of BROWN infantry at that point.

"The division then pushed forward to the south and east and on September 23 the 2d Cavalry Brigade and Divisional Troops are at RYAN and VALENTINE. The 13th (BROWN) Cavalry Brigade has been detached and on this date is watching the crossings of the RIO GRANDE in the vicinity of BOSQUE BONITO, where hostilities with the RED STATE south of the RIO GRANDE are momentarily expected."

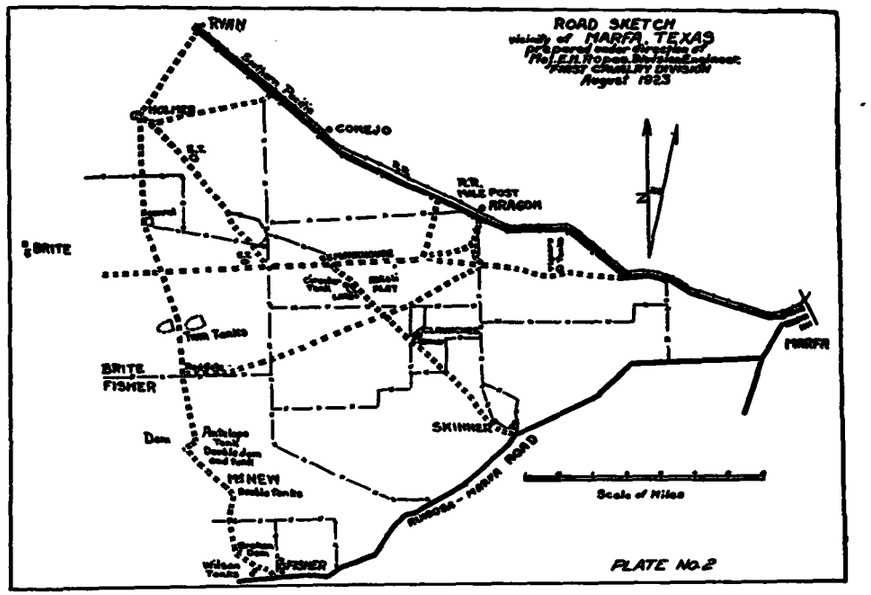
The underlying idea of the two-side maneuver, therefore, was for the WHITE side to keep open the OJINAGA-SHAFTER-MARFA road as a means of communication between the WHITE and RED forces, and for the BROWN side to prevent communication on that road. However, it was necessary from a training viewpoint, to modify the daily missions in such a manner as to give to both sides the opportunity for attack and defense.

The operation instructions for the following day were sent each evening to the respective brigade commanders in the form of brief messages, ostensibly from the WHITE Division Commander at Alpine or the BROWN Cavalry Division Commander at Ryan. These were transmitted by radio, wire, or messenger through the message center of the Chief Umpire's headquarters.

OPERATION OF SEPTEMBER 24 (SEE PLATE No. 2)

The problem of this day was intended to illustrate, on the part of the BROWNS, an advance in the presence of the enemy, and on the part of the WHITES a reconnaissance and delaying action by a reconnoitering squadron and the assumption of a position in readiness by the WHITE brigade.

Accordingly, orders were issued on the 23d to General Castner, commanding the 2d Cavalry Brigade at Ryan, which informed him of the RED declaration of war and directed him to march on the 24th with his brigade, reinforced by the 82d Field Artillery Battalion (Horse), (less one battery), Company A, 8th Engineer Battalion (mounted), and a detachment of Ambulance Company 43, from Ryan, via Holmes Ranch, to seize Fisher's Ranch and the wells in that vicinity and be prepared to hold them until the arrival of the 13th Cavalry Brigade.



The orders issued on the 23d to Colonel Short, commanding the 1st Cavalry Brigade at Marfa, informed him of the arrival of a force of BROWN cavalry at Ryan and directed him to send a reconnoitering squadron to Well 16 on the afternoon of the 23d, with instructions for this squadron to scout towards Ryan and Conejo early on the morning of the 24th. If the BROWNS were discovered to be moving to the south of the railroad from Ryan or Conejo, the WHITE commander was instructed to move with the remainder of his brigade via Thaxton (47) to hold the hostile force west of the line Skinner

(28)-Walker (36)-Sauz (8), covering the junction of the Presidio and Lajitas roads, 7 miles south of Marfa. He was informed that WHITE infantry from Alpine would relieve his command in Marfa on the 24th, and, further, that his brigade would be reinforced on the evening of the 24th by a battery of horse artillery, a company of mounted engineers, and part of an ambulance company. As the problem was intended to be largely one of ground reconnaissance, each side was allowed but one air reconnaissance on this date. These were scheduled at hours likely to give indecisive information.

The 2d Squadron, 1st Cavalry (Major Tillson), arrived at Well 16 at 2:20 p. m. September 23. Here it bivouacked for the night. Officers' patrols were started out early next morning. These reached Fisher's and Skinner's ranches about 5:45 a. m., and shortly after were on the high ground north of these ranches overlooking the approaches from the north. The squadron itself marched from Well 16 at 8:00 a. m., arriving at Fisher's at 10.15 a. m. At 9:00 a. m., while en route, it received word from its patrols that a BROWN squadron had marched south from Ryan at 7:40 a. m.

The advance guard of the BROWN reinforced brigade, consisting of the 1st Squadron, 8th Cavalry (Major Merchant), Troop C, 2d Machine-Gun Squadron, and 1 section, 82d Field Artillery, cleared Ryan at 7:40 a. m., marching towards Fisher's. After covering 10 miles, it passed Fisher's north gate at 10:00 a. m., entering the maneuver area. At this point it made its lateral deployments and, in addition, officers' patrols were pushed out towards Sauz, Fisher's, and Skinner's.

A succession of low ridges paralleled on the east the route of the BROWN advance from Fisher's north gate to the ranch house. The WHITE squadron, striking the BROWN advance guard three (3) miles north of Fisher's ranch house, utilized these to cover its successive withdrawals from positions on the east flank of the BROWN advance. Between 11:20 a. m. and 12:15 p. m. it was thus engaged in a series of mounted and combined actions terminating with the squadron taking up a position on the high hills immediately north of the ranch house. In this running fight the BROWN advance guard was aggressively handled and the march of the main body was not appreciably delayed.

Utilizing part of the 7th Cavalry from the main body, the BROWNS promptly turned the WHITE squadron out of its position north of Fisher's. The WHITE squadron withdrew at 1:30 p. m. to a position south of Well 10, and later to a ridge two miles south of Fisher's. The squadron had been accompanied by radio and attached motorcyclists, and at 8:30 a. m. word of the BROWN advance from Ryan was in the hands of the WHITE commander in Marfa. The 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, was dispatched at 9:00 a. m. towards Skinner's to observe the Ruidoso road and prevent BROWN advance towards Marfa along that road. At 9:40 a. m. the remainder of the brigade marched towards Sauz, reaching there at 1:05 p. m. From here the remainder of the 1st Cavalry, with a machine-gun troop, was pushed forward in support of its 2d Squadron, on the ridge two miles south of Fisher's.

In accordance with its orders, the BROWN force halted at Fisher's, securing the water there and along the Ruidoso road in the vicinity of the ranch. Towards evening the WHITE force, with the exception of one squadron, withdrew to Sauz for the night. The 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, with one platoon, 1st Machine-Gun Squadron, withdrew to Well 16. In the afternoon, Battery B, 82d Field Artillery, Company B, 8th Engineer Battalion, and Ambulance Company No. 43 (less detachment), reached Thaxtons (47), after having marched from Ryan via Marfa, and came under the WHITE command.

The problem on this date was characterized by good patrolling on both sides; by rapid and skillful mounted maneuvering on the part of the WHITE reconnoitering squadron; and by good combination of fire and mounted maneuver on the part of the BROWN advance guard. The section of artillery with the advance guard was offered several good targets, but very quick work was necessary to take them under fire. The rapidity with which the machine-guns of the advance guard were handled was commented upon by several observers, General Malone stating, "This was the fastest work of machine-guns I have ever seen."

The Advance Echelon of Division Headquarters moved during the day to Skinner's, where the Chief Umpire's camp was established for the night. The Rear Echelon moved from Ryan to Marfa, the personnel sections of brigade and regimental 4th Echelons being attached to it. The 8th Engineer Battalion (less two companies) and the remainder of the division trains also marched from Ryan to Marfa. Wire communication was established between the two echelons of Division Headquarters and the brigades by cutting in with telephone and service buzzer on the existing commercial lines in the area.

During the night patrolling was active and several small patrol encounters occurred in the darkness. Each side located the main night camps of the other.

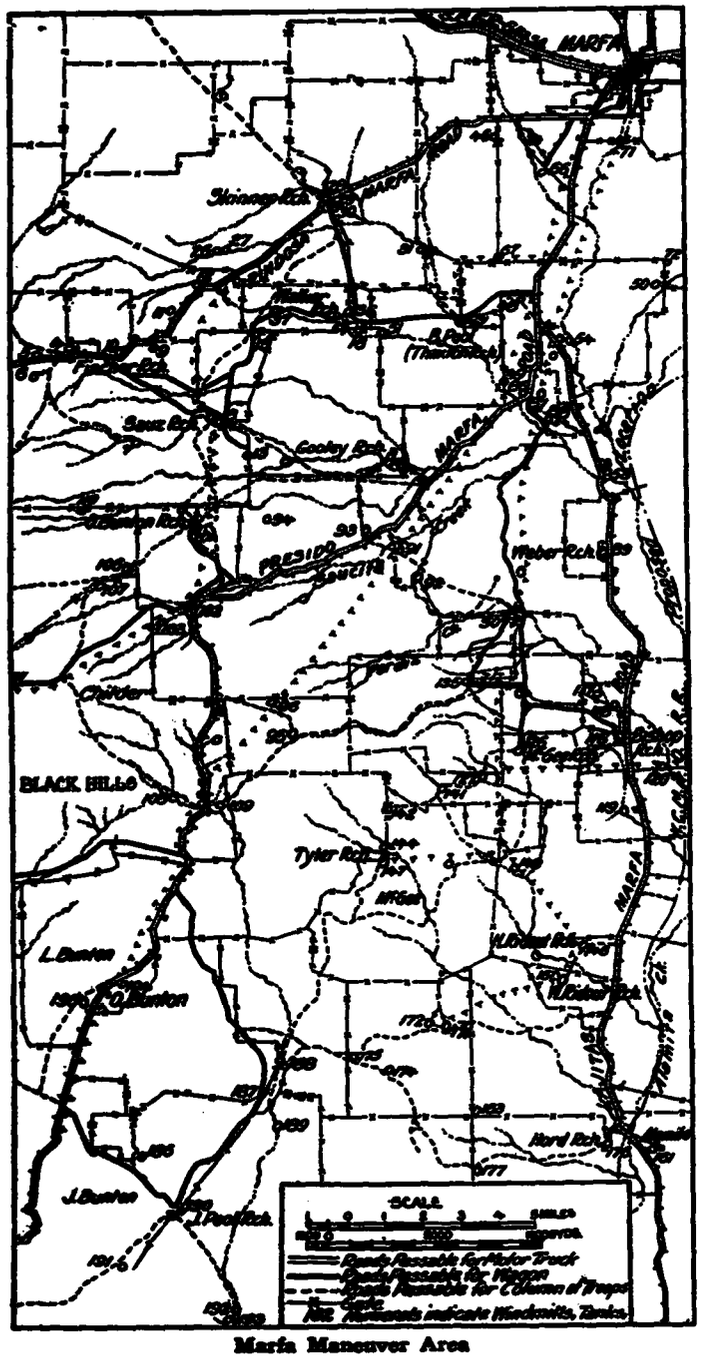
OPERATION OF SEPTEMBER 25 (SEE MANEUVER MAP)

For the problem of this date it was desired to give the offensive mission to the WHITES. The following orders, in substance, were therefore issued on the evening of the 24th to the WHITE commander:

> "The head of a RED column from PRESIDIO is expected to reach point 102 of the PRESIDIO-MARFA road tomorrow, the 25th instant, at 6:00 p. m. You will attack tomorrow and drive to the north the hostile cavalry now near FISHER'S RANCH to clear the RUIDOSO road and to prevent any interference by hostile cavalry with our movements on PRESIDIO road. The line DAM 15-CARLTON TANK (7)-110 must be secured through the day at all costs. Division Air Service will reconnoiter over your front at 7:30 a. m. and 2:00 p. m. tomorrow."

The essential part of the order sent to the BROWN commander on the same evening was as follows:

> "Our 13th Cav. Brig. is expected to arrive at RYAN from BOSQUE BONITO late tomorrow. You will maintain your present positions,



Marfa Maneuver Area

covering the water at FISHER'S RANCH tomorrow. Reconnaissance towards CUEVA (111)-GOOLEY (14)-MARFA. Div. A. S. will reconnoiter over your front tomorrow at 8:00 a. m. and 3:00 p. m."

Two high hills a few hundred yards east and north of the Fisher Ranch house dominate the country in all directions for several miles. These came to be known as "Fisher's Hills."

The BROWN commander, to take advantage of the observation which these hills afforded and because of their purely defensive possibilities, decided to make a close-in defense of the ranch at the foot of these hills and astride the Ruidoso road. He placed a squadron of the 8th Cavalry, facing south, on a low ridge to the south of the Ruidoso road, with its right at Well 6 and its left 500 yards each of the entrance gate of the ranch. From here a squadron of the 7th Cavalry, with a machine-gun troop, prolonged the line to the northeast along the rising ground to the east of the ranch house and north of the Ruidoso road. The remainder of the 7th Cavalry and 2d Machine-Gun Squadron were assigned to the defense of a supporting line on eastern slopes of the Fisher Hills immediately north of the ranch house. Positions of the artillery were also located on this high ground. The remainder of the 8th Cavalry was held in reserve in the draw just west of the house. Accordingly, the 7th Cavalry and 2d Machine-Gun Squadron were withdrawn at 7:00 a. m. from their night bivouacs near the wells, two miles east of the Fisher house, along the Ruidoso-Marfa road, leaving only standing patrols in their night outpost positions on the road towards Sauz.

The WHITE force based its plans for attack on information obtained during the night and early morning. It advanced towards Fisher's with its regiments abreast, the 5th Cavalry to the east, and the 1st Cavalry to the west of the Sauz-Fisher road. One squadron, 5th Cavalry, was brought up from Well 16 to Dam 15, where it was held in reserve in rear of the right flank. Each cavalry regiment had a machine-gun troop attached, and one machine-gun troop was held in reserve. The WHITE artillery went into position on the ridge just east of Sauz. Here, also, was the Brigade Command Post. The WHITE advance started at 7:40 a. m.

From 8:45 a. m. to 9:15 a. m. the advance of the 5th Cavalry was delayed, due to its approach over ground upon which the BROWN artillery had excellent observation at a range under 4,000 yards. At 9:25 a. m. the regiment reached a position about 2,500 yards each of Fisher's, covering the Ruidoso road. From here it could make no further progress forward, being under the fire of the BROWN artillery and machine-gun and rifle fire from the 7th Cavalry. After a mounted approach, the dismounted attack of the 2d Squadron, 1st Cavalry, on the right of that regiment, near the Sauz-Fisher road, was similarly stopped. The WHITE artillery had been put into position at too long range to effectively support these attacks. When this information reached the WHITE commander the battery was moved forward about one mile, at 11:15 a. m., to support the attacks of the 1st Cavalry. The 1st

Cavalry (less 2d Squadron) had marched, under cover of the draws, to a position 1½ miles northwest of the Carlton Tank (7). Here it halted and sent patrols to locate the BROWN right. Between 11:30 a. m. and 12:50 p. m. this part of the regiment made three mounted attacks against the squadron of the 8th Cavalry in position south of the Ruidoso road, at Fisher's. The first attack, purely mounted and without fire support, failed. The second attack had the support of automatic rifles, but the machine-gun support failed, by a few seconds, to come in at a decisive time. The attack was partially successful, two troops of the 8th Cavalry being sent back to reform on the road. The third attack, supported by co-ordinated fire of automatic rifles, machine-guns, and artillery, was successful and cleared the remainder of the 8th Cavalry squadron from the ridge south of the road.

At 11:20 a. m. the Chief Umpire, seeing that the WHITE dismounted attacks had come to a standstill and not approving of the initial defensive positions of the BROWNS, caused orders to be sent to the BROWN commander to counter-attack and retake the wells east of Fisher's, along the Ruidoso road, which had been abandoned in the early morning. The BROWN commander planned to execute this by moving northeast from Fisher's, along the high ground, and then to strike south, across the Ruidoso road, against the WHITE right, near Well 10. The 7th Cavalry was in motion for this purpose and the BROWN artillery was changing positions, when the third mounted attack of the 1st Cavalry cleared the ridge south of the ranch house and exposed the BROWN troops, mounted, to close-range fire. The maneuver was therefore suspended; the BROWNS were held in place and the WHITES received orders to withdraw to the south for the night. At 3:00 p. m., when the BROWNS were again permitted to move towards Well 10, they found that the WHITE force had broken off contact.

The WHITE force bivouacked that night at Dam 15, Sauz and Carlton Tank (7).

The BROWNS returned to their bivouacs of the previous night, near the Fisher wells.

The following lessons were brought out in the Division Commander's subsequent critique of this operation:

That the BROWN force lost sight of the value of mobility in cavalry defense, and that in surrendering the wells at Fisher's and establishing its defense in rear of them it lost sight of its mission;

That the WHITE force based its attack on information gained during the night or early morning, which was insufficient. It thereby struck a blow in the air. It had failed to keep touch with the BROWN withdrawal;

That in an attack, the principle of economy of force demands that the greatest possible strength be concentrated at the decisive point of attack, and that at other points the enemy should be held only by sufficient force to contain him;

That mounted attacks, unsupported by fire, against an enemy in position cannot expect to succeed.



TROOPS ON MARCH TO T. POOL DAM AFTER OPERATIONS, SEPTEMBER 28, 1923



8th ENGINEER BATTALION (Mtd.) GETTING TRUCKS THROUGH THE LOBO FLATS



82d FIELD ARTILLERY BATTALION IN ACTION NEAR CERRO BOLUDO



1st SIGNAL TROOPS LAYING WIRE TO A BRIGADE

MANEUVERS OF THE FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION

The distributing point for the WHITE force on this date was at the junction of the Presidio and Lajitas roads, 7 miles south of Marfa, at 8:00 a. m., the distribution being made by the division trains; that for the BROWN force was on the Ruidoso road, near Fisher's, at 3:00 p. m., Motor Transport Company No. 49 refilling the BROWN field trains.

During the day the camp of the Division Advance Echelon (Chief Umpire's camp) was moved from Skinner's to Perdiz Well (91). The 8th Engineer Bn. (less two companies) moved from Marfa to Fisher's, where it commenced the work of following in rear of the maneuvering troops, repairing damage. One pack-train marched from Marfa to Fisher's, coming under BROWN command.

THE OPERATION OF SEPTEMBER 26

The problem on this date was intended to illustrate on the part of the BROWN force an advance, and on the part of the WHITE force a delaying action and withdrawal.

The following is the substance of the orders issued on the evening of the 25th:

To the WHITE Commander:

> "The RED column, from PRESIDIO en route to MARFA, will be clear of 93 at 9:00 a. m. tomorrow. The 109-135-88 road to MARFA will be used by RED transport during the day.
>
> "You will hold the line SAUZ-CARLTON TANK (7) until 9:30 a. m. tomorrow, when you will withdraw in the direction of LA CUEVA (111), taking up positions north of the LA CUEVA (111)-CHILDER'S (108) road to stop any advance of hostile cavalry in that direction and to keep open road junction 109 for the rest of the day.
>
> "SAUZ (8)-GOOLEY (14)-PRESIDIO road to OREN BUNTON'S south fence is only route passable for heavy wagons. Ranch roads crossing OREN BUNTON'S RANCH are impassable.
>
> "Div. A. S. will reconnoiter over your front at 7:30 a. m. and 3:00 p. m. tomorrow."

To the BROWN Commander:

> "RED infantry is reported to have reached the vicinity of THAXTON this afternoon. WHITE infantry holds MARFA. Our 13th Cavalry Brigade (imaginary) advances via SKINNER to THAXTON tomorrow.
>
> "You will advance at 8:00 a. m. tomorrow in the direction of LA CUEVA (111) to drive the hostile cavalry in your front to the east of the PRESIDIO road, at the same time sending strong reconnaissance via SAUZ (8)-GOOLEY (14)-93-102 to determine if RED transport is moving via the 109-95-135 road. Div. A. S. will reconnoiter over your front at 9:30 a. m. and 4:30 p. m. tomorrow."

The 1st Cavalry took up positions between Sauz and Carlton Tank, the lines held by its squadron forming an angle with the re-entrant to the south. Battery B, 82d F. A., and Troop C, 1st Machine-Gun Squadron, were attached to this regiment. The regiment had orders to hold this line until 9:30 a. m.,

and in this position it covered the flank march of the remainder of the WHITE force towards Tank 110. The 5th Cavalry, with 1st Machine-Gun Squadron (less one troop) attached, marched from Saus at 7:53 a. m. and by 9:40 a. m. was in position on a strong east-and-west ridge just south of the Fisher-Childer fence, near the gate at 110, with its 2d Squadron on the left.

The BROWN force moved from Fisher's at 8:00 a. m., marching south, in the direction of LA CUEVA, by the trail passing 2½ miles west of Carlton Tank, on the extreme western edge of the maneuver area. The 2d Squadron, 7th Cavalry, Troop B, 2d Machine-Gun Squadron, and a platoon of artillery formed the advance guard. A reconnoitering troop (C. 7) was sent, via Gooley and the Presidio road, with the mission of determining if the 109-95 road was being used by the enemy. A troop of the 8th Cavalry formed a left flank guard for the marching brigade column. BROWN patrols soon located the 5th Cavalry on the WHITE left, but apparently the position of the 1st Cavalry on the right was not reported until after its withdrawal from the Saus Carlton Tank line, at 9:30 a. m., had been practically accomplished. The advance guard, at about 9:40, attacked the 2d Squadron, 5th Cavalry, on the WHITE left. The Fisher-Childer fence, in front of the WHITE position, formed an obstacle to mounted maneuver, and at 10:00 a. m. the BROWN dismounted attack was ruled back. The BROWN main body, in column of squadrons, in line of troop columns, was brought up and directed towards the left of the deployed advance guard. Throughout the remainder of the problem the BROWN efforts were directed towards forcing back the WHITE left.

The bulk of the 1st Cavalry and attached troops were, therefore, able to withdraw unmolested from their advanced position on the WHITE right. The 1st Squadron of this regiment, failing to receive its order to withdraw, found itself on the left flank of the BROWN force. It made an unsupported mounted attack on the 8th Cavalry, resulting in a penalty for the squadron. The 1st Cavalry and WHITE artillery came into position again just south of the line 106-107 and covered the withdrawal of the 5th Cavalry. From there on the WHITE force withdrew by echelon, the 5th Cavalry generally to the west of the 1st. The bulk of the force reached Childer's tanks (108) and (109) at 4:50 p. m. The rear guard, 2d Squadron, 1st Cavalry, and one machine-gun troop were directed on La Cueva and held that point until about 9:00 p. m., when it was recalled to 108.

The BROWN force ceased its pressure when about two miles west of 107. It retired to the northeast for the night, camping its bulk at Saus and sending the 7th Cavalry to Gooley. The reconnoitering troop, detached early in the morning, reported the WHITE trains on the Presidio road, but apparently did not press them. It halted at 102 for the night.

The handling of WHITE machine-guns showed a great improvement over that of the previous day. On the BROWN side machine-guns aided the cavalry attack in close co-ordination of effort. BROWN artillery was handled with speed and aggression. The WHITES effected a withdrawal through a series of gate defiles with comparative ease because the right of their force was never

really pushed. BROWN reconnaissance had failed to locate this part of the line. Nothing was sent against it to hold it in place while the main attack was being driven against the left flank to envelop it. The BROWN force also failed to discover that adequate water was close at hand, at 106 and 107, at the end of the day. It fell back several miles, increasing the strain on its animals on this day and the next. A lesson, which should be borne in mind by staff officers, occurred in the handling of the communications of the reconnoitering troop. The troop was accompanied by radio. A staff officer, thinking to insure greater secrecy, without consulting the signal officer nor the signal plan, arbitrarily assigned to this instrument an odd wave-length which was not in the plan. The troop could not get its messages through, and not only was its tactical information lost, but the troop itself had to go without forage and eat its reserve ration that night. The moral, of course, is: Let the signal officer do his own work.

The BROWN distributing point on this day was at Fisher's, the WHITE on the Presidio road near 108.

The Chief Umpire's camp remained at Perdiz well (91).

OPERATION OF SEPTEMBER 27

To continue the maneuver, the following orders were issued on the afternoon of the 26th:

To the WHITE Commander:

> "You will take up a position tomorrow west of the MARFA-PRESIDIO road, covering the defile between the BLACK HILLS and the road, and hold that position until 12:00 noon, after which you will withdraw to JOHN POOL DAM (188), continuing your observation towards the MARFA-PRESIDIO road. F. Tns. to D. P. at TYLER GATE, on PRESIDIO road, at 8:30 a. m. After refilling, to proceed to park at JOHN POOL DAM (188). Division A. S. will reconnoiter over your front at 8:00 a. m. and 12:00 noon."

To the BROWN Commander:

> "It is reported that RED troops are using the 109-135-88 road to MARFA. You will advance from your present positions tomorrow at 8:00 a. m., moving west of the MARFA-PRESIDIO road (incl.), and attack the enemy cavalry wherever found, driving him to the south and opening the road to SHAFTER. Division A. S. will reconnoiter over your front at 10:00 a. m. and 2:00 p. m."

Later messages on the evening of the 26th directed the WHITE commander to hold his position until directed to withdraw, instead of retiring at noon, and authorized the BROWN commander to start at 7:00 a. m. instead of 8:00 a. m.

The WHITE learned early in the evening of the 26th of the presence of a BROWN reconnoitering troop (C, 7) at Well 102. At 3:30 a. m. on the 27th

its bivouac was attacked by a strong raiding party. During the confusion of the attack its radio was put out of action.

A WHITE reconnoitering troop of the 5th Cavalry was sent north from the WHITE camp, near 108, at 6:20 a. m. to gain contact. This troop drove back several hostile patrols and effectually prevented the BROWNS from obtaining early information of the WHITE positions.

The WHITE commander selected a strong position, facing north, on the ridges running northwest from tank 108. He placed his two regiments in line, with the 5th Cavalry on the right (eastern) flank. Each regiment occupied two centers of resistance. The 1st Machine-Gun Squadron, distributed along the front, was kept under brigade control for the support of the entire position. High points in the Black Hills afforded excellent observation to the north. South of the Black Hills a road, running parallel to the front of the position and leading again into the Presidio road, offered a good line of withdrawal. There were no trails running over the hills to reach this road, however, and the early stages of a withdrawal would be over rough and difficult ground.

The BROWN force (less 7th Cavalry and trains) marched from Sauz at 7:00 a. m. Its advance guard consisted of one squadron, 8th Cavalry (less one troop), one machine-gun troop, and one platoon, 82d Field Artillery. Near 107 the main body was formed in line of troop columns with one hundred yards interval, the artillery and engineers following in rear. A flank guard of one troop, 8th Cavalry, covered the exposed right flank. At 10:46 a. m. the advance guard, at a point one mile southwest of O. BUNTON'S southwest fence corner, was held up by a strong WHITE firing line 1,000 yards in its front. The main body of the right column then moved eastward, under cover of folds of the ground, and extended the left of the advance guard. At 11:00 a. m. the entire right column, except the reserve, was deployed in the dismounted-fire fight. This attack was permitted to make no headway, as the WHITE commander, seeing that only his right was being attacked, strengthened that part of his line with additional machine-guns. The 7th Cavalry arrived on the left of the BROWN force at 11:50 a. m. Two mounted attacks by portions of this regiment, in connection with the dismounted attack already under way, attained partial success against the WHITE right.

Due to the observation possessed by the WHITE artillery and the ability of WHITE machine-guns to enfilade the long draws obliquely approaching the WHITE position, there is no doubt but that the WHITE defense could have held for considerably further time. However, in accordance with the general scheme of the maneuver, orders were given to the WHITE commander to commence his withdrawal at 12:15 p. m. Owing to the excellent communications established in the position, these were very promptly communicated to his troops. The withdrawal was initiated in accordance with prearranged plans, in a very orderly manner. The 1st Cavalry retired straight to the rear and mounted, the movement being covered by the 5th Cavalry, two machine-gun troops, and the artillery remaining in position.

The BROWN force was quick to sense the commencement of the WHITE withdrawal. Its dismounted attack meeting but little opposition, the 8th Cavalry was withdrawn and mounted. At 1:05 p. m. the regiment attacked mounted, supported by the fire of two machine-gun troops and the artillery. Its right squadron overran the left of the 5th Cavalry's advanced positions and was attacking those in rear when it in turn was attacked in flank and rear by the 2d Squadron, 1st Cavalry, which was mounted and in the act of withdrawing. This attack, very cleverly led, was a good example of aggressive mounted action in covering withdrawal. The 8th Cavalry was required to halt while the 1st Cavalry continued its withdrawal.

On the BROWN left, at this time, the 7th Cavalry again attacked mounted. The attack was well led with great vigor, but the regiment was ruled to have suffered considerably from machine-gun and artillery fire.

The maneuver was then suspended until 1:45 p. m., during which time the WHITE force was allowed to continue its retirement. The 5th Cavalry, with two machine-gun troops and Battery B, 82d Field Artillery, took up successive covering positions south of the Black Hills until a rear guard could be formed. Contact was then broken off and the WHITES retired to John Pool Dam (188). The BROWNS made little effort at this time to keep in touch with the WHITE retreat. They followed slowly forward and went into bivouac with the 7th Cavalry at Tank 109 and the remainder of the force at 108. Only at 3:00 a. m. on the 28th did they learn positively of the direction of retreat of the WHITE force.

The Division Commander later stated that the BROWN problem on this date was one of considerable difficulty, involving, as it did, a concentration on the battlefield in front of a strong position. He pointed out the necessity in such cases for having orders, information, and guides promptly available to assist the entry into action of the later arriving elements. The BROWN approach march gave excellent opportunity for the employment of reconnoitering patrols, and the scouting showed improvement over previous days. The problem also demonstrated how a force of cavalry of considerable size may yet offer a difficult target during its approach by use of its speed, varying its formations according to the direction of hostile fire and making good use of the folds of the ground.

The BROWN field trains had been refilled during the morning at 102, those of the WHITES at Tyler's gate, on the Presidio road.

During the day the Chief Umpire's headquarters camp was moved from Perdiz to Well 196, on L. Bunton's ranch. The 8th Engineer Battalion (less two companies) moved, also, from Fisher's to Gooley, repairing any damage that might have been caused by the passage of troops.

OPERATION OF SEPTEMBER 28

This problem was intended to develop a meeting engagement resulting from a WHITE attack on the flank of the marching BROWN column.

The following messages were therefore sent:

"1st Cav. Div. (Brown), Ryan, Tex., 27 *Sept.*, '23—4:00 P. M.

"No. 5.

"To CG, 2d Cav. Brig. (Brown):

"Red troops are reported in Shafter. You will advance tomorrow at 7:45 a. m. to seize the road fork four (4) miles northwest of John Pool ranch (Tinaja-China-190) to prevent communication between Shafter and Alamito.

"1st Cav. Div. A. S. will reconnoiter over your front at 7:30 a. m.

"DP., 28 Sept., 9:00 a. m.—On Marfa-Presidio road at Childers' Tank for rations, forage, wood, gas, and lubricants.

"Howze."

"1st Div. (White), Alpine, Tex., 27 *Sept.*, '23—4:00 P. M.

"No. 5.

"T CO, 1st Cav. Brig. (White):

"It is essential that enemy cavalry reported tonight to be in the region of Childers' be prevented from moving further to the south.

"You will advance with your command at 7:45 a. m. tomorrow to strike the hostile column at the earliest possible moment and destroy it.

"Div. Air Serv., 1st White Div., will reconnoiter over your front at 7:45 a. m. tomorrow.

"Co. B, 8th Engr. Bn., is detached from your command and will come under the command of the CO, 8th Engr. Bn., at John Pool Dam at 7:30 a. m. tomorrow. Hold your F. Tns. in park at John Pool Dam. Sig. plan: No change.

"Howze."

In this problem the terrain over which contact was planned was intersected by the Childers-Tyler fence and the Tyler-J. Pool fence, making the gates in these fences, as well as those in the Tyler west fence leading into the Presidio road, defiles of tactical importance. Both forces were ordered to start at the same hour, the White force having 1½ miles farther to march to reach the Tyler gate on the Presidio road, the natural point of collision.

The Browns marched south across country, east of the Presidio road, with but one troop of the 8th Cavalry on the road itself.

The White advance guard, advancing more rapidly from 188, secured a position covering the defile of the Childers-Tyler gate and was able to hold up the Brown advance. The advance guard, at 9:00 a. m., was withdrawn, on orders from the Chief Umpire, to permit the resumption of maneuver in more open terrain. The 1st Cavalry (less 1st Squadron), 5th Cavalry, and 1st Machine-Gun Squadron were meanwhile brought forward in lines of small columns and placed under cover until reconnaissance should develop the Brown dispositions. This soon indicated that they were deploying on both sides of their advance guard. The White commander then planned to hold on his left with the 1st Cavalry, and to attack in the direction of the Presidio

road with the 5th Cavalry on his right. However, the umpires ruled that the approach of the White regiments had come under heavy Brown artillery fire at a range of 2,500 yards. For this reason, and to permit the Brown force to further clear the fences hampering maneuver, the Chief Umpire suspended the maneuver from 9:15 a. m. to 10:00 a. m., directing the Whites to withdraw for one mile.

Following this, the White command at 10:08 a. m. occupied an L-shaped position on an east-and-west ridge one mile north of the Pool-Tyler fence. Each regiment (1st Cavalry on the left) had a dismounted squadron in line, supported by a troop of machine-guns. A squadron of each, with the third machine-gun troop, was held in mounted reserve. The White commander planned to induce the enemy to attack this position, and then to attack him in flank with a strong mounted force.

As soon as the gates were cleared the Brown force moved forward and deployed rapidly. The 8th Cavalry on the right, with Company A, 8th Engineer Battalion, established connection with its troop on the Presidio road and executed a combined mounted and dismounted attack against the left of the 1st Cavalry. The 7th Cavalry advanced mounted towards the interval between the White regiments. The Brown artillery was handled with great celerity in displacing forward by echelon.

Seeing that the Brown attack was directed towards the 1st Cavalry the White commander then ordered the entire 5th Cavalry to attack mounted against the Brown left. As one squadron had to be mounted, the attack was executed successively by squadrons. The 2d Squadron of the 7th Cavalry was well handled during these mounted attacks. During the space of three minutes it attacked a troop of the leading 5th Cavalry squadron, drove it back, and, facing about, met the mounted attack of the other squadron of that regiment. A mounted counter-attack by a squadron of the 1st Cavalry on the White left was stopped by the fire of the 8th Cavalry.

The signal for ceasing maneuvers was ordered by the Chief Umpire at 11:00 a. m., ending the period of two-side maneuvers.

The maneuver action on this date was extremely rapid. It resolved into a series of combined mounted and dismounted attacks by squadrons or regiments, supported in nearly all cases by the fire of machine-guns and artillery. The speed with which these attacks were formulated and got under way, the speed of displacing forward of machine-guns, and the rapidity of opening of fire by the artillery showed that the two cavalry brigades had profited much in the art of combination of effort, through the experience of the preceding days. The boldness of the riding shown in the division and the endeavor to gain ground mounted as long as possible were approved by the Corps Area Commander and the Commandant of the Cavalry School.

At the end of the problem the combat troops of the division, except the 8th Cavalry, were concentrated at John Pool Dam (188). The 8th Cavalry was sent to bivouac that night at the Cienega ranch (193), about 8 miles south of the dam.

As one of the objects of the two-side maneuvers was the development of ground reconnaissance, and as the terrain was practically devoid of overhead cover, the operations of the Air Service during this period were artificially limited to correspond with infrequent service that might be expected by detached cavalry brigades and to some degree with the hasty reconnaissance which might be imposed by hostile pursuit aviation. The Commanding Officer and Operations Officer of the 12th Observation Squadron were neutral, handling the missions for both sides. The remainder of the pilots and observers were divided into WHITE and BROWN teams and received the orders and missions of one side only.

All flying was done from the Marfa airdrome, but the planes were routed into the maneuver area so as to approach from the rear of the friendly side. Planes of each side were distinctly marked. A minimum altitude of 3,000 feet was prescribed for reconnaissance. In addition, a maximum time limit was fixed for the plane to remain off the airdrome. This consisted of 15 minutes for reconnaissance plus 2 minutes for each mile separating the airdrome and the panels of the friendly force. Thus, if the friendly panel were 30 miles away, the plane had 75 minutes in which to take off, identify the friendly panel, gain its altitude, reconnoiter, report, and return to the airdrome. In several instances planes were landed in unprepared fields, close to brigade command posts, for the observers to make personal report or receive altered missions. Incidental to the two-side maneuvers, use was made of reconnaissance, contact, courier, photographic, and command missions.

The next five days, September 29 to October 3, inclusive, were designated as the period of one-side maneuvers. The exercises for these days were designed—

To give practice in the functioning of the division as a single unit;

To test the organization of the division and its means of exercising command;

To give practice in marching and handling long and varied columns and in participation in exercises with service ammunition on a scale approaching the employment of a cavalry division in action.

OPERATION OF SEPTEMBER 29

For this problem the 1st Cavalry Division was assumed to be in hostile country, having advanced from the Rio Grande via Shafter to the north. The evening of the 28th found it in its actual locations at John Pool Dam and Cienega ranch. Enemy forces were assumed to have been reported previously at Marfa and Alpine, and on the 28th an enemy column of infantry and artillerly marched from Marfa to the B. Pool ranch (53), on the Lajitas road.

The mission of the division was to seize the crossing of Alamito Creek at Alamito, in order to prevent hostile progress farther south.

The immediate objects of this problem were to give a visualization of a long cavalry column marching on one road; to exercise march communications and liaison with the Air Service while on the march; production and distribution of orders while marching; establishment of march and camp security.

The advance guard, consisting of the 1st Cavalry Brigade (less 5th Cavalry), first battery, 82d Field Artillery Battalion, and one platoon, 8th Engineers Battalion, under Colonel W. C. Short, cleared the John Pool Dam at 7:45 a. m., marching via Hord's on Alamito. En route it detached a reconnoitering troop to march via Ridout (151).

The main body followed at a distance of one mile. The 8th Cavalry arrived from the Cienega ranch in time to take its place in the main body. It had been required to dispatch an officer's patrol, with radio attached, to march via Casa Piedra, paralleling the march of the division and some eight miles to the south of it. The engineers, less detachment in the advance guard and one company on water development, were used to escort the trains, which followed the main body at one mile. As the trail was very rough and in some places faded out entirely, all motor transportation, except two light radio trucks, was sent around by the Presidio-Marfa-Lajitas road, out of the problem. The two half-ton radio trucks followed the column, running by bounds in the distance between the main body and the trains.

The Air Service reported from time to time the movements of the supposed hostile column, in accordance with fictitious information which had been prepared in advance. It also reported the progress of the column and its reconnoitering detachments. This gave practice to the panel details of the marching column and to mounted messengers in finding moving message centers in a long column. It also demonstrated the poor visibility of the present Very pistol ammunition when used in daylight from a plane.

The officers' patrol, on the south, had also been furnished with fictitious messages. Each of these was in the hands of the Division Commander, in the marching column, in less than thirty minutes from the hour of signature. March communication on this date worked most satisfactorily.

At 9:00 a. m., near Hord's, a typewritten halt order was dictated and got out, and the working copies distributed, while the column was marching.

The advance guard reached the Marfa-Lajitas road at 11:00 a. m., put out a march outpost, and under cover of this established the outpost for the night, covering the road and the valley of the Alamito with reconnaissance to the north. By 1:00 p. m. the outpost had been inspected, dispositions approved, and all communications were in.

The main body camped south of the crossing, on the east bank. Engineers prepared seepage wells in the creek bottom, so that water could be obtained for the kitchens. Sufficient water for stock was found in scattered shallow pools along the creek bed.

On Sunday, September 30, the command rested at Alamito. For the animals of the artillery, engineers, and division headquarters, it was the first day of rest since the 15th. All officers of the division were assembled for a critique of the two-side maneuvers. The Corps Area and Division Commander, the Commandant of the Cavalry School, a representative of the Chief of Cavalry's Office, General Hinds, General Malone, and other observers gave their impressions of the maneuvers to date.

Operation of October 1 (See Plate 3)

The principal object of the problem of this date was to give a demonstration of the fire power of the division in dismounted attack, using service ammunition.

The enemy to the north was assumed to have detached a mounted force to the southeast through Green Valley, threatening the eastern flank and rear of the division at Alamito. The mission of the division was to seek and destroy this force.

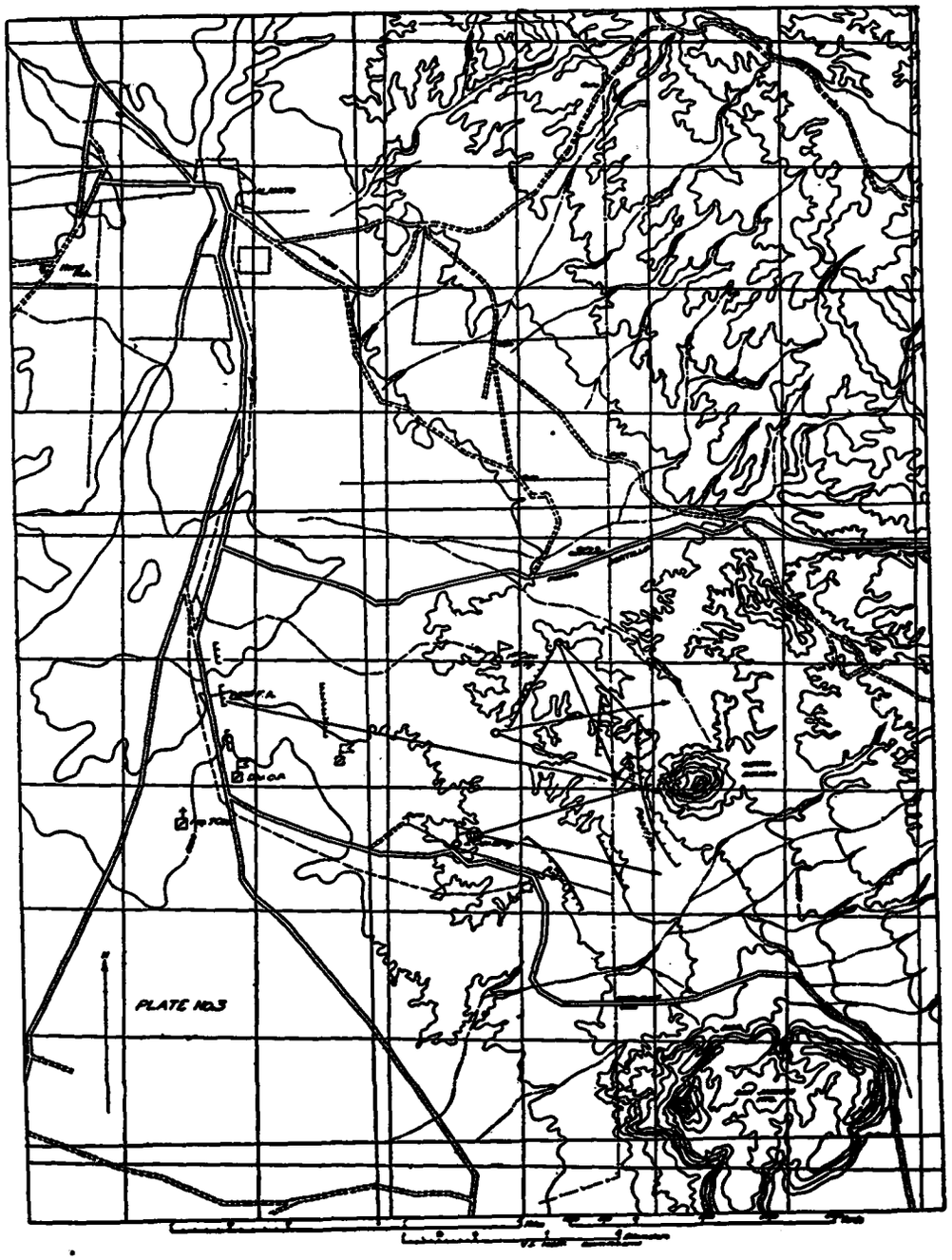
A reconnoitering troop from the 8th Cavalry, with a radio section attached, trotted out at 7:30 a. m. on the Lajitas road towards San Jacinto Mountain. The 2d Cavalry Brigade (less one squadron of 7th Cavalry), with a battery, formed the advance guard of the division, marching southeast on the same road. The main body, under Colonel Short, followed at one mile. A flank guard was put out from the main body to protect its passage by the Puerto Potrillo trail junction and was withdrawn as soon as the column had cleared. To the engineers was allotted the task of holding the Alamito crossing, protecting the trains of the division from enemy in the north, while the bulk of the division operated to the southeast.

In order again to function the communications of the division on the march, the reconnoitering troop and Air Service transmitted "planted" messages describing the approach of the hostile force and its initial deployment in a position on the west slopes of Cerro Boludo, flanking the Lajitas road. Coincidently with the latter, the umpires with the advance guard ruled the support under fire and pointed out the forward elements of the hostile position. This position was represented by about 800 targets, panels, etc. The reserve of the advance guard and the main body took up approach formations, the latter soon being halted under cover of a ridge 5,000 yards west of the enemy positions. From this ridge the Division Commander made a personal reconnaissance and there issued dictated orders to the brigade and artillery commanders for the attack by the division.

The 2d Brigade (less one squadron, 7th Cavalry) was ordered to extend the right of the support, already deployed. It would make the holding attack against the hostile left. Its mounted approach was well concealed by deep draws south of the Lajitas road, and was covered by the fire of the support and of the advance-guard battery. As soon as it had gained the first firing position assigned, along the Lajitas road, about 1,000 yards from the hostile front line, it was to open fire to cover the forward movement of the 1st Cavalry Brigade.

While the 2d Cavalry Brigade was moving forward, the remainder of the 82d Field Artillery was brought up under cover and placed in position on the ridge 5,000 yards west of the center of the hostile line, where the advance-guard battery was already firing.

The fire of the artillery battalion, with that of the 2d Brigade, covered the mounted approach of the 1st Brigade. The latter was very skillfully led, only a man or two, here and there, being visible for a moment, as the brigade worked



forward over 8,500 yards of hill and gully. It formed for its dismounted attack about 1,500 yards from the hostile line and attacked its right.

As the cavalry attacks closed, the artillery was echeloned forward by battery, continuing its fire on the center. The battle command post of the division likewise was moved forward.

At the close of the problem the squadron of the 7th Cavalry in reserve was brought forward and sent towards the left flank of the division to simulate its use in the inauguration of the pursuit.

The communications employed during this problem were radio from division to brigades and rear echelon in Marfa, radio from plane to artillery, wire to brigades and artillery, wire in the artillery net, and wire from brigade to regiments in the 2d Brigade.

The work of the contact plane during this problem in keeping the division constantly informed of the whereabouts and progress of its units was exceedingly good.

The ammunition expenditure for the problem was approximately 60 rounds per rifle, 400 rounds per A. R., 2,500 rounds per M. G., and 60 rounds shrapnel per 75-millimeter gun.

After the problem the division was assembled and marched back to Alamito, where it camped.

Operation of October 2

The situation assumed that the hostile force previously reported camped near B. Pool (problem of September 29) had moved south along the Lajitas road and halted at Bishop's, and that the mounted force in Green Valley (problem of October 1) had been dispersed. The mission of the division was to advance towards Marfa to capture or destroy the enemy column near Bishop.

The object of this problem was to illustrate a pursuit and a combined mounted and dismounted attack by a large cavalry force. Ball ammunition was again employed.

The advance guard, the 2d Cavalry Brigade (less 8th Cavalry), with Battery C, 82d Field Artillery Battalion, cleared the Alamito crossing at 7:45 a. m., marching north on the Lajitas-Marfa road. The Division Commander, with the advance group, rode with the reserve of the advance guard. The remainder of the Division Advance Echelon, except trains and motors, marched at the head of the main body, which was again commanded by Colonel Short. As the road was very narrow, the tactical motors of division headquarters, staff cars, motorcycles, radio trucks, and a light message center truck, which has telegraph and telephone terminals installed, were marched by bounds in between the tail of the main body and the head of the trains. This seems to be the best way of handling them in a cavalry column, in a tactical advance on a narrow road. The trains followed to Bishop, where they were halted and refilled during the problem. The rate of march was 4½ miles per hour.

During the march, reports were received from the reconnaissance plane, indicating, in succession, that the hostile force at Bishop's had broken camp

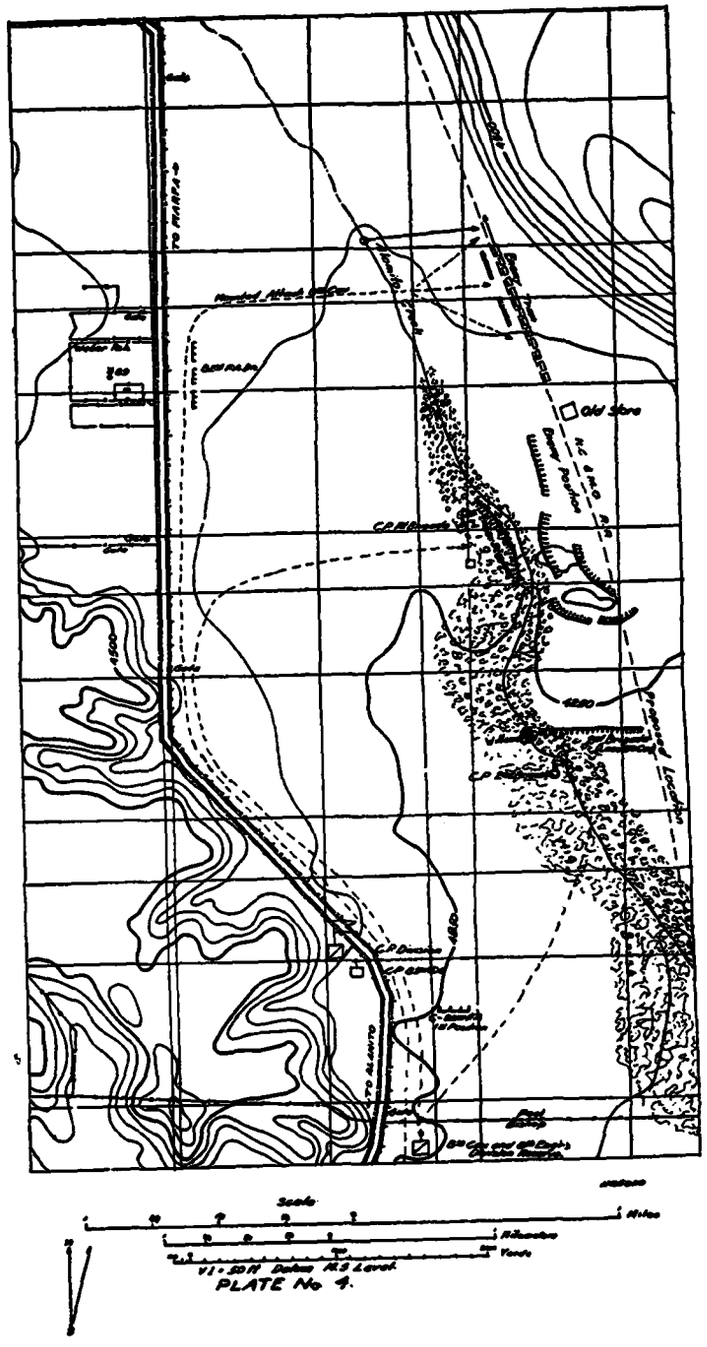


PLATE No. 4.

and was retiring to the north; that it was protecting a column of wagons; that it had abandoned the Marfa road and was making towards Alpine, on the line of the old K. C. & O. R. R.; finally, that it had taken up a position east of the Alamito to cover the retirement of its train.

After marching 13 miles, the leading elements of the advance guard had reached a covered position at the Pool-Bishop fence from which the hostile position could be seen, reconnaissance made, and the division deployed in a manner simulating a surprise action.

The Division Commander here made a personal reconnaissance and at 11:00 a. m. issued verbal orders to the brigade and artillery commanders. (See Plate 4.)

The 2d Brigade, well dispersed, galloped to cover of the brush in the Alamito Creek bottom and formed a dismounted firing line, attacking north against the southern face of the represented position. The advance-guard battery went into position near the road and covered this advance by its fire. It obtained a close bracket with its first two salvos and fired for effect on the third.

Under cover of the fire of the advance guard, the 1st Cavalry Brigade galloped north, close to the road, for a mile, and then east for 1,500 yards, to the creek bottom, where it dismounted and attacked east against the west face of the represented position.

The 82d Field Artillery Battalion (less Battery C) galloped north on the Lajitas-Marfa road and came into action near Weber's, on the left rear of the 1st Cavalry Brigade. As soon as the 1st Brigade, turning east, had masked the fire of Battery C, it in turn moved rapidly north on the Marfa road and rejoined the battalion, attacking the represented hostile trains.

When the 1st Cavalry Brigade, on the left, had developed its dismounted attack, the 8th Cavalry, from division reserve, was brought forward and was given orders to attack mounted against the hostile train. The regiment, in approach formation, trotted north, close to the Marfa road, for 2½ miles. Near Weber's it turned east and galloped 1,500 yards, to the mounted attack. It used its automatic rifles to protect its outer (left) flank. The 82d Field Artillery Battalion continued in action until its fire was masked by the 8th Cavalry. Both wire and radio were employed from division to brigades and artillery.

As the ground over which the problem was laid is a wide and open valley, with the only cover in the creek bottom and in the high brush which extends 500 yards west of the creek, cavalry approaches and deployments had to depend for their success upon speed and dispersion.

The advance of the machine-gun squadrons at a gallop, with horses seeking the little cow paths in the brush and gun mules jumping mesquite bushes alongside, afforded a fine test in mule-driving for these organizations. This rapid action, coming on the end of a march and towards the close of the maneuver period, offered testimony of the good condition of the horses of the division.

The division was assembled and camped on the west bank of the Alamito, in the southern part of the Pool ranch.

Operation of October 3 (See Plate No. 5)

The objects of this problem were to illustrate the frontage and depth which a cavalry division can take up in deployed defense when serious action is to be expected, and to test the communications of the division.

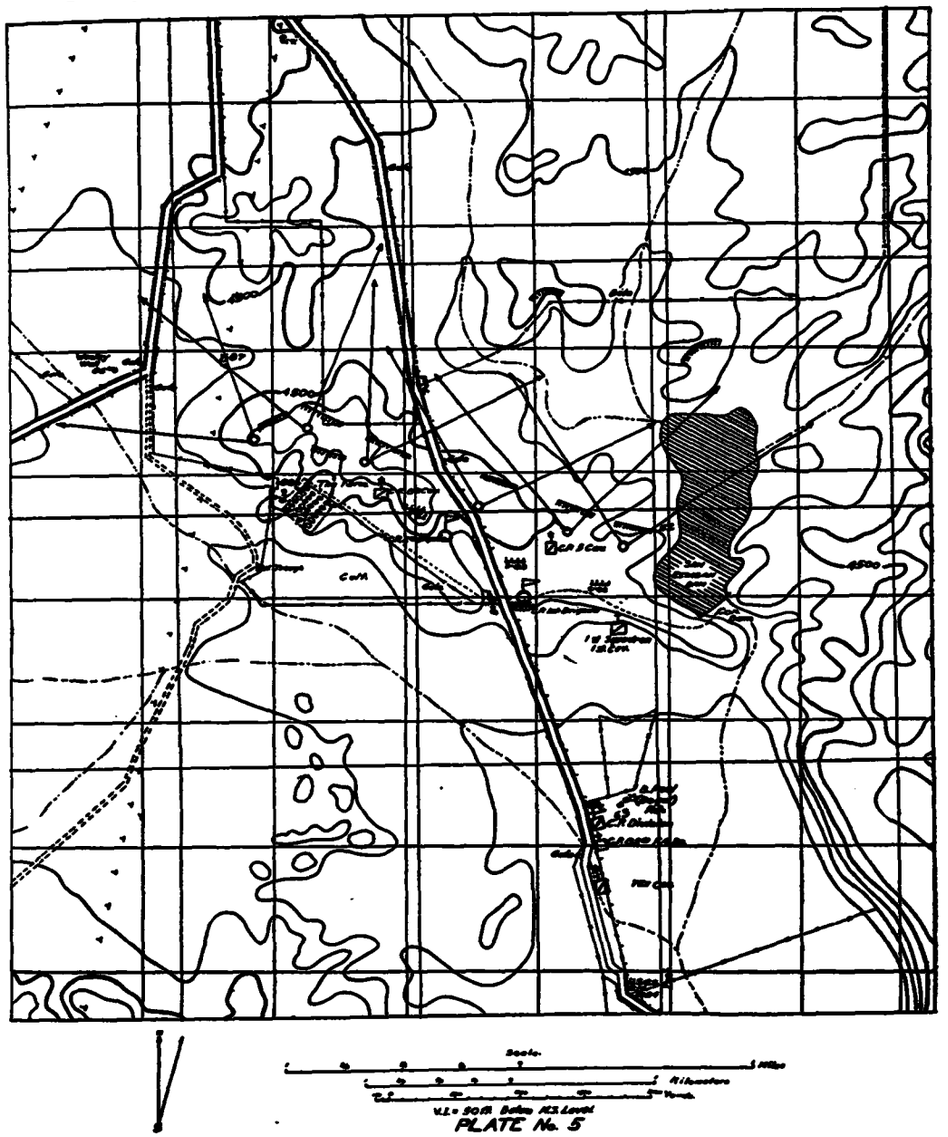


PLATE No. 5

It was assumed that it was known that the enemy in Marfa had started south, and that the division had hurried north on the Lajitas-Marfa road to oppose him, seeking first a position in readiness west of the San Esteban Dam (52). Under such orders the advance guard, consisting of the 1st Cavalry Brigade (less 1st Cavalry) cleared camp at 7:30 a. m. and marched north to seize the ridge which crosses the Marfa road between the Bogel Farm (88) and the dam. The main body followed at 1,000 yards, with the intention of massing, under cover of the ridge, near the B. Pool ranch (53).

By 8:30 a. m. information from the reconnaissance plane was at hand, indicating that the point of the enemy column had turned southeast, on the Lajitas road, at the road fork seven miles south of Marfa. By 9:10 a. m. the advance guard of the division was in possession of the Bogel Farm Ridge.

The Division Commander then issued, at 9:30 a. m., written field orders for the occupation of a defensive position, making a deployed defense in a position of two lines, astride the Lajitas road, from Windmill 87 to the San Esteban Dam (52).

The 1st Cavalry, from the main body, was immediately released to the 1st Brigade. This brigade then occupied the sector of the position east of the road. The support of the advance guard had been left on that part of the ridge west of the road and, under its cover, the C. G., 2d Brigade, made his reconnaissance.

The 2d Cavalry Brigade (less 7th Cavalry) then occupied the sector west of the road. The 7th Cavalry was held mounted near 53, in division reserve, ready to move on 15 minutes' notice. It reconnoitered the country to the west of the position, in the direction of its most probable employment.

The batteries of the 82d Field Artillery Battalion were emplaced, two to the east and one to the west of the road, behind the crest of the ridge in rear of the second line of the position. The Division Command Post was located at 53. The trains were halted at Weber's. The front of the division was 4,000 yards. Its depth from outpost to main line averaged 800 yards and from outpost line to Division Command Post averaged 3,000 yards.

Two companies, 8th Engineer Battalion, equipped with flags and with all umpires, had left camp two hours earlier than the division, and had proceeded to the junction of the Marfa-Presidio and Marfa-Lajitas roads, two miles beyond the position subsequently occupied by the division. Here they faced about and at 10:00 a. m. advanced towards the position, outlining, under the direction of the umpires, the attack of a reinforced brigade. Their approach and the development of their attack formed the basis for good exercise in the use of the full communications of the division and its Air Service, in addition to an exercise in fire direction and control.

At 11:15 a. m. the maneuver ceased. The division was assembled and marched to Marfa. The head of the column reached Marfa at 2:20 p. m., in a very heavy rain, the only inclement weather encountered during ten days of maneuver.

From the 4th to the 8th of October, inclusive, the division remained at Marfa, camped on the military reservation. Sufficient extra tentage was avail-

able to provide a pyramidal tent for the officers of each troop and one for each troop orderly tent. The garrison ration was resumed.

A review of the entire division was held on the 5th at the airdrome at Marfa. The remainder of this period was utilized in resting men and animals and in getting the units of the division together in sports and competitions.

A baseball tournament was held, resulting in the championship of the division going to the Air Service. A handicap polo tournament went to the 8th Cavalry. A boxing tournament resulted in the championships of the division, at the several weights, being established. In addition, a field meet, a race meet, and a horse-show were staged. Animals and equipment in the latter bore few signs of twenty-two days of hard service in the field.

The relations between the officers and men of the division and the citizens of Marfa during this period were particularly pleasant. On both sides considerable entertaining was done.

Division Headquarters and the divisional troops, with a detachment of the trains, marched to Ryan on the 9th, en route to Fort Bliss, reaching there on the 18th. The 1st Cavalry Brigade (less 1st Cavalry) marched the same day and arrived at Fort Clark on the 21st. The 2d Cavalry Brigade, starting on the 10th, arrived at Fort Bliss on the 19th. The return marches were made without unusual incident.

During the maneuvers, interesting data and experience was obtained concerning many points of organization and equipment. The absurdity of organization of the present two-squadron cavalry regiment was amply demonstrated.

The opinion in the division that the automatic rifles, or machine rifles, should be organized as a troop in squadron instead of, as at present, a platoon in troop, was confirmed. They have a lesser mobility than the rifle troop. There is always time to disperse the platoons of a machine rifle troop for attachment to rifle troops in case of a dismounted attacked or a detached mission requiring increased fire power. There is never time to assemble the scattered machine rifle platoons from several troops, under the present organization, to form the fire pivot, to support the remainder of a squadron in rapid mounted approach or mounted attack.

For reasons of relative mobility, of better technical instruction, and for the better and quicker control of their fire in support of rapidly moving cavalry, the opinion of the division was crystallized that cavalry machine-guns are better organized as brigade squadrons than as separate regimental troops.

During a protracted period of operations, replacements for cavalry will be received from army depots with much less certainty than replacements for infantry. Cavalry units, particularly the regiment, must be strong enough initially to fight on several successive days, withstand losses, and still have enough left to call themselves organizations; otherwise the whole unit fades into overhead.

The organisation of the advance echelon of division headquarters into a series of flexible, mobile groups, each supplementing the one in front as might be necessary in the situation, proved satisfactory. Battle headquarters must be kept extremely small, mobile, and simple.

During the maneuver period and, for the Fort Bliss columns, during the marches to and from maneuvers also, the personnel sections of the brigade and regimental 4th echelons were assembled at the rear echelon of the division and all functioned there under the Division Adjutant. Combat units were relieved from all papers except the morning report and the duty roster. It worked like a charm.

The whole division is keen for the Phillips' pack-saddle for any kind of a cavalry pack-load. The machine-gun squadron equipped with these saddles carried its full loads of guns and ammunition to Marfa, through the maneuvers, and on the return home. It had scarcely one rubbed back on arrival at its home station. The squadron equipped with aparejos came to Marfa with empty aparejos, carried its loads through the maneuvers, and returned with guns, ammunition, and riggings in its wagons. A more convincing field test could not be asked. The Phillips' pack-saddle also carried, with equal success, radio, pioneer and demolition, medical, automatic rifle, and troop pack-loads.

Pack radio equipment, as modified by a board of officers in the division prior to the maneuvers, was afforded a good test and demonstrated the soundness of the recommended changes, which lighten the loads and make them compact and easy riding. An experimental pack wire load for use of regiment or brigade proved very successful.

The radio sets of division headquarters, SCR-130, carried in very light trucks, met every demand. This also was an experimental usage. The heavy radio tractors, articles of issue to cavalry division and brigade headquarters, could barely make the marches on the main roads to Marfa. They cannot cross a light pontoon bridge. They have no place in a cavalry division.

A cut-under escort wagon did not find favor above the present type. The trail-mobile, at present used in the division as a light wagon, is not satisfactory.

A high-laced leather boot, tested out to replace the shoe and legging, seemed excellent for mounted soldiers.

Several different types of automatic rifle packs, improvised on the McClellan saddle, are in use in the division. The 7th Cavalry, which carries the rifle and an ammunition container on the near side, balanced against two ammunition containers on the off side, with a spare-parts box laced in the seat of the saddle, has the best of these. The poorest is the type in which the rifle is carried, in two iron Y's, above the saddle. For the machine rifle, with its increased ammunition requirements, there is no doubt but that a special pack will be necessary. The Phillips' pack-saddle is indicated as the basis of this load.

Supply functioned without hitch during the entire period.

Observers were complimentary. The Corps Area Commander expressed himself as pleased. All had points to make from which valuable lessons were drawn. The division, coming into its home stations with its officers and men sun-tanned and hard, sitting lightly and easily in their saddles, with its horses in good condition and its organization well knit, had every reason to be proud of its effort to round out and complete its training year.

National Guard as Aid to Civil Authority

BY

Brigadier-General JACOB F. WOLTERS, T. N. G. (O. R. C.), Commanding 56th Cavalry Brigade

THE National Guard, the Regular Army, and Organized Reserves as well are interested in the subject of "Military Aid to Civil Authority." There is a general lack of understanding, rather than misunderstanding, of the subject on the part of lawyers as well as military men. This is no doubt largely due to the fact that constitutional and statutory provisions, as well as court decisions, vary in the respective jurisdictions. However, the greater confusion is probably due to the failure to comprehend the fundamental principles out of which arises the right of the executive to use military force to aid and uphold the civil authority.

In most, if not all, the States the Governor is by constitutional or statutory provisions vested with the power to use the militia of the State to suppress mutiny, rebellion, insurrection, riot, or the threatened danger thereof. The words "rebellion," "insurrection," and "riot," used individually or collectively, do not necessarily mean organized armed resistance to the State by public enemies, but may, and generally do, signify only the existence in a community within the State of a general lawless condition with which the ordinary civil authorities are unable or unwilling to deal. When such conditions arise they constitute an attack, if not upon the sovereignty, then at least the supremacy, of the State. It is an attack upon the life of a State—upon its dignity, its majesty. The right of the State to repel such an attack—the right of self-preservation—arises inherently out of something even beyond the constitution itself. It comes inherently from the same power that created the constitution—that is to say, the people themselves.

If in organizing their government the people failed by express terms to grant to the constituted authorities the power to defend the government they have created from such an attack, then the right to use whatever power, in whatsoever manner is best available, vests inherently in the executive of the State. It is the highest duty of the executive to maintain the sovereignty, or, if you please, the supremacy, of the State; and if neither the constitution nor the statutes of a State expressly provide the executive with the power to perform that duty, then he must create or select the power necessary to actively perform the duty imposed upon him.

The civil authority is always supreme. The military is always subordinate to the civil authority. The executive is the chief civil magistrate of the State. The terms "civil authority" and "civil authorities" must not be confused. The "civil authority" is the State—the body politic, the people organized into a social and political compact. The personnel selected under constitutional or statutory provisions to maintain and uphold the civil authority are termed "civil authorities." Thus the Governor is the chief civil magistrate. The

sheriff and the constable are "civil authorities," vested with the power and in duty bound by solemn obligation to uphold the "civil authority." The police of a municipality, the latter itself a creature of the State, are "civil authorities." When the civil authorities fail to enforce the law, either through unwillingness or inability to do so, it becomes the duty of the Governor to intervene by rendering aid to the civil authorities concerned. For that purpose he uses the most available force at hand. This is usually the National Guard of his State.

Experience has demonstrated again and again that it is difficult for military forces to co-operate successfully with local civil authorities. There are several fundamental reasons why it is difficult to bring about such co-operation. Probably it is sufficient to say that if the local civil authorities had performed their duties fully and conscientiously, the conditions that required intervention in their community by military force would never have arisen. Naturally they feel that the Governor in sending his military force into their community is reflecting upon them. They resent this, and rather than help the military straighten out the situation, as a rule interfere.

Necessity demanded the creation of a method, means, or manner to enable the executive to use his military forces effectively and without interference by local civil authorities. Out of this necessity sprang what is now generally accepted as "qualified martial law." Qualified martial law must be distinguished from absolute martial law, such as is imposed by a general upon occupied territory of the enemy in time of war. The executive declares martial law, but military custom has established the rule whereby the commander of the military forces limits the exercise of the power vested to that degree that necessity in each particular emergency requires. Courts have again and again recognised this form of martial law. The Governor having issued his proclamation imposing martial law upon an affected community, reciting the facts that impel him to do so, defining the boundaries of the area affected, and having designated a military officer as supreme commander, such action will not be reviewed nor interfered with by the courts, Federal or State. It is an executive act, and if not founded upon conscience and not warranted in fact, a high court of impeachment, created by the legislature under constitutional authority, alone can reach him.

The act of the Governor in declaring martial law is still the act of the chief civil magistrate and not the act of a military commander. By that act the civil authority, the civil law, is not suspended. The civil authority remains supreme. The military remains subordinate and obedient, not only to the orders of the chief civil magistrate, but to the constitutional and statutory mandates of the civil law itself. The civil authorities, constituting the human agencies provided by the civil authority to enforce and uphold the civil law, may be set aside, superseded, or even suspended, and the military for the time being superimposed or substituted for them, but the majesty of the civil authority, the civil law, is only reinforced and strengthened, and ultimately restored, by the military to complete supremacy.

The right of self-defense on the part of an individual from an unlawful attack at the hands of another is not only inborn, but is recognized among uncivilized and civilized peoples alike. If this is true as to the individual, then with equal force it applies to society in the aggregate, organized by itself into a state of government. When the State, through its executive, resorts to the use of martial law and the military forces in connection therewith, it is but exercising the inherent right of self-defense, and in connection with the exercise of that inherent right the State may resort to any manner, method, or means of force necessary to protect itself. To gainsay that this rule is correct would be equivalent to admitting that the very vitals of the government which the people have created for their mutual protection could be ruthlessly torn out of the body politic and the people themselves become the hopeless prey of organized lawlessness.

The National Guard officer called to such duty must be prepared to deal with all phases of human affairs and human nature. During each passing day problems, vexatious and irritating, and sometimes dangerous, will arise and must be dealt with promptly and definitely. In the discharge of his duties he must always remember, and never forget, that he is serving as the agency of the civil authority. While he uses military methods and functions in accordance with military regulations, he is, nevertheless, the representative, the protector, the defender of the civil authority and subordinated to constitutional and statutory provisions and judicial decisions at all times.

He will find the community as a whole not any too cordial. Men strong enough, though they be lawless, to bring about a condition that requires military intervention in the community usually have influential friends, and usually, in case of any disorders growing out of labor strikes or race riots, the sympathy of the community is largely with the wrong-doers for the time being. He will find his mission clashes with fixed, established interests—sometimes industrial, commercial, or financial, but almost without exception political. The element in political power—that is, the party or faction from and through which the local officers were elected—is usually in open sympathy with the "rebels," "insurrectionists," or "rioters," and in the case of criminals the said local officers are either "in league" with them or are inefficient to control them, or the National Guard would not be sent to aid. He will find the political enemies of those in local power ready to take advantage of the situation in order to gain a political advantage. Each side will endeavor to use him to further its respective interests. The best policy is to listen attentively, be courteously interested in all that is said, but remember the owl and act like one, minus even the hoot.

The Adjutant-General of the State provides the commander with troops from the National Guard. The proper selection of the personnel, commissioned and enlisted, is very important. Officers must not only be efficient, but must be men of discretion. Temperament is an important element. The easily exitable officer, the "hot-head," should not be selected for such duty. The unfortunate officer who cannot resist the temptation to take a drink must not, under any

circumstances, be assigned to such a mission. One drink may not affect his judgment, but one drink becomes a very embarrassing factor in the aftermath that always follows a clash, and particularly so where casualties occur. The enlisted personnel must be of the highest type in the National Guard. Only men of good character, recognised integrity for honesty and good behavior, are fit for this service. This is important. Any other class of men on such duty will find too many opportunities to get into trouble that will seriously embarrass the commander and reflect upon the National Guard as a whole.

The commander must have a competent staff for the performance of the usual military duties. He must have, if not from the National Guard, then from civil life, two good lawyers—one to advise the commander on legal matters and represent him or any of the command in court; the other an experienced criminal lawyer, preferably one who is a prosecutor, and this even though the commander be a competent lawyer himself. If he is a competent lawyer, so much the better. The service involves law problems more than military ones; and yet there are many military problems also involved.

An officer with good judgment should be selected as provost marshal. He is not only responsible for the security, but he directs operations against the lawless element. He necessarily comes much in contact with the public. Much must be left to his discretion. While the National Guard on such duty is charged with the impartial enforcement of all laws, in each and every community there are certain minor police regulations that are more or less dealt with as "dead letters." It is not good policy for the military authorities temporarily in charge to undertake to enforce such minor laws or ordinances as have been ignored by the community probably from time immemorial, unless the non-enforcement thereof contributes to the condition that has brought about the emergency requiring the military aid.

It is desirable, when conditions permit, to send an advance party into the affected district to select billets or camp site. In arranging for billets or camp site, it is wise to create the impression that the troops are prepared to remain for an indefinite period. No community wants martial law, nor does it want a military force to administer its affairs. If at the very beginning it is made to understand that martial law and the military administration will continue until the conditions that have brought it about are remedied, the citizenship will the more readily take steps to co-operate in relieving the situation.

It is always desirable to detrain troops elsewhere than at the regular station. A crowd of curiosity-seekers is disposed to assemble at the station when troops are expected. A few trouble-makers in such a crowd can easily start trouble. Troops while detraining are at a great disadvantage in dealing with a mob or a riotously disposed crowd.

Arrived on the scene, the commander will issue General Order No. 1, assuming command and promulgating regulations, dependent entirely upon local conditions, which the civilians must obey. The sale or the carrying of firearms or deadly weapons, ammunition, explosives, the holding of mass meetings, parades, etc., must always be prohibited. It should clearly state whether

civil authorities, including courts, will continue to function and to what extent the ordinary affairs of the people will be interfered with, and that the regulations prescribed may be altered, amended, changed, modified, or extended at any time deemed necessary.

The commander and those under his command must keep a cool head and stout heart. He and all the individuals of his command must be firm, positive, and decisive, but always polite and courteous. Never show weakness, but never be brusque or rude. The job is not for the "hardboiled roughneck." This applies to the enlisted personnel and the officers alike. Psychology under such conditions is a more potent weapon than arms. Smile, smile, smile—but be firm. A harsh command, accompanied by a scowl or other evidences of anger, makes the average red-blooded American boil over, and then he usually is not an amiable fellow to deal with. The command from smiling lips he may not relish, but the smile helps appeal to his natural good humor. Military discipline must be rigid. Conduct of officers and men must be above reproach. Ultimately, in order for the mission to succeed, the confidence of the affected people must be won. Respect must be had. In this connection, respect must be compelled for the command, collectively and individually. Any affront offered any member of the command must be met by prompt action. Usually the arrest of the offending party, a temporary incarceration in the military prison, and then an interview with the commander will quite suffice to make the culprit ever thereafter have respect for the military authorities and cause others as well to "watch their step."

The responsibility of occupying a city or town is rather a heavy strain under circumstances or conditions where a false move made by any one concerned, from the commander to the youngest recruit, or from the leader of the opposition to a negro crazed by bootleg liquor, might bring about a clash that would cause the lives of innocent children, women, and men to be placed in jeopardy, not to speak of the young National Guardsmen, the life of any one of whom is to be regarded as worth more than all the red-flaggers who in disregard for the majesty of the law forced the Governor to send the National Guard to restore order.

At the very outset it will be found that the service involved rather constitutes a game largely between the commander and the leaders of the opposition, and the results of the mission all depend upon how successfully the commander plays his part of the game. There always arises an occasion which presents an opportunity to the commander to demonstrate that he is the master of the situation. He, of course, will have and must have, in order to carry on, the co-operation of the officers and men under his command; but the esprit of his command will depend largely upon how he demeans himself as the varying emergencies arise. The men, not to speak of the officers, of the command soon get it that there is a game on between the "old man" and the leader of the other fellows. No mission of this character can be wholly successful without both officers and men being inspired with pride by the manner in which the situation is being handled.

I must be pardoned for referring to personal experiences, for only in that way can I hope to convey to my fellow National Guard officers, and Regular Army and Reserve officers as well, impressions that may be of benefit. My experiences as a commander under martial law have been rather varied. They included service on occasions of great public disaster, when the local authorities were rendered helpless by reasons beyond their own control—race riots, rebellion, insurrection, riots, and disorders growing out of labor strikes—and conditions of lawlessness for the existence of which the local authorities were practically entirely responsible.

In March, 1920, longshoremen at Galveston, the second greatest export port in America, went on strike. For three months, by violence and intimidation, they tied up the channels of transportation through the port, affecting commerce not only throughout Texas, but practically every State west of the Mississippi River. The city commissioners and the police department were in open sympathy with the strikers. Men who sought work on the wharves were not permitted to work. They were beaten and driven away. Riot after riot occurred with the police standing listlessly by.

On June 7, 1920, Governor W. P. Hobby declared martial law and designated me as supreme commander. His Adjutant-General gave me 1,020 cavalrymen and the necessary complement of officers. Our orders were to open the port, keep open the channels of transportation, and enforce the laws, faithfully and impartially. On the same day, with the nearest troops available, we entered and occupied Galveston. The usual General Order No. 1 was issued. The game started at once.

The mayor, who was trying to do the right thing, had given members of my staff permission for the command to camp in the city park. It developed this permission had to be procured from the commissioners. They demanded we vacate the park at once. Of course, we could have remained and thereby probably lost public sympathy at the beginning of our mission. My reply was courteous. We moved camp to a far better location, by permission of patriotic citizens who owned the ground.

The next move on the part of the commissioners was to issue a proclamation, calling on citizens to meet in mass meeting to protest against martial law. The newspaper men rushed to military headquarters with copies of the proclamation and asked what the commander was going to do about it. The reply simply was: "There will be no mass meeting"—nothing more. In a little while the papers, not only in Galveston, but all Texas, were on the streets with the commissioners' proclamation printed, and in flaring headline type the commander's reply, "There will be no mass meeting." Everybody, not only in Galveston, but throughout the State, knew that it was the first test. Feeling was tense. The very air was surcharged with suppressed excitement. Then the commissioners sent a messenger with a letter asking whether my public statement that there would be no mass meeting reflected my attitude. In reply I did not write them a letter; I merely inclosed four copies of General Order No. 1, with the paragraph prohibiting mass meetings checked. The

commissioners issued another proclamation, recalling the mass meeting and stating they did this because they yielded to a superior military force. No mass meeting was attempted.

The tense situation relaxed. It went through the air that the military was supreme in Galveston and will brook no interference, even at the hands of powerful and influential local public officials. I could have arrested those commissioners and held them for violating General Order No. 1 when they issued their proclamation calling a mass meeting, as aiding and abetting by their action and conduct the persons then in insurrection. The civil law as defined in *In re* Moyer, 87 Pacific Reporter, p. 190; Moyer *vs.* Peabody, 146 Federal, p. 870, would have justified that action. But I did not. If I had taken that course, the commissioners would have been "heroes and martyrs" in the eyes of their followers. As it was, they were merely losers of the first trick in the game. The State at large, as well as the law-abiding citizens of Galveston, recognized it as a complete victory for the agencies of law and order. My young officers and men caught the spirit. The "old man" had won in the first clash; that meant they had won—we had won. It was good; it helped.

Then followed court action, seeking to enjoin the Governor and the commander and the military forces from occupying Galveston. A wise and courageous judge sitting upon the district bench in Galveston, the Honorable Robert G. Street, dismissed the bill. Thus the opposition lost another trick.

Then the Governor suspended from office the mayor, the four commissioners, the city attorney, city judge, chief of police, chief of detectives, and all members of the police and detective departments. By General Order No. 12 I directed the provost marshal (Colonel A. W. Bloor), now a major in the Regular Army, to take charge of the police station, city hall, office of the city judge, and all records, and that all persons charged with violations of city ordinances be tried by the provost marshal. On the same day this order was supplemented by General Order 13, detailing Captain O'Brien Stevens, a lawyer in civil life, who had theretofore functioned as the city judge of Houston, with full authority to try such cases as might come before him under the provisions of General Order 12. In taking this latter course I did not follow advice and counsel of those who were not convinced that the commander had the power to do this.

Immediately the opposition attacked the power of the provost judge by *habeas corpus* proceedings, initiated before Federal Judge Foster, Judge of the District Court of the Southern District of Louisiana, sitting in the District Court, Southern District of Texas. Judge Foster sustained the action of the commander. (See U. S. *Ex rel.* McMasters *vs.* Wolters *et al.*, 268 Federal Reporter, p. 69.) This settled it; the fight was won. The opposition had been whipped all down the line.

There were many other little things that occurred in between times that were all part of the game, but the opposition now subsided. The wharf company had more men than it needed. The port was open. Commerce was moving without interruption. However, the service was not at an end. There re-

mained passive opposition. We remained altogether four months. Great wharves burned—why, how, neither we nor any one ever definitely determined. We helped the firemen fight the fires. We policed the town. We made approximately six thousand arrests, trying violators of city ordinances before the provost judge and referring other cases to the civil courts, State and Federal.

When we went to Galveston, it is only the truth to say we were not welcomed with open arms. In fact, we were not welcomed at all. But before we left, the citizens entertained the commissioned and enlisted personnel with separate great banquets, presented each officer and man with medals inscribed "Galveston Defenders," and gave us loving cups inscribed "Unpleasant Duty Well Performed." The Galveston Cup is the most highly coveted trophy for which the Texas troops of the 56th Cavalry Brigade now annually compete.

In the winter of 1922 the great Mexia oil field blew the lid off, and then followed a rush of adventurous fortune-hunters that overnight converted a quiet, respectable, law-loving village of fifteen hundred people to a great camp of more than thirty thousand. Came then also the criminal element—the gambler, the bootlegger, the burglar, the pickpocket, the highjacker—and every other species of the criminal known to the catalogue of crime. A futile effort was made to organize the law-enforcing agencies. Extra officers, supposed to be experienced, were imported from distant places. In the language of the underworld, these men became "the law," and "the law" thus personified opened business. So did open gambling houses, saloons, and vice resorts. Lawlessness and crime stalked abroad boldly by day and by night. "Stick 'em up, and I don't mean maybe," backed by an ugly gun in the hands of masked men, was almost as common as "Good morning, sir." Murder for the purpose of robbery was common. Liquor, much of it vile poison, was much easier to get than good drinking water.

The "civil authority" broke down completely—broke down because the few honest officers were prevented in the performance of their duty by the greater number of crooked officers. Governor Pat M. Neff, courageous enforcer of all laws, sent a body of our famous Texas rangers. They are honest, efficient, courageous, but the "civil authorities" blocked their efforts. The authority of a State ranger is only equal to that of an ordinary peace officer or of a sheriff.

Governor Neff declared martial law, and again I became the supreme commander. The Adjutant-General gave me the 56th Cavalry Brigade Headquarters Troop, commanded by Captain E. A. Gajeske, of Brenham. This is "my own" troop. The Adjutant-General (Brigadier-General Thomas D. Barton), who by statute is the commander of the State rangers, turned over to my command twelve picked rangers, with the famous Captains Frank Hamer and Tom Hickman. I called again for Major Chester H. Machen, who served in Galveston as the lawyer in charge of criminal investigation.

Leading men of Mexia had asked for us, but it was the same thing. Many folks did not like it; but the mayor and commissioners, who in Mexia serve at a dollar a year, after looking us over, were glad to see us. It occurred to them they might unload a hot brick. They doubted if any one could restore order in

Mexia and vicinity to a normal, humdrum state of law and order. They would be glad to see it and were willing to help. It required no order suspending officers, for at my request the mayor relieved all members of the police force for whose relief I asked. The sheriff was not quite so reasonable. He rather intimated that if anybody could take the guns off of his deputies such person might keep them, so far as he was concerned. One ranger attended to that job. It was a long time before the deputies even called at headquarters to get their guns. We began the work of cleaning up. More than three thousand persons left Mexia during the first twenty-four hours of our occupation. The rangers made the arrests, sometimes aided in raids by a detail of soldiers kept at headquarters, while the soldiers transported the prisoners from headquarters to the prison camp, located four miles out of the town, and guarded them.

As I have intimated, the citizens, though they really wanted relief, were not very cordial. Within forty-eight hours after our arrival a disastrous fire broke out in the business section of the town. It looked like the entire town would be swept away. More than fifteen thousand people crowded the streets. Most of that crowd were, of course, law-abiding men, though hardened and rough workers of the oil fields, but thousands among them belonged to the lawless class. It was evident that if this crowd was permitted to remain on the streets of Mexia that night there would follow a carnival of theft and sabotage. I had only three officers and fourteen National Guardsmen available. The rangers were sent to the back alleys and back streets to prevent burglaries. I assembled my National Guardsmen about me. I instructed them to move the crowd off the streets and send all to their accustomed abiding places, and keep them off the streets and close all business houses for the night. It looked like a big job for fourteen men to accomplish. They jumped to it with rifles at port and a smile on their faces. In four directions they pushed the crowd backward, ever backward; first slowly, then at a regular pace. Now and then some bully would object, but a kick under the chin, in the pit of the stomach, or on the ribs, with the butt of a rifle stopped his protest. The work was accomplished without serious difficulty.

The next day only a few minor, petty thefts were reported, and then the old citizens of Mexia were satisfied. They were glad we were there. They told us so. They knew from experiences of the preceding few weeks what would have happened if we had not been on hand and if we had not put the curfew on during that night. We remained in Mexia forty-seven days and forty-seven nights. We made hundreds of arrests. We filled the jails of adjoining counties with outlaws and sent many to Federal and State prisons. We performed as unique and in many ways as strenuous a service as was ever rendered by any military force.

The point I want to impress, however, was that both at Galveston and at Mexia very effective work was done with the smile.

It is often said that such service injures the National Guard. I am not convinced that this is true. I have already recited how the citizens of Galveston treated us before the conclusion of our service there.

We had a race riot at Longview in 1919. Governor Hobby had declared martial law and the cavalry took charge. As usual, at first our intervention was keenly resented. When the people of the county learned the real facts, they defeated, at the succeeding election, every local officer who failed to co-operate with us. During the succeeding campaign, after our service at Mexia, Governor Neff's action in declaring martial law at Mexia was sought to be made an issue. The Governor carried Mexia and the entire affected district by more than four to one, and each and every local officer who failed to co-operate with us was defeated by the people at the polls. The service in each instance, while disagreeable and unpleasant, and of course a very great hardship on all of the National Guardsmen involved, made for the Texas National Guard friends throughout our State.

For the performance of such a duty cavalry is peculiarly suited. By the use of mounted patrols the personnel can be materially reduced. A mounted night patrol in outlying sections of a town or city operates with greater mobility. A crowd is easily assembled. Two or three persons gather on the streets or a public square; others, attracted by the presence of the few, join, and thus it grows into a crowd. A crowd under such conditions, when the air is surcharged with excitement, easily becomes a rioting mob. It is important that the crowd be dispersed.

An advancing dismounted military force does not move with the same rapidity with which a mounted force does. The crowd sees a military force moving toward it. If there is time for hotheads to give expression to feeling, it is easily aroused to hesitate and to resist, with the result that violence follows and the clash between the troops and the now formed mob occurs. With an advancing detachment of cavalry the psychology is different. It moves rapidly. The crowd sees mounted men, in uniform, advancing toward it on the trot or the gallop; the clatter of the horses' hoofs and the yell of the charging cavalrymen ring in their ears. There is something about the fast-moving mounted force that strikes terror to the heart, and the crowd begins to move, and it does not wait upon the order of its going—it is gone—and not a single drop of blood has been shed.

Colonel Alonzo Gray's Unique Prediction in 1910

IN THE PREFACE of Colonel Gray's "Cavalry Tactics as Illustrated by the War of the Rebellion," published in 1910, appears the following:

> "I give it as my humble opinion that increased range of firearms and the addition of machine-guns increase the sphere of action of and necessity for well-organized cavalry; that bicycles, motorcycles, and automobiles will prove to be only valuable auxiliaries of cavalry in transporting information back to the rear, thus saving an unnecessary expenditure of horse flesh; and that while flying machines may bring information, by so doing they will widen the sphere of action of cavalry; and, more than ever before, as a result of such information, it will be necessary to have good cavalry, ready to move on extremely short notice."

The Pony Express

BY

First Lieutenant GEORGE L. CALDWELL, Veterinary Corps

EACH year the people of California re-enact some historical event intimately associated with the State's development, and August 31 of 1923 brought a revival of April 3, 1860, when the first pony express riders carried the overland mail from St. Joseph, Missouri—then the western frontier—across plains, mountains, and desert, to Sacramento, where horse, rider, and mail were placed on river steamer and arrived at San Francisco April 14. The pony express route was followed to Sacramento, the old terminus, and, in addition, extended to Stockton, around the south end of San Francisco Bay, and up the peninsula to the Tanforan Race Course, 13 miles south of San Francisco.

The pony express revival was largely fostered by a committee, known as the Pony Express Celebration Committee, representing business and political interests of San Francisco and the State at large. This committee co-operated with similar organizations in other States crossed by the riders. It was originally intended that two teams would compete, a civilian team and an Army team. In the case of the former, contracts were let to local horsemen to conduct the race over stated distances. The Army team was to be composed of detachments from Army posts near the route of the ride, all to be under the direction of the commandant of the Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas. The 11th Cavalry team was to conduct the Army ride from Lovelock, Nevada, to San Francisco.

The day set for the beginning of the ride, August 31, it was announced that, due to inability to arrive at a satisfactory financial arrangement, the Army team would not compete. At that time the 11th Cavalry had detachments of men and horses at Reno, Nevada, and at Myers (State line), Sacramento, and Stockton, California, at which points they were training for the race. The civilian ride across California was to be conducted by Mr. William Tevis, a prominent sportsman of Burlingame, and considerable interest was centered in the race. At the earnest solicitation of the Pony Express Committee, the 11th Cavalry team was directed to compete from the California-Nevada line to the finish of the race.

It is unfortunate that we are not in possession of complete data covering that part of the race from St. Joseph to the California border, but only partial data is at hand. This part of the ride more closely simulated the old pony express, for there was but one team, and riders were riding against time only. Across California the race was competitive and the speed was greatly increased. This article deals largely with the California part of the race.

This race of 259 miles, under varied road conditions, over mountains at an elevation of one and one-half miles and down to sea-level, around tortuous curves and along long level stretches, through temperatures varying from 70 to 100 degrees Fahrenheit, and in daylight and darkness, was one of the longest and most unique horse-races of history. Run as it was, under practically

service conditions and under careful check, the data collected is replete with things of interest to veterinarians and horsemen generally. Unfortuniately, it has been found impossible to collect data concerning the civilian team, particularly the exact information concerning weight, age, and breeding of horses and their condition after the race.

Representatives of each team together located the relay points along the route. There was considerable variation as to length of relays, due to road and grade conditions. The 259 miles was divided into thirty-four relays, the longest of which was over a level stretch of good going of eleven miles, and the shortest, up a very crooked, rough road of about 30 per cent grade, was one mile. The average relay length was 7.6 miles, and most relays varying from 6 to 9 miles. It was, of course, necessary that each team used 34 horses, but not necessary that the relay points be the same. However, they were at the same point for twenty-six of the thirty-four relays. Where our opponents made variations from the first selected relay points, it is believed that they used the better judgment. Horses for each relay stabled at a convenient ranch house near the relay point and the enlisted attendant boarded there also. Eleven of our horses used in the higher altitudes were at or near their relay points about two weeks prior to the race and conditioned there. The next thirteen horses, used in the level country near Sacramento, had been at Stockton and Sacramento fairs, but actual conditioning for the race was begun the last week in August, and they went to their relay points five days before the race. The remaining twelve horses were shipped from Monterey and arrived at their relay points four days before the race, with little opportunity for proper conditioning. The horses of the civilian team were in most instances delivered to the relay point two days before the race. No attendants were left by the civilian team, and the rancher cared for the horse and had him ready at the relay point.

There were practically no rules governing the conduct of the race, other than that each relay must be finished with the horse with which it was begun, or, in case of injury or collapse of the horse, the rider must proceed on foot to the designated relay point and carry the mail packet, and that in changing of horses at relay points the rider had to dismount to the ground and personally transfer the mail to the fresh horse, or, in case of a new rider, to hand it to him.

At 2 p. m., September 9, the Nevada rider arrived at the California line, and at 2:10 p. m. the Army and civilian riders left the California line, each carrying a fifteen-pound sack of mail. The civilian team carried the packet strapped to the pommel of the saddle, and the Army team carried the packet slung across the shoulders of the rider. The first relay of 8.3 miles was fairly level going, with good footing, and was run in 24 minutes, with Army rider leading by 150 yards. The next two relays, totaling 3 miles, was a terrible grind, with a 1,500 foot rise to the summit of the Sierras, at an elevation of about 7,700 feet. The civilian team led by 20 feet. The next relay, one of 7.8 miles, was a sharp down grade, with a drop of 1,600 feet. This relay was poorly horsed and we finished 10½ minutes behind. In the next relay, 10

miles, we gained four minutes, and in the following relay of 10 miles our rider caught and wore out the civilian horse, and the civilian rider was forced to walk nearly a mile to the relay point. At the finish of this relay, after 40 miles of racing, we were down to the 3,000-foot level and leading our opponents by 11 minutes. Through the next seven relays, totaling about 47 miles, over the last ridge of the Sierras, over the foothills, through the gold fields of "49," and at last to level country, the Army riders steadily increased their lead to 25 minutes. From this point on the civilian team had more Thoroughbred horses, and the next two relays into Sacramento, run in darkness, saw the Army lead cut to 12 minutes. The Army rider arrived at Sacramento at 7:45 p. m., after 5 hours and 33 minutes of riding, covering 104.8 miles at an average speed of 18.88 miles per hour, far faster time than made by the average automobile over the same route. Sacramento was a check station and the race was stopped there for the night.

The ride was started the following morning, at a point 10 miles south of Sacramento, at 5:05 a. m., with the civilian rider 12 minutes later, allowing the 12 minutes' lead held by the Army team at Sacramento. The next four relays were over very level country for 37 miles, to Stockton, where the Army lead was cut to one-half minute. At the end of two relays out of Stockton the civilian team led by only 20 feet. At the end of the next relay, after 175 miles of racing, the Army led by 15 yards. Through the next six relays, totaling about 43 miles, the civilian team led by from a few feet to a maximum of 1½ miles. The end of the twenty-ninth relay, and 217 miles from the start, the civilian rider led by only 50 feet.

The next relay was the downfall of the Army team. The civilian rider was mounted on a well-conditionel Thoroughbred and set a terrific pace. In a vain endeavor to hold his position, the Army rider misjudged the capabilities of his horse and rode him out, and at the end of five miles, the horse being leg-weary, stumbled and fell. The rider walked to the end of his relay. The civilian team now led by 21 minutes. For the next two relays the lead remained the same, and increased to 26 minutes at the beginning of the final relay, where the race was checked for two hours. The last relay, of 6.2 miles, the Army gained six minutes. The winners, the civilian team, finished at Tanforan at 2:40 p. m., September 10, and the Army team at 3 p. m., before a crowd of 15,000 people gathered to witness the finish of this great race.

The winners covered the 259 miles in the elapsed time of 13 hours and 45 minutes, at an average speed of 18.83 miles per hour. The Army team made an average of 18.39 miles per hour. The average time across California was nearly 4 miles per hour faster than that made across any other State. The total distance of 2,180 miles, from St. Joseph to San Francisco, was covered in 158 hours, bettering by nearly two days the best old express record, when President Lincoln's inaugural address was brought to the West by pony express mail. This shows the improvement of horses during the past 60 years.

The fastest relay made by either team across California was ridden by Mr. Louis Levers, of the civilian team, when he covered a 5.4-mile relay on a beau-

tiful Thoroughbred animal in the remarkable time of 12 minutes, at a speed of 27 miles per hour. The fastest relay ridden by the Army was one of 10.2 miles in 24½ minutes, at a speed of 25 miles per hour. The fastest relay ever run by the old express was 10 miles in 31 minutes.

The actual road conditions for the ride across California were good, except for some rough roads in the mountains and some very bad grades. About 200 of the 259 miles were paved, but in most cases fair to good dirt could be found at the side; but it called for careful riding to pick the good going. About 10 miles in all had to be run on metal surface roads. Automobile traffic was in some places a serious problem and slowed the race considerably.

The horses used by the Army were selected troop horses and some few polo ponies and two officers' mounts. Not a single horse was a Thoroughbred and only two could be considered as having any Thoroughbred breeding. From careful checking of all animals used, it is found that the average age was nearly 12 years, average weight about 985 pounds, average height slightly more than 15 hands 2 inches. Of the horses used by the civilian team, at least 75 per cent were part Thoroughbred and many pure bred. They used in the mountains some small chunky, native raised horses of the so-called "Indian pony" type. The Thoroughbreds used represented the best breeders and polo stables on the Pacific coast.

Twenty-eight of the 34 horses used by the Army were shod with a plain light-weight issue shoe without heel or toe calks. Six horses were shod with rubber pads in front when traveling over hard roads was imperative. The civilian team used no rubber pads and in most cases a lighter shoe than used by the Army and with heel calks behind on many animals.

The Army used the McClellan saddle except on about ten horses, where the training saddle was used. A standing martingale was used on practically all horses. The regulation bridle, with bit and bridoon, was used on about 75 per cent of all animals and otherwise the snaffle bit only. The civilian team used a light-weight stock saddle exclusively and a single-rein Pelham or Spanish bit. The equipment carried by the civilian horses was slightly heavier than that used by the Army. Spurs were worn by nearly all Army riders, but little used; all carried whips.

In the first selection of horses for this work, care was exercised to see that animals were in good health and free from any unsoundness. In an automobile, accompanied by a veterinary corps sergeant and horseshoer, I made the reverse of the route three days before the race and checked carefully the physical condition of the horses to be used, resetting shoes and making substitutions from reserve horses where it was deemed necessary. We also preceded the racing horses by thirty minutes and rechecked shoeing, adjustment of equipment, and condition of each horse just before beginning his run. Lieutenant C. F. Cox, Veterinary Corps, followed the race for the last 200 miles and supervised the after-care, and I am indebted to him for his assistance in preparing certain statistical data incorporated in this article.

Our horses were conditioned for this race for about three weeks by the

usual road work, at walk and trot, for ten to fifteen miles daily, with galloping the required distance over the actual ground to be covered for a few days before the race. The day before the race they were walked only for about three to four miles. In the case of about ten horses used near the finish, the preliminary conditioning period was unavoidably materially shortened and the effect was noticeable. The horses used by the civilian team were, as a whole, not well conditioned. Many were in excellent training, but also many were fat and in no condition to run.

At least 75 per cent of the horses used by the Army were ridden out at the finish of the relay—that is, they were at a point of almost complete exhaustion, able to finish without diminution of speed in the final stretch, yet unable to make more than a short distance farther without collapse. The remaining 25 per cent had not been pushed to the limit of their capacity. It requires a great nicety of judgment to be able to ride a horse over a six- to ten-mile course, rating his speed so that he does not go hopelessly slow in the last mile or collapse, yet bring him to the finish line without having a half mile or mile at speed left in him. The civilian horses were practically all ridden out and some beyond that point.

As to the immediate after condition, practically all Army horses were in a state of nearly complete exhaustion, but recovery of normal condition was rapid—in a few minutes in many cases and from one to two hours in others. Contrary to expectation, not a single case of laminitis developed. One horse died five days after the race from enteritis, the cause of which was undetermined, and as the horse finished his run in good condition, it is not believed that it was a contributing factor. One horse, traveling over very rough roads, contused both fore fetlocks by interfering and was quite lame, but recovered under veterinary care in four days. As few horses overreached and had slight wounds on the heels of the front feet, no cases of tendinitis, sprains, or strains. Two months' observation of these animals since the race has shown no injuries other than noted above. While not in possession of full data, it is believed that the horses used by the civilian team did not emerge from the race in as good physical condition as the horses of the Army. One case of hemaglobinuria and several cases of laminitis were noted.

The Army team used a total of seven riders, each familiar with the horses ridden by him. These seven riders made ten rides—that is, the average length ride for each rider, without rest, was 26 miles. The civilian team used but three riders, making 22 rides for an average length ride of 11 miles without relief. By long rides without rest, the Army made a serious mistake. Experience shows that after fifteen miles of riding at the speed used in this race, the rider began to tire perceptibly and was becoming a dead weight on his horse, and thus could not give his mount the advantages and ride him as intelligently as when fresh. Carrying the mail pouch on the person was an important factor in tiring our riders. With short rides, carrying all extra weight on the rider would be advisable. Two relays should have been the maximum allotted each rider without rest.

The longest continuous ride by any individual of either team was made by a member of the Army team—39.4 miles. Mr. Tevis, of the civilian team, had hoped to ride the entire 259 miles, and in preparation had made two continuous rides of about 200 miles at a slower gait around a level race-course; but riding with all possible speed, over uneven ground and uphill and down, was found far more exhausting. Riding at the speed of this race, fifty miles continuous riding would be the limit of human endurance; after that point the rider would fall from his horse from sheer exhaustion. Mr. Tevis made one ride of 38 miles, and neither he nor the Army rider, riding 39 miles, was able to stand when he dismounted. It must be said to the credit of the captain of the civilian team, Mr. Tevis, that he did ride in this race 127 miles within a 24-hour period. Buffalo Bill Cody, as an express rider, once made a continuous ride of 384 miles (other than stopping for meals), yet it was made at an average speed of less than ten miles per hour.

The care, before and after the race, of Army animals was as prescribed by the commandant of the Cavalry School. Each animal attendant was supplied with a printed copy of these instructions: Feed three pounds of oats at least two hours before starting; no hay within three hours of the start and not more than 10 pounds in the preceding 24 hours; water before last grain feeding and a small amount before starting; warm up by brisk walking for 30 minutes before the race. The animals were cooled out as follows: (1) Three or four swallows of warm water immediately; (2) sponge mouth, nose, eyes, poll, dock, and fore-legs with cold water; (3) scrape sweat; (4) rub with gunny sack three to five minutes; (5) blanket, walk till cool and give small amounts of warm water; (6) place in shade and feed three pounds of hay; (7) feed two quarts of bran mash thirty minutes after horse is cool; (8) groom; (9) in three hours, water, give two pounds of grain and three pounds of hay; (10) do not move for any distance for four hours; (11) if stiff, apply cold water and wrap soaked gunny sacks about feet. This race was but another victory for the Thoroughbred over the grade horse, and the remarkable showing of the Army horse in comparison can be attributed only to better condition, better preparation and supervision for the work in hand, and greater familiarity of the individual rider with his mount and the actual ground over which he had to ride.

EXTRACTS FROM OFFICIAL REPORT OF MAJOR CLARK P. CHANDLER, ELEVENTH CAVALRY, TO COMMANDING OFFICER, ELEVENTH CAVALRY, ON PONY EXPRESS RACE

As a whole, those horses with the longest conditioning for galloping made the best time, this in spite of the fact that they had been in this high altitude only three weeks, coming from sea-level.

The horsemanship and reckless daring of Lieutenant Conlon and Sergeant May are little short of an epic. As shown by the notes, Lieutenant Conlon's second horse quit and fourth horse gave out. He then rode downhill, on a

road that will break a snake's back, at break-neck speed, but with consummate skill. One side of the road was always a precipice from 30 to 700 feet deep. My automobile was unable to keep up, even though we skidded around curves. As records show, he made 20 miles, with a total drop of 3,000 feet, in 43½ minutes, on two horses, or an average of nearly 25 miles an hour. In spite of his two bad horses, he made an average speed, in mountainous country, of 20 miles per hour for 39.4 miles.

Sergeant Jacob May, Headquarters Detachment, First Squadron, rode through mountainous country, both up and down hill. His horsemanship and judgment of pace, distance, and conditions of mount were perfect. His average speed for 30 miles was 20.4 miles per hour.

Lieutenant George F. Stutsman rode with all possible dispatch and skill. His last five horses were strangers to him, but he rode them perfectly. It is possible that he was a little too careful of his mounts, but in this I am more to blame than he, inasmuch as I could have ordered him to ride faster, but even so, the time gained would not have been, in my opinion, more than five or six minutes.

Private First Class Ralph Wells, Troop B, 11th Cavalry, rode beautifully. He was unfortunate in having one bad horse which gave out. This horse he brought along at an average speed of 13 miles per hour for 8.4 miles, in spite of his fatigue. On his other three horses he rode 21.3 miles in one hour.

Corporal Philip Caponi, Troop F, 11th Cavalry, was never at a loss as to his horses' capabilities. He got every bit of speed there was in them, and every one of his horses finished fast, though very tired. He rode 27.6 miles on four horses in 1 hour and 17 minutes, or 21.5 miles per hour.

Private First Class Vincent Witkowski, Troop B, 11th Cavalry, is a fine and daring rider. Approaching Warm Spring, he dodged in and out among automobile traffic, at top speed, on a tired horse, and caught our opponent at the relay station there. His desire to keep up on the fresh horse led him to ride too fast on his next relay. I was unable to get near, due to unregulated automobile traffic, and the horse gave out. He then ran on foot, carrying 15 pounds on his back, for two miles. His nerve and grit were most commendable.

Lieutenant S. M. Lipman rode with his usual grit on very poor roads. His last two horses were not ridden out by my order, as there was no chance of catching opponents, and I desired to avoid a fall on the slippery pavement. Even at that, he gained six minutes in the last relay.

Enter the 1924 Eastern Endurance Ride!

The Domicile of Persons in the Army and the Navy*

BY

ALBERT LEVITT

(From Central Law Journal, 1922)

A PERSON'S domicile is his legal home. It is the place to which the State will look when it wishes to find him for various purposes to which the law of the place of his domicile will apply. The purpose of the law of the domicile is to control the activities of the person. As no one can be permitted to exist without being subject to some law, each person must have a domicile somewhere. Ordinarily, a person is free to change his domicile at his pleasure. To do this *animus et factus* must concur. He must intend to adopt a new domicile and do some overt act which makes this intention clear. It is for this reason that only those who are mentally capable and who are *sui juris* can change their domicile; can acquire a new domicile. The element of volitional activity is very important, as giving the proper *animus*. Persons who do not move about of their own free will cannot acquire a domicile of choice.

These considerations make it at once apparent that members of the army and the navy are in a situation which is different from most other persons. Soldiers and sailors are not free agents. For the terms of their service they must go where they are sent. They cannot move about as they please. Even when on furlough or on leave, they are subject to sudden and peremptory recall to their commands. They are amenable to military law in every respect. At the same time they are under the civil law. In the United States and England the civil law takes precedence over the military law, excepting when such precedence might interfere with the safety of the State. When danger threatens the State the military law may for the period of emergency take precedence over the civil law. When the emergency is over the civil law resumes its sway. The control of the members of the army and the navy is, then, sometimes in the power of the civil law and sometimes in the power of the military law. For certain purposes, also, the control is in the military law, while for other purposes the control is in the civil law. These principles indicate the factors which must be considered when determining what the law is concerning the domicile of a member of the army or navy. In the decided cases the courts have balanced out the varying and, at times, conflicting considerations,

* Burton's Note.—With certain omissions, and particularly omission of all legal reference annotations, this article is reprinted from the *Central Law Journal* in the belief that, since more than half the regular officer personnel has acquired a military status in very recent years and a large Reserve Corps and Federalized National Guard have recently been built up, the members of which may be presumed to have but very little information about this matter of domicile in the military service, it may be of help to many.

and the results are here submitted. The cases consider and answer four main questions. These are:

1. *What Effect Does Entering the Army or Navy Have upon the Previously Existing Domicile?*—It seems to be settled that entrance into the military service does not cause a loss of the previously possessed domicile. Some courts say that entrance into the army neither loses nor gains a domicile. The reason seems to be that simply joining the army is not enough of an indication that one is trying to give up the old domicile and take a new one.

This rule appears to be sound on principle. Domicile deals with the intention to acquire a home for an indefinite period. Entrance into the army or navy is entrance into a vocation or profession for a limited time, as by enlistment, or for an indefinite time, as by taking a commission. Service in the army, in various parts of the country or in foreign ports, does not preclude the intention to have and maintain a home in some one place, even if one is not stationed at that place. Length of time during which one remains in the service is not an indication of intention to acquire a new domicile, though long residence at one place while in the service would be evidence of an intention to make that place one's home. It would depend on the permanence of the post or station, I think. A post quartermaster sergeant, for example, in the Regular Army, who is stationed at a permanent coast artillery post and who is rarely moved about from post to post, might very well intend to acquire a permanent home at the place where he is stationed. A corporal in an infantry outfit, which has just arrived in Manila, P. I., and is under orders to proceed with his command to a jungle post in central Mindanao, is hardly likely to intend to settle down in the jungle and consider it as his "home." If, however, the corporal marries a native woman, and, when the time comes for his command to return to the States, he transfers to the outfit which is relieving his own, and he remains at the jungle post, such activity on his part is a good indication of an intention to make the jungle post his home for an indefinite period, and the time he spends there may be an indication that he intends to acquire a new domicile at the jungle post. The intent, however, either to abandon the old domicile or to acquire the new one cannot be inferred simply from entering the service and living at one's station; nor will a visit of the soldier's wife to the place where he is stationed make the station his domicile nor indicate an intention to change his domicile.

2. *Can a Member of the Army or the Navy Change His Domicile While He is in the Service of His Sovereign?*—It is difficulty to say what the law is on this point. Three cases seem to hold that a soldier cannot acquire a new domicile while he is in the service of his sovereign.

In Stevens *v.* Allen, H., a minor, was appointed to the Military Academy from Louisiana, where his father was domiciled at the time. He was then commissioned in the Regular Army, and after some time retired and returned to Louisiana. While in the service he married. After retirement he sued his wife for separation from bed and board in Louisiana. His wife never was in Louisiana. She entered a plea to the jurisdiction on the ground that she was

not domiciled in Louisiana, and that he had acquired another domicile during his military service. The court held that, in the case of army and navy officers, the law declares that "they neither lose the legal domicile that they leave nor acquire others in their travels."

In Tibbets *v.* Townsend there were attachment proceedings instituted under a statute dealing with "non-residents." Townsend was domiciled in Olean and had land there. He enlisted in the army during the Civil War. He was sent to the Army of Virginia and served for three years in the South. He always intended to return to Olean and live there. The question was whether he was a non-resident of Olean, and the court held he was not, saying:

> "The position that a drafted militiaman who is taken out of the State to serve in the Army of the United States thereby loses his residence and has his property subjected to harsh and summary process of attachment is too preposterous to be entertained for a moment. . . . To hold that a volunteer in the United States Army during the present rebellion can acquire a residence during his migratory and wandering service is simply absurd."

In The Attorney General *v.* Napier, a British-born subject was an officer in the British Army. He was sent on service to the East Indies. He died in the East Indies. The question was whether his personalty in England, his domicile at the time of entering the army, had been lost, so that England could not impose legacy duties upon such personal property. The court held that an "officer going to the East Indies in Her Majesty's service did not acquire a domicile there so as to exempt his personalty from legacy duties in England."

These cases are supported by the reasoning in the case of Radford *v.* Radford, which case was as follows:

H., a naval officer, had a domicile of origin in Kentucky. He was in active service in the Philippines. W., his wife, resided in New York. H. and W. agreed to a separation. Then H. sued W. for divorce, alleging adultery. Suit was brought in Kentucky. Plea was entered that he was not domiciled in Kentucky. The court held that he was domiciled in Kentucky, and in support of its decision said:

> "Being in the naval service of his country, he is necessarily out of his native State whenever his duty calls him. He obeys the orders of his superiors and goes when and where they direct. It has never been the policy of the law to add to the burdens of one serving his country in its army or navy the loss of residence in his native State from his constrained and involuntary absence therefrom; such an one cannot be said, in any proper sense, to have a residence anywhere other than the home he has left, since he has no choice as to where he goes, the time he can remain, or when he shall return. In order to gain either an actual or legal residence, there is, of necessity, involved at least the exercise of volition in its selection, and this cannot be affirmed of the residence of either a soldier or a sailor in active service . . . (The soldier or sailor) leaves his home involuntarily in the service of his country, and cannot be said in any sense to have lost either his actual or legal residence by so doing."

This language, however, I submit, confuses two things which should be kept distinct. It confuses the volitional element involved in the choice of a new home with the volitional element involved in obedience to the orders of one's superior. The first is a factor to be considered when domicile is examined. The second has nothing to do with domicile. . . .

Whether leaving the old home is voluntary or not, such presence or absence of volition does not concern the acquisition of a domicile. The volition requisite for that is the intention to take a new place as a new home. Such an intention can be present even if the induction or continuance in the service was and is involuntary. *If the intent to make a new place one's home is present and at the same time there is an act which makes the intent manifest, the requisites for the acquisition of a new domicile are fulfilled.* Involuntary service may be an indication of the absence of intent or may not be. And so as to the temporary and migratory nature of the service. It may be of such a character and in such territory that the intent to make that territory one's home is negatived—as when one sees service in uncivilized countries. But some persons like to settle in uncivilized countries. Such persons may intend to make a place where they are but temporarily stationed their permanent home, and the migratory nature of their service may be just a means of getting them to the place where they find the spot which they wish thereafter to be their home; and finding the spot and being there and having the intent to return to it and remain indefinitely makes that spot their domicile. Actual length of stay is immaterial. Migratory nature of the service performed is of no importance. Volitional aspect of induction into the service can be minimized and even ignored.

This proposition grows out of the cases which hold that a member of the army or navy in active service can acquire a domicile of choice. The leading English case is that of Craigie *v.* Lewin. In this case C. was domiciled in Scotland. He went to India as an officer in the East India Company and acquired an Anglo-Indian domicile in India. He then returned to London and died there, leaving an holographic will. The question was whether his will should be governed by English or Indian law. The court held that he had acquired a domicile in India while in the service of the India Company, and that he had not relinquished this domicile. The will was to be governed by the Indian domicile.

The leading American case is *In re* Grant's Estate. G. was domiciled in New York. He was appointed a Major General in the Regular Army. From 1902 to 1904 he had his headquarters at Fort Sam Houston, Texas. From 1904 to 1908 he was Commander of the Department of the East, with headquarters at Governors Island, in New York Harbor. His headquarters then shifted to Chicago, and later back to Governors Island, where he remained until his death. He resided wholly at his headquarters and had no residence elsewhere. While on a business trip to Washington he expressed the intention of buying a house there and making Washington, D. C., his home. He selected a house, but did not purchase or rent it. He shipped some household furniture

and uniforms to Washington. While on his way south he died, while temporarily in a hotel in New York City. New York officials tried to appraise the estate, so as to impose a transfer tax upon it. The question was as to the place of domicile of the deceased. The court held that he was domiciled on Governors Island, saying:

> "When a Federal officer breaks up his home and departs from a mere residence of choice to a permanent military station of the United States in Federal territory, where he continually resides, certainly his residence *de facto* is there in Federal territory, whatever his domicile of origin, his domicile *de jure*, or prior domicile of choice may be."

The court supports its position by referring to the French Civil Code and says:

> "The French Code, for example, now provides that when any office is for life, the presumption of law is that the domicile of the officer is where his function must be discharged."

Three other American cases take the same position. In Ames *v.* Duryea, one X. was born in Indiana, where his father was domiciled. At the age of 18 he was commissioned in the U. S. Army and ordered to Florida. When he became of age, and while still in Florida, he married. After that he kept house in Florida for about a year. Then he went to New York City to await orders. He lived in a boarding-house with his wife and baby. His wife had made a will shortly before the baby was born. Soon after the baby was born the wife died. The will was admitted to probate in New York. According to the law of Indiana, the birth of a child revokes a will; according to the law of New York, the birth of a child does not revoke a will. The question was whether the will was properly admitted to probate or not. The court held that it had been properly admitted. The court reasoned as follows:

At the time of his appointment, X. was domiciled in Indiana, where his father was domiciled. The entrance of X. into the army neither took away nor gave to X. a new domicile. It was competent for X., while a soldier in the army, to abandon a domicile and acquire a new domicile, just like any other person. When X. set up housekeeping in Florida, he acquired a domicile there. When he came to New York and lived in a boarding-house with his wife and baby, he acquired a domicile in New York. Hence, the wife of X. was domiciled in New York at the time of her death, and that law governs the will she left.

In Renny *v.* Board of Equalization there was a writ of certiorari issued to review an assessment for taxes. The facts were that H., a naval officer, was stationed at Norfolk, Va. His wife lived there with him. She was originally domiciled in Iowa. She still owned a house in Iowa, within which house she still stored furniture. She did not intend to return to Iowa to live. H. was then stationed at Washington, D. C., where he intended to live permanently. The Iowa tax board assessed W. for her personal property. The Iowa law applied only to those domiciled in Iowa. The court held that W. was domiciled in Washington, with her husband; that H. had acquired a valid domicile in Washington, and that the tax board in Iowa had no jurisdiction to levy a tax on the property belonging to W.

Ex parte White deals with the assessment of a poll tax. D. was an army officer in service at Portsmouth, N. H. Portsmouth assessed a poll tax upon him. He refused to pay the tax on the ground that he was an army officer in active service and had no domicile in New Hampshire. He was imprisoned. He sued out a writ of *habeas corpus*. The question was whether the writ should issue. The court held that it should. The court said:

> "The general proposition that the presence of the army in a particular locality is not of its own volition, and is presumably only temporary, is subject possibly to the qualification that actual residence of members of the army in a given locality may be of such a fixed and permanent character as to exclude altogether the idea of a domicile or residence in any other locality, and to the further qualification that though one in the military service is subject to the orders of his superior officers, the circumstances may be such that he remains so far *sui juris*, as to matters not involving his military duties, that he may, if he so desires, change his domicile and establish it at any place he sees fit. Thus it is apparent that there is no hard-and-fast rule governing all cases. Assuming the proposition that a member of the army may change his domicile if not inconsistent with military duties to be one based upon reason and established by authorities, the intent to change must be clear, and be asserted with something fixed and established."

The learned court then held that such intention had not been established in the instant case .

These cases, then, seem to establish the following propositions:

(*a*) It is competent for a soldier or sailor to acquire a domicile while in service in the army or navy.

(*b*) He can acquire that domicile in a place to which he has proceeded under orders.

(*c*) The permanent quality of his presence will depend upon the character of his duties.

(*d*) The presumption that he is not voluntarily in the place of his station is subject to the character of his stay and the stay of the unit to which he belongs.

(*e*) His ability to acquire a domicile is limited by the exigencies of his military duties.

3. *Can a Member of the Army or Navy Acquire a Foreign Domicile?*—It would seem, from the little law that there is on the subject, that a member of the army or navy cannot acquire a domicile in a foreign territory. The reason is that service with one sovereign is incompatible with the intention to make a permanent home in the territory belonging to another sovereign. Two English cases are all that the writer has been able to find that are in point These are Hodgson *v.* Beauchesne and *Ex parte* Cunningham.

In Hedgson v. Beauchesne, H., a domiciled Englishman, was in the service of the East India Company. He came back to England on furlough; then he went to France. By the rules of the company, he was subject to call at any time to return to active service in India. While on furlough in France he died. The question was whether he had acquired a French domicile or not. The court held that he had not, because that was incompatible with his service to the Queen and to the East India Company, and because the presumption of law arising from his profession or status was against any intention by H. to abandon his original domicile and acquire a new domicile, as it would be inconsistent to presume an intention contrary to his duty as an officer in the military service of the Queen and the East India Company.

In *Ex parte* Cunningham the question was as to the domicile of a debtor in bankruptcy proceedings. C. had a domicile of origin in Ireland. He received a commission in the British army. It was held that service in the army did not give him an English domicile.

In this connection Dicey is of the opinion that a person who enters the military or naval service of a foreign sovereign probably acquires a domicile in the country of that sovereign. He bases his belief upon an argument of counsel in Somerville *v.* Somerville. I can see no reason for doubt in this case at all. Any Englishman can acquire a French domicile. What difference does it make whether the Englishman enters into the French army or navy, or not? Of course, an English *army officer* cannot acquire a domicile in France, even if he joins the French army. That is inconsistent with his duties to England as an officer. But an English civilian has no duties toward his sovereign which conflict with acquiring a foreign domicile while serving in a foreign army.

4. *What Effect Does Retirement from the Army Have upon the Capacity to Acquire a New Domicile of Choice or a Foreign Domicile?*—On principle, I can see no reason why a person who has retired from active service and reentered civil life has not re-acquired all the capacity he had to change his domicile and get a domicile of choice wheresoever he sees fit. If, however, he was on the retired list, but was drawing pay from his government, and was subject to being called back to the colors for active service, then I think he could not acquire a foreign domicile. In the latter case he is still in the service of his sovereign, though not in active service.

Conclusions.—In conclusion, it is submitted that unless the exigencies of the military and navy service absolutely preclude the acquisition of a domicile of choice, a member of the army or navy is governed, as to choice of domicile, by the same rules that govern civilians.

Enter the 1924 Eastern Endurance Ride!

A Few Suggestions for Handling Two- and Three-Year-Old Colts

BY

Major C. L. SCOTT, Remount Service, Quartermaster Corps

Demand for Well-bred Mounts Increasing

THERE is a great increase in the demand for well-bred mounts by officers of every branch of the service. The only unfortunate part of such interest is the fact that it is almost impossible to secure the kind of horses, desired within the means of the average officer, unless they are bought at two or three years of age. This, in many instances, means sore disappointment to the officer who puts his money in a colt, because frequently it does not develop as expected or else becomes unsound.

Basis for Suggestions is Given

As an officer of the Remount Service, Q. M. C., I have handled, in the past six or seven years, quite a number of colts, and have seen large numbers handled in different ways at Remount depots and by civilians. In the hope that I can help officers in the proper development of the colt and save much avoidable loss in horse flesh, I am going to advance herein certain suggestions. I do not expect every one to agree with me, but for each suggestion I will offer my reason and the reader can make his decision as to the value of the same.

Reason Why Officers Should Handle Colts Differently from Civilians

Many times I have asked an officer, who had secured a likely looking three-year-old, why he was jumping his colt so soon, or why he was requiring such hard work of him? He usually replies: "Well, I see civilians showing three-year-olds in four-foot classes at horse shows and I see them in the hunting field. My colt ought to be able to do it, too." He fails to appreciate that the civilian who does this has the money to afford it or is doing it for a pecuniary reason. In following such a precedent, I ask you the following questions:

1st. The rich man can afford to spoil a few horses. Can you do likewise?

2nd. The three-year-olds, shown as indicated above, are the survival of the fittest. They are priced very high to make up for the loss sustained in the ones that fall by the wayside. Is your colt going to survive the strain; and, if so, can you dispose of him profitably? If he goes bad, can you afford another like him?

3d. The civilian who is in such work to sell horses has a great expense account for forage and labor. He must dispose of his colt quickly if he is to make a living. Is your case the same?

4th. Is your colt as well bred as the one you see doing all these things, and has he been handled from date of foaling like the civilian colt?

This really is the most important question of all, in my mind. Take a clean-bred colt that has been well fed and well handled from the date he is foaled, line him up alongside a half-bred colt that has had little handling and

little care. The two colts may be of the same size, weight, and general appearance, but when you go over them you will note the following vital differences: The clean-bred colt will have well-defined muscles, tendons, and ligaments; his joints will be clean and also well defined. His bone will denote *quality*.

The half-bred will probably show as much or more bone under the tape, but you will note a meatiness and coarseness in tendons and joints, and a *round* bone instead of a *flat* one. His coarse ancestors, which have given him his *size*, equal to the clean-bred colt, crops out more noticeably in his legs and joints than anywhere else. Put these two colts to hard work under the same man, under identical conditions, and your half-bred will go to pieces 90 per cent of the time before the clean-bred one does. The half-bred will quickly fill in his joints; he will knuckle over and develop unsoundness in bone and tendon long before the better-bred colt.

Now, of course, you will occasionally see a half-bred whose legs, etc., in appearance are the same as you would expect in a clean-bred colt, and in those rare instances he will probably be as good in this respect as a clean-bred one. However, be sure to bear in mind the fact that your chances of doing as much work with a coarse-legged horse as can be done with a clean-legged, well-bred one are never so small as when both of them are colts. Your coarse-legged colt has not inherited the wherewithall to do it in the first place, and, in addition, the usual method of handling from a foal has left him way behind in real development. I have noted this fact in five or six colts that I have handled in the last four years, and I have closely observed it in about 200 colts in Remount depots and in a large number of civilian horses that I have seen.

Suggestions for Handling a Two-year-old

For a two-year-old I would prefer to keep him on pasture where he can and will get for himself all the exercise needed. Of course, he should be fed at least enough to keep him fat and in thrifty condition. At feeding time he can be handled, gentled, and halter-broken. During the summer fly time he should be kept in a darkened stall during the day, both to avoid the flies and the heat, and let out in late evening and night for grazing.

If it is not possible to keep the two-year-old on pasture, I prefer to give the exercise necessary by leading alongside a quiet old horse, being careful to lead on both off and near side. Gentling, saddling, and unsaddling can be done, but longeing is very dangerous if the colt should play up and slip or be jerked down. The greatest care should be taken to prevent this, and longeing should only be done at a walk and trot. If you have a boy or a very light man, the colt can be accustomed to mounting and dismounting, and a little slow work at a walk will do no harm.

Handling a Three-year-old

For a good, strong three-year-old I have had success along the following lines: First of all, the colt must be gentled, halter-broken, and have no fear of a man. You should be able to pick up his feet, both fore and hind, with ease, and, in fact, handle him all over without his showing any sign of fear or distrust. You will find that most three-year-old colts, unless raised on the range, have already had this handling while weanlings, yearlings, and two-year-olds. If so, you can break to a longe (only at walk and trot), saddle and longe with saddle on, mount and dismount, and only start riding when you see that you can handle the colt when mounted without his getting out of hand, bucking, etc. He is then ready to go to outside work.

Riding Hall Bad Footing for Colts

You note that I take up outside work at once. I think the footing in a riding hall—tan bark, shavings, or sand—is entirely unsuited to teach a young horse to carry weight. The footing is not firm, solid, or even. It is heavy and unusual going for a colt. It pulls him from the start and puts an unnecessary strain on his tendons, muscles, and legs. Firm, even footing over dirt roads or over grass are natural to him and are easier on him in every way. This becomes most evident by riding a colt a few minutes in the riding hall at the trot or gallop. He will sweat up, get blown very quickly, and be "loggy" on his feet in a very short time. The same work outside will not affect him.

Do Not Try Schooling until Colt Gets Balance

After the colt has started work under the saddle, having read it in a book or done it with older horses, we want to teach something; we want collection, suppleness, etc. We begin by taking what we hope is a light feel on the mouth and try circles, some turns, some work with the forehand, haunches, etc. By such methods the first thing you know you have a confused colt, leaning up against the bit, fighting the leg, and all out of balance. To correct this, you may resort to the curb and then get him behind everything. At any event, you will usually find he is still not balanced and what work you have done has got you nowhere. If you, too, have "felt" his mouth long enough during this work, you will probably be minus any feeling in it. Give him straight-ahead work to begin with, until he gets his balance.

Colt Will Naturally Balance Himself

Now, I strongly maintain that a colt will balance *himself* if given the chance, and much more quickly and much better than an ordinary rider can do. Observe a colt when first foaled; his legs are weak, his weight is too much for his legs; he flounders around in a clumsy and ludicrous manner. He begins first by trying a few steps, and a little more each time. His legs, in a few days, acquire strength and he gains confidence. Soon he learns to use his head and neck to balance himself, and in a very short time he becomes a *marvelous* example of *balance*. He can walk, trot, canter, gallop at full speed, turn, pirouette—all with grace and ease. He learned it all, too, without any help from mankind.

Work Under Saddle for Three-year-old

Following out this theory, I have had great success with three-year-olds by riding them out over dirt roads, pastures, etc., on a loose rein. I do not increase

the gait until the colt feels balanced and goes quietly on a loose rein at the slower gait. It is proper to note here that a loose rein will cause a low-headed colt to *raise* his head and neck and a high-headed one to *lower* his head and neck. They both seek the proper level with their head and neck in order to get their balance. This kind of work should be gradually increased from 10 or 15 minutes' ride to an hour under saddle. I would do nothing else until my colt *felt balanced* and strong on his legs. After getting this, I try work over broken ground. Such work will probably bring your colt up close to four years of age, and to a state in both strength and balance where he can start schooling, etc.

Jumping

Jumping a three-year-old is not advisable, but if you must do it, start over low jumps and follow the method prescribed by the Cavalry School for older horses. When your colt throws out something and goes unsound, take the blame yourself for sending a baby out to do a man's work.

Importance of a Good Mouth

I have spoiled so many mouths myself and have seen so many spoiled in the service that you will find in this article that I have sought a way to get results through natural means and avoid all work on my colt's mouth. Personally, I would just as soon drive an automobile without brakes as to ride a horse with a dead mouth. All really high-class horses, in polo, hunting, jumping, racing, etc., have good mouths, and, with the exception of polo (and this is a loose-reined game), they can be easily and quietly handled with a snaffle bit. I will admit, I am a fanatic on this subject, but I firmly believe if officers get young horses and handle their mouths properly they would never have need of a curb bit for their personal mounts in army service.

Study and Observe Your Colt

There is nothing ever written that you could apply throughout to every horse. Officers who expect to succeed with colts must study them. Special attention should be paid to their teeth, their legs, and their tendons and joints. Any signs of soreness, puffiness, knuckling, etc., mean usually too much work. While in the saddle you must be able to tell when the colt has had enough. Weight at this age is a great handicap, and officers who weigh over 150 pounds should get a light man from their organizations to ride the colt under close supervision. Care in feeding at this age is most important. A colt that has come up off pasture is liable to get "burnt out" on concentrated feed if not carefully watched. Green feed and grazing is most important, but if handled properly a young growing colt will need and consume as much or more feed than a mature horse. All these things you must acquire by experience. You will learn them by hanging around the "barn" and doing your observing and thinking there.

(*Concluded on page 191*)

Obtaining and Maintaining Armory Drill Attendance

BY

Captain RUSSELL L. TEST, 176th Field Artillery

A. Organization

A SUCCESSFUL method of attaining and maintaining armory drill attendance is of vital interest to all organization commanders. If in the following remarks there seems to be a prevalence of the first personal pronoun, please take into consideration the fact that these remarks are not based on theory, but upon results which have actually been obtained.

When I first assumed command of my present organization, on November 9, 1921, all the facts set forth herein were purely theoretical. In addition, there were other theories which did not work out in practice. These latter, of course, need not be mentioned.

When first introduced to the personnel of the Headquarters Detachment and Combat Train, 1st Battalion, 176th Field Artillery, the medium of introduction was the troop roster, containing 74 names. A few days later, on a regularly ordered drill night, I was introduced to the physical personnel, which consisted of 16 live men out of the 74 on paper. Rather disheartening, was it not? Immediately a letter was sent out by registered mail, which contained an announcement of the change in organization commander, an order for drill attendance, and the 61st Article of War, quoted verbatim. The strange name

---

Suggestions Not Contrary to Other Teachings

In mentioning these ideas to a friend, he said: "Your ideas are not in accord with the methods of the Cavalry School—Anderson, Fillis, and others." I claim that he is wrong in this statement. Our cavalry regulations and Cavalry School properly do not contemplate either individual or collective work with three-year-olds. Most authors advise against starting work at this age. Then, too, we should remember that noted authors generally assume that they are prescribing for finished horsemen. Very few of us in the army have progressed far enough to handle a young horse successfully, as they prescribe. We are not expert enough with our hands and our legs to attempt the things laid down by them. As stated at the start, I give my reasons for my methods, with which I have had success with young horses and mediocre riders. This article may be of no value to experts, but I will consider it worth while should it give to the officers of the service some ideas for handling a two- or three-year-old until he reaches an age where he is capable and sufficiently developed to start hard work. I know that many are being spoiled by too advanced work and too hard work long before they are ready for it.

signed in the order caused a little flurry of curiosity among some of the mildly interested members, so that the attendance on the following drill night advanced to a little better than 40 per cent. I talked individually with all those present who had previously been conspicuous by their repeated absence. Apparently they gained the impression that I was a rather harmless individual and not nearly so dangerous as the order had led them to believe. The result was that the attendance the following drill night dropped to a total of 21 enlisted men.

Plainly this was a cause for action. Definite duties were assigned to my lieutenants, and they were informed that their commanding officer would work just as long and as late as necessity demanded, but that they would be expected to do likewise. Their response was most gratifying, as they seemed to realize that only by concerted efforts could they hope to bring the standard of their organization to its objective. Immediate efforts were given toward the formation of an effective non-commissioned officer personnel. The disinterested non-commissioned officers were reduced. The drones were replaced by workers. Charge sheets became so numerous that rubber stamps were made covering required specifications of charges based on violation of Articles of War numbers 61 and 64. Several of the available non-commissioned officers were pressed into service at a reasonable rate of pay and a thorough canvass made to ascertain whether or not the addresses of the personnel list of the organization were authentic. In fact, this check of personnel assumed the proportion of a police drag-net and the co-operation of the civil authorities was most gratifying. Charges and summons were served, and at the expiration of ten days a number of the 74 names on the roster were registered in the guest book of the county jail.

On one drill night summary court was held for 14 members. The effect on the battery was startling. Prior to the trial of each man the commanding officer held converse with him in order to secure a definite idea of his personal characteristics, with a view toward making recommendation for leniency or severity to the summary court, for the first principle of an organization commander is justice to all concerned. The real problems of a battery or company commander in the National Guard is a psychological one. The men are together but once a week, and they cannot be handled on the same basis as a regular army organization under the constant surveillance of the captain. To obtain desired results, no two can be handled in exactly the same manner. In the National Guard the captain is father to his entire organization, and it is essential that he study the whimsicalities and idiosyncrasies of each of his men, so that he may deal justly and fairly with them. One of the ironclad rules of my organization is that threats are never made unless they are carried out. Once this knowledge is instilled into the minds of your men, you will gain not only their respect, but their confidence, for they will know that as you make good your threats, so will you make good your promises.

It has been said that frequent court-martial trials result disastrously upon recruiting. Such has not been my experience. One man in my organization who was sent to jail for five days was awarded a prize for the greatest number

of recruits obtained during a campaign which was carried out about two months after his arrest.

To experience all this grief was no pleasant task, I was besieged by telephone calls and personal calls at my office. From my office I went to the armory and remained sometimes until 2 and 3 o'clock in the morning, answering the questions of parents and friends, examining and admonishing enlisted men who feared that they would soon share the fate of their comrades and hastened to forestall such an event by rushing to the armory at all hours of the day and night to furnish me with fantastic excuses for past absences and earnest assurances of future attendance. Eventually, however, the object was obtained, and on December 4, 1921, the drill attendance of my organization exceeded 60 per cent enlisted personnel. The officers were highly gratified, the non-commissioned officers were enthusiastic, and the esprit of the organization was at high pitch. Realizing that, though the medicine had been bitter, the recovery had every appearance of being permanent, we shall now see what followed.

B. Elimination

Drill attendance continued, but there were on the roll many undesirable men, who attended drill by reason of fear rather than sincere desire to carry out to the best of their ability the contract of enlistment into which they had entered. A recruiting plan was formulated which was participated in by every member of the organization. An expense allowance was made to each man of $2.00 per recruit, with the understanding that such recruits must be approved by the commissioned officers of the organization, and with the further admonition that these recruits were to be a class of men which the enlisted personnel really wanted and recommended as worthy comrades. As soon as a recruit was enlisted an undesirable member was disposed of by such authority of National Guard regulations as best fitted the case. Many transfers were made to other units.

Then, purely through careful supervision by the commissioned personnel and interested activities of the enlisted personnel, the caliber of the organization was advanced to a standing closely approaching the objective set, which, by the way, has not yet been entirely reached. Another important maintenance feature is prompt payment of the men. There should be no delay in forwarding pay-rolls. Pride in the uniform and equipment is also important. A unit commander cannot be too careful in keeping his command well clothed and fully equipped.

Definite assignment of personnel goes far toward high morale. Each man should know just where he belongs on drill night and perform the duties assigned him without confusion.

Elimination is a very important point in the successful maintenance of drill attendance. It is well to remember that oil and water do not mix; therefore drill for the oil.

After the unpleasant parts of the program had been practically completed, numerous smokers and entertainments were held. The past was forgotten and

we were all building for the future. The earnest interest in the welfare of the enlisted men by all the officers of the organization inspired such confidence that the resulting esprit has been as great, if not greater, than any similar organization which has come under my observation since the war.

It is true that some men fell from grace, but if they were absent from drill without proper authority they were immediately served with charges. There was no delay. Every absence was closely followed up and no favoritism shown, which further convinced all men that they were getting a square deal. As one man put it, "The skipper had to put me in jail twice before I realized it was for my own good, and my mother says I am a better man now than I ever was before."

C. Realization

Two years have elapsed, and in that time there has developed almost an entirely new personnel, more than 80 men having been transferred to fill up other organizations. The prize for recruiting offered by the regiment, the amount being $150.00 for a mess fund, was won by the First Combat Train for the greatest number of recruits obtained during a given time.

The organization has had successful athletic teams indulging in various sports. The men come to drill with a desire to learn and to give the best they have in the service of their country. They are almost obsessed with the desire to make their organization first and foremost in the regiment. The enlisted personnel repeatedly come to the commanding officer with suggestions which they believe are for the betterment of the organization, and it is needless to say that when possible to adopt such suggestions action is taken. At any rate, they are given serious consideration, and if impracticable the reason therefor is explained.

Again I ask that you do not consider this the extolling of any one unit or group of officers or any individual officer. Nothing has been accomplished that cannot, by concentration and effort, be accomplished by any officers or enlisted men of the National Guard.

The message is given with the hope that it may be of some assistance in solving the problems of other unit commanders.

In conclusion, December 4, 1923, marked the completion of two solid years, during which period at no time has the attendance of the organization fallen below 60 per cent enlisted personnel and 50 per cent commissioned personnel. One hundred per cent attendance has been effected at the annual summer encampments in 1922 and 1923, 91 and 96 per cent attendance at the two annual Federal inspections, and 100 per cent attendance at a number of drills. This establishes the fact that required armory drill attendance can be obtained and maintained.

Enter the 1924 Eastern Endurance Ride!

The Ohio Cavalry

BY

Brigadier-General PAUL L. MITCHELL

Commanding 54th Cavalry Brigade

WE NEED more cavalry, not only on paper, but particularly in the saddle. For service on this continent, our experience in the Villa punitive expedition conclusively demonstrated our lack of mounted troops, even for a minor operation. In the A. E. F. we paid dearly for our lack of men experienced in the care of animals. We had far too few cavalrymen wearing a red hat-cord, and paid for it in the thousands of animals which perished because the artillery had not enough old files to teach the proper care of animals. The care of animals cannot be picked up in an emergency. If horses and mules are to be used in war, we must have a large corps of men who understand the horse and the mule, not as a piece of machinery, but as a living thing which requires humane treatment if it is to do its work.

The artillery understands the "draft," but too many artillerymen whom I have known do not understand the "horse." Their medulla oblongata is too full of firing data. The schools of Fort Sill and Camp De Souge, in France, which I attended during the war, marvelous as they were as schools of fire, totally ignored the horse, except as a piece of draft mechanism the peculiarities of which were not explained. It occurred to me at that time, that while it was necessary to know how to fire the gun, it was also necessary to know how to care for the animals without which you would not get into position to fire.

The responsibility for the continued study of the horse in war falls squarely upon the shoulders of the cavalry and upon those artillerymen who appreciate that the care of animals in all horse-drawn batteries is half of their problem. Whether or not cavalry be employed as such, the maintenance of an adequate force of cavalry is necessary because of the tremendous importance of training men in the care of animals. Cavalry training, which brings the horse and man into such constant contact, develops not only knowledge of the horse, but sympathy and affection for him, which is equally important.

Outside of the Regular Army, the biggest field for securing cavalrymen is the National Guard. During the past thirteen years of service with the Ohio cavalry certain facts have been brought forcibly to my attention in Ohio during the process of building up the Ohio cavalry regiment. These facts have a general application to the subject of National Guard cavalry and may be of interest.

Location of Troops

There are three essentials in the location of a National Guard Cavalry troop:

First. Suitable stables and adjacent facilities for riding; a ring is desirable, but not necessary; second, the captain of a troop must be an enthusiastic horseman, in addition to the other qualifications of an officer fitted to command; third, the community must give promise of supporting the troop continuously in the matter of recruiting.

If any one of these elements is lacking, the location of a cavalry troop is a waste of time; it will never be cavalry and will sooner or later have to be mustered out or converted, at considerable expense, into some other arm.

Recruiting

National Guard cavalry attracts an intelligent type of recruit. Wherever possible, a continuous supply of recruits should be secured by getting the best element in colleges, high schools, fraternities, lodges, and clubs to join. If the leading characters are secured from these colleges, high schools, fraternities, lodges and clubs, you have established recruiting parties in all of them, who from year to year will automatically bring in new members to the troop.

Training

Bear in mind that you are dealing with an intelligent type of volunteer who has other interests on his mind and on his hands besides military training. You have to sell him the cavalry idea; you cannot force it on him. To this end it is very helpful to pick out the big points and build around them.

Riding and shooting will immediately interest any red-blooded cavalry recruit, and he should be put to work riding and shooting at the earliest possible moment. When he is thoroughly sold on the idea of riding and shooting, he not only will take care of his horse and his arms and equipment, but he will readily fall in with all the other requirements of a good soldier. If all the other requirements of a good soldier are forced upon him first, before he is sold on riding and shooting, he will learn very slowly, because he lacks interest. The quickest way to get results is to give the recruit a taste of the real thing; make him keen for the game of riding and shooting, and then dress him down, after you have gained his interest and co-operation.

In addition to the prescribed drill exercises in equitation and mounted drill, arrangements should be made outside of drill hours for cross-country rides, jumping, and polo. These are the problems of the troop commander to make the work of his troop a live game.

The troop commander's problem in securing target practice is a hard one because of the difficulty of securing outdoor target ranges. Indoor gallery practice for both rifle and pistol can always be provided and, if vigorously encouraged by competitions and prizes, will develop a lot of interest and sustain a good shooting outfit, provided they get plenty of work on the range at summer camp. An out-of-door range available for continuous target practice is, of course, a tremendous advantage. A good way to get one is to develop an enthusiastic crowd of rifle and pistol experts in the indoor gallery course; such a crowd is very apt to find a way of securing a range, because they want one.

Incentives

Competition is the life and soul of sport. No game is worth while without competition. In the National Guard cavalry we must inject competition from top to bottom, all along the line—between troops in a regiment and in a squadron, between platoons in a troop, and between sections in a platoon. This competition has got to be based upon something worth while and must not be silly. A very simple program is to start keen competition in riding and shooting. You can stop right there. Once the riding and shooting games are going strong, improvement in minor parts of the work automatically follow.

In the Ohio cavalry the work during the year is a preparation for the following prizes, which are awarded at each summer camp with much ceremony:

(1) An efficiency pennant, presented by the colonel to the most efficient troop. This will be explained later.

(2) A silver trophy, presented by the officers of the regiment to the troop having the best groomed and conditioned animals.

(3) A silver trophy, presented by the colonel, for officers' jumps; performance only, over eight four-foot fences. (It is a tradition, strongly insisted on and carried out, that the brigade commander and all field officers of the Ohio cavalry must take the officers' jump. The cups are usually won by the field officers.)

(4) A silver trophy, presented by the lieutenant-colonel, for the officers' high jump.

(5) A silver trophy, presented by a squadron commander, for enlisted men's jumps; same as officers'.

(6) A silver trophy, presented by a squadron commander, for enlisted men's high jump.

(7) A silver trophy, presented by the brigade commander, for the troop winning enlisted men's field sports.

(8) Liberal cash prizes for first, second, and third place in record rifle practice.

(9) Liberal cash prizes for first, second, and third place in record pistol practice.

The pennant to the most efficient troop, which was mentioned above, is awarded upon the basis of the following rating:

(a) Strength attending camp, (b) total points scored in record rifle practice, (c) total points scored in record pistol practice, (d) rating in equitation. (e) rating in troop drill.

This rating in no way interferes with the work at camp; it is made by five officers, detailed to give each troop a fifteen-minute workout in equitation and a fifteen-minute workout in drill during the last days of the encampment. The other ratings are a matter of record.

These prizes are not only keenly contested, but they have brought on a very high standard of riding and shooting. The trophy for the best groomed and conditioned animals has done more to develop an appetite for grooming and an interest in conditioning horses than would result from the use of one instructor per unit detailed continuously with each unit for no other purpose.

The day prior to departure from each summer camp is devoted to mounted field sports in the morning and to a regimental review, followed by award of prizes, in the afternoon. After the regimental review the regiment returns

to its position in line, facing the reviewing officer, who is usually the Corps Area Commander. All of the prizes are then awarded. Each troop or each individual winning the prize rides forward to receive it in order. After all other prizes have been awarded, the troop winning the pennant is called up; the pennant is tied to the guidon staff; the troop then passes in line at a trot across the front of the regiment, which presents saber as it passes. It is a most striking ceremony and one which no one present will forget; it sends everybody back to work with renewed determination to win at the next camp. The best sportsmanship prevails, as it does in every game which offers a prize worth winning.

The garrison drone pooh-poohs all competition; he is afraid of it; it disturbs the even tenor of his useless life; but it works.

Instructors

The difference in the efficiency of instructors is so marked that it deserves attention. All army instructors are fairly well instructed themselves, but some of them have not the slightest idea how to get results. An instructor who is not an enthusiastic horseman must not be permitted to act as a National Guard cavalry instructor; he doesn't know how to take hold. The ideal instructor is a wise counselor, guide, and friend; he points out, not all at once, but bit by bit, the things that count the most and need improvement. His problem is to sell the officers a better article than they already have; he cannot force it on them; he has to sell it.

The Ohio cavalry has been very fortunate in having some superior instructors, who secured excellent results because they had a definite idea of certain important points which they realized were badly needed by the Ohio troops, and because they proceeded to camp out on those points.

One of these instructors started the efficiency-pennant idea and presented a beautiful silver cup for officers' jumps. He succeeded in instilling the competitive idea and in getting the officers to aim at a high standard of riding.

Another instructor, who holds an exceedingly high place in our esteem and who was with us for nearly three years, came out with the idea of the internal organization of troops. He worked this out on the competitive basis. He also carried on schools for officers and non-commissioned officers which really meant something, as distinguished from a useless correspondence school. Under his guidance great progress was made in building up interest.

On the other hand, we have had instructors who did not seem to be driving at anything in particular, except to cover their lack of ideas with an immense amount of smoke.

The Ohio cavalry has always co-operated with its instructors, to whom it owes very much; but it will never be satisfied with an instructor who is not an enthusiastic horseman and who fails to produce some worth-while idea in the line of improving our work. If good National Guard cavalry is wanted, good cavalry instructors must be sent out, who are capable of leading our officers by selling them a better article than they already have.

By Their Horses Ye Shall Know Them

BY

An EX-CAVALRYMAN

DO TIMES change? If not, there is no excuse for this contribution. Time was when the selection and purchase of a horse was as purely a personal question as the selection and wooing of one's better half, and surely we should hesitate to offer any unsolicited suggestions on this subject. In either case, if a man were "gypped," he considered it an admission of bad judgment to "squeal." Yet, from the variety of requests for assistance in the purchase of mounts that have been received by this scribe, it is felt that a few suggestions along this line will not be resented.

These questions may be summed up in *"what, where,* and *how* to buy." The first question for the would-be purchaser to ask himself is: "What kind of a horse do I want?" This he may not be able to answer without advice from some experienced horseman. What he should and must be able to answer, before any one can assist him, is: "What do I expect this horse to do? Do I want him for service only, or do I want one for service that I can use as a polo horse also, or as a hunter?" Occasionally an officer who owns his authorized number of mounts desires an additional mount for polo, hunting, racing, lady's mount, or for some other special purpose. Having made up his mind on these questions, he is ready to ask for advice as to what to buy, and for assistance in making the purchase.

As this article refers to the riding horse only, we may state at the outset that, to promise even fairly well for any of the various uses of a riding horse, the prospect should carry a preponderance of thoroughbred blood in his veins—not that all thoroughbreds or half-breds (any horse not registered and not eligible to register is called a half-bred, even though he be seven-eighths thorough-bred or better) are always better than the others. It is possible that one can train a hound for use as a bird dog; yet a pointer or a setter give far better promise of being bird dogs, because they are bred for it.

We anticipate the question, "Why are thoroughbreds or half-breds better?" The answer is, simply "Because they are better." This fact is well known by 99 per cent of all horse users. They are bred to carry weight, not to pull it, and have the conformation and the gaits best suited to carrying weight over varied terrain. They possess a higher degree of courage, greater endurance, greater speed, and better temperament. Moreover, they have the ability to withstand greater heat—a fact which is too frequently overlooked. Of course, a thoroughbred will become hot under certain conditions, the same as any other horse; but, having been heated up, he will cool out much more quickly than will the average cold-blooded horse. This is but natural, as he has a more efficient cooling system.

Let us make a comparison between the horse and the motor. When the motor is working, heat is rapidly developed. When the temperature exceeds a certain degree, the efficiency of the motor is lessened, if it does not cease to

function altogether. To accomplish the liberation of heat, most motors are provided with a circulating water system and a radiator. The water circulating through the heated working parts takes up the heat, or a portion of it, and carries it to the radiator, where it is liberated. The radiator is so constructed as to expose a maximum surface to the air. If this surface be appreciably reduced, the cooling out is retarded. In the horse, the blood stream and the lungs can be compared roughly to the water system and the radiator of the motor. The blood circulating through the working parts—the muscles—takes up toxins and heat and carries them to the lungs, where they are given off through expiration.

Now, the thoroughbred horse, as compared to most other breeds, has a relatively larger lung capacity, which contributes to the superior efficiency of his cooling-out processes. The quarter-horse, for instance, has massive musculature and a relatively small girth measurement. Comparing him to the motor, he has much heated metal and a relatively small radiator. Moreover, the skin and hair of the thoroughbred is of finer texture than of most of the other breeds. The veins are close to the skin, where they are readily visible when the horse is hot. This is no doubt one of the great factors in the ability of the thoroughbred to withstand great heat and to cool out quickly. The writer saw a remarkable demonstration of this as the Colorado Endurance Ride in 1922. The third day of the course was extremely hot and the route was very difficult, the contestants climbing in the neighborhood of 1,300 feet in a distance of fifteen miles. At one of the halts all horses appeared in such a heated condition that the judges, after a conference, voted to impose a rest of fifteen minutes on all contestants. In this rest period the thoroughbreds cooled out rapidly, while there was but little change in the condition of the others. This ability to stand heat is a very great consideration in a service horse, hunter, or polo pony. Let any one interested in the matter take advantage of the next polo game he may witness to convince himself on this subject. He will find that during a period of rest the thoroughbreds, or near thoroughbreds, will cool out quickly and be ready soon for another period, while some of the others will give the appearance of remaining hot until sundown.

The thoroughbred has many detractors. The injudicious purchase by officers and others of track-spoiled, weedy thoroughbreds is responsible in a large degree for this condition. No reflection on the purchasers of these horses is intended, as the good type, weight-carrying, level-headed thoroughbred commands too high a price for the average officer to pay.

This is but little difference in breeding and in type between the officers' mount, the hunter, and the polo pony, the difference being one of size rather than shape. I am really tired of hearing about the great qualities of the Morgan, which is purely and simply a harness horse, and the Arab. The Arab is a good little horse in some ways, but his ways are not our ways. Personally, I I should reject without hesitancy any horse that I knew to carry as much as one thirty-second of saddle blood in his veins. There may be an occasional one that is not spoiled by this blood for the purposes outlined in this article, but it

has never been my experience to encounter one. I may say that I have handled and ridden nearly all the known breeds to more or less extent. The Arab really has very great endurance, and this blood, when properly crossed with thoroughbred, has produced some remarkably good horses. However, I am not convinced that a great deal of his endurance is not due largely to the environment in which he has been brought up. We have seen small range-raised thoroughbreds, or near thoroughbreds, that had practically this same endurance.

Again, horses can be classified, according to the manner in which they are brought up, into *farm-raised* and *range-raised* animals. Each of these classes has its point of superiority. The farm-raised horse is likely to be more gentle and to be better grown out. On the other hand, the range horse is likely to be more hardy, more active, and to possess far greater endurance in comparison to his size than does the farm-raised product. Horse dealers in the West refer to these range horses as being "tight-twisted," which means that their muscles are firm and their feet and legs are more durable. Moreover, their sense of self-preservation is, as a rule, far better developed than is that of the barn-yard colt, who has never had anything more strenuous to do than to fight a rooster out of his feed-box. Some interesting experiments in breeding on this line have been made on rabbits. Wild rabbits, when removed from their natural environment—from the necessity of searching for food and avoiding enemies—have been found to increase in size, while their brain cavities have decreased in size.

In selecting a horse, one should keep constantly in mind the exact work that the horse is expected to do, and should judge him according to his ability to do that work. To begin with, there are practically no perfect horses. What we must do is to select one with a maximum of good points and a minimum of bad points. Yet there are certain considerations that should cause the immediate rejection of a horse. There is no place in the service for an unsound or bad-tempered horse; a bad set of the head and neck, with a bow on the bottom of the neck, is particularly bad; yet if such a horse has an excellent mouth and good disposition, he may be very useful.

All horsemen say that they want plenty of horse in front of them. Certainly this is desirable, but the horse in front of you should not consist solely of a long neck. There are many long-necked, straight-shouldered horses that carry the rider right over the horse's front legs. They are constantly troubled with cinch sores and are likely to be rubber-necked. They are never well balanced. In judging the neck of a horse, one should compare the length of the bottom line of the neck with that of the top, and the latter dimension should greatly exceed that of the former.

Remember, in judging a horse, that you are also judging character. The value of a steer, or a sheep, is a more or less tangible thing, but the value of a horse cannot be determined by placing him on a scale and ascertaining his weight.

Let us now take up the question of where and how to buy. Good individuals may be found almost anywhere, provided the would-be purchaser recog-

nizes a good one when he sees it in the rough. But when it comes to buying more than an occasional individual, the question of where to look for them becomes a serious one, as there are but few places where one can go with any degree of certainty that he will find there a number of individuals of the type he desires. Let us consider the country in three sections—the East, the Middle West, and the West. In Virginia, Maryland, and New York, there are to be found a number of very high-class riding horses. However, this territory has been greatly overworked. Buyers and dealers are constantly on the lookout for this type of horse, and the breeders are well acquainted with the market values. These horses have been bred for hunters and carry a preponderance of thoroughbred blood. They are of good type, and if one can afford to pay the prices, there is no better place to go. In the Middle West, the vast majority of light horses are of the harness type. Those that are not of the harness type are likely to have several crosses of saddle blood. Both Kentucky and Missouri are famous for their saddle horses, and from these two states this blood has spread into nearly all the Middle Western States.

Let us consider next the Far West, which corresponds largely with the range country. Here again can be found many splendid riding animals, although they are smaller than the Eastern horses, which are bred for the hunting field. We will find in the West many scrub horses, also, that are utterly worthless for any purpose. About fifteen years ago an attempt was made to increase the size and bone of the Western horse by the use of draft and French coach stallions. The result generally has been an animal that is worthless for either the saddle or for draft. You will recognize him by his jug head, his small body, his big, coarse tail, the feathers on his legs, his square hips, and his large, ill-shapen feet.

On the other hand, a number of Western breeders were not thus deceived. They adhered to the policy of using good thoroughbred sires on the native Western mares. Their methods have resulted in some really good, high-class cow ponies, polo horses, cavalry horses, and officers' mounts. Moreover, these animals have been inured to hardship from the beginning. They have had to make their way, and as a consequence they are hardy, active, intelligent animals. As a rule, their temperaments are deceptive. They are snorty, have the appearance of being wild and unamanageable, and yet I know of no animal that responds more quickly to kind treatment than do these good, well-bred, range horses.

Let us assume that the officer has located the horse he wishes to buy. He should go directly to the owner and tell him frankly that he likes the horse and wishes to buy him, if the price comes within his means. My advice would be simply this: "Gyp not, lest thou be gypped in turn." Don't try to horse-trade unless you know how. Experience in horse-trading is like experience in poker—it comes high. The would-be purchaser should, if practicable, have the prospect examined by a veterinary officer prior to purchase. If this be impracticable, buy the horse subject to veterinary examination. If you can tell the age of a horse by looking at his teeth, have a look at them, and then rely on

that judgment. Do not ask the owner the age of the horse, and then examine the teeth, as if checking up the owner. This is not good form.

Assuming that the officer knows what he wants, but does not know where to find it, there are two or three courses open to him. First, he may write to some friend in whose judgment he has confidence, and who is located in a horse country, and ask him to buy the horse for him. However, this is a thing that most officers do not like to attempt. He may buy a horse from the Government. However, there are certain strings attached to a horse purchased from the Government. Probably the best plan is to write to an officer of the Remount Service who is convenienty situated and ask assistance in the locating and purchase of a horse. We understand that the Remount Service is glad to assist officers in this way. They are loath, however, to complete a purchase without the purchaser having personally inpected the horse.

Draft horses, mules, and race-horses all have a definite value based on their earning capacity; but the horses from which our officers' mounts, hunters, polo ponies, and pleasure horses are drawn are worth whatever their owners can get for them. This depends largely on the cost of production and maintenance, the proximity to a market, the number of buyers, the state of the horse's training, and also the state and condition of the owner's bank account frequently has an important bearing on the selling price. The dealer is in the game for what he can make out of it in the way of profit and pleasure. If you are buying a finished product, the dealer is entitled to a very large profit. Remember, he has had many losses, and most of them go broke sooner or later. I once heard a dealer say that his aim was to sell a horse high enough, so that the purchaser would not have to sell him again in order to do justice to the horse. Know what you can pay and be willing to pay it for a horse that meets your needs. If the breeder does not make a profit, he will cease to breed. If the dealer makes a profit, remember that he, too, is entitled to a living. In fact, the ultimate user, the dealer, and the breeder have at least this in common—the appreciation of a good horse and a slight desire to out-trade the other fellow.

Enter the 1924 Eastern Endurance Ride!

1924 Eastern Endurance Ride

WITH the hope that a large number of entries may be made from the Cavalry of the Army of the United States, the conditions of the 1924 ride are published herewith. It is to be remembered that a Cavalry trooper (Corporal Major, Troop E, 3d Cavalry) took third place in the 1923 ride, upon a troop horse. He was one of the first two enlisted men to participate in one of these rides and the only one ever to finish in "the money."

In view of the fact that the U. S. Cavalry Association is one of the sponsors of the ride, coupled with the fact that these rides are, beyond all shadow of doubt, most excellent training for long-distance marching and individual riding, it would seem that officers and men of the Cavalry would be particularly interested in them and would make every effort to participate.

It is hoped that a means may be found to have the Cavalry School represented in this ride by two or three second-year students or instructors.

The route master advises that the ride will be held in the Shenandoah Valley, based on Berryville, Va., or on the eastern slope of the Blue Ridge Mountains, based on Warrenton, Va. The exact locality will be announced later.

The main conditions of the ride follow:

These rides are held annually, under the direction and management of the Board of Sponsors made up of one representative of each of the following organizations: American Remount Association, Arabian Horse Club of America, Horse Association of America, The Kentucky Jockey Club, The Morgan Horse Club, Thoroughbred Horse Association, and U. S. Cavalry Association.

These rides are also held under the approval of the following Associate Sponsors: U. S. Department of Agriculture, American Saddle Horse Breeders' Association, Genesee Valley Breeders' Association, National Steeplechase & Hunt Association, and The Polo Association.

1. Object

These endurance rides, approved by the War Department, the Chief of the Remount Service, the Chief of the Bureau of Animal Industry of the Department of Agriculture, and the Sponsors, are designed to stimulate general interest in the breeding and use of good saddle horses of a general utility type, possessed of stamina and hardiness, which will render them suitable for use in the mounted service of the United States, as well as for commercial purposes. In particular, it is desired:

(*a*) To demonstrate the value of type and soundness and the proper selection of horses for a long, difficult ride;

(*b*) To learn and demonstrate the proper method of training and conditioning horses for a long, severe test;

(*c*) To encourage horsemanship in long-distance rides;

(*d*) To learn and demonstrate the best methods of caring for horses during and after long, severe work, without the aid of artificial methods or stimulants.

2. Eligibility

Entrance fee shall be $10 for each horse entered, and must be sent, with entry blank duly filled out, to C. C. Stillman, Secretary of the Board of Sponsors, 3 East 44th Street, New York City, thirty days before the start of the ride. Post entries will be allowed, but the fee for post entries will be $25. No rider will be allowed to start unless his entrance fee has been paid. Every horse entering the ride must fall within the following classes:

A. *Pure-bred*—A pure-bred is one which is either duly registered in a recognized studbook or concerning which evidence establishing his pure breeding is furnished to the satisfaction of the judges.

B. *Cross-bred*—A cross-bred is one the sire of which is a pure-bred duly registered in a recognized studbook of one breed, whereas the dam is a pure-bred duly registered in a recognized studbook of a different breed, or one concerning which evidence satisfactory to the judges is furnished establishing the fact that his sire and dam are of different pure breeds.

C. *Grade*—A grade is a horse of which either the sire or the dam is a pure-bred duly registered in a recognized studbook of some breed, or concerning which evidence satisfactory to the judges is furnished establishing the fact that said sire or dam is a pure-bred of such breed, whereas the other dam or sire is of unknown breeding or not registered, as the case may be.

Any horse entered must have attained at least five years of age—that is, show a five-year-old mouth. Entries are open to stallions, mares, and geldings. Entries must be made on blanks provided for that purpose, with complete answers to all questions thereon. Entries must be filed with C. C. Stillman, Secretary of the Board of Sponsors, 3 East 44th Street, New York, N. Y., thirty days before the start of the ride.

3. Desirability of Entry

While it is not desired to limit entries or deprive owners of the right to use their judgment in making entries, the Board of Sponsors feels that every effort should be made to secure entries which will fulfill the object of the test. The judges must eliminate at the start any horse which is possessed of any major unsoundness to such an extent as would in all probability preclude the possibility of that horse finishing.

5. Officials

All officials are elected by the Board of Sponsors. They are three judges, recorder and assistant, route master and assistant, weigher and assistants, veterinarian and assistant, farrier and assistants, and watchmen.

7. Judging

As judges in endurance rides have no method of procedure established by long usage, such as exists in judging in the case of hunters, saddle and harness

classes; so, in order to standardize the method of judging the following procedure is prescribed:

The judging is divided into three periods: Preliminary judging, judging during the ride, and final judging.

(*A*) *Preliminary Judging*:

(1) The preliminary judging will begin at 9:00 a. m. the day before the start of the ride (*i. e.*, Sunday). Each horse will be weighed and then examined on the halter by the judges, assisted by the veterinarian. Elimination of unsuitable entries must be made at this time. A horse which is lame or which has a temporary injury that obviously will grow worse under hard work and cause the animal pain must also be thrown out. (Examples: A raw sore back, fistulous withers, rope burns, etc.)

(2) After the horse has been determined by the judges to be a suitable entry, examination will then be made by them for blemishes and minor defects, which, if of any importance, must be recorded at that time. (Examples: Wind puffs, splints, old interfering marks, etc.)

(3) The next step in the examination is showing the horse under saddle, and peculiarities in gait and method of traveling must be recorded at that time. In the preliminary examination the horses must be shown in the same place and the same manner as they will be shown for the final judging. The gaits which must be required and seen are the walk, trot, canter, and extended gallop; a horse must also be backed. If the judges intend to ride the horses which finish, they must ride the horses at this preliminary judging and record their impressions at that time.

(*B*) *Judging during the Ride*

(1) Judging during the ride will be so conducted as to obtain a proper estimate of the stamina and of the ability of the horses in the ride. It is not possible to prescribe a method of scoring during the ride, and the adoption of such method is of doubtful value. For instance, a bunch on a back, a sore tendon, rapid pulse, or something of that nature might look serious on the second day and score heavily against the horse then, whereas such injury or defect might clear up entirely and be of no importance at the finish or in no way affect at this time the ability of the horse to continue the ride. A careful record of such defects or injuries must be recorded by each judge in his own handbook at the time of observation, and by the recorder under the direction of the judges. Scoring off for them, if necessary, will be done on the last day of judging, when their importance as to final condition can be properly estimated. Of course, two horses being of equal condition at the finish, the one which has suffered less than the other during the ride should be considered the better horse.

(2) Special care by both the judges and veterinarians must be taken to see that no medicines, bandages, boots, etc., are used during the ride, and that the rules for the ride are obeyed.

(3) The horses will be carefully observed on the road to see that no permanent injury results from overwork, and in case of doubt a contestant must be stopped on the road and his horse carefully examined. In case the horse is not thrown out, credit will be given for the time which is lost during the examination.

(4) Weight of each horse still in the ride will be taken at the end of the fifth day, when it comes in from the ride. At least one judge must observe the official weighing of horses.

(*C*) *Final Judging:*

(1) The judging for the final awards covers two periods: First, the day after the last ride (Saturday); second, the next following night (Saturday) and the following morning (Sunday). The object of extending the judging period to approximately forty hours after the completion of the ride is a threefold one: First, to give the judges time to see if any defects or injuries resulting from the ride will come out after the completion of the ride; second, to give the judges time to see just what physical reaction the ride may have on the horse—*i. e.*, if he will rapidly return to normalcy; third, so to conduct the judging as to preclude any possibility of the use of medicines or stimulants, etc., by examining the horses before they are handled and by keeping them under constant observation while being handled.

(2) Procedure in judging the day following the ride (Saturday): Horses will be fed and watered by the guard provided at the stables, at the usual time in the morning, under the direction of at least one of the judges, but on this morning no rider, groom, or owner will be allowed access to his horse or horses until permission is given him by the judges. At 7:30 a. m. riders and grooms (and owners, if they desire) will report to the judges at the stables. The judges will then so arrange it that each horse still in the ride is individually led out of his stall and examined on the halter, in the presence of all three judges, before such horse is in any way handled by the groom, rider, or owner. As soon as this examination of the horse is completed, the groom, rider, or owner is allowed access to the stable for such work as is permitted under the rules of the ride, but under the constant observation of the judge or an official appointed by the judges. After the completion of this examination on the halter, the horses will be weighed, saddled, and shown in the ring under stripped saddle, as prescribed in the preliminary judging. Upon the completion of the judging in the ring, which should give the horses sufficient exercise for the day, the horses should be returned to the stables. They will, upon being put up after this work, be turned over to the judges solely during the balance of this day and until 7:30 a. m. the following day (Sunday). A slip for each horse, indicating how the horse should be fed and watered, will be given the judges, who will arrange to see that this is properly done under the supervision of at least one judge. No owner, groom, or rider will then be allowed access to his horses, nor will he be allowed in the vicinity of the stables during this period.

(3) Prqpedure for final judging on the last day (Sunday): Riders and grooms (and owners, if they desire) will report to the judges at the stables at 7:30 a. m. Each horse will be examined on the halter, as on the preceding day (Saturday). After the necessary care and grooming (under the direct supervision of at least one judge or an official appointed by the judges), the horses will be weighed, saddled, and report in the ring for final judging, under stripped saddle, at a time set by the judges. The final showing under stripped saddle in the ring will be as prescribed in the preliminary judging.

8. Final Awards

Awards are made on a basis of 60 per cent for condition and 40 per cent for speed. Every horse that starts is credited with 60 per cent for condition, and his final scoring for condition is arrived at without regard to speed, and is based on the daily observations during the judging period, and especially the condition at the finish and at the examinations following the ride.

9. Information of Defects and Injuries

As one of the objects of the ride is to improve horsemanship and disseminate knowledge, the owner, rider, and groom of each horse will be given an opportunity to observe any injuries, defects, or unusual condition pertaining to his horse. The judges, at any time any such condition shall occur, will notify, as soon as practicable, the owner, groom, and rider of the horses concerned and no one else. The judges must be prepared to point out the condition, injury, etc., and be able to answer any reasonable inquiry in regard to it. The information, however, being given to the owner, rider, and groom for the purpose of disseminating knowledge, is not to be regarded as a basis for any argument. If owner, rider, or groom does not agree with the judges, he can neither protest nor argue about it, and any discourteous conduct shall be followed by immediate disqualification of horse and rider.

14. Farrier

It shall be the duty of the farrier and his assistant to set shoes at feeding stations and along the road as far as it is possible. The services of the farrier may be secured by any contestant at any time and will be given free of charge. Contestants may have the shoes of their horses replaced or reset at their option. Bar shoes are permissible; also three-quarter shoes, clips, toe or heel calks, or both. Pads are not permissible. No weight limits are prescribed for shoes, nor is there any limitation as to nails. Contestants may do their own farriery. It is permissible for contestants to bring their own farriers or they may obtain the services of a resident farrier *en route,* in emergency.

16. The Course

The course will be laid out by the route master and his assistant. The total distance will be approximately 300 miles, to be covered at the rate of about 60 miles per day for five consecutive days, regardless of the weather. The

distance for any day may be slightly more or less than 60 miles, depending on local conditions. The course will be plainly marked, to include numbering the miles, from one to sixty, for each day. All contestants will follow the prescribed course.

17. Stabling

Stabling, including facilities for feeding and watering, will be provided by the management. (For fee covering cost of forage and stabling see paragraph No. 22, headed "Forage and Feeding.")

18. Speed

Contestants will start between 6:30 a. m. and 7:00 a. m. daily. If a contestant starts later than 7:00 a. m., his time will, nevertheless, be reckoned from 7:00 a. m. Time on the road is reckoned from "check out" at the start to "check in" at the finish. The minimum time permitted on any day is 9 hours. The maximum time allowed on any day is 11 hours. The maximum time allowed for the entire ride of five days is 50 hours. The maximum score is 40 points for 45 hours, and the minimum score is 0 for 50 hours. Between these limits, 7½ minutes equal 1 point, etc., at that rate.

19. Riders

Horses are to be ridden by white male riders designated by owners. Owners may change riders at any time up to the beginning of the ride, provided such change be communicated to the judges at or before the time of starting. Each rider shall continue from start to finish with his horse, unless excused by the judges on account of illness or other real emergency. If a rider is excused, the owner of the entry which was ridden by the excused rider may designate another rider with the approval of the judges. The judges may, in their discretion, disqualify any contesting horse when two men who have ridden such horse shall have been excused, or they may permit such horse to continue in the ride unconditionally with a third rider. Riders must remain in the saddle when the horse is in motion over the course, but may dismount and rest themselves and horses at any time, provided they do not advance. Owners and their agents are forbidden to coach, pace, instruct, or convey information to contesting riders after the start in the morning until the conclusion of the day's ride, except during the noon feeding period, and riders are forbidden to receive such coaching, instruction, or information from owners or agents, except at the noon feeding period or at night.

20. Care of Mounts

Each rider may have one groom to assist in the care of his mount at night stations, and each rider and owner is responsible for everything done by his groom. On the road the rider is required to care for his own mount, except such small aid as holding his horse, assistance in saddling, etc., which he may receive. Between 8:00 p. m. and 5:00 a. m., owners, riders, and grooms are

not allowed in the stables. The use of halters, saddlecloths, blankets, brushes, curryeombs, etc., is permissible. If used on the horse during the day's ride, they must be carried on the saddle. Weight can be made up in any way desired. Hand rubbing and the use of water at ordinary temperatures are permitted, but salves, liniments, cotton, bandages, etc., are forbidden. Horses may be allowed to stand in water of ordinary temperature in individual feed or water buckets only while such water is actually being slushed on legs. Only one bucket at a time may be used. Rubbing cloths may be used as such, but not as substitute for bandages or swabs. Injuries and wounds shall be reported to the official veterinarian without unnecessary delay, to be treated by him and to be penalized by the judges in their discretion. No medicine, drug, or stimulant of any kind may be administered to any horse except under the direction of the official veterinarian. Horse boots of all kinds are prohibited under penalty of disqualification. Water for mounts on the road may be secured by the rider whenever practicable or desired, and it will also be provided for all horses at suitable intervals by the route master. Owners, grooms, and official observers accompanying the ride will offer no assistance in watering, except at noon stops. The roads should be left free for the riders and the officials of the ride, and assistance must not be given to a particular rider unless it is provided for each and every one.

21. Penalty for Administering Medicine or Dope

Any owner, rider, or groom who administers, or allows to be administered any medicine, stimulant, or dope to his horse will be forever barred from these endurance rides.

22. Forage and Feeding

Whole oats, bran, hay, and salt bricks will be provided for all horses, and no other feed will be permitted except grazing. The maximum daily allowance of grain is 14 pounds; of hay, as desired. The judges will note the quantities of forage used and make official record of any abnormal consumption of feed, as compared to weight of horse. Three feeds daily will be provided for each horse—one at the start, one at the midday halt, and one at the finish. Uneaten forage shall not be removed from the stall, except as authorised by the judges. Each contestant shall submit daily to the weigher his requisition for forage for the following day. Contestants are required to pay the treasurer before the start the estimated cost of forage and stabling for the whole ride.

23. Weight

Each horse shall carry a minimum of 225 pounds, made up of the stripped weight of the rider (live weight) and everything else that he carries (dead weight), except the bridle and the halter, if the latter is worn on the horse's head. If the stripped rider weighs 155 pounds or less, the horse carries a minimum of 225 pounds. If the stripped rider weighs more than 155 pounds, the horse carries a minimum of 225 pounds plus one pound dead weight for

every two pounds live weight in excess of 155 pounds. Borrowing and lending of equipment and changes of equipment are prohibited, except to make weight or in case of injury or sickness, and then only by special permission of the judges, obtained in advance. Riders and equipment will be weighed in directly before and weighed out directly after each day's ride, and any loss in weight due to shrinkage of rider must be made up.

24. Prizes

In addition to the usual ribbons, the following prizes will be awarded:

First pribe, $600, the Mounted Service Cup, Arabian Horse Club Medal, the Morgan Horse Club medal, the Morgan Horse Club gold sleeve link cuff buttons.

Second prize, $500, the Morgan Horse Club gold sleeve link cuff buttons.

Third prize, $400, the Morgan Horse Club gold sleeve link cuff buttons.

Fourth prize, $300.

Fifth prize, $200.

Sixth prize, $100.

One hundred dollars in gold will be given to the rider who shows the best horsemanship during the ride, without regard to his position at the finish.

In addition to foregoing prizes, bronze medals, appropriately engraved with facts pertaining to the ride, will be awarded to each rider who successfully completes the 300-mile endurance ride. These are given by the Horse Association of America as a memento, which the riders may retain.

The Mounted Service Cup may be held by any single first-prize winner for but one year, after which it must be surrendered by him to the judges of the ride for the ensuing year, to be again contested for; this process to continue until said cup shall have been three times won by a horse or horses which are the *bona fide* property of a contesting owner, after which said cup shall become the absolute and unconditional property of such owner: Provided, however, that the purchase of a horse which has won the cup on one or more occasions prior to such purchase does not operate to confer any rights to said cup upon said purchaser, but such prior winning by said horse shall continue to inure to the benefit of the person who owned such winning horse at the time of his winning. Transfer of title to an entered horse after the ride shall have been started shall not be effective to confer upon the transferee any rights to prizes which may be won by such transferred horse, but such prizes shall inure to the owner of record at the time the ride started.

Enter the 1924 Eastern Endurance Ride!

German Cavalrymen as Prisoners of War in France

The Editor, THE CAVALRY JOURNAL, *Washington, D. C.*

DEAR SIR: I have read with much interest the statement of the French Ministry of War, transmitted through the French Military Attaché in Washington to your paper, with regard to the treatment accorded Lieutenant von Schierstaedt, of the Prussian Guard Cuirassier Regiment, and Count Strachwitz, of the Guard du Corps Regiment, by the French military authorities following their capture in September, 1914.

I in no way share the viewpoint taken by the French Ministry of War. Both in respect to the statement regarding the so-called breach of the laws of war committed by Lieutenant von Schierstaedt and Count Strachwitz, as well as the general nature of the treatment accorded these officers during their term of imprisonment in France, I find the statements of the French War Ministry in no way in accordance with the facts. I desire in no way to enter into a propaganda discussion of the case in question. I believe, however, that the facts here at issue are of interest to soldiers, and particularly to cavalrymen the world over, bringing up, as they do, the question of the military or civil status of a cavalry patrol operating in enemy country in time of war. The cavalry patrol, operating behind the enemy's lines is in a peculiar situation and can usually neither replenish its food supplies nor fodder, if it is obliged to follow the strict procedure laid down by The Hague rules of land warfare for requisitions. Time is often too short and its position too dangerous to permit its leader to do ought but comply with the sense of The Hague rules.

It is not believed that even a technical breach of the rules of land warfare was committed by the Patrol Schierstaedt, and certainly the action of the French authorities in treating the members of this cavalry patrol as ordinary criminals for actions committed in scores of instances in every war of the past century is indefensible, morally or legally.

Relying upon the communication from the Department of Military Justice of the French Army, the CAVALRY JOURNAL of July has stated that my charge of unjust and arbitrary treatment of the German officers has been disproved. I hope for this reason that the editorial staff of your paper will further give space in its columns to the attached short article, which I hope will tend further to illuminate the points at issue in the case of Lieutenant von Schierstaedt and Count Strachwitz.

(Signed) W. W. POSECK,
Lieutenant-General, Inspector of Cavalry, German Army.

FOREWORD

THE BOOK OF GENERAL VON POSECK, "German Cavalry in Belgium and France in 1914," was published in English by the U. S. Cavalry Association in 1923. A passage in this book contains a report concerning the dispatching of

five patrols to destroy railway lines in September 6, 1914, with the remark by General von Poseck that the members of the patrols, Lieutenant von Schierstaedt and Count Strachwitz, were sentenced, against all the international laws of war, to serve terms of imprisonment.

The Editor of the CAVALRY JOURNAL has seen herein a serious accusation against the French Army, and through the help of the French Military Attaché in Washington has asked the French Ministry of War to state their official viewpoint about this case.

The very circumstantial evidence in the report by the French Ministry of War published in the CAVALRY JOURNAL of July, 1923, created the impression that the punishment of the two officers and the four men to five years' penal servitude and imprisonment for plundering in a band and under arms was in accordance with the rules of international law, and that the Germans were treated with all possible consideration, which is quite contrary to the case, as will be proved in the following article.

For an objective understanding of the case, I state:

The patrols were far behind the enemy front, and attempted, under the greatest difficulties and hardships, as honorable soldiers, true to their duty, to return to their own troops instead of surrendering to the French. They were, therefore (according to Article 1, Chapter 1, Hague Rules of Land Warfare), to be considered as belligerents, who had the right to acquire the means to support their livelihood. When it was possible, they paid in cash for their supplies.

As Lieutenant von Schierstaedt entered a peasant house one day to get food, he met a peasant woman, who began to scream loudly at his appearance. To avoid discovery, Lieutenant von Schierstaedt withdrew immediately, taking two loaves of bread, which he had intended to buy from the woman, as he and his comrades were near to starvation. This was the robbery with which the judges especially reproached him.

The French people had taken the German patrols for Englishmen, as was often the case during the entire advance in 1914. The patrols naturally made use of this circumstance and later often gave themselves out for English.

The retaining of their uniforms, their arms and equipment, so long as it was possible shows most clearly that the patrols considered themselves as belligerents.

The wearing of civil clothes by Lieutenant von Schierstaedt was due to the following reason: He had taken off his clothes, which were wet through, and was lying in the sun, when he was suddenly obliged to flee before a French patrol, dressed only in his shirt and military cap. A peasant gave him a coat and trousers, refusing any money for them, as the clothes were very poor. These civil clothes, forced on him by circumstances, as a matter of fact were only worn eight hours, during the night, from 10 o'clock in the evening till 6 o'clock in the morning. His military cap he wore as sign of his military calling (Article 29 of The Hague Land Warfare Rules). For this reason he can never be considered as a spy, nor did the patrols gather and transmit information secretly or under false pretense (Article 29 of The Hague Land

Warfare Rules). The requisitioning of a wagon and a horse is also allowed as "means of transportation" (Article 53, Hague Land Warfare Rules).

After stating these facts I may be allowed to question whether the conduct of the patrol deserved a conviction for robbery and plundering and whether an honorable and loyal soldier could have acted otherwise.

The main crime of which Lieutenant von Schierstaedt was accused was the theft of the bread, as described above, and the taking of the old suit of clothes when he was half naked, so that he could effect his escape. None of these acts can be considered as plundering, in the interpretation of The Hague Land Warfare Rules, and in any case the decision of the French court and the handling of patrols during hostilities as common criminals can in no way be construed as permissible under The Hague Rules of Land Warfare.

Concerning treatment during captivity, it is striking that the exchange of diplomatic notes concerning this affair by Germany and France from December, 1914, till August, 1915, which were transmitted by the American and Spanish ambassadors, is not mentioned in the otherwise accurately composed communication of the French Ministry of War. Because of these negotiations and because of the German retaliation measures (the transfer of six French officers to the prison at Spandau), the French Government was obliged to alter its standpoint. Later on, when the French Government inclined to a milder point of view, it was difficult to find the way to an honorable retreat. Through the medium of Gerard,* after great difficulties, a commission from the American Embassy at Paris was sent to Avignon to investigate the treatment of the six members of the patrol. For this purpose Lieutenant von Schierstaedt was cleverly transferred for a short time from the disgraceful imprisonment in the lunatic asylum at Montdevergues to Avignon, whereby the commission evidently should receive a less unfavorable impression of his treatment and quarters.

The statements of the French Ministry of War as to the humane treatment of the prisoners are far from being in accordance with the facts. On their return to Germany both officers took oath before a notary public that they were imprisoned in the same cells with French criminals and were brutally ill-treated by the French guards.

In requesting the publication of these remarks in your magazine, there is no desire to carry on a discussion of the truth or falsity of the charges and counter-charges as to the mishandling of the prisoners. The facts of the matter are, however, in my possession and can be furnished the CAVALRY JOURNAL at any time, if desired.

(Signed) W. W. POSECK,
Lieutenant-General, Inspector of Cavalry, German Army.

* Gerard: Four Years in Germany, Chap. XIV.

Enter the 1924 Eastern Endurance Ride!

Editorial Comment

AN APPRECIATION OF MAJOR HOWE

THE EXECUTIVE COUNCIL of the Cavalry Association desires to express, through the CAVALRY JOURNAL, its sincere regret at the retirement of Major Jerome W. Howe from the editorship of the JOURNAL, and to record, at the same time, its grateful appreciation of his very efficient service. Assuming the editorship in January, 1921, he has enhanced the quality of the JOURNAL by devoting to it his thorough knowledge of the Cavalry service, his wide general knowledge, his discretion, and his peculiar aptitude for scholarly activities. A loyal and enthusiastic member of the Executive Council, his resignation is accepted with regret.

CO-OPERATION

DONE

MEMBERS OF THIS ASSOCIATION are urged to read carefully the annual reports and statements of 1922 and 1923, so that they may realize how much their Association has accomplished lately. It will appear that, assisted by the Executive Council, two officers and one enlisted man in part of their time, and one girl clerk have *profitably* transacted a considerable volume of varied business. Success now asks for more support.

TO BE DONE

The membership can and must be increased. Stagnation in this matter will inevitably lay the foundation for recession. Much correspondence is necessary to effect this extension, and this effort is not productively worth while without the actively cheerful and efficacious support of each member on the prospects nearest at hand.

The business of the book and magazine department can be increased. A goodly portion of the expenses of the Association are met from the profits of this activity. The Association guarantees to meet all competition in prices and service in books and magazines. You, through your support of your own Association, have something to gain for yourself and for your fellow-members.

The JOURNAL needs advertisements. This phase of our business requires *immediate* strong support. The management can not do more along this line. Advertisements can be obtained practically in only one way—by the personal solicitation of the members from their relatives, friends, and firms which they patronize.

HOW TO DO IT

Become at once a more truly co-operative member of your Association. If you have been actively helping, increase your efforts. Pay your dues promptly.

If your CAVALRY JOURNAL fails to reach you promptly, *please* immediately advise the secretary. Urge your fellow-members to become and remain as active members as you are. Get an advertising rate sheet of the CAVALRY JOURNAL and actually *get* an advertisement. Every time you buy a book or magazine, send the business through your Association. Try to encourage other members to be considerate when the management makes mistakes and give the latter a chance to adjust, not for the sake of the management, but for your Association.

The management is deeply convinced of the possibilities and potentialities of our Association. It has a clear vision of what can be done for lasting good. This only is needful—that *every* member remain, if he is, and become *NOW*, if he is not, an aggressive, really co-operative member of his own Association. Then will the possibilities and potentialities of the Association become actualities in more members, a better CAVALRY JOURNAL, a wider field of influence which is rightly, by inheritance and worth, that of our arm, than which none has a record of which to be more proud. Let each member answer to himself, and act, and keep on *acting*.

FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION MANEUVERS

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL feels that it is presenting in this number, in Major Chaffee's article, the most important matter seen in this magazine, on this most important subject, for some time. It is hoped that officers who commanded squadrons and troops, and officers in charge of the communications, especially radio, of the artillery, and of transportation, will see fit to submit short articles on those phases of the maneuvers, with a view to their appearing in the July number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL. The Association would like the maneuvers to receive the attention that they merit, with the consequent benefit to the readers.

SENDING IN CONTRIBUTIONS FOR PUBLICATION EARLY

CONTRIBUTORS TO THESE COLUMNS can appreciably aid the editor by sending in their articles early. It takes time to edit a manuscript, have it set up in type, read the proof, have typographical errors corrected, and the numberless other details concerned in publication. The editor must begin to plan a number months before publication, and the earlier he gets an article the better the magazine will, of course, be planned. And even magazines, contrary to the (we are afraid) popular conception, must be planned. The author obtains a more concentrated attention on the part of the editor for his offering if it arrives within a comfortable time before the date for appearance of the number, and thus all concerned benefit. Sometimes articles containing fine ideas need some little revamping, and the earlier they come in the more time left for a reconsideration on the part of the author. We ask our contributors, who are very generally quite obliging in this respect, to endeavor to retain this favor in mind.

Topics of the Day

THE CAVALRY FUND

THE MATTER OF THE CAVALRY FUND was considered at the annual meeting of the Association on January 15 last. At that time a full report of the activities of the fund during 1922 and 1923, made by the Executive Council (found in the Annual Report of the Association, mailed to each subscriber of the JOURNAL), was accepted and the following resolution was adopted by the Association:

> That the Cavalry Fund, for the purpose of enabling the Association to participate in proper and general activities of value and interest to the whole Cavalry branch, shall be continued;
>
> That the Cavalry Fund shall be kept separate from the other Cavalry Association funds and be administered by the Executive Council in accordance with the policies adopted by the Association, as expressed by action of its annual meeting, or by other regular method;
>
> That the fund shall be collected, held, disbursed, and accounted for by the Treasurer under the supervision of the Executive Council, and that an audited report of the fund shall be rendered by the Treasurer at each annual meeting;
>
> That the fund shall be collected, so far as practicable, by means of voluntary subscriptions from members of the Association, such subscriptions to be solicited in the amounts of three dollars ($3.00) from general and field officers and one and one-half dollars ($1.50) from members of less than field rank;
>
> That the fund so collected, together with the moneys remaining at this date in the fund, shall be appropriated toward a continuance of the sponsorship of the Annual Eastern Endurance Ride, the encouragement of the Cavalry Rifle Team and the Chief of Cavalry's Honor Rifle Team, the support of the Olympic Team, and such other purposes within the proposed scope of the fund as the Executive Council may deem advisable;
>
> That this resolution, together with further explanation of the purpose of the fund, shall be published in the April issue of the CAVALRY JOURNAL;
>
> That steps to collect moneys for this fund shall not be taken until June 1, 1924;
>
> That contributions to this fund from other sources, particularly those resulting from cavalry expositions, shall be acceptable; and
>
> That the combined contributions of members of the Association serving together at the same station may be contributed as a lump sum, raised in any appropriate manner, instead of separately, if such members so elect.

With the concurrence of the General Polo Committee, it was decided that collection of money for support of the Army Polo Team should be in the hands of that committee.

This fund deserves the hearty support of every one concerned. There are no other funds available for the furtherance of activities, such as sponsorship of the Annual Eastern Endurance Ride, aid to the Cavalry rifle team, the

Chief of Cavalry's Honor Rifle Team, encouragement of the Olympic Team, and such other worthy causes as the Executive Council sees fit to support. The fund has been successfully collected and administered to date. The above action simply puts the fund on a definite basis, defines its activities, puts responsibility on certain persons for handling the fund, makes provision for the gradual accumulation of a fund, and, more than all else, relieves the individual member of the Association from all calls for money except one per year. The Association feels, therefore, that the fund will receive the support of every member to carry on the valuable work thus far so well supported.

VALUABLE ACCESSIONS TO THE LIBRARY OF THE CAVALRY SCHOOL

THROUGH THE GENEROSITY of Harry Worcester Smith, August Belmont, William du Pont, and the late Austin Wadsworth, some fifty valuable books on the horse—breeding and history of the horse, the hunt and steeple-chasing, and horsemanship—have been presented to our Cavalry School. Many of these works are rare and out of print. They are bound in heavy red buckram with black labels, gold letters, and are double sewn. The project of thus building up a "Sportsman's Library" for the Cavalry School was started in 1912 and, though interrupted by the World War, now is on the way to consummation. The gift also includes five-year subscriptions to the leading British, French, German, and Australasian sporting magazines. Mr. Smith, the moving spirit in this fine work, states that the idea is to add other old books and to keep the library thoroughly up to date with the publications of value.

The thanks of the service is due to these well-known sportsmen and Americans for their patriotism and kind thought for our future cavalrymen, and we heartily assure them of our gratitude.

PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST TIME LIMIT EXTENDED

THE EXECUTIVE COUNCIL of the Association has extended the time limit for submission of essays in the Prize Essay Contest announced in the January, 1924, CAVALRY JOURNAL, to May 10, 1924.

ORGANIZATION AND FUNCTIONS OF THE VETERINARY SERVICE IN CAMPAIGN

THE VETERINARY BULLETIN of February 13, 1924, contains an unusually fine study by Captain George H. Koon, V. C., on the subject indicated by the captain to this topic. Diagrams show one in an instant where the animals go for various purposes. The tables of organization for veterinary units are given. The activities of the corps are treated, from the smallest detachment up to the large hospitals and all along the lines of communication back to the zone of the interior. The work is succinct, easy to read, quite devoid of technical terms, and altogether a valuable thing for a cavalryman to get acquainted with, so that he may know what to expect from a branch which he will need much.

MINUTES OF THE MEETING OF THE BOARD OF SPONSORS OF THE 1924 ENDURANCE RIDE

THE ANNUAL MEETING of the Board of Sponsors was held at 3 East 44th Street, New York City, on Tuesday, the 15th of January, 1924, at 10:00 a. m. The following were present:

American Remount Association, represented by Major C. L. Scott.
Arabian Horse Club of America, represented by Mr. W. R. Brown.
Horse Association of America, represented by Mr. Wayne Dinsmore.
The Morgan Horse Club, represented by Mr. C. C. Stillman.
U. S. Cavalry Association, represented by Major J. M. Wainwright.
Thoroughbred Horse Association and Kentucky Jockey Club, represented by Major L. A. Beard.

Mr. J. O. Williams, representing the U. S. Department of Agriculture, and Mr. Albert W. Harris, of Chicago, were also present.

The conditions of the 1924 Endurance Ride were carefully gone over and the Secretary was instructed to have them printed, as revised.

The Treasurer's report of the 1923 Endurance Ride showed a deficit of about $150.

Voted: That another Mounted Service Cup, similar to the first one, just won by Mr. W. R. Brown, should be purchased and offered by the Board of Sponsors, the name to remain the same.

Voted: To refund to Mr. C. C. Stillman, out of the funds of the 1924 Endurance Ride, as soon as received, the $150 advanced by him for the 1923 Endurance Ride.

Voted: That the 1924 Endurance Ride should be held in Virginia, the exact location to be left to the route master, beginning on Monday, the 20th of October, 1924.

The following officers were then elected for the year 1924:

Chairman, Mr. Albert W. Harris.
Secretary and Treasurer, Mr. C. C. Stillman.
Recorder, Mr. Lennox D. Barnes.
Route Master, Major J. M. Wainwright.

Voted: To ask Dr. J. R. Mohler to select the official veterinarian for the 1924 ride.

Voted: To ask the American Veterinarian Medical Association to appoint a veterinarian and a physiologist to be present as observers during the 1924 Endurance Ride, with as little annoyance as possible to the contestants. It was understood that this invitation would not entail any expense on the Board of Sponsors.

Voted: To invite the Surgeon General of the Army to detail a veterinarian to be present as an observer during the 1924 Endurance Ride.

Rides 139 Miles in 17 Hours' Riding Time

AN EXCELLENT ride was completed at Fort Riley, Kans., on February 28, 1924, by Sergeant Harles L. Wilkinson, Headquarters Troop, 2d Cavalry. Sergeant Wilkinson, mounted on his own troop horse, rode from Wichita, Kans., to Fort Riley, Kans., a distance of 139 miles, in 17 hours' riding time and 34 hours elapsed time. Upon arrival his horse was in splendid condition and could have continued farther if it had been necessary.

It might be of interest to note that the horse shows no breeding, although he is of an excellent cavalry type. He stands 15 hands 2 inches, weighs 1,025 pounds, and is 12 years of age.

Little or no preparation was made for the ride until three days before the start, due to the fact that Sergeant Wilkinson received his instructions only five days prior to his departure. The horse was ridden about three hours a week while in Wichita. Sergeant Wilkinson's story follows:

> "I received a letter at Wichita, Kans., from Lieutenant Thornburgh, my troop commander, directing me to ride my horse from Wichita, Kans., to Fort Riley in two days, and giving certain instructions regarding this ride. As I was on recruiting duty in Wichita, it was impossible to devote more than three days toward preparation for the ride. The fourth day before my departure I rode ten miles at a walk and trot; on the third day I increased the distance to twenty miles, and on the second day I rode forty miles. The day before leaving, the horse was given a half hour's exercise. Upon receiving instructions regarding the ride, the daily feeds were increased and the evening feed consisted of two feeds. Shoeing was done with light rim-steel shoes with small calks behind. I figured a march schedule, composed of trotting and walking periods, to average eight miles per hour. During all walking periods I dismounted and led my horse. A two-hour rest period was allowed each day after completion of morning march. No hay was fed at noon. I wore for this ride the regular service uniform.
>
> "The weather was cool and the horse was inclined to sweat very little, which fact caused me some worry at the completion of first day's march. Roads were dry and very hard, due to freezing, and in some places were somewhat slippery.
>
> "Each evening I gave my horse a good rub down and divided his feed into two parts. A well-bedded stall was provided and the horse responded by lying own and taking a complete rest.
>
> "My first morning's march, from 6:00 a. m. to 11:45 a. m., covered a distance of 48 miles. In the afternoon I reached Marion, Kans., at 4:30 p. m., a distance of 71 miles from Wichita, Kans. I left Marion at 6:00 a. m. the second day and arrived at Woodbine at 11:00 a. m.—a distance of 40 miles. Fort Riley was reached at 4:30 p. m. the second day."

The ride recorded above was accompllished, it is believed, by the exercise of good judgment regarding method and rate of march and care of horse. The principal feature, however, is the fact that both horse and rider arrived in excellent condition and showed practically no effects of the ride just completed.

This animal fits very accurately the definition of a trooper's mount as laid down in Par. 1, T. R. 360-10—*i. e.*, "A good troop horse is one that is sound and

of good conformation; in good condition for hard work and t withstand exposure; tranquil; pleasant to ride and easy to manage; a moderately good jumper; unafraid of water and a good swimmer; and accustomed to the use of arms and the sound of firing."

This horse has been tested, even to include swimming, in all of the points mentioned in the quotation above, and it may be said that he is accurately described by this description of "a good troop horse."

Sergeant Wilkinson enlisted November 12, 1921, having been accepted for enlistment at Fort Riley, Kans. He was born March 1, 1900, at Spigard, Mo.; his height is 5 feet 5 inches; weight, 155 pounds.

ONE HUNDRED PER CENT SUPPORTERS

IT IS WITH MUCH SATISFACTION that the Association announces that the following units are 100 per cent supporters of the Cavalry Association and JOURNAL—every officer and troop a subscriber: First Machine-Gun Squadron, Twelfth Cavalry, and Thirteenth Cavalry.

VALUABLE INFORMATION ON FEEDS AND FEEDING

ARTICLE ON "FEEDS AND FEEDING," by First Lieutenant Lloyd C. Ewen, Veterinary Corps, in the *Veterinary Bulletin* of December 12, 1923, contains a very instructive and well-written redaction by Lieutenant Ewen on this most important subject. The writer has taken his own experience and the meat of a great number of recognized authorities on this aspect of animal care, and under the heads of Observation, Time of Feeding, Feed and Work, Body Maintenance, Influence of Speed, Watering, Feeds, Fats, Mineral Matter, Nutrients, Ration, Nutritive Ratio, Forage, Preparation of Ration, and Balanced Ration, has set forth information which any one may well make his own. Four tables of suggested rations (by pounds), worked out to show the amount of dry matter, protein, carbohydrates, and fat in each component of the ration, adds to the patent value of the discourse, which is very short, so that it can be read in about twenty minutes.

SABER PAD APPROVED BY WAR DEPARTMENT

AS RECOMMENDED BY THE CHIEF OF CAVALRY, a saber pad for the protection of the hand has been approved as to type as an article of issue to the cavalry and will be furnished by the Quartermaster Corps at the rate of one pad per saber issued.

SERVICE HEADQUARTERS IN ST. LOUIS, MO.

AT THE INSTANCE OF COLONEL W. H. CLENDENIN, Chief of Staff, 102d Division, a joint meeting of all Regular Army, Navy, and Marine officers, active and retired, in St. Louis, Mo., decided to establish at the headquarters of the 102d Division, Old Customs House, in that city, a "Service Headquarters," where all officers ordered to duty in or passing through St. Louis may apply for information.

New Books Reviewed

Reviewed by Lieutenant-Colonel Robert McC. Beck, Cavalry

DEVELOPMENT OF TACTICS, WORLD WAR. By Balck. 295 pages, 18 sketches. General Service Schools, 1922. (Price, $2.00.)

This book presents, in general, three important military problems: First, tactics and psychology in troop leading; second, the tactical problem that faces the high command; third, the tactical teamwork of the different arms.

In the discussion of these questions the problems presented to the German command, especially the German general staff, in the World War are very definitely connected with the conclusions arrived at. This method of presentation logically leads to reasons for the failures and successes of the German Army during the World War, reaching finally the climax—the signing of the armistice. The book gives other reasons for failures than those stressed in its conclusions, which are vital to an unbiased consideration by the reader in drawing his own conclusions.

Organisation and training are most convincingly presented in connection with the general subject-matter as set forth above. These subjects, especially training, are especially valuable to instructors at service schools and general staff officers, as they deal particularly with broad and important principles, forcibly presented, and should be digested by all officers. For instance, "Training regulations should not emphasize the matter of formation; they should induce every one to practical co-operation. . . . Studying wars and battles does not furnish receipts for victory. It increases the knowledge of the commander of troops only when it causes him to perceive connection between cause and effect. . . . It is important also to know that chance plays a great rôle in all military actions, and that chance favors permanently him only who deserves it. It is, therefore, wrong to condemn any action because without 'luck' success could not have been possible. Such an event teaches merely that we must have the mental conception that luck easily passes one by, and that we must have manhood enough to grasp it in passing."

To emphasize the broad scope of this book, the following, bearing upon military policy of a country, is quoted: "However, the army has no community life for itself alone. Prior to the World War, the army was the school through which a very material portion of the people went. Army and people are, and must be, one. Education of the entire people for efficiency in war and willingness to sacrifice is a political and national necessity, and at the same time the main basis for the successful training of an army equal to all conditions."

Training and organisation are taken up in such a forceful and interesting manner as to make well worth while the possession of this book for the purpose of carefully studying these important elements of military efficiency.

The proper method of using actual experiences in war and military historical examples as a basis for future employment of troops is very convincingly stated, as, for example, we read: "Actual experiences in war, which each one can gain only in a limited way, are of inestimable value; but they can produce fruitful effect only if they are thoroughly proven and utilised by the study of military history."

Again, we find that the characteristics of the people of a nation play an important part in the study and development of military efficiency; we read: "Knowledge of the inherent peculiarities of a people, of their military establishments and tactical views, is therefore absolutely required of every leader." And in another part: "We (Germans) must not forget the importance of drill. It may be possible that other peoples do not feel its beneficial influence; but we require drill, by all means."

The development of every arm of the service during the World War is discussed and the resultant changes in the employment of troops stated. The importance of the infantry-artillery team and the necessity of personal acquaintance of artillery and infantry

commanders to perfect this team is forcibly impressed upon the leader. To first utilise the machine and then insert men, to advance infantry by the use of irregular lines, by squads in single file, are all shown as essential to successful troop employment.

Cavalry is given its important rôle. "Aërial reconnaissance, in as far as it is not influenced by weather, supplements the cavalry reconnaissance and indicates the directions to the cavalry in which it is to reconnoiter. . . . The cavalry participates with all arms in battle and finds special employment in retreat and in pursuit. . . . If the cavalry has not sufficiently achieved success in the face of the enemy, there are two good reasons: First, a lack of individual commanders capable of requiring the higher efforts of cavalry under favorable conditions without regard to possible losses; and, second, the supply of horses on the battlefield by no means fulfilled the requirements clearly foreseen in time of peace."

How the use of accompanying guns and batteries was imposed by the development of infantry employment is brought out convincingly. The subject-matter covering the co-operation of artillery and air service, artillery organisation and principles governing artillery employment, is well worth careful study.

Reverting finally to training, a message of importance—you might say warning—is carried to the reader in substance as follows: "Prior to the World War the German army worked faithfully, and it was very far from falling into the errors Gneisenau had condemned in 1806; but it was not free from a certain formality, which as early as 1892 Major von Malachowski pointed out in an efficient study as 'Review' tactics. By pointing out the difference between peace engagements and actual engagements in war, he showed the 'Review' tactics as fatal for the field training of the troops. In the words of Gneisenau, 'The endeavor to lead the troops well on large parade and muster days is very damaging,' and, then continuing, 'the tactics which expects everything from regulation uniformity, artificially produced on the drill ground, or at the green table, that cannot be used in war, is 'Review Tactics.' In most cases it extends only to play or *criticism-proof** battle exercise. During longer periods of peace it is the most dangerous enemy to field training, by continually attempting to push the field training into the background at all points.' Malachowski then turned against endeavors in the army which had for their object to assure a *smooth course** of exercises. 'No normal tactics can replace the military qualities and tactical perception of the leader. It is absolutely fatal to field training, by continually leading away from the actuality of things. . . . The 'Review' tactics are satisfied with superficial (exterior) forms, but forgets entirely that war is conducted by men against men, and that in war the moral influences are principally of the most decisive importance."

The description of the last defensive battle of the Germans is most interesting and valuable. For instance, in reference to the 8th of August, 1918, we read: "Favored by a heavy fog that had, in addition, been artificially thickened, the artillery fire suddenly opened on August 8th; this fire soon changed into a creeping barrage, immediately followed by tanks and infantry. Surprise against the leading division of the Second Army had succeeded. The entry nearly reached the objective—that is, between Albert and Pierre-pont, on the Avre, a depth of penetration of 14 kilometers had been reached, though, with the exception of organising the position, everything that could be done for defense was done, including narrow division sectors with excellent depth formation and plenty of ammunition. The hostile tanks annihilated our machine-gun nests, and, followed by cavalry, entered deep into our position system, spreading disorder and confusion—even headquarters were surprised in their quarters. Valuable documents were lost. Seven German divisions, considered absolutely fit for fighting, were annihilated; the enemy had but little loss; but the increasing bad morale of our poorly trained recruits became a decisive fact. Under such conditions, there could be no longer any mention of tactics. 'The 8th of August is the black day of the German Army in the history of this war.' It was very fortunate that the attack of the Allies was not continued on the 9th in the same strength."

* Editor.

Although the broad points of view of tactical and military efficiency are touched in this book, one will find that one is unconsciously led from the grand decision down to the detailed principles and formations necessary in the small units to carry out the grand principles covered. Therefore a careful study would be of value to officers of all grades.

WARFARE BY LAND AND SEA. By Eugene S. McCartney, Ph. D. Marshall Jones Co., 1923. 268 pages. Notes, bibliography, list of authors and titles. (Price, $1.50.)

Genuinely pleasurable to read, because it is decidedly the labor of a scholar who, on this subject, has done much research, collected thereby many related facts, and has been most successful in fulfilling the purpose of his book, which is "to note the advances made by the Greeks and Romans in the art of war while acquiring world dominion, and to record their lasting contributions, especially in tactics and strategy." In a pleasing introduction, Colonel W. K. Naylor says that the author "gives us enough of the history to localize the event and show the application of the principle, and then deduces the principle and shows its application to a modern battle."

The work takes up, among other things, the development of the evolution of generalship, growth of organization, specialization, development of artillery, how shock and fire principles were born, Roman and Greek tactics and strategy, and ancient naval engagements with their modern sequels. The author's philosophy of the evolution of leadership is as original as it is supported by facts and convincing. One cannot read of the legion and phalanx, how Philip of Macedon made war a business of specialists; review the development of mechanical forms in applying the principles of shock and fire; see the birth of artillery in sieges, and then its extension to field use; have pictured the first uses of reserves; have Xenophon teach one for the first time how to retreat and fight a rear-guard action; see the Greek cavalry as the first dragoons; see the first cavalry raids on communications; study the genesis of intrenching—all these things, one cannot see without a sense of how little one can discover and how much one is of the past.

The discussion of the martial spirit of the Romans, its causes and effects, is very fine. The author dwells on their drills and discipline; shows that the basis of their success was first selection of recruits, individual training, and then discipline and organization. The ancients understood sanitation, the value of troops being hardened to march, the value of the element of time, careful selection of camp sites, good supply systems, good food, and even *morale*.

The author maintains that all the basic tactical and strategic principles were discovered two thousand and odd years ago, and that we are but students, not original investigators, along these lines. The factors only in applying the principle change.

In the use of cavalry the Greeks and Romans realized the value of a prompt return from the pursuit, so as to clinch the defeat of the main body of the enemy. Cavalry as the striking arm was known to them. They used cavalry in flank attacks, while the infantry furnished the pivot of maneuver.

Smoke screens, tear bombs, weather forecasts, homing pigeons—all were used by these, our intellectual parents.

The contributions of the Greeks and Romans also to the art of naval warfare is given a good chapter, and here again we see most of what is now used.

All the above is substantiated by reference to original source, which permits the student to read more at his pleasure. A fine bibliography and list of cognate books and authors is given. This book is decidedly valuable. It is also easy reading.

THE INQUISITION. By Hoffman Nickerson. 268 pages. Houghton Mifflin Co., 1923. (Price, $4.00.)

This book, evidently by a scholar entitled to consideration, is a rather full presentation of a subject hastily misunderstood by most people. The author was inspired to write it, he says, in looking for "a historical precedent in the way of religio-political oppression on so vast a scale"—directed at prohibition. The philosophy of history contained in the preface by Hilaire Belloc is stimulating and in some respects different enough in this age

almost to be termed original. The author, in the chapters on the Albigensian Crusade, shows a grasp of military affairs worthy of a soldier, and he tells the history in a simple and entertaining manner. The story is worth while for the military student because it shows that basic military principles are just about immutable throughout the ages. The Middle Ages are considered by the author to have been of ever so much relative importance to the new race and he makes them and their civilization live quite really for his reader. On a division of a subject so often as a whole heavily treated it is delightful to find a book which is light reading and yet well enough done to give much valuable historical information in an unobtrusive and engaging manner.

MILITARY HISTORY OF THE WORLD WAR. By Col. C. R. Howland, U. S. A. Vol. I, 406 pages; Vol. II, Atlas. General Service Schools, 1923. (Price, $3.00.)

Colonel Charles Roscoe Howland, U. S. Army, has recently brought out, through the General Service Schools Press, a Military History of the World War in two volumes. The first volume contains the 406 pages of text; the second volume, in atlas form, contains 151 diagrammatic maps, as loose leaves, of a uniform size of 8 by 13 inches.

It is manifestly impossible to cover in one volume the details of operations of all of the campaigns and battles of the World War, but this book does give, along broad lines, the operations of the campaigns in all of the theaters of operations, as well as an account of some of the principal battles in fair detail.

For the non-military reader it gives an excellent story of the World War in concise and readable language. For the military reader it gives a quick orientation for a more detailed study. The bibliography in the front of the volume of text is excellent and should be of great value to the military reader.

MYSELF AND A FEW MOROS. By Lieutenant-Colonel Sydney A. Cloman. 180 pages. Illustrated. Doubleday, Page & Co., 1923. (Price, $3.00.)

As entertaining a story of life among a strange people is not found every day. The author, an officer in the United States Army in 1898, in serving as administrator in the land of the Moros, had the opportunity to study this remarkable people at very close range, and here relates the results of his observations in a manner so pleasing and interesting that the reading of the book at a single sitting requires no self-discipline.

The incidents in which the writer had the good fortune to take part in many instances are unique, even for a soldier in wild places and strange settings. More blood-thirsty tales cannot be desired by those who are pleasantly thrilled with that sort of literature. This personal history of a few years of the author's life has meat for him ethnologically inclined and will invariably hold the attention as well of the young reader.

Stories of a wonderful tame bear pet, of the monkey which tried to mother this bear, of crocodile shooting and of sailing over waters infested with these creatures when the boats sometimes upset, with a few sharks, too, thrown in for a little added zest; of mosquito-infested swamps, of the marvelous fishing acumen of the natives, of gruesome uprisings—all claim the continuing interest of the reader.

The habits of thought, belief in charms, customs in marriage, manner of gaining a livelihood, systems of government, family relations, political organization, quarrels, feuds, wars, love of intrigue, and propensity to take life, of the Moros are easily given. Even Moros can be romantic, as the author demonstrates in a love story or two. One comes to appreciate another race's qualities and still sees why the Anglo-Saxons have taken the leadership of the world and go forth to every nook and corner of the globe to rule and give of themselves, even to a few small islands in the out-of-the-way South Seas.

The book is well illustrated with many photographs and half-tones. The style is simple and conducive to urging one to read farther. The writer is somewhat of a humorist—and naturally, too. For light reading the volume contains much information which one can store up for possible analogical use in the future if ever placed in situations similar to those enjoyed by the author.

(*New Books Reviewed continued on page* 226)

Foreign Military Journals

Cavalry Journal (British), January, 1924.

Operations of the Russian cavalry in east Prussia in 1914 are discussed in the leading article by Major-General Sir Edmund Ironsides. The Russian cavalry organisation, state of training, deficiency in non-commissioned officers and replacements for officers, and lack of specialists are stated. The author sets forth the position of the troops and the theater of war, showing the general character of the country. The orders of the various Russian commanders are quoted. An outline of the movements and encounters is given, which is easy to follow on the good sketches accompanying the discourse. The defeats of the Russian armies in this theater in 1914 are laid by the writer to the poor orders issued to the cavalry and the poorer carrying out of these orders. The orders are criticised for their vagueness, incomprehensiveness, and general lack of appreciation of the value and proper use of the arm. The operations of the cavalry were not carried out with speed. Units did not press on until their mission was fulfilled. When an advantage was gained it was not pressed. The cavalry failed in its mission, in that it allowed its infantry to be surprised.

One can get a thrill out of reading extracts from the diaries of big-game hunters in Africa. In this number one can read of getting seven elephants in ten minutes, of firing so fast that the gun blisters the hands, of suddenly being confronted with a wildly rushing elephant, at which both barrels are fired point plank, sending one over backward and incidentally—and luckily for the hunter—finishing the elephant.

In further extracts from an old book on cavalry, printed in 1644, those archeologically inclined will find much of interest. In this number the tactics of the age are taken up. The ceremonies before the battle are especially quaint.

A very fine tribute to the American Army polo team, which won the international match in September last at Meadowbrook, adds yet more proof of the fine feeling engendered by this meeting. Our late guests were impressed with our efforts to give them a good time, and they hope to turn the tables in 1925. They attribute our success to our organisation for the event.

The note appears that the net sales of the *Journal* have again reached 1,000 copies.

It is pertinent to note that the British army officers participating in the jumping events at the 1924 Olympic games will get their financial support much as the Americans will, and not from the government, for our late allies have no more government funds available for such purposes than we have.

Journal of the Royal United Service Institution, November, 1923.

Part II of "A Record of the Battles and Engagements of the British Armies in France and Flanders, 1914-1918, appears herein. The character of this compilation is set

(*New Books Reviewed continued*)

NATIONAL DEFENSE. U. S. Infantry Association. 135 pages. (Price, $0.60.)

This compilation of opinions on the subject of national defense is very valuable for any officer to possess. Officers must make talks these days on many kinds of duty, and here is material which can always be used in these cases. The statements of preachers, editors, politicians, statesmen, soldiers, business men—expressions from all ranks of life—stimulate one's mind and memory and make one believe that others agree with him that he is a wonderful professor, this guaranteeing the safety of the present status of society, so that it can go ahead working out its problems without outside interference. The Infantry Association has done a distinct service in collecting and collating this material.

forth in our last number. A review of the German Field Service Regulations of 1921 shows many of the lessons to be learned from the German point of view of the World War. Our late opponents still find a large place for cavalry, with which the English reviewer is not wholly in sympathy. The automatic weapon is held the backbone of defense. There seems to be no mention of desert warfare. The reviewer deems it vital that we know what the Germans think of the principles of war now because of the great things they did in the World War. In an article on cyclists in modern war the suggestion is made that, in a country where roads are good and numerous cyclists are especially suited for employment with corps cavalry, a reconnoitering patrol is often suitably made up of the two kinds of troops. The author fails to see how tanks can ever fully undertake the duties formerly carried out by cavalry and cyclists. Another article gives some good means of teaching regimental history under the difficulties of modern necessity of frequent transfers of personnel. The Turkish view of Gallipoli is set forth in this number, giving a favorable picture of General von Sanders.

Journal of the Royal United Service Institution, February, 1924.

The position of the militia as the constitutional force of Great Britain is set forth in such a way as to give one a fair comparison with our National Guard and Organised Reserves. Many interesting matters greet one in the article "Memories of the Old Pipe-Clay Army," which aid in appreciating how the British Army developed its organisation and esprit. A discussion of the German air force on the Western front takes up the development of the German, English, French, and, to some small extent, of the American air efforts, and shows their influence on the course of the World War. An excerpt from Liman von Sanders' "Fünf Yahre Turkei" reveals the great difference in Allenby's official account of the surprise attack on the former's headquarters at Nasareth and his own.

The Royal Engineers Journal (British), December, 1923.

In addition to other fine material, this issue contains a highly imaginative article on the influence of fast-moving tanks on the encounter battle. The writer tries to anticipate revision of manuals. He assumes a tank against which the arme blanche, the bullet and wire, are useless. This tank also is useless in thick woods, swamps, and on slopes of mountains. He then describes a battle. Because the opposing commanders have preconceived ideas on tactics, they get into a great muddle. They are simply behind their time and, the author says, are thinking of infantry, cavalry, and artillery instead of close combat, protective and pursuit troops. The use of cavalry in co-operation with tanks in this article inspires thought. The author asserts that as long as tanks cannot move quieter than horses, cavalry will be valuable. The extreme importance of communication, the lack of which causes so much confusion in this hypothetical battle, is strongly stressed.

The Royal Engineers' Journal, March, 1924.

In this number appears an interesting discussion on anti-tank mines in mobile warfare. Aside from natural obstacles for tanks, the author reviews the artificial measures that may be used against these weapons, and concludes that land mines are the ones which the engineers will be able to provide in mobile operations. The limited use of land mines in the World War is taken up briefly. Means of neutralisation of mine fields by the enemy, the probable type of mine to be used, the practicability of supply of mines in mobile warfare, the methods of employing these land mines, are each set forth in a concise and clear manner. The matter of selecting mine fields with respect to the probable activities of one's own tanks is much dwelt upon, as well as the great necessity of proper staff co-ordination to prevent conflicts between tanks, mine fields, and other arms.

Review by Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis, Cavalry

THE NEXT GREAT WAR. By Captain B. H. Liddell-Hart.

In an analysis of profound tone, covering some seventeen pages, the essayist has attempted to show that future battlefields will witness the triumph of man's mechanical devices over the Divine creation of individual morale. He predicts the practical disappearance of infantry, cavalry, and field artillery, as such, and pictures a battle area dominated by the airplane and the tank. However, he seems to assume an airplane supremacy and a tank supremacy for both combatants at one and the same time, with neither participant provided with a resource of troops of the line with which to clinch the ultimate decision. The idea that "a small and light chain-tracked machine could be produced even now, which would move over any kind of ground traversable by cavalry except woods and hill tracks," betrays the writer's lack of information as to what cavalry can do and weakens our confidence in his knowledge of other arms. A similar lack of familiarity with cavalry accomplishments and employment is indicated by his assertions that "cavalry in bulk are so vulnerable a target that they cannot exist on the battlefield," and "the cavalry charge, therefore, is dead—at least against efficient troops." Evidently the captain sweeps aside, possibly as of unimportant origin, the estimates favorable to cavalry recorded by Marshals Foch, Haig, French, Allenby, Hindenburg, and Generals Weygand, Pershing, and Ludendorf. His assertions as to the vast possibilities of gas, airplanes, and tanks give us food for thought, and it is perhaps only an excessive zeal that blinds him to the imperishable utility of infantry, cavalry, and field artillery.

Journal of the United Service Institution of India, October, 1923.

The leading article of this number is a gold medal prize essay on the general subject of effect of modern scientific methods of warfare on the tribes in northwest India. The use of aircraft, automatic arms, gas, armored cars, tanks, and cavalry are discussed and leave the conclusion that still on this frontier of the British Empire infantry, well led and supplied, supported by artillery, can go any place and do anything needed. The Battle of Hannah is discussed in the next article in detail and the difficulties of communication, with the attendant results to the British troops, merit examination, as well as the comparative ease of communication in this day, which often delays execution of orders in trying to have them changed. Another article sets forth the relations between the British and Turks during the World War—a very instructive discourse. The Turk, it seems, in this war was a soldier without religious fanaticism, and therefore was not as good a soldier as usual. This sort of paper cannot fail to bring home to Americans how little we really know about world politics.

Journal of the United Service Institution of India, January, 1924.

Captain C. F. Morriott, 20th Lancers, in his conception of the military problem of the Rhineland, seems to have grasped the present main European situation well. He believes that the average Englishman is looking too much at the economical aspect and not enough at the military predicament of France. (The author reminds us that military situations do still exist, in spite of treaties, conferences, etc.) Captain Morriott believes that the domination by France of the Rhineland is necessary for the peace of Europe, and that there is no possibility of France using the Rhineland's strategic position, industrial wealth, and man-power to endanger European peace. The author has little faith in The Hague and Geneva to prevent wars.

Reviews by Captain Royden Williamson, Cavalry

L'Echo de Paris, December 21, 1923, January 4 and 18, 1924.

Nothing in the current foreign military press exceeds in interest the discussion aroused by the Belcastel report on the organization of the French cavalry.

M. de Belcastel, in upholding the maintenance of the cavalry divisions, staunchly defends the independence of action of this arm, and it is upon this ground that Gaston

Desmarets attacks his report in a series of three articles published in *L'Echo de Paris* of December 21, January 4, and January 18. Cavalrymen everywhere may not always agree with M. Desmarets, but certainly his conclusions will afford food for reflection and ground for argument until the next great war proves him right or wrong.

This critic contends that the cavalry should not be organised with the view to independent action and employment apart from the infantry, except provisionally, doing away with independent cavalry as such an organisation for such purposes. He holds that the cavalry corps of five divisions, as the report he criticises calls for, with all the means of waging self-sustained operations and combat and provided with elaborate and complete radio equipment in trucks, is an error which in future wars will lead to heavy, if not irreparable, losses.

"The cavalry in the war of the future [M. Desmarets contends] will find itself constantly employed, to the greater advantage of the infantry and their common cause, in operating normally in small forces, and it will continue to accomplish nothing if it awaits, as it did in the last war, the occasion to be used in large masses."

What he advocates is that each army corps be provided with one cavalry regiment as corps cavalry, the commander of which shall be by the side of his corps commander, familiar at all times with every phase of the situation; the squadrons of his regiment each attached to a division of the corps and each squadron commander fulfilling to his division commander the same functions as the regiment's colonel to the corps commander.

"If, at a given moment, it becomes necessary to direct a strong cavalry force to a given point on the front, the army commander can promptly constitute it by uniting under one command the elements which he has under his orders, brigade in reserve and regiments in corps, thus having a cavalry division only when the need for it is felt."

This method, he holds, would change the haphazard system employed during the last war, by which cavalry in mass was never at the proper place at the proper time, and he cites several historical examples from both the eastern and the western fronts to sustain his opinion that such was the case.

No reference is made, at least in the portions of his articles at hand, to the British operations in Palestine, predominantly a cavalry campaign. But that he is no foe to the cavalry as such is amply demonstrated by his tribute to the achievements of the mounted forces in Masedonia, which he cites in particular support of his views:

"There is the teaching which the employment of the cavalry of Maréchal Franchet d'Esperey gives us in the march on Uskub. Whatever may have been the unwarranted and inexplicable disdain which is generally professed for the African and Oriental cavalry, it seems to me difficult not to admire what it did in the Balkans. Working permanently with its infantry, always putting to profit one of its principal qualities, mobility, the cavalry of General Jouinot-Gambetta was one of the most brilliant artisans of this phase of the war which launched the break-up of the enemy powers. It proved that, in spite of all, the cavalry had, and always will have, a great rôle to play, provided that it wipes the slate clean of its errors of 1914, preserving from that epoch the virtues of its cavalry spirit, but abandoning all its ideas of independent action."

The compelling conviction with which this critic presents his case gives cause for regret that neither his preliminary discussion of the subject nor the report which he attacks is available. It is not possible to do full justice to his views without them. But, however much one may be disinclined to follow him when he says that the cavalry did nothing during the war—at all events, mounted—which he declares was due to faulty organization, his arguments are the most enlivening commentations on the mounted arm which have appeared in many a day.

Revue de Cavalerie, November-December, 1923.

Was the cavalry poorly employed at Waterloo?

Such is the theme of Captain Baillot's tactical study in *La Revue de Cavalerie* for November-December, 1923, and he proceeds to demonstrate that it was. He shows first

that Grouchy failed in his mission, which was to reconnoiter in the direction of Namur and Maestricht and determine whether or not Blucher and Wellington were planning to unite their armies to cover Brussels and Liège. The Prussians, instead of retreating toward Namur, as Grouch supposed, moved toward Wavre. Rather than to separate from Wellington, they chose to abandon their lines of communication.

Grouchy, who had the cavalry corps of Pajol and Exelmans and the light cavalry of the 4th Corps, supported by two corps of infantry and 108 guns, 34,000 men in all, learns of this upon reaching Gembloux, at 7 p. m. of June 17. He fails to inform Napoleon of the fact until 2 a. m. of the 18th. At 8 a. m. of the 18th he learns that the mass of the Prussians are northeast of Wavre, on the road to Louvain. Fearing to be caught between the two hostile armies, he requests of the Emperor instructions for the following day, and is at luncheon when the boom of battle is heard in the direction of Mont Saint-Jean.

All his generals urge him to march at once to the sound of the cannon; but Grouchy refuses, and not until 4 p. m. does he resume his slow advance against the Prussian rear guard, in position near Wavre. Instead of marching by the left bank of the Dyle, which would have placed him between the enemy and the road to Brussels, he moves by the right. When, at 6 p. m. he receives Napoleon's pressing appeal for help, it is too late. Because he lost contact with Blucher during twenty-four hours, from 4 p. m. of the 17th until 4 p. m. of the 18th, Blucher arrives on the field of Waterloo, but Grouchy, with his 34,000 men, does not.

"This faltering, for which the command, not the arm, was responsible," says Captain Baillot, "had the gravest consequence. Badly directed by the Emperor, badly employed by Grouchy, who did not maintain contact, the cavalry could not fulfill its rôle and keep the high command informed."

Then, as to the employment of the cavalry on the field, the author, without exonerating Napoleon himself, lays the blame upon Ney. He cites several authorities to show that the Marshal exceeded explicit orders not to go beyond La Haye-Sainte in his first advance against the English center, and that he attacked a full hour too soon. Captain Baillot thinks that, following the tactical procedure of the epoch, Ney should have:

1. Ordered his attack against the most important point and at the most decisive moment.

2. Prepared his attack with artillery.

3. Charged the hostile infantry in column only after it had been sufficiently shaken or surprised.

4. Held out a reserve for maneuver.

Ney did none of these. He failed to have sufficient artillery preparation; he directed all of his attacks against the same point, instead of widening the circle of his operations as he might, with so important a cavalry mass, have done; and, finally, he did not support his charges with the infantry available.

If the infantry had followed Ney and occupied the crest which formed the objective, the English would have been caught under their fire in a vicious formation (hollow squares) and compelled to deploy.

To sum up, the cavalry was poorly employed at Waterloo, in the opinion of this author, its check having been due to lack of artillery preparation, absence of maneuver, and want of infantry support.

A better utilization of it, after Ligny and the 18th of June, would without doubt have given the Battle of Waterloo a different conclusion and changed the course of history.

Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires, December, 1923.

The general principles of evolution for the school of the combat group and the school of the platoon, as laid down in the provisional instructions of the French Cavalry, issued June 12, 1923, are published in this number.

The French high command, in taking count of the teachings of the war, has aimed at a great increase of cavalry fire power without impairment to mobility and rapidity of maneuver. It has given its cavalry the means within itself to fight as effectively dismounted as mounted.

The platoon, as now organised, consists of two combat groups and one supplementary machine rifle squad. Each combat group consists of two squads, one being a machine rifle squad, the other made up of scouts. The platoon leader has at his disposal a runner, one non-commissioned officer in charge of the led horses, and one ammunition pack-horse. Each squad is of five troopers, under the command of a non-commissioned officer. In the scout squad one trooper is a grenadier, armed with Vivens-Bessières grenades. The machine rifle squad is armed with one machine rifle which is served by one gunner, one ammunition carrier, and two assistant carriers. Thus, in each platoon there are three machine rifles and two grenadiers. The platoon is the smallest cavalry unit susceptible of dismounted maneuver.

The squad forms, marches, and maneuvers by threes. It forms column of route by twos. Single column may be formed for maneuver purposes. It forms line and "as foragers," in the usual way. The combat group assembles normally in column of threes, the two squads one behind the other, scouts in front. Mounted, it may charge in whatever formation it happens to be, in order to take the fullest advantage of surprise, but not at a distance greater than 60 meters.

The platoon dismounted always deploys with its groups in echelon and takes a normal frontage of about 150 meters. Initiative is encouraged to the fullest extent.

These provisional regulations awaken much interest to see what the first part of the regulations, which pertain to methods of employment and maneuver, will provide. This part is now being revised and when published will determine the formations and mechanism appropriate to the new organization of the French mounted service.

One may gain a more definite impression of this modernisation of the cavalry arm abroad from the review, in the same periodical, of Colonel Altmayer's study of the proposed reorganisation of the cavalry regiment and its employment as corps cavalry in a concrete case; for this article goes into the subject in even greater detail. This study was given as a lecture in France in November, 1923, for the information of colonels and general officers.

The war having demonstrated that cavalry now fights, above all, by fire, and its organisation not lending itself perfectly to this new mode of action, the reorganisation scheme has been based upon the following principles:

1. Organic autonomy for all echelons, command groups, communications, supply and evacuation, and for the handling of led horses in combat, without having to take any personnel for the fulfillment of these functions from combat elements.

2. Effectives and armament for the necessary elements, such that dismounted action may be effectively carried out by them as constituted.

The means to these ends must be adequate, such as not to overburden the units in their missions of reconnaissance and security nor to limit their maneuvering power, suppleness, and celerity in the approach mounted. They must, on the other hand, be appropriate to the possibilities of the command and to co-ordination of effort when the squadrons have to make their advance widely dispersed or engage on broad fronts.

3. Decentralisation of ammunition supply by giving each squadron, and even each platoon, its own supply organisation.

To meet all of these requirements, the author presents an organisation as follows:

Regiments in Division:

Headquarters.—One headquarters group, 1 communications group, 1 pioneer group.

Machine-guns.—One headquarters group, 1 combat train group, 1 regimental train group, 4 machine-gun groups.

Two Half Regiments.—Two squadrons each and 2 headquarters groups.

One reserve squadron, to supply the headquarters and machine-guns, and attached to it the elements of the combat train (ammunition, tools, bridging equipment, medical and veterinary services), the regimental train, and the service of supply.

The squadron to consist of 1 headquarters group, 1 combat train group, 1 regimental train group, 4 platoons of 2 combat groups, and 1 machine rifle squad each. The squadron to have, in addition to its 12 automatic arms, 9 V. B. tromblons.

Effectives for the regiment: 1,000 men, 1,055 horses, 84 wagons, 8 motorcycles, 76 bicycles. For dismounted action the regiment would put into the line 25 to 30 officers, 480 to 580 men (according to number of horse-holders), 8 machine-guns (4,000 rounds per gun), 48 machine rifles (1,650 rounds per M. R.), 36 V. B. grenades, 195 rounds of rifle ammunition, and 1 entrenching tool per man; the regimental combat train to carry 180,000 rounds, 400 machine rifle charges, 1,000 V. B. grenades.

The Cavalry Division:

Six regiments, 1 cyclist group, 4 squadrons of armored cars. This affords very nearly the fire power of the infantry of a division.

For divisional and corps cavalry the organization differs slightly. For divisional cavalry, which consists of one squadron, a platoon of cyclists is added. For the regiment forming the cavalry of the army corps, two sections of armored cars. Neither of these has the supplementary machine rifle squads per platoon, but each is amply provided with machine-guns.

This organization favors all the requirements of modern cavalry—mobility, fire power, and speed. It will be interesting to see whether so elaborate a scheme survives the attacks of its opponents; and, if so, how the many highly trained specialists it requires can be developed in the short periods of training now allowed in the armies of the continent.

Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires, January, 1924.

Radical changes with respect to the division as a unit would seem to be under way in Europe. According to this magazine, which publishes a lengthy article on the military organization of Italy, that power has not only abolished the cavalry division, but the infantry division as well—the former completely and the latter as a tactical unit in time of peace.

The term "division" now indicates in the Italian service simply a territorial command bearing the name of the town or place in which is located the headquarters having authority over all troops stationed in that territory. There are thirty such territorial divisions grouped in ten territorial army corps commands. In 1914 the Italian Army counted twenty-five infantry divisions of two brigades each, organized in twelve corps. There were thirty regiments of cavalry.

Under this new peace footing the cavalry will consist of three independent brigades of four regiments each (instead of four brigades of three regiments) and four squadrons of bersaglieri, presumably remount squadrons. The total number of officers of cavalry allotted is 598.

Rumania, on the other hand, shows no signs of following Italy's lead in this direction, for the same journal reviews an article, published in *Romania Militare* for July, 1923, on divisional cavalry, the organization and employment of which is given in considerable detail. After describing cavalry according to the missions confided to it, the author says:

"The advance or concentration of the army is protected or covered by a cavalry division out about two days' march in front (40-50 kilometers). When the cavalry division protects the advance of the army, it executes what is called strategic reconnaissance; when it covers a concentration, the operation is called strategic protection (screening).

"In rear of the cavalry division are the cavalry regiments which belong to the army corps and which cover them in front. These regiments may be sent to fill gaps in rear

of the cavalry division (army cavalry), to assure the unmolested concentration of their respective army corps. These regiments constitute the service of first line security or of tactical reconnaissance under the direct orders of the corps commanders.

"Behind this service of security comes the advance guard of the infantry columns, preceded by the divisional cavalry. This operates under the orders of the advance-guard commander. The divisional cavalry is organically part of the infantry division and consists of one group of two squadrons, each of four platoons. The group consists of:

"Headquarters: 1 commander, 1 second in command, 1 surgeon, 1 veterinarian.
"Troops: 8-12 officers, 370 enlisted men, 430 horses.
"Liaison section: telephonists, signalers, cyclists, etc.
"Pioneer detachment.
"Combat train: 1 wheeled ambulance, 1 telephone material wagon, 1 grenade wagon.
"Regimental train: 5 wagons.
"Armament: 16 machine rifles, 220 rifles, 400 grenades.

"For certain missions the divisional cavalry is reinforced by one or two machine-gun platoons, a section of auto-cannon, a group of armored cars, and a company of infantry.

"Before the war the divisional cavalry consisted of a single squadron for the sole purpose of furnishing messengers, patrols, and the maintenance of liaison. Now it is required to afford liberty of action to the command in insuring a zone of protection in advance of the columns and the dispatching of officers' patrols and security patrols. At the conclusion of a march the outpost is established under the protection of this cavalry."

From the foregoing description of the orthodox employment of cavalry in an advance, it would seem that the Rumanian Army intends to adhere to the old doctrines.

This number of the *Bulletin* contains the fifth installment of Major Barthelemi's succinct study of the American Civil War and the principles and methods which it presents. The battles of Fredericksburg and the Wilderness, the campaign of 1863, and the offensive of the Confederate Army, with its culmination in the Battle of Gettysburg, are discussed and the strategical and tactical lessons of these operations are laconically but admirably deduced, the text being amplified by sketches and maps. This study is commended to every American student of the art of war.

Reviews by Major Harold Thompson, Cavalry

Memorial de Caballerié (Madrid), September, 1923.

"Reconnaissance of the 2d Squadron, Regulares of Melilla, May 28, 1923," by Juan Villasan, is interesting, in that it not only presaged the savage "push" by rebel tribesmen in the same sector several weeks later to encircle Tissi-Assa, but demonstrates that the operation here carried out was overdone.

Engineers were building a road between Bu Hafora, an entrenched camp, 8 kilometers southeast of Tissi-Assa, to connect the two places. The road led over a long saddleback flanked on both sides by two parallel shallow ravines. The saddleback was open ground except at a point half way from where road commenced. Here were clumps of trees stretching across to both ravines, and some three hundred yards north and beyond the trees were ruined adobe shacks flanking the trail, which here turned to the right and led across the ravine and into the open country. On the date mentioned a native woman reported that rebel tribesmen were preparing an ambuscade near the point where the road crossed the right or north ravine; so headquarters ordered the squadron (native cavalry, with Spanish officers and non-commissioned officers) to leave Bu Hafora and reconnoiter the north ends of both ravines.

(It may be well to add here that the Riff tribesmen are skillful marksmen and versed in entrenching.)

Captain U., commanding the squadron, about sixty sabers, was accompanied by a major. He sent patrols up the ravines and, with a small advance guard to his front, followed in column up the saddleback. When the point broke clear of the trees, at the half-way point, fire was opened to his front. Captain U. dismounted the men and formed a skirmish line in rear of the trees, and rode forward for a personal reconnaissance. He quickly observed that the shacks were strongly occupied, and that two lines of trenches had been thrown up behind these. On galloping back to his skirmish line a messenger

from headquarters brought an order to attack both trenches and ruins. Although knowing the almost certain result of advancing such a short distance (300 yards), the captain ordered to horse, formed in line of columns, and galloped right oblique to gain the ravine and advance up this and flank the tribesmen, the left patrol remaining in position. By the time the squadron reached the ravine half the unit was down. A squad was detailed to bring in dead and wounded to the ravine, while the remainder by their fire kept the Moors from advancing. All dead and wounded, 38, were placed on the remaining horses and withdrawn, while a squad fighting on foot acted as rear guard, and prevented the tribesmen from closing in. Enemy strength, 300.

Memorial de Caballería (Madrid), October, 1923.

The leading article of this number, by "A," appears under the caption "The Song of the Siren." The author is unsparing of "these tacticians," as he calls them, who would fight the battles of the future with heavy machine-guns, automatic arms, light guns, tanks, and trench mortars in the first line, massed artillery in the second, and large infantry masses, with automatic arms, in the third. Difficulty of production of such quantities of heavy arms, munitions, transportations, with loss of mobility, are pointed out.

He states that if the new infantry has to be tied to the ground to fight, then he must agree there is no other form of warfare except that of continual front. This, he says, is caused by an unfortunate idea of three years of the western front. If so, reorganise all armies to meet the condition.

In position warfare, to which the critics seem to cling (the writer is bitter here), saps from the front will connect with reserve lines, and these to narrow-gauge railways connecting with normal ones. What use to transport a few thousand horsemen to this or that threatened point without the many uses of mechanical equipment? "Let's uncover these propagandists," he says. "When the Germans in March of 1918 broke the British front, French cavalry filled the gap, not as a fire reserve, but as cavalry in all its characteristics."

In the appeal the writer calls on cavalrymen to remember that esprit preponderates, that no arm can exploit a success nor maintain a delaying action as can well-handled cavalry. Who better than cavalry to protect batteries, guard the flanks, begin an action in order to cover vast unguarded spaces, so as to gain time? What cavalry does need, however, "A" concludes, is to preserve its mobility, and to maintain its fearlessness, audacity, and determination.

Memorial de Caballería (Madrid), November, 1923.

Lieutenant-Colonel Bermúdez de Castro concludes in this article a plea for the creating of a truly national type of horse by importing only best English thoroughbred stallions and mares, utilising pure-bred Arabs and Anglo-Arabs, now so much in favor, and crossing these with the best types of the native mare.

To secure the best results, both the State and private breeders must co-operate, such as is done in France. He states that by a careful selection of types, a strict regimen, absolutely lived up to, and, further, allowing suckling colts and fillies to wean themselves, a truly national type can be created, inasmuch as the thoroughbred easily adapts itself to Spanish climatic conditions and retains its temperament and distinction of kind. He argues further, that by using the same means of selection, regimen, scientific crossing of the thoroughbred with the Arab, Anglo-Arab, and native mares, a fixed type can be decided upon.

Memorial de Caballería (Madrid), December, 1923.

An interesting article by Don Juan Villasán appears in the tribute to the splendid Alcántara chasseurs, who in the withdrawal from Annual paid so nobly the supreme sacrifice.

On the 21st of July the regiment under Lieutenant-Colonel Primo de Rivera, brother of the present chief of the Military Directory, received orders to proceed west on the Dar-Drius-Annual Road to the position Isummar, 7 kilometers from Annual, to protect a company establishing a position. From Ben-Teb, 10 kilometers west of Drius, the military road passes through a long and deep ravine, which was to prove a "Via Dolorosa" for the retiring forces. That day saw the assault and capture of several advanced posts north and south of Annual. On the 22d that place was attacked, its advanced post, Igueriben, fell, and in the withdrawal of the forces at Annual General Silvestre and his staff were killed. Defection of native forces and loss of the high command led to disorganisation, further increased by the rapid flying to arms of the tribesmen on all sides. The various units, more or less mixed up, fell back on the Drius Road. The Alcántara regiment's march outposts ran into the advance guard of these and the Lieutenant-Colonel and his officers and men partially succeeded in restoring order and even in reforming units, but as more and more broken units surged down the road, over the hill crests, and across country, and the tribesmen closing in from all sides, this became impossible. Leaving the road, the two squadrons and the machine-gun squadron, maneuvered to gain the heights of the foothills and drive back the closely pressing Riffs. By successive charges with the saber and by fighting on foot, opportunity was given to the broken units on the road to continue the withdrawal to Ben-Tieb and Drius. The regiment was highly successful, not a man being lost up to Ben-Tieb, such being the skill shown in occupying the high ground and flanking the tribesmen out of positions of vantage. With the majority of the men six-months recruits, this shows good discipline and leadership.

On arrival at Drius a platoon of the poorest and weakest animals was sent forward to regain headquarters. Early the morning of the 23d the regiment, after watering and feeding, moved out to accomplish the evacuation of two near-by positions, suffering important losses in charging the tribesmen. In the afternoon two squadrons and the machine-gun squadron went east to cover road beyond the river Kert to prevent tribesmen from cutting communication with Batel, the next important post east. The main column left Dar-Drius after destroying the supplies there, retiring to Batel. The remaining squadrons acted as rear guard and, joined by the machine-gun and outpost squadrons, fell back in good order.

Between Uestia and the dry bed of the river Gan the regiment was vigorously employed against the enemy, now greatly outnumbering the small forces of Spaniards. The ground, a continuation of the tableland, is cut up by many arroyos, which favored the attackers. Successive charges by platoons and squadrons, effectively using the saber, permitted the main column to make Batel (distant 19 kilometers), but greatly exhausted horses and men. The general order of the retirement: 2d squadron in advance, left of road, followed by 1st and 4th, with 3d and 5th and the machine-gun squadron in center and rear. The 2d, 3d, and 5th squadrons had only two platoons remaining on reaching Batel.

Not being able to water at Batel, the regiment pushed on to Tistutin, and as only enough was found for the troops, half the regiment pushed on to Zeluán, 10 kilometers beyond Monte Arruit and the aërodrome, while Colonel Primo de Rivera stayed with the remainder and a platoon from the machine-gun squadron. From the 23d to 29th the forces remained here under heavy fire, the animals dying of thirst, some 60 only escaping. On the 29th the column under General Navarro pushed on to make Monte Arruit, the valiant handful of cavalrymen, many dismounted, acting as rear guard. The main column, with 500 wounded, when 8 kilometers from Monte Arruit, was heavily attacked by the tribesmen, who made a supreme effort to close in. Again and again the little group of chasseurs charged, cheered on by their Colonel. So exhausted were the horses, that the last charge was at the walk, a whole platoon being wiped out. The main column safely entered Monte Arruit with the 50 remaining cavalrymen. Here, a few days later, Colonel Fernando Primo de Rivera was killed at his post.

Among the tragic events of the withdrawal, this unit, a light cavalry regiment, stands out prominently. From the beginning of the retreat to the arrival at Monte Arruit, under its heroic commander, it remained intact, constantly engaged in hand-fighting, acting continuously as the rear guard, outnumbered, lacking water, in the fierce heat of an African summer, responding valiantly to all calls made upon it, and losing, in its supreme effort to protect the broken retiring column, 75 per cent of its officers and 80 per cent of its men. The Alcántara regiment has written a glorious page in the history of the Spanish cavalry. "Let the figures speak!"

A GREAT NEED

There are only three books, it seems, on Polo which command the attention of those versed in the game. Miller's Modern Polo ($10.00), Forbes' As To Polo ($3.00), and Drybrough's Polo ($5.75), the last now unhappily out of print. These books might be said to be the best respectively in development of ponies, tactics, and command of the ball. There is very general and often expressed need for a book, therefore, on Polo, which will be analytical, comprehensive of the three points mentioned above in addition to others which the author may see fit to dwell upon, detailed, enthusiastic, and above all, simple, a book perhaps of not over 500 pages, and priced at not over $a.oo.

The man who can fill these specifications can thereby do a real service at this time, make a reputation that will not grow any dimmer in the next generation, and incidentally make at least five thousand dollars.

Polo

FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION SENIOR AND JUNIOR POLO TOURNAMENT

Annually, in November, at Fort Bliss, two polo tournaments are played—a senior and a junior. The Senior Tournament is played to determine the premier polo team of the First Cavalry Division and for the possession of the handsome Trophy Cup, the players gaining the honor of having their names engraved thereon. This trophy, a large silver punch bowl, was presented to Major Adna R. Chaffee, for the division, by three ardent followers of the game, who are also greatly interested in the development of fine horsemanship and good polo in the army. The trophy bears the following inscriptions:

FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION
POLO CHAMPIONSHIP

ANNUAL CHALLENGE TROPHY

Presented by
Three Friends of the Regular Army
Pierre Lorillard, Jr.
Horace O. Stebbens
George Wrenn

These gentlemen are all of New York City, and upon presenting the bowl to Major Chaffee, at the National Horse Show two years ago, they requested that it be played for by organizations of the division at an annual polo tournament. The first play for this championship was in 1921, when the team from the 7th Cavalry won the right to have their names engraved on it and the championship of the division. Last year the 1st Cavalry won the championship and carried the trophy from Fort Bliss territory to Camp Marfa; but this year the trophy is back at home, the championship having been won by the team of the division headquarters. This team consisted of the following officers: 1, Major Adna R. Chaffee; 2, Lieutenant-Colonel M. G. Holliday; 3, Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin; 4, Major W. W. Erwin; substitute, Captain H. E. Featherstone.

The Junior Tournament is played annually for the possession of a large silver pitcher, and only officers are eligible to play that have never played in a First Cavalry Division Senior Tournament. This tournament encourages novice players to work throughout the year, and the teams often include a backbone of experienced players newly arrived in the Division and eligible because they have never played in a senior tournament. These junior games were very interesting this year, eight teams battling for the championship, and the finals, a close fast game between the 1st Cavalry and the 5th Cavalry, ended in high score for the 5th Cavalry. The line of this team consisted of the following officers: 1, Lieutenant C. R. Snyder; 2, Lieutenant A. George; 3, Captain T. W. Ligon; 4, Captain F. M. Barnhardt.

The 1st Cavalry, from Camp Marfa, and the 5th Cavalry and 1st Machine-Gun Squadron, from Fort Clark, arrived at Fort Bliss ten days before the tournament opened. Five teams entered the Senior Tournament—the 1st Cavalry, 5th Cavalry, 8th Cavalry, 7th Cavalry, and the Division Headquarters. The 1st Cavalry team, the winners of last year's championship, was eliminated the first day of the tournament, in the opening game with the 8th Cavalry. The latter regiment has developed a strong and well-balanced team during the last year. It is composed of: 1, Lieutenant G. C. Mudgett; 2, Lieutenant R. B. Boosserman; 3, Captain J. T. Cole; 4, Major B. T. Merchant.

The Division Headquarters also won from the 7th Cavalry the opening day and eliminated this team from the tournament. The 8th Cavalry defeated the 5th Cavalry team three days later, leaving for the finals the Division Headquarters and the 8th Cavalry, which was won by the Division Headquarters with a score of 8 to 3.

The polo field at Fort Bliss is a fast-skinned field and this year was in excellent shape, as skinned fields go, for these games. Parking spaces were reserved all around the field for automobiles and tickets were sold to the citizens of El Paso and officers of the post. Two large score-boards were erected, one on either side of the field, high off the ground, and large signs displayed showing the teams playing, the score, the period and the line up, making the game much more interesting and perfectly plain to spectators. The field was decorated by twenty flag poles, with a distinctive flag flying of each organization competing in the tourneys.

On Thursdays and Sundays, after the games, the ladies of the various organizations of Fort Bliss served tea at the Officers' Club. These teas were a great success, every one gathering to them after the games for a cup of tea, to dance and talk over the game.

Polo has always filled part of every day in the life of every officer at Fort Bliss and the Cavalry Division. It is given every encouragement by the Commanding General, Major General Robert L. Howze, and the result is that as fast and good polo as is played in the army can be seen any day at Fort Bliss. Very nearly every officer that goes into polo here owns one or two good polo ponies and the government-owned ponies are well above the average.

THE SAN ANTONIO MIDWINTER POLO TOURNAMENT

Lieutenant-Colonel D. D. Tompkins, Cavalry, Polo Representative, 8th Corps Area

Much of the attention of the local sporting world was centered on the polo tournament held at Fort San Houston and San Antonio from December 29, 1923, to January 20, 1924, which was sponsored by the San Antonio Chamber of Commerce and the Greater Publicity Committee and staged under the direction of the Commanding General, 8th Corps Area. It proved to be an unqualified success.

There were four events—Intercollegiate, Open, Low, and High Goal plays. The first was for the Intercollegiate championship of the 8th Corps Area, in which the New Mexico Military Institute, Colorado Agriculture College, Texas A. & M., and the Universities of Arizona and Oklahoma competed. Each team played the other, with the University of Arizona winning the championship, without losing a game. With the exception of the University of Arizona, which brought their own horses, the college players were mounted on the most suitable ponies at Fort Sam Houston. These teams made a very creditable showing, putting up a brand of polo that caused much favorable comment among the spectators and polo critics. We are proud of their record, and we also desire to commend their courtesy and soldierly conduct while here.

The tournament not only afforded pleasure and entertainment to the thousands of people that witnessed the games, but did much to popularise polo by gaining many converts to the idea that it is truly the king of all sports. The tournament was also a polo education to the participating teams, as they benefited by what they saw and learned. We are very much encouraged in our polo activities by the splendid co-operation and financial backing of the San Antonio Chamber of Commerce, which made our tournament possible. We appreciate the interest and generosity of our friends in San Antonio, who contributed so materially to our success in putting over the biggest polo tournament the country has ever seen and the first one in which college, civilian, and army teams have competed. Twenty-one teams, from six States, participated.

Following are the results of the tournament play:

Intercollegiate Event

New Mexico	8	Oklahoma	3
Colorado	5	Texas	1
Arizona	10	Texas	0

New Mexico	8	Colorado	0
Arizona	6	New Mexico	4
Oklahoma	5	Colorado	2
New Mexico	13	Texas	0
Arizona	10	Colorado	0
Oklahoma	3	Texas	0
Arizona	2	Oklahoma	1

Low Goal Event

5th Cavalry	5	Kelly Field	4
4th Field Artillery	9	8th Corps Area	4
Oklahoma City	11	23d Infantry	6
15th Field Artillery	10	12th Field Artillery	3
4th Cavalry	5	12th Cavalry	4
Oklahoma City	8	4th Field Artillery	5
5th Cavalry	9	University or Arizona	5
5th Cavalry	12	15th Field Artillery	9
5th Cavalry	8	Oklahoma City	7
5th Cavalry	11	4th Cavalry	1

High Goal Event

Fort Bliss	10	Detroit	7
2d Division	12	Austin	10
San Antonio	11	Valley Team	2
San Antonio	16	Fort Bliss	15
San Antonio	10	2d Division	8

Flat Event

Austin	6	12th Field Artillery	4
Fort Bliss	15	12th Cavalry	4
2d Division	18	4th Cavalry	2
San Antonio	9	Kelly Field	2
8th Corps Area	6	15th Field Artillery	5
8th Corps Area	8	Detroit	6
2d Division	7	5th Cavalry	3
Fort Bliss	7	San Antonio	5
Austin	6	4th Field Artillery	5
Fort Bliss	8	8th Corps Area	5
2d Division	10	Fort Bliss	7

Enter the 1924 Eastern Endurance Ride!

The Cavalry School

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—Fort Riley, Kansas

Brigadier-General Edward L. King, Commandant

Major J. K. Brown has succeeded Major John Barry as Director of the Department of Horsemanship. The latter has left to captain next year's Olympic Riding Team, taking with him from this post as members of the team Captain Bausket and Lieutenants Carr and Robinett.

The Advanced Class this year includes 1 colonel, 8 lieutenant-colonels, 21 majors and 2 captains. Colonel George Williams is class president. The course is about a month longer than last year and started in the middle of January. The Troop Officers' Class has 75 members. Captain Gay is class president. The Special Class in equitation has 8 members selected from last year's Troop Officers' Class. The National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class, which graduated in December, had 33 members.

The Fort Riley New York Horse Show Team was very successful, considering that the competition was more severe than formerly in the military events, due to the presence of the Olympic Riding Team at this show. At the Kansas City show the team had practically a clean sweep. A team is now in Oklahoma City attending the show there.

Hunting has been flourishing all winter and the fields are larger than usual. Each platoon has already attended several instruction hunts.

A number of exhibitions have been given during the year in honor of distinguished visitors, including the Assistant Secretary of War, Colonel Dwight F. Davis. The exhibition for him was especially well carried out, and included a jumping contest over ten difficult jumps by the members of the Special Class in Equitation, a school ride by the instructors of the Department of Horsemanship, a drill by Machine-Gun Troop No. 1, demonstrating its mobility, and an exhibition in mounted work by Troop E, 2d Cavalry.

The Cavalry Board has recommended the adoption of a set of machine-gun tripod plates, developed by Lieutenant-Colonel Aubrey Lippincott, Director of the Department of Cavalry Weapons, to replace the wooden T-base formerly used in indirect and overhead fire. One plate fits on each leg of the tripod and holds it firmly in place on the ground. The plates can be nested, packed in a leather pouch, and conveniently carried by one of the pack animals of the machine-gun squad. They are a great advantage over the old wooden T-base, and the Infantry Board is now testing them out.

A polo ball was given in October to augment the polo fund. Over $2,500 has just been cleared by the Army Relief through a two-day program which included a circus in the riding hall, a cabaret, and an air circus. A ladies' riding class has been started this year with membership ranging between 20 and 40. Captain H. R. Kilbourne, of the Department of Horsemanship, is the instructor for the fair equestriennes.

Enter the 1924 Eastern Endurance Ride!

Regimental Notes

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Colonel Charles A. Romeyn, Commanding

All troops of the regiment remained at Fort Riley during December, 1923, and January and February, 1924, performing usual garrison and school duties, demonstrations, and exhibitions.

On December 1 Troop A gave an exhibition bare-back drill, and on December 8 Troop B gave a jumping exhibition, using a course of three-foot-eight and four-foot jumps and ending with troop in column of twos over a fire jump. On December 22 Troop E gave an exhibition saddle drill, ending with a fire jump.

On December 8 the Second Squadron formed a war strength troop under Captain McDonald and demonstrated a formal troop inspection, mounted and dismounted, for the outgoing National Guard and Reserve Officers' Class.

The regiment was reviewed on December 21 by the regimental commander, preceded by an escort to the standard, Troop C forming the escort. After the review the Reach Baseball Cup was presented to the Service Troop and the Regimental Cup was presented to Troop B, the field day winner for 1923.

The Christmas holidays marked a cessation of all demonstrations and exhibitions. On Christmas Day the Commandant, accompanied by the executive officer, the regimental commander, and many other guests, inspected all troop kitchens and messes. All were very complimentary in their opinions of the various dinners served.

Beginning in January with the reopening of school, demonstrations and exhibitions were resumed. The Pioneer Section of the Headquarters Troop gave a demonstration on January 3, erecting a double lock-bridge across One Mile Creek. After the bridge had been erected and the regimental trains had crossed, the Demolition Section destroyed the bridge with a well-placed charge of TNT. The time required for erection, crossing of train, and destruction was one hour.

Troop E was called on for exhibition drills on January 15 and 23, the former for the garrison and the latter for the Assistant Secretary of War. On the latter date Troop A acted as escort for Mr. Davis.

On February 2 the Communications Platoon of the Headquarters Troop gave a demonstration in the West Hall, consisting of establishing communications on the march. The platoon entered the hall at the gallop, halted in the line in front of the reviewing stand, again took up the gallop, halted, set up both S. C. R. 127 sets and the 54 A set, put out panels, sent two messages complete, with loud speaker attachments for proof of sending, packed sets, and were out of the hall in 8 minutes 40 seconds.

Exhibitions for the month wound up with a saddle drill by A Troop on the 16th and a jumping exhibition by Troop B on the 23d.

The strength of the regiment has increased during the past three months from 615 to 740. It is expected that the regiment will be up to strength in less than two months.

THIRD CAVALRY (Less First Squadron), Fort Myer, Virginia

Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, Commanding

The first important event of the winter season was a pay ride held on December 7 for the benefit of the Army Relief Society, the proceeds of which amounted to $1,642.08 over $500 more than last year. During the course of the exhibition the American Horse Association medal for finishing third in the 1923 Endurance Ride was presented to Corporal Major, of Troop E.

A very novel and excellent exhibition ride was put on by Troop F December 15. The events consisted of rough riding, trick shooting, fencing on horseback, mounted wrestling, platoon drill, and stunt jumping by Sergeant F. W. Smith, who jumped his horse, *Sam*, over another horse and over a Ford. After the show the troop entertained at a dance and supper.

An informal horse show was held December 28 and the Friday afternoon exhibition rides began January 4. The program at these rides has consisted at various times of a drill by the entire squadron, a saddle drill by Troop E, a schooled ride by Troop G, rough riding by Troop F, an officers' or non-commissioned officers' jumping squad, etc.

Battery C won the basket-ball championship of the Field Artillery; Troop G, that of the Cavalry. These two teams met for the post championship, which was won by the former, two games to one.

At the horse show on March 8, a pay affair for the benefit of the Olympic team, the public was given an opportunity to view the Army Olympic horse prospects. These horses have been in training here, under the direction of Major Barry, for a period of about four month.

THIRD CAVALRY—First Squadron, Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

Lieutenant-Colonel Herbert S. Mann, Commanding

The winter season at Fort Ethan Allen has been unusually mild this year, thus allowing outdoor drills and sports to a greater extent than has been possible for several years. Every other day the troops are out on drill and tactical problems. On alternate days the riding hall is used. The squadron is full strength now and is rounding out in good shape for the coming target season and summer's training work.

Ladies' equitation has been popular this season. From twelve to fifteen ladies are constant attendants. Basket-ball has been interesting as usual this winter. Troop A won the first series, from nine teams of cavalry and artillery. The second series is not over yet, but the prospects look encouraging for the cavalry. Bowling has also been a popular amusement this winter. Among the officers, the staff team won, and the cavalry is now leading in the enlisted men's tournament.

The organizations have bought skis and skates from their funds and the men have enjoyed the winter sports greatly. An excellent rink was built near the post exchange, and a large arc light hangs above the center. Each evening finds it in use by the enlisted men, officers and families.

Perhaps the most popular sport of all is ski-joring. Each organization has improvised the necessary horse equipment, and Wednesday and Saturday afternoons the post is alive with horses, skis, and ski-jorers. Some exciting races are promised for carnival day, which will come some time this month.

FOURTH CAVALRY (Less First Squadron), Fort McIntosh, Texas

Major Harry L. King, Commanding

On December 26 the polo team, composed of Captain C. L. Stafford, Lieutenants E. A. Gilbert and John T. Ward, left for San Antonio, for the Annual Mid-winter Tournament. Upon arrival the team was joined by Lieutenant Howard Bratton, of the 1st Squadron. Due to a month of very bad weather preceding the tournament, the team was unable to get much practice, but in spite of this handicap was able to defeat the 12th Cavalry and Oklahoma City, thereby getting in the finals for the low-goal cup. The final game was played against the 5th Cavalry, who won the event.

On January 10 Colonel and Mrs. Hickok left for their new station at Chicago. A farewell party was given them by the officers and ladies of Fort McIntosh, at Nuevo

Laredo, Mexico, on the evening of the 9th. No commanding officer has ever taken a greater interest in or accomplished more for his regiment than did Colonel Hickok, and it was with sincere regret that the garrison bade the Colonel and Mrs. Hickok good-bye.

FIRST SQUADRON—Fort Sam Houston, Texas

Lieutenant-Colonel E. A. Keyes, Commanding

On February 17 a detachment of this squadron, consisting of two officers and 28 enlisted men, proceeded by marching from this station to Fort McIntosh, Texas, a distance of 169 miles, to participate in the regimental horse show to be staged on Organization Day, March 3. The distance was covered in four days. Horses and men completed the march in excellent condition.

On February 18-19 the squadron was inspected by the Chief of Cavalry, Major-General Holbrook.

At the regimental horse show held at Fort McIntosh, Texas, on March 3, "Organization Day," the detachment from this squadron tied the Second Squadron in points—13 each.

Troops B and C each tied Troop F, at Fort McIntosh, for organization, winning the second highest number of points. Corporal Robert F. Gebs, Troop B, won a cup. Our detachment won all places in the non-commissioned officers' jumping contest.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel W. B. Scales, Commanding

Colonel W. B. Scales arrived on February 17 and assumed command of the regiment, having previously served in the regiment for thirteen years.

On March 3 the regiment celebrated its sixty-ninth birthday. Exercises appropriate to the occasion were held, commencing with a ceremony at 9.00 a. m., which was followed by a dismounted field and track event. In the afternoon a polo game was played between two picked teams of officers. In the evening the officers held the annual dinner and dance at the club. The remaining officers and ladies on the post came in for dancing at 9:00 p. m. The enlisted men had a dance at the pavilion. A letter of congratulation was received from Major-General W. A. Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry, and was read during the morning ceremony.

Polo is flourishing in the regiment, twenty-five officers playing. We have four teams at present and we are preparing for the coming senior and junior tournaments, to be held by the First Cavalry Division some time this spring.

A team from the regiment carried off first honors in the low-goal handicap tournament held under the auspices of Headquarters, Eighth Corps Area, at San Antonio. The team had a battle to win, in that they had to play six games before being declared winners of the tournament.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Colonel Robert J. Fleming, Commanding

The annual horse show on December 19 was the crowning event of the year 1923. Many entries were received for the twenty-two classes from Regulars, Reserves, and National Guards. The trophies were donated by the business firms and sportsmen of Chattanooga.

On the evening of November 28 the officers and ladies were entertained by the dramatic club in a one-act play, "The Silly Ass." In the latter part of December the line troops were tested by the training board, with the following percentage results: Troop G, 83.41; C, 81.68; F, 80.51; B, 78.24; E, 77.44; A, 76.38.

On New Year's Eve the officers and ladies entertained about a hundred guests, many from Chattanooga, at a masquerade ball. The dramatic club offered "The Maker of Dreams" and "Dregs," on January 5, to an enthusiastic audience. On February 1 a joint smoker was given by the officers of the post and Reserve Officers Association of Chattanooga and vicinity.

Bowling has become popular here with both men and women. Basket-ball also started in December, when the fast post team defeated Chickamauga High School 17-10. February 4, the final game of the season, with the Cleveland Ramblers, resulted in a win for the latter, the score being 29 to 28.

A regimental polo team is tentatively organized, to be entered in any tournament or matches with outside teams. As only six or seven officers are considered as material for this team, it does not participate in play as a team at present, the teams playing being constantly changed, so as to offer opportunity for the development of all those desiring to play.

Every officer on the post is a member of the 6th Cavalry Polo Association. Sixteen of the twenty-four officers present for duty are active players. Two retired officers, one active officer, and two civilians from Chattanooga are also regular players.

Relations with neighboring towns are excellent, the best support being secured from Chattanooga, Tenn., and Anniston, Ala. The Sandhills Club, Pinehurst, N. C., and the Nashville Polo Association have both extended invitations to participate in tournaments, as have the Aiken and Camden clubs. For various reasons, these invitations were either recalled, due to local difficulties in staging the proposed tournaments, or could not be accepted by us.

The regiment is taking a prominent place in the social and military life of this section, which is displaying the closest kind of co-operation with the military in every sort of activity. Colonel Fleming on several occasions has made addresses to civilian organizations representative of the best thought of the community. The regiment is very busy with its varied and numerous duties and pleasures and feels that it is filling a definite place in this community's life.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

The regiment was paraded dismounted January 26 in honor of First Sergeant Edward Brown, Service Troop, who retired on that date. All of Sergeant Brown's thirty years of service except three years had been spent in this regiment. Colonel Lee, on behalf of the officers and enlisted men of the 7th Cavalry presented Sergeant Brown with a wardrobe trunk, a solo-leather suitcase, an overcoat, and a handsome smoking set, given in recognition and appreciation of his faithful and efficient service. Major-General Robert L. Howze and Brigadier-General Joseph N. Castner congratulated Sergeant Brown on his splendid record and wished him much happiness in his well-earned retirement. The Non-Commissioned Officers' Club gave a banquet and smoker complimenting Sergeant Edward Brown on January 28.

During this quarter the regiment has received 102 recruits. Many of these have finished recruit drill satisfactorily and been turned to duty. Not a few old 7th cavalrymen have returned.

On February 18 the 7th Cavalry Band, conducted by Warrant Officer Clark B. Price, broadcasted an excellent concert from radio station WDAH, El Paso, Texas. Introductory to the concert, Colonel Fitzhugh Lee gave a brief résumé of the history of the 7th Cavalry. The program was given under the auspices of the El Paso Chamber of Commerce. Cards of acknowledgment were received from points in Texas, California, Minnesota, Kansas, and Connecticut.

Basket-ball season has just closed with the Service Troop as the proud possessor of the pennant for the intertroop tournament. A team was selected from the various troops

to play the 8th Cavalry team, who were trounced—28 to 19. The William Beaumont Hospital team invaded our camp and went home defeated—18 to 15.

Baseball is now to the fore. Troop teams are shaping up fast and promise to stage an enthusiastic whirlwind tournament. There is already evidence of material for a championship regimental team. The regimental athletic officer and Sergeant Bill Morrison have prepared an excellent diamond for the players this season. It has been properly surfaced with clay, dugouts made for the players, and a grandstand built for the spectators. On this crack diamond the "Garry Owens" hope to annex many wins. The inter-troop tournament will begin this month (March). The troop star players will constitute the material for the regimental team.

The polo team captained by Major S. W. Winfree is keeping up a consistent schedule of practice. New ponies added to the team give much promise in the work-outs. A member of the team was lost in Captain John A. Hettinger, who was assigned recently to the 8th Corps Area General Depot, San Antonio. The team will be materially strengthened upon the arrival of Captain Delmore Wood, who has been assigned to the regiment.

The Non-Commissioned Officers' Club now has a committee to visit the regimental sick in William Beaumont Hospital. The committee makes a weekly visit and takes magazines, stationery, stamps, smokes, etc., to the sick. This has proven a very commendable and satisfactory bit of work.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel A. G. Lott, Commanding

This regiment, together with the Second Machine Gun Squadron, had a most successful Christmas celebration on Christmas Eve. There was a tree, decorated by the ladies of the regiment and squadron; there were Christmas carols, and presents for every one.

On New Year's Day the officers of the regiment went in a body to call on the Commanding General and on the Commanding Officer, 7th Cavalry. The latter call was returned by the officers of the Seventh. The enlisted men of the regiment had the New Year's Day parade, traditional in this regiment. It is a burlesque affair in which the officers and many other things are mimicked.

During the visit of the Chief of Cavalry, February 11 to 13, the regiment participated in a division review, with field equipment. The squadrons were later inspected, the inspection consisting principally of field exercises, demonstrations of attack and defense. General Holbrook and his staff expressed themselves as well pleased with the state of training of the regiment.

Polo is being seriously handicapped by lack of good mounts, and also by the fact that three of our best players—Major Merchant, Captain Cole, and Lieutenant Mudgett—have been detached recently. However, more officers are playing, and an effort is being made to train a number of remounts which look like polo prospects.

Work is being pushed on the new service club for this area. It is expected that it will be completed soon after April 1. Two benefit fight programs were staged at the Fort Bliss Stadium, the proceeds from which went toward the building of the club.

At present the troops are having saber qualification, an average of about forty men per troop taking the course.

Recruits came in large numbers during December and January, and most of the troops now have nearly their full authorized peace strength.

The training of the regiment continues to improve, but is always seriously handicapped by the large number of men on special duty and by the fact that the more or less temporary nature of our stables and barracks make constant effort necessary to keep them in good condition.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Major Joseph F. Richmond, Commanding

The 9th Cavalry garden has risen to the dignity of a farm, consisting of about fifteen acres of garden and thirty-five acres of pasture. The additional fifteen or twenty acres in Camp Funston will be planted in corn again this year. Live stock has increased to four calves, six milch cows, forty-five suckling pigs, and one hundred six hogs.

The consolidated mess is equipped with a bread slicer, an electric potato-peeler, and four electric coffee urns, all of which have proven to be time and labor savers, sources of economy, and have added to the prior smooth, efficient, and pleasant operation of our mess.

A commercial shooting gallery has been set up as an indoor rifle range in the basement under the mess hall. This gallery has stationary iron targets with bell bull's-eyes, revolving squirrels, swimming ducks, and mounted men. The rifles to be used will be .22 caliber, one of which will be the subject of a report to the Cavalry Board. This rifle is the approved 1922 model of the gallery practice rifle. An indoor pistol range has been constructed alongside the rifle range. The arms for the pistol range are .22 caliber Smith and Wesson target pistol and the Smith and Wesson .22-caliber revolver, both pistol and revolver being equipped with the new type of wide front and rear sights.

The 9th Cavalry Club is proving a splendid place of recreation and amusement for the members of the regiment. The well-equipped gymnasium is responsible for the indoor training of our prize fighters, who are defeating all comers. "Kid Davis" (Clarence Davis, Troop G) defeated "Frisco Kid," of Kansas City, Mo., in a six-round bout on February 27. Weekly dances, whist tournaments, and moving pictures are largely attended. A new and modern lunch counter and ice-cream parlor is being installed. Two radio concerts per day are given by the club steward, Corporal P. J. Daniel, Headquarters and Service Troop. The retirement of First Sergeant William Smith, Troop E, 9th Cavalry, will be honored by a celebration in the auditorium of the club Wednesday, March 12, with an appropriate program, followed by refreshments and dancing.

The preparation of the 9th Cavalry Regulations is still in progress. It is intended that these regulations include in booklet form all post and regimental orders pertinent to the individual soldier.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Colonel James C. Rhea, Commanding

Colonel James C. Rhea assumed command of the regiment at the beginning of this quarter. During January the regiment trained in drill, close and extended order, equitation, and small problems. Since the 1st of February the regiment has been having known-distance rifle practice.

Major General Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry, made a visit of inspection from February 6 to February 9 and signified his approval of the state of preparedness and training of the regiment.

During the quarter the following named enlisted men have been retired after the completion of the equivalent of 30 years' service:

Sergeant Burrell Morris, Troop C.
Sergeant Monroe Head, Troop B.
First Sergeant Samuel H. Alexander, Troop B.
Private First Class Clarence I. Gardner, Troop A.
Sergeant Luchious Smith, Service Troop.
Corporal John P. Kellis, Troop C.
First Sergeant James T. Penney, Headquarters Troop.
Sergeant Thomas Brown, Service Troop.

Sergeant Littleton Chapmon, Troop E.

Considerable attention has been given polo, particularly toward the development of new players.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California

Colonel H. J. Brees, Commanding

During the past three months the regiment has been filled to its authorized strength. A rigorous and intensive course of training has been pursued to whip the regiment into shape, so that it will be able to perform its prescribed duties during the summer training camp period at Del Monte. Practice marches have been made by troops and squadrons and will be made this month by the regiment.

A formal squadron parade each week has been held on the post parade at retreat, and it has created considerable interest among our civilian friends on the Peninsula, a large number attending each time. The monthly field meets have been reinstated and have developed a keen sense of competition between enlisted men and organizations and have been well attended by the civilians.

The regimental birthday, February 2, was celebrated at Moss Beach with a ceremony, sports, and picnic. All our friends on the Peninsula were invited to attend, and between 700 and 1,000 of them came out and spent the day with us. The program started with a regimental parade, then a presentation of the recruits to the colors, after which the horses were tied to picket lines and the men assembled to listen to talks by the regimental commander and by Master Sergeant Benjamin F. Quigley, who has been in the regiment since its organization. A real army dinner was then served to all, after which a sport program was held and all went home. Every one had a good time, and it is believed that our civilian friends got a real insight into the history and spirit of the regiment.

The regimental polo team has been playing in the Pacific Coast Circuit games prior to the opening of the Pacific Coast Tournament at Coronado. Two games have been played with the Cardinals, Midwick Club, and Riverside Club and one game with the Hawaiian Division team. The game with the Hawaiian Division team and one game with the Cardinals was won handily, but in the other games the team lost by a one- or two-point margin.

An inter-troop baseball league has been started and much interest is being evidenced among the officers and men. It is hoped that sufficient talent will be developed to organize a regimental team equal to the ones we have had in the past.

TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold and Sam Fordyce, Texas

Colonel John M. Morgan, Commanding

Saber practice was completed in February, with the exception of some recruits who arrived in December and January. The record practice shows an improvement over the results obtained last year, with a large increase in the number of qualifications as expert and excellent swordsman.

The regiment has nearly completed dismounted and mounted pistol practice. Rifle practice was commenced March 1.

The Fort Brown command conducted a most successful field meet on February 22, the day's program including dismounted events, mounted events, and six boxing numbers. The meet was won by Troop C, with Troop A second and Headquarters Troop third.

The regiment is manifesting more interest in athletics now than formerly. Wednesday afternoon has been set aside for athletics. Six baseball teams have been organized at Fort Brown, one by each troop, and one team comprised of the various detachments at the post. A schedule of twenty-six games has been arranged, with a game each Wednesday, Saturday, and Sunday. The second squadron at Fort Ringgold is taking an equal interest in athletics, having organized troop teams and a post team and arranged a schedule of games.

REGIMENTAL NOTES

Major General Willard A. Holbrook, the Chief of Cavalry, visited Fort Brown February 21 to 24 and Fort Ringgold February 25 and 26, inspecting the units of the 12th Cavalry at these stations. Colonel Morgan, the regimental commander, accompanied General Holbrook on his visit to Fort Ringgold.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel J. J. Boniface, Commanding

March, 1924, finds the regiment recruited to full peace strength. It will now be possible to carry out troop, squadron or regimental drills and maneuvers scheduled for the current year.

Monthly athletic contests between the organizations of this regiment are being held. These tests are based on Cavalry Memorandum No. 8, together with some of the athletic tests included in the regimental athletic program. A silver cup is being competed for and will become the property of the troop winning it the greatest number of times during the year. The cup was presented to Troop F at the regular Wednesday parade on February 20, after this troop had won the monthly contest.

An impressive and inspiring lecture on morale was given by the post commander, General Jenkins, to the officers and men of the 13th Cavalry at the Service Club on February 11.

Forty-three reserve officers from the Reserve Officers' Training Corps at the Colorado Agricultural College were guests of the regiment on February 16. A full day's program of entertainment, including inspections and exhibitions, was arranged for them by the regimental commander. The last event of the day was a cross-country ride over the 13th Cavalry four-mile obstacle course, led by Colonel Boniface. The ride terminated at the Officers' Club, where a short get-together meeting was held.

The regiment took a prominent part in the National Western Horse Show in Denver between January 21 and January 26. The 13th Cavalry Musical Drill Platoon, in charge of Lieutenant Hoffman, was a decided hit throughout the show. It exhibited at every performance and was always received with an enthusiastic and flattering applause. The horse-show team accredited themselves with twenty ribbons and won the indoor polo championship. Among the ribbons won were first places for officers' charger, light-weight hunter, heavy-weight hunter, and triple-bar jumping class. The team was composed of Captain Shafer (team captain), and Captain Selby, Lieutenant Hoffman, and Lieutenant Hoge.

The 13th Cavalry should have a very successful year in polo this year. Horses have been assigned and are being conditioned for this summer's polo. Keen interest in polo is exhibited by all officers of the regiment. In addition to the tournament planned for this station the latter part of June, a team is to be sent to the 9th Corps Area Tournament at Boise, Idaho, the first of June. There will be three teams in the regiment, but, due to the shortage of ponies, there will probably be only two teams to take part in our tournament.

A recent addition to the regiment is Mrs. K. G. Hoge, wife of Lieutenant Hoge. A tea in honor of Mrs. Hoge was given at the Officers' Club on January 16. Captain and Mrs. G. M. Peabody have joined the regiment recently.

First Sergeant Joseph C. Gresham, Troop F, was retired from the service on February 21, upon the completion of thirty years' service. A regimental parade was tendered him upon this date. Both Troop F and the Non-Commissioned Officers' Club honored Sergeant Gresham with banquets.

Enter the 1924 Eastern Endurance Ride!

REGIMENTAL NOTES

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel H. La T. Cavenaugh, Commanding

On December 4 a field inspection of the regiment with equipment "A" was made by Brigadier-General Halstead Dorey, U. S. A., who made the annual tactical inspection of the post during the week of December 3-8. The various schools of the post were inspected by General Dorey and two tactical problems were given by the regiment. One of these was a dismounted attack with enemy outlined, in which the entire regiment (less 1st Squadron) took part. The other problem was a mounted attack, supported by fire, that was put on by the 2d Squadron.

During December the Band Section of the Service Troop made a very successful recruiting trip, visiting Fort Dodge, Webster, and Ames, Iowa. The trip occupied eleven days and was productive to the extent of 20 recruits for the post and much good feeling among the civilian population for the army. Band concerts were given at Fort Dodge for Rotary and Lions Clubs, the American Legion Post, and the Methodist Church, beside street concerts. A band concert was given to the High School at Ames, besides street concerts.

The weather during the remainder of December and nearly all of January was very severe and prevented any outdoor activities. A basket ball league was organized, with every troop in the regiment furnishing a team and two of the artillery organizations at Fort Des Moines furnishing additional competition. Troop G won the first series, ending January 30, with a total of 6 games won and none lost, and on February 29 won the second series without losing a game.

On December 26 an organization pistol shoot was held. Five-men teams from each organization in the regiment, a Post Headquarters team, and an artillery team were entered. Slow and timed fire at twenty-five yards and slow fire at fifty yards comprised the shoot. Headquarters Troop won the shoot.

On January 28 a vaudeville show was given by officers of the 14th Cavalry and the 9th Field Artillery Battalion. Lieutenant Koch starred in a monologue and Lieutenant Willis entertained by revealing the minds of the officers and their friends. Lieutenant Judge made up an extraordinary band, with the assistance of Lieutenants White, Thorpe, Kinnison, and Ready. Captain Mullenix sang a doleful undertaker's song that brought down the house. Other numbers were given by the artillery officers.

Despite the severe weather, the regiment was able to take a short hike, about twelve miles, on January 29, winding up with an attack on a bridgehead, which was entirely successful for the 14th.

On February 1 the officers of the 14th Cavalry and the artillery officers of the post gave a bean supper for all mounted Reserve and National Guard officers of Des Moines, prior to the showing of a group of War Department training films furnished by the office of the Chief of Cavalry.

On February 2 First Sergeant Patrick G. Carroll, Troop G, 14th Cavalry, was retired after more than 30 years' service, most of which was served in the 14th Cavalry. The regiment was reviewed by Sergeant Carroll in the morning, and that evening a smoker was tendered Sergeant Carroll by the officers and men of the regiment. Speeches were made by Colonel Cavenaugh, Captain Peabody, and Sergeant Carroll.

A very successful pistol shoot was held on February 4, in which both officers and men competed. Lieutenant Rehm won, with a score of 150 out of 200, shooting two scores of five shots each at timed and slow fire at 25 yards and two scores of slow fire at 50 yards. Colonel Cavenaugh was a close second.

On February 23 Headquarters Troop staged a very interesting demonstration in the riding hall covering all phases of the activities of a headquarters troop. Camp was pitched, radio station set up, telephone switchboard put into operation, and officers' mess

equipment displayed. The demonstration was staged for the benefit of Reserve and National Guard officers who live in the vicinity, and despite a severe snowstorm about fifteen officers turned out to hear the excellent explanations of the various officrs and non-commissioned officers, which formed part of the demonstration.

TWENTY-SIXTH CAVALRY—Camp Stotsenburg, P. I.

Lieutenant-Colonel A. C. Gillem, Commanding

During the month of January this regiment and Machine-Gun Troop No. 2 (P. S.) have been recruited to authorized strength. Cavalry service seems to have an especial appeal to the Filipino, and this has resulted in a high class of recruits and in a waiting list of applicants for enlistment in the regiment.

The Division Commander, Major-General Bundy, inspected all organizations January 17 to 19, inclusive. On the 19th he reviewed all troops of the post. The following letter was received by Lieutenant-Colonel Gillem after the showing made by the regiment at this review:

HEADQUARTERS, CAMP STOTSENBURG, OFFICE OF THE POST COMMANDER

CAMP STOTSENBURG, PAMPANGA, *P. I., January* 19, 1924.

Subject: Commendation.

To Commanding Officer, 26th Cavalry (P. S.), Post:

1. I wish to commend you and the 26th Cavalry upon its superb appearance at the review today.

2. The Division Commander was highly pleased and stated to me that the regiment presented the finest appearance he had yet seen. He was particularly pleased with the transportation. He stated that he had never seen transportation in such fine condition, and that he did not believe there was anything else as good in the army.

JOHNSON HAGOOD,
Commanding.

Preparations are now being made for the march of the regiment to Manila and their attendance at the Manila Carnival. Troop G has been designated as exhibition troop for the department military tournament at Fort William McKinley.

Among the many arrivals on the January transport the following officers have turned out for polo: Captain Featherstone, Lieutenants Sutton, Burkart, and Mudgett. In view of the shortage of ponies, only two teams can be mounted. Consequently it is expected that competition will be especially keen between the old and new officers for places on the "A" and "B" teams.

A regimental barbecue was held on the night of January 27 at the Bamban River. Captain W. R. Irvin was in charge and demonstrated to the satisfaction of all present that the preparation of barbecue meat is not yet a lost art. At the conclusion of the dinner, impromptu entertainment was given by the officers and ladies present.

FIRST MACHINE-GUN SQUADRON—Fort Clark, Texas

Major Emmet R. Harris, Commanding

During the past quarter this unit received enough recruits to practically fill the squadron to its authorized strength. The War Department has approved a distinctive insignia, consisting of the shield and motto from the arms of the 1st Machine-Gun Squadron. On February 17 the squadron was formally presented its regimental standard by Major-General W. A. Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry. The coat of arms of the squadron is as follows:

ESTABLISHED 1818

Brooks Brothers
CLOTHING
Gentlemen's Furnishing Goods,
MADISON AVENUE COR. FORTY-FOURTH STREET, N. Y.

To correct an erroneous impression that the ownership and management of the business have undergone a change, BROOKS BROTHERS takes occasion to publish the names of its DIRECTORS and OFFICERS, and to state that the business has been operated continuously for more than one hundred and five years, and is still in the Control of the Direct Descendants of the Founder

BOSTON
TREMONT COR. BOYLSTON

NEWPORT
220 BELLEVUE AVENUE

DIRECTORS
FREDERICK BROOKS
Chairman
WALTER BROOKS
HAROLD BROOKS
WINTHROP H. BROOKS
EUGENE E. MAPES
OWEN WINSTON
WILLIAM B. HARDIN
ALBERT E. BAEDER
GEORGE H. HOWARD

OFFICERS
EUGENE E. MAPES
President
OWEN WINSTON
Vice-President
WILLIAM B. HARDIN
Treasurer
WINTHROP H. BROOKS
Secretary
ALBERT E. BAEDER
Ass't. Treasurer

BLAZONRY

Shield: Or, within a bordure gules a dragon's head erased of the like holding in his mouth a branch of cactus (prickly pear) vert.

Crest: On a wreath of the colors an arrow reversed or between two dragons' wings displayed erect gules.

Motto: "Action front."

DESCRIPTION

The colors of the shield gold (yellow), and of the border, red, are the colors of the old cavalry machine-gun hat cords, yellow cords and red acorns and keeper. The dragon's head and wings are from the dragon of the arms of the 1st Cavalry (Troop D, 1st Cavalry, became Headquarters Detachment, 1st Machine-Gun Squadron, and the Machine-Gun Troop, 1st Cavalry, became Troop A, 1st Machine-Gun Squadron). The cactus is from the arms of the 12th Cavalry (the Machine-Gun Troop, 12th Cavalry, became Troop B, 1st Machine-Gun Squadron). The arrow of the crest is from the bundle of arrows, the crest of the 5th Cavalry (the Machine-Gun Troop, 5th Cavalry, became Troop "C," 1st Machine-Gun Squadron). The one arrow represents the numerical designation of the 1st Machine-Gun Squadron.

Enter the 1924 Eastern Endurance Ride!

309th CAVALRY—Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Colonel John C. Groome, Cavalry Reserve Corps, Commanding

Lieutenant-Colonel H. R. Smalley, Cavalry, Executive Officer

The regiment has been filled to full commissioned strength and has nine extra officers attached. The regiment also has fourteen non-commissioned officers and privates. Lieutenant-Colonel Howard R. Smalley, the executive officer of the regiment, has arranged a series of dinners and conferences to be held throughout the winter, at each of which a talk will be given on a selected military subject.

The first dinner and conference of the winter was held at the Hotel Sylvania, in Philadelphia, on Thursday evening, December 13. Forty officers of the regiment attended. The dining-room was decorated with the standards and guidons of the regiment and the tables were arranged in a block "U" shape, with the regimental staff seated at the head table and the officers of the first and second squadrons occupying opposite sides of the "U." Each table had, running down the center, a miniature picket line on which small toy horses were tied. After the dinner Colonel Smalley gave a talk on organization and functions of the units and the various staffs of a cavalry division. The talk was illustrated with large blackboard charts showing the complete organization from the division to the squad, and by maps showing the 62d Cavalry Division on the march from Paoli to Philadelphia to establish a bridgehead at Camden.

The second dinner was held on January 17, at which Major McCullough, commanding the first squadron, talked on "Cavalry Training Regulations."

Two classes in equitation have been started and 52 officers and men have joined the classes. They will be conducted twice a week, with an advanced class at the Squadron Armory on 33d Street, under Major McCullough, and a basic class at the First City Troop Armory, under Major Hay.

The regiment has adopted as a motto the words "I Will," which were the words of Major Keenan, commanding the 8th Pennsylvania Cavalry at Chancellorsville, when he was directed to charge with 400 men of that regiment into an entire Confederate division.

First Sergeant Albert Leusch, formerly 8th Cavalry, First Cavalry Division, has reported for duty with the regiment, having lately been transferred from Fort Bliss, Texas. Sergeant Leusch is a first lieutenant in the Cavalry Reserve Corps.

First Lieutenant Max Livingston, 306th Cavalry, entertained the officers of the regiment at a buffet supper at his home at Lochiel Farms, Exton, Pa., on January 12.

The officers and enlisted men of the regiment assembled together with the First City Troop, at the City Troop's armory, on January 28, to witness an exhibition of War Department training films.

Major R. R. D. McCullough entertained the officers of the First Squadron at a dinner at the "Rabbit" on February 28.

110th CAVALRY, MASSACHUSETTS NATIONAL GUARD—Boston, Massachusetts

Major Dana T. Gallup, Commanding

Dates Set for Third Annual 110th Cavalry Horse Show

Excellent dates have been assigned by the Association of American Horse Show, Inc., for the Third Annual Horse Show to be held by the 110th Cavalry, Massachusetts National Guard. They are September 24, 25, 26, and 27, 1924. As these dates are the week immediately following the large Springfield Horse Show and the week before the Brockton Fair Show, it is expected that most of the horses brought on for these two events will also appear in Boston.

The Cavalry show is filling a gap in Boston, as there had been no large horse show held there for a number of years, or since the last of the Boston horse shows held in

Mechanics Building some fifteen years ago. That Boston is ready for such a show is evidenced by the large number of entries at the show last fall, even though it was held too late to attract horses brought on for Springfield and Brockton.

The 110th Cavalry is stationed at the Commonwealth Armory, in Boston, which, with one of the largest indoor riding halls in the United States, furnishes a practically ideal place for horse shows and similar events.

POLO IN THE MASSACHUSETTS CAVALRY

Indoor polo is distinctly on the upgrade in Boston. There is every likelihood that next winter a league of the teams in the vicinity of the city will be formed, with a schedule of games prepared in advance. Three military teams would go into this league—the 110th Cavalry and the 101st Field Artillery of the Massachusetts National Guard and the First Corps Area Team, composed of officers stationed at First Corps Area Headquarters. In addition, there are several club teams near Boston and the Harvard University Team.

During the past winter the 110th Cavalry have had a schedule of eleven games, of which they have won six. These were:

	Opponent.	Cavalry.	Opponent.
December 12	—First Corps Area	13	9
December 21	—101st Field Artillery	4	12
December 22	—1st Squadron Cavalry, R. I. N. G.	9½	7½
December 28	—Norwich University	11	1
January 4	—Essex County Polo Club	14	11½
January 9	—Brookline Polo Club	8	4
January 13	—Essex County Polo Club	6	8
February 2	—Dedham Polo Club	1	8½
February 16	—First Corps Area	2½	4
February 22	—1st Squadron Cavalry, R. I. N. G.	9½	3½
March 8	—Dedham Polo Club	4	13

About a year ago a few of the officers and enlisted men of the regiment began playing polo on a small scale. Only a few games were attempted before camp and one was played during the summer encampment.

In the fall of 1923, however, the interest became quite general throughout the regiment and a good-sized squad has been practicing regularly. This interest has increased since the arrival of Captain A. P. Thayer, of the 3d Cavalry, as instructor. Since his arrival Captain Thayer has devoted a great deal of time to the polo work and has rounded out an excellent team.

HENRY SCHICK — Henry Schick & Co. — FRANK J. KRUPP
FORMERLY WITH JOHN G. HAAS
Army and Navy Uniforms
1421 F STREET N. W. — CIVILIAN DRESS A SPECIALTY — WASHINGTON, D. C.

MAGAZINES MAGAZINES MAGAZINES

ATTENTION, ALL CAVALRYMEN!!

YOUR Association can supply you with ANY magazine, foreign or domestic, military or general, at the LOWEST advertised price. The Association, being a dealer, gets a small discount which you cannot get. This discount would be a year, if ALL Cavalrymen sent ALL their magazine business to THEIR Association, pay for one number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL. REMEMBER THAT! Get our catalogues and lists and send the Association ALL your business.

SERVICE FOR THE CAVALRY

BOOK DEPARTMENT

U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

1624 H STREET N. W.

WASHINGTON, D. C.

THE ASSOCIATION'S LIST OF BEST SELLERS

Breaking and Riding

with Military Commentaries. By Fillis, former Ecuyer-en-chief to the Central Cavalry School at St. Petersburg. 366 pages, index. 70 Illustrations. New Edition. (Price, $7.50.) Horse-lore Classic by master with fifty years' horse experience. Not pupil of Baucher, Fillis improved on his method. Fillis taught principle there must always be progression; that horse must be kept up to bit; that horse must always be kept straight. Not equitation manual. Possesses instead GENIUS. Fillis' method of instruction is by relation—instruction in simplest form. Book for practical horsemen. Definite, full explanation by master-horseman of how each movement is accomplished. Therein lies Fillis' value.

A History of Cavalry

By Colonel Denison. 467 pages. Index, 11 maps. (Price, $4.20.) The BEST constructed book on our shelves and the ONLY history of Cavalry. Every statement of fact substantiated by reference to the original source. Accurate, vivid, full of information, with pen photos of the great cavalrymen of all ages. Shows the development of arms, armor, tactics, organization, the growth of the infantry and artillery along with the Cavalry and the interplay one on the other, and in this sense is a SHORT HISTORY OF WARFARE. All important battles described. SECOND EDITION. No Cavalry library complete without this book.

As to Polo

By Forbes. New Edition. 25 diagrams of plays in colors. 151 pages. (Price, $3.00.) The STANDARD book on American game. Details, equipment, stick-work, team play. How to play EACH position.

Cavalry Tactics

By Colonel Gray. Index. 127 pages. (Price, $2.50.) Careful selection from Civil War records, memoirs of commanders, etc., of most reliable testimony of Cavalry's use. Authority for each statement given. Opposite each extract is note giving substance of extract, together with statement of battle and date. Divisions of treatment: Arms and Their Uses; Revolver vs. Saber; Security and Information; Transportation of Supplies; Animals—Care, Endurance, and Diseases. Not theoretical; facts; lessons that apply today as well as then.

The German Cavalry in Belgium and France, 1914.

By Lieutenant-General von Poseck, Inspector General of Cavalry, German Army. Maps, index. (Price, $4.00.) The only COMPLETE story of the very IMPORTANT work of the German Cavalry at the beginning of the World War. How the Cavalry facilitated the rapid advance of the German armies, the concentrations, marches, reconnaissances, initial manœuvers, MOUNTED and dismounted fights, CHARGES, services of security and information, meeting engagements, the WHOLE story told in chronological order by units and so tied up and related that one can easily follow it through on the excellent maps. Material for this book came principally from EYE-WITNESSES and is therefore doubly valuable. Read what Cavalry DID.

Equitation

By Beudant. Photographs; 361 pages. (Price, $7.50.) The perfectly trained horse, mounted by a perfectly trained rider, is goal of this system of PRACTICAL exercises. After 55 years' horse experience, this pupil of Baucher, an old French campaigner, gives the results of a LIFE'S OBSERVATION of the horse. Careful, DETAILED EXPLANATION and illustration. Scientific.

As to Military Training

Arranged by Major J. F. Wall, U. S. Cavalry. 267 pages. Illustrated. Maps. (Price, $2.50.) Compilation of IMPORTANT parts of manuals. Handy for saddle pocket. "A handy compendium of useful information well adapted to the needs of the mounted service and which any one entering upon a military career may study with great profit."—W. A. Holbrook, Major-General, U. S. A., Chief of Cavalry.

Check the books you wish and give mailing address below:

*Name*_____

Address _____

VOLUME XXXIII JULY, 1924 NUMBER 136

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry, to the Professional Improvement of Its Officers and Men, and to the Advancement of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITED BY

GEORGE A. MOORE

CAPTAIN OF CAVALRY

Copyright, 1924, by
The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, Washington, D. C. Acting Editor, Captain George A. Moore, Cavalry. Managing Editor, Captain George A. Moore, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Washington, D. C., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

$2.50 per year; single copy, 65 cents. Canadian and foreign postage 25 cents additional

MARQUIS' FAMOUS SADDLE EQUIPMENT

(Successor to RAOUL DUVAL, Saumur, France)

By special arrangement with M. Marquis, the U. S. Cavalry Association is prepared to accept orders for and deliver the following articles. Prices will closely approximate these given here; there may be small variations, due to rates of exchange, stamp taxes, transportation, consul's certificates in cases of large orders, etc. The duty of 35 per cent is included in these prices. The Association has been unable to get this equipment entered free of duty, since there is no provision in law for doing so. Due to the narrow margin of capital on which the Association operates, a deposit will be welcome upon ordering, and full payment will be required upon notification that equipment is in the possession of the Association and is ready for shipment to the customer.

FRENCH OFFICER'S FIELD SET

Military Saddle, Leather Panels (does not include girth, stirrups nor straps)	$83.00
Pommel Pouches, pair	18.50
Straps for Package	3.00
Grain Bag	3.00
Side Bag, each	8.75
Saber Carrier	2.75
Stirrup Straps, pair	5.00
French Regulation Military Girth	4.00
French Regulation Military Bridle with Halter	18.50
French Regulation Military Bit	3.00
French Regulation Military Snaffle	1.50
French Regulation Military Stirrups, pair	3.00
Name Plate, brass	.75

SAUMUR TRAINING EQUIPMENT

Saumur Saddle (does not include girth, stirrups nor straps)	60.00
Dee Ring, each	.25
Stirrup Straps, pair	5.50
Leather Girth	12.00
Ring Martingale	5.00
Breastplate	6.50
Standing Martingale for Polo	7.75
Saumur Bridle (does not include bit nor noseband)	11.50
Saumur Noseband	2.25
Snaffle Headpiece	4.50
Plain Rein, each	3.75
Plaited or Twisted Rein, each	5.75
Saumur Bit	3.00
Snaffle	1.25
Chantilly or Verdun Big Snaffle	3.75
Knife-edge Stirrups, pair	5.00
Saumur Whip	5.00
Solid Nickel Spurs	2.00
Spur Straps, set	.50
Head Stable Collar	5.25
Stable Rope	.50
Watering Bridle	5.25
Breaking Cavesson	4.50 to 5.25
Lounge, Rope	2.25 to 2.75
Lounge, Web	5.25
Sam Browne Belt	6.50
Map Case	5.25
Dubbin (grease for saddle), tin	.75
Brecknell's Saddle Soap, can	.50

In ordering give weight, height, kind of build, and manner of wearing stirrups, whether long, short, or medium.

Address: **UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION**

1624 H Street Northwest **Washington, D. C.**

CONTENTS FOR JULY, 1924

VOL. XXXIII, No. 136

Page.

A PLAN FOR A TEST IN THE COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS (PRIZE ESSAY) 261
Captains Royden Williamson and Wayland B. Augur, Cavalry.

LETTER FROM GENERAL JOHN J. PERSHING 266

LETTER FROM MAJOR GENERAL J. G. HARBORD 267

FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION TRAINS AT MANEUVERS 268
Lieutenant-Colonel Milton G. Holliday, Quartermaster Corps.

THE ROCHESTER CAVALRY 272
Second Lieutenant William H. Marks, 101st Cavalry, New York National Guard.

A PLAN FOR A TEST IN THE COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS (PRIZE ESSAY) 280
First Lieutenant Woodbury F. Pride, 9th Cavalry.

THE PRESTON SYSTEM OF IDENTIFYING HORSES AND MULES 285
Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service, Quartermaster Corps.

INDOOR POLO IN FRANCE, 1922-1923 290
Major Harold M. Rayner, Cavalry.

THE SPANISH CAVALRY INSTRUCTION UNIT 292
Major Harold Thompson, Cavalry.

A PLAN FOR A TEST IN THE COMBAT LEADERSHIP OF SMALL CAVALRY UNITS (PRIZE ESSAY) 300
Captain W. G. Simmons, 6th Cavalry.

WHY THE ARMY WAR COLLEGE 302
Lieutenant-Colonel Henry Dickinson, 109th Cavalry, Tennessee National Guard.

THE ITALIAN CAVALRY SCHOOL AT TOR DI QUINTO 308
Major H. D. Chamberlin, Cavalry.

THE WESTCHESTER HORSE AND THE "CUSTER TRAIL" 312
Colonel Charles Francis Bates, U. S. A., Retired.

FEDERAL CONTROL OF THE NATIONAL GUARD 318
Colonel L. C. Scherer (Cavalry), Militia Bureau, War Department.

AN ARTILLERYMAN ON CAVALRY LEADERSHIP 323
Prince Kraft zu Hohenlohe Ingelfingen.

ARMY OLYMPIC TEAM 324
First Lieutenant P. M. Robinett, 3d Cavalry.

HORSES, C. A. AND E. 325
Colonel Henry C. Whitehead, Chief Remount Service, Quartermaster Corps.

DESIRABILITY OF LIGHTER SPURS 327
Colonel W. C. Brown, U. S. A., Retired.

EDITORIAL COMMENT:

OUR FIRST CHIEF—GENERAL MALIN CRAIG—THE AIM OF THE CAVALRY JOURNAL—VIGOROUS POLICY—CAPTAIN ROYDEN WILLIAMSON, 1ST CAVALRY BRIGADE, IN COLLABORATION WITH CAPTAIN WAYLAND B. AUGUR, WINS PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST—A SUCCESS 329

TOPICS OF THE DAY:

ONE HUNDRED PER CENT SUPPORTERS—RESERVE NEW MEMBER CONTEST—TRYOUTS FOR CAVALRY RIFLE AND PISTOL TEAM—REMARKABLE RECORD OF TENTH CAVALRY WAGON TRAIN—THE CAVALRY FUND—CAVALRY R. O. T. C. ENROLLMENT FOR SECOND SEMESTER—COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE—THE SPANISH CAVALRY—SUCCESS IN THE MILITARY SERVICE—CHIEF OF CAVALRY'S RIFLE TEAM—THE ARMY POLO TEAM—TRAINING REGULATIONS FOR CAVALRY—REPORT OF REMOUNT SERVICE—CHANGES OF ADDRESS 332

NEW BOOKS REVIEWED 340

FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS 344

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES 361

REGIMENTAL NOTES 368

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President:

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Chief of Cavalry.

Vice-President:

Brigadier-General STUART HEINTZELMAN, A. C. of S., G-4.

Acting Secretary and Treasurer:

Captain GEORGE A. MOORE, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel WM. J. GLASGOW, Cavalry.
Colonel JAMES H. REEVES (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Colonel HERBERT B. CROSBY, Cavalry.
Colonel LEON B. KROMER (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Colonel WILLIAM P. DRAPER, Cavalry Reserve Corps.
Colonel ARTHUR C. COLAHAN, 103d Cavalry.
Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry.
Major JOHN C. MONTGOMERY (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Major JONATHAN M. WAINWRIGHT, 3d Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

(1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.

(2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.

(3) Honorary.

Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for a least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL; and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for $2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of $2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.



BRIGADIER-GENERAL MALIN CRAIG
Nominated Chief of Cavalry

THE
CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXIII JULY, 1924 No. 136

A Plan for a Test in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units*

BY
Captain ROYDEN WILLIAMSON, 1st Cavalry Brigade
WITH
Captain WAYLAND B. AUGUR, 1st Cavalry, in Collaboration

PRIZE ESSAY

SO MANY and varied are the qualities, intellectual, physical and moral, involved in a consideration of leadership that the term itself is difficult of definition. In its military sense the word becomes even more baffling to define, and no true measure of such qualities in their due proportion, as will predetermine efficiency under combat conditions, can be made in the final analysis short of the actual ordeal by battle.

A test of combat leadership under any conditions short of war can be at best only an approximation. It is obvious, therefore, that the first requirement necessary in such a test is to give a setting which at least will simulate a war situation.

The end and aim of all military training is to fit the individual or the unit for war. "Plans for training," to quote from Cavalry Memorandum No. 1, "should be based on the expected conditions of probable employment, rather than on abstract conditions."

With these obvious principles as fundamental, the following as a scheme for a test of combat leadership of small cavalry units is submitted:

Let there be given a series of team competitions between selected units. These may be either squads, platoons or troops, the latter, for convenience, at peace strength, but in any case chosen after preliminary tests of a similar nature, either squads in platoon, platoons in troop, troops in regiment or from regiments in brigade, as the jury in charge, according to the scope of the competition and the means of holding it, may decide.

The competition to be of two general phases, viz:

a. Mounted phase.
b. Dismounted phase.

*This essay was awarded first prize in the recent prize essay contest.—Editor.

Each of these phases to be in two parts, one a test of the individual capabilities of the leader, the other a test of the degree of training of the unit. Preferably the unit should be that over which the leader is regularly in command.

a. Mounted Phase:

In addition to horsemanship and the care of animals, this phase is designed to test, first, the degree of skill of the leader in—

Mission, comprehension of,
Estimate of the situation, promptness and soundness of,
Orders, promptness, clearness and completeness.
Example, person bearing, etc.
Conduct of his unit tactically, formation, etc.
Liaison and information to higher authority, including accuracy, time, means and relative importance.
Accomplishment of the mission.

Secondly, the degree of training of the unit in—

March discipline,
Mobility and flexibility,
Time and rate of march,
Visibility and use of cover,
Combat proficiency with saber and pistol,
Liaison, messages, including time, accuracy, etc.
Accomplishment of the mission.

The jury, which should be a board of field officers, having determined upon the exercise of the test, whether point of an advance guard, point and advance party, flank guard, rear guard, mission of reconnaissance, etc., selects a suitable terrain and makes a detailed reconnaissance of it in advance. It then arranges the problem upon the various situations which could arise thereon in war, so as to constitute as many incidents for the leader to encounter and his troopers to overcome as the scope of the test will permit. Each of these incidents shall be so arranged as to require on the part of the leader, decision, rapidity, resourcefulness and sound tactical judgment; on the part of his command, discipline, training in horsemanship, skill with cavalry weapons, fire power and ability to maneuver.

According to the nature of the situation determined upon, they provide for targets, saber heads and whatever material may be needed. They also designate and station officers as local scorers at convenient points along the course, who shall mark each competing team according to an approved scoring system. One member or more of the jury may ride with the unit throughout its exercise as general umpire, while the local scorers mark on the execution of their incidents in the action. No competitor shall know in advance what the exercise or problem will be, but it shall be the same for all. Care shall be taken so as to arrange targets, if any are used, that they will be encountered unexpectedly and that their presence in the exercise will not become known in advance to subsequent competitors.

In order easily to determine the time conditions in which a patrol, for example, shall move or the route a messenger shall follow, the jury may require a prescribed route to be taken.

Scoring, Mounted Phase:

I. Leader:	
Personal reconnaissance, including tactical soundness, use of terrain etc.	2
Decision, promptness, tactical soundness	4
Orders, promptness, correctness and completeness	8
Information to higher authority, accuracy, importance, time, means	1
Total	15
II. Unit:	
March discipline, appearance of men, animals and equipment	5
Formations, tactical dispositions, interval and distances, rate of march, etc.	10
Liaison, connecting files, signals, etc., as ordered and executed	5
Use of cover, quietness, etc	5
Total	25
III. Accomplishment of mission	10
Maximum, mounted phase	50

b. Dismounted Phase:

The dismounted phase shall be in the nature of a combat firing problem, as provided for in "Musketry Bulletins, A. E. F., 1919," but, in addition, shall include the conditions of a march approach and the disposition of and security for the led horses. This phase calls for a series of targets so concealed as to be discovered only by proper reconnaissance and requiring a sound tactical deployment and distribution of fire successfully to overcome. Fire direction, fire control and fire discipline all will play a major rôle. This phase thus embraces—

The approach march, formation, use of covers, etc.
Reconnaissance, both personal and by use of scouts.
Estimate of the situation.
Decision, tactical soundness of,
Orders, correctness and completeness of,
Selection and organization of the position,
Disposition of and security for led horses,
Information to higher authority, liaison, etc.
Distribution of fire and number of hits,
Rapidity and quietness, control.

If it is desired to test the ability of the unit to follow a given axis of march in the approach and maintain direction in the attack, it may be assumed that

it is flanked by friendly troops indicated by flags. The selection and organization of the position can be determined by a theoretical enemy fire from a given point which is holding up the advance, the leader then receiving orders to organize on the ground reached and to open on the supposed enemy in position. He is given a time limit in which to do this and is marked, in addition, upon his method and promptness in overcoming it.

Scoring, Dismounted Phase:

I. Leader:	
Personal reconnaissance and estimate of the situation	2
Decision, tactical soundness and rapidity of	4
Orders, correctness and completeness, including disposition of led horses	8
Information to higher authority, liaison, etc	1
Total	15
II. Approach march, formation, use of cover, security for led horses, scouts, quietness, etc	8
Liaison, messengers, accuracy of time	2
Rapidity of maneuver, surprise, quietness, etc	5
Distribution of fire and number of hits, based upon percentage of shots fired, as Combat Firing Regulations	10
Total	25
III. Accomplishment of mission	10
Maximum, dismounted phase	50
Grand total	100

The foregoing scheme of scoring is suggestive only. It is not intended to be arbitrary. The important thing is that the system is flexible, readily adjusted to the nature and scope of the competition and not too complicated.

It is contemplated that these competitions be open, not only to unit commanders of the Regular Army up to and including the rank of captain, but for officers of equal grade of the National Guard and the Organized Reserves as well. In the case of Reserve officers who have no units to lead, the competitions can be modified to include the scoring upon their personal leadership only, either with a unit or as a tactical ride. For National Guard officers the test may be made less rigorous than for those of the regular service.

These tests, however, to be of value to the service, should be held annually, or at least bi-annually. And that they may increase in importance as time goes on, lending greater and greater prestige to those who qualify, it would contribute to this end to give them a name by which they might be known throughout the cavalry service, as, for example, the "Jeb Stuart Leadership Competitions," after that most brilliant of all American cavalry leaders, whom

foreign authorities so constantly hold up as a model of all that a cavalryman should be.

Suitable trophies emblematic of the respective championships should be awarded in all competitions, with a cup for the winner of the highest rating in the cavalry service. Qualifications on a basis of "Excellent," "Very Good," "Good," "Fair" and "Unqualified" should be made with the authorization of appropriate badges to all individuals, similar to those awarded for arms qualifications, who compose the teams winning a place in the first three classes.

That these competitions may embrace and exemplify the approved doctrines for modern cavalry employment, it is believed that the tactical situations as bases for the tests should be prepared either in the Office of the Chief of Cavalry or by the Cavalry School. They should include all the normal modes of cavalry use. From these "approved solutions" the jury may each year select a field problem and prepare its program in accordance with the conditions of local terrain, but always in conformity with Fort Riley teachings and the best traditions of the service.

The judging should be by a board of field officers of experience and unquestioned fairness. For local competitions they might be selected from the regiments or garrisons. For the championships of brigades, divisions and army corps, they should in each instance be the selection of the Commanding General and be assisted by junior officers of judgment, graduates of the Cavalry School.

Whether it would be better for these higher juries to conduct their tests successively, by going from garrison to garrison, or to assemble the winners for a grand championship competition in each corps area is a detail to be determined by expediency and available funds.

Sport is encouraged to a degree through the Army today that renders it needless to point out the object sought in the foregoing project. It is already receiving as a means to the end the highest sanction. The idea of competition as a means to military training certainly is not new. Wellington attributes to it his victory at Waterloo. The Greeks made it the basis of their training.

But has it been used to its utmost? The individual training of the soldier is too often, from his viewpoint, made a humdrum grind. If we can make his instruction more attractive to him by giving him, as a member of a team, a chance to display his progress before his comrades and his superiors through a serious competition for a coveted prize, we shall appeal through a spirit of friendly rivalry to the fundamental instincts latent in every American boy, while rendering his daily instruction in soldiering an amusement, an emulation and a pride.

The value of a unit, however, is not measured by the degree of proficiency of its members. It lies in the perfection of the team. It is no longer the soldier in the ranks who fights and wins in modern war, but the team, the combat group.

The teacher, after all, is the true leader. And he who trains the team that wins needs no further test of his ability to lead it—over the top or elsewhere.

GENERAL OF THE ARMIES
WASHINGTON

June 10, 1924

To the U. S. Cavalry Association:

In reviewing the activities of the Army during the past year, it is a source of great pleasure to me to note the continued devotion to service, pride of Arm, and general efficiency of the men and officers of the Cavalry Service.

The annual maneuvers of the Cavalry Division were very well executed and productive of results beneficial to the entire Arm. The standard of efficiency, morale and appearance of this organization should be a source of pride, not only to the Cavalry, but to the service at large. The continued progress of the Cavalry School lends promise of a bright future for the Arm.

With so few troops in our Regular Army, the old days of troop service are largely gone, and today our chief mission is to train the citizen components of the National Army. A wide field of opportunity has thus been opened to the officers of the Cavalry, and I rely upon their well-proved zeal and enthusiasm to do their part in carrying to a successful conclusion our new military policy.



233 BROADWAY, NEW YORK
ROOM 1856

June 12, 1924.

Captain George A. Moore,
Editor,
The Cavalry Journal,
Washington,
D. C.

Dear Captain Moore:

The discipline, the system, the orderliness, the punctuality, the self-subordination and control, the habit of obedience to the leader, and the team work which comes from military training are surely attributes which are of great use in business life. Add to these, the health and activity that come from service in the Cavalry and that intangible, but nevertheless powerful, influence on man's spirit which we of the Cavalry know comes from association with the horse, and you have an equipment that no reserve officer in business can afford to do without, and which he can obtain in no other way.

Sincerely yours,

(Signed) J. G. HARBORD

First Cavalry Division Trains at Maneuvers September-October, 1923

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel MILTON G. HOLLIDAY, Quartermaster Corps

Commanding First Cavalry Division Trains

THE First Cavalry Division trains got more real experience and good from the maneuvers held by the division at Marfa, Texas, Septetmber 10 to October 22, 1923, than could have been attained in any other way except in actual warfare. It was the duty of the trains to supply the troops from Fort Bliss, on the march from Fort Bliss to Marfa and return, with forage and fuel, and during the period of maneuver in the Marfa zone of operations to establish dumps of forage, fuel, rations, and other supplies for both "White" and "Brown" forces. The division trains were composed of Wagon Company Number 25, Wagon Company Number 26, Pack Trains 1 and 4 of enlisted personnel, and Pack Train 22, from Fort Clark, civilian personnel, and Veterinary and Medical Detachments and Headquarters Detachment. Wagon Company Number 26 and Pack Train 1 were a part of the first column (2nd Cavalry Brigade), while Headquarters and the other units of the trains were with the second column (Division Headquarters, Artillery and Engineers) on the march to Marfa. On the return march this order of march was reversed. During the time at Marfa the trains operated as a neutral force, under the direct orders of the Division Quartermaster, with headquarters at the supply depot at Marfa.

Marches

For brevity, this paper will speak only of marches taken by the major part of the trains—that is, the units with trains headquarters. The stages of the march to Marfa were as follows:

First day: Fort Bliss to Ysleta, a distance of 13 miles; road heavy sand for five miles, with rest of distance paved; time of arrival in camp, 2:00 p. m.

Second day: Ysleta to Fabens; distance, 29 miles; road paved three miles, with rest of distance good dirt road; time of arrival in camp, 4:10 p. m.

Third day: Fabens to Fort Hancock; distance, 26 miles; road paved twelve miles and rest of distance fair road, with some sand and rises; time of arrival in camp, 2:00 p. m.

Fourth day: Fort Hancock to Finlay; distance, 14 miles; dirt road over hills; time of arrival in camp, 11:50 a. m.

Fifth day: Finlay to Sierra Blanca; distance, 23 miles; dirt road over hills, with steep grades and sand-washes; time of arrival in camp, 1:15 p. m.

Sixth day: Sierra Blanca to Hot Wells; distance, 23 miles; dirt road with heavy washes; time of arrival in camp, 4:30 p. m.

Seventh day: Hot Wells to Lobo; distance, 19 miles; dirt road, with grades and flats; time of arrival in camp, 3:00 p. m.

Eighth day: Lobo to Valentine; distance, 28 miles; dirt road, with flats and dry washes; time of arrival in camp, 4:30 p. m.

Ninth day: Valentine to Ryan; distance, 18 miles; dirt road; time of arrival in camp, 12:10 p. m.

Tenth day: Ryan to Marfa; distance, 18 miles; good dirt road; time of arrival in camp, 3:10 p. m.

The stops on the return march to Fort Bliss were practically the same.

During the march to Marfa the weather was warm and the roads were dusty, but on the march back to Fort Bliss it was cold and rainy, and in most places the dust of the roads had turned to deep mud, and new wheel tracks had to be made across the flats. Although much trouble was made by the mud for motors, wagons were little delayed. Wagons were equipped with fifth chains to combat the mud in case they became bogged.

While the trains were camped at Marfa, four important marches were made to take cargoes to dumps. These marches were made at night and in the early mornings, in order to unload and clear the distributing point before maneuver operations for the day would begin between the combatant forces. The most important of these marches was made to Bishops Ranch, 20 miles from Marfa, with a cargo consisting of fuel and forage on 62 escort wagons.

The trains camp was awakened at midnight and was cleared at 1:30 a. m. in good order. The usual halts were made for rest and the distributing point was reached at 6:30 a. m., where the unloading was accomplished in one hour, the cargo being placed in separate piles for each class of material. The return trip was started at once and made with the usual rest halts, with one half hour for water and feeding animals and breakfast for the men. The entire trip of 40 miles was completed in 12 hours and 15 minutes' total time, including halts.

Condition of animals is shown by extracts from reports quoted below:

> "The animals of the command finished the marches to Marfa in excellent shape when the average age of animals in the Division is considered. There was almost a complete absence of sore backs and sore shoulders. The detailed care given to the fitting of collars, leveling of hames, and adjustment of collar safes in wagon companies of the Division Trains was directly reflected in their absence of sore shoulders." (Extract of Division Commander's report on maneuvers of First Cavalry Division, 1923.)
>
> "Animal-drawn transportation was in excellent condition and reflected credit on trains commander, as well as the officers and enlisted personnel under him. Inspection of wagon companies was made within an hour after their arrival at Marfa, on the march from Fort Bliss. All animals were in good condition.
>
> "During maneuvers haul was made by these companies of thirty-four (34) miles loaded one day and return the following day; and haul twenty (20) miles loaded and return light same day, total of forty (40) miles in one day. In each case all animals finished with heads and tails up." (Extract of report on supply and transportation at maneuvers of First Cavalry Division by Lieutenant-Colonel F. M. Burton, Q. M. C., 8th C. A.)

Due to the shortage of enlisted men, the division trains were operated at about one half strength; therefore the personnel worked as hard, if not harder, than would be required during actual war conditions. Notwithstanding this condition, the discipline of the command was excellent.

March Method

On the march and in camp, each wagon company was divided into two sections, each complete and independent of the other. Each section leader was held responsible for the discipline of his section, and the execution of his orders were supervised by the mounted men of his section. The section leader saw that proper distance was kept between sections, and his mounted assistants looked after the distance between wagons, the method of driving, the adjustment of harness, watering, and feeding.

A water wagon drawn by six mules was assigned to each wagon company, and after being filled each morning, before the march began, it took its place as the fifth wagon in the column. At the second halt, the animals being then warm enough to drink, although watered before starting, the water wagon pulled into the center of the road, and the rest of the train, from the eighth to the sixteenth wagon, pulled out to the left of the water wagon, leaving the water wagon in about the center of sixteen wagons. The drivers of these wagons then dismounted with buckets, and each animal was given a bucket of water. Sixteen teams were given water during the ten-minute halt. After the halt the water wagon would take its place in the column as the fifth wagon among those not already watered, until, at successive halts, the whole had been watered. Besides the needed use of the water wagon to water animals on the march, the water wagon was used to supply water for the men and for kitchen use in camp. The water was treated before being given to the men for drinking.

Nose-bags were filled before starting the march, and it was found that at the noon halt all nose-bags could be put on in two minutes, leaving plenty of time for the men to eat the lunch carried in their mess kits and attend to other needs before the march was resumed.

Camps

Although the trains were the last element to reach camp each day on the march, the work was so systematized that all was done and camp made ready before dark.

On reaching camp all cargo wagons to be unloaded at the camp were diverted from the column to the various organizations to be supplied; the rest proceeded to the trains camp. Camp would be made with wagons, less water and two mess supply wagons, in column of sections at a distance of 27 yards. Upon the formation of column of sections, each alternate man dismounted. These men assembled to place a picket line in front of each section, while the other men looked after the animals. The picket lines being in place, animals were unharnessed and tied to the line. By this time cargo wagons sent to





HARNESS AND SADDLE OF SECTION CHIEF. DISPLAY FOR FIELD INSPECTION

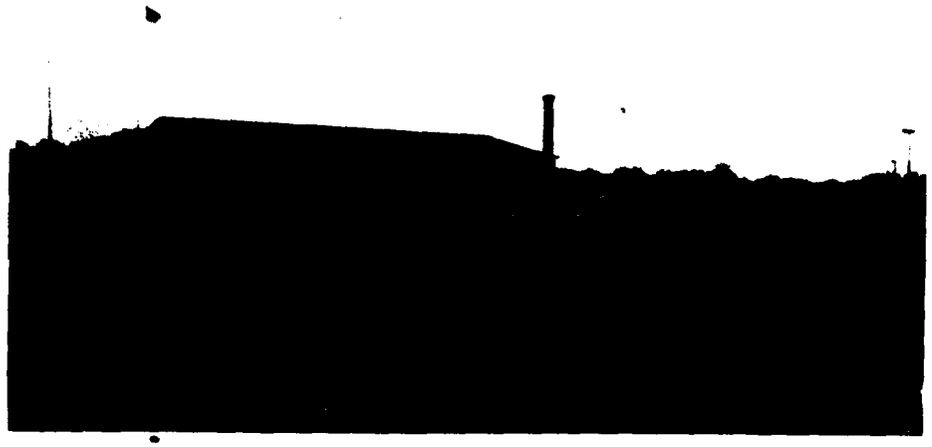


LIEUT.-COL. M. G. HALLIDAY, Q. M. C.
Commanding First Cavalry Division Trains

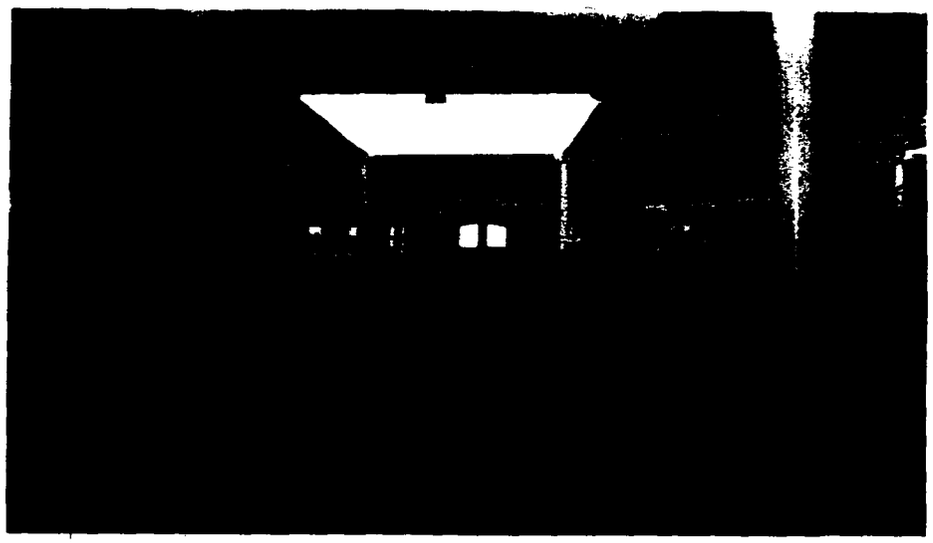


WATERING AT JOHN POOL DAM

Photos by First Photo Section



ROCHESTER CAVALRY ARMORY
(Showing Drill Grounds in Rear)



PARTIAL VIEW OF STABLES OF ROCHESTER CAVALRY

other parts of camp to be unloaded were returning, and as fast as they came in they took their places in their sections, unharnessed and tied to the picket lines. Upon unharnessing, all men were required to place their harness on the wagon tongues in the following manner: Wheel harness on part of pole nearest wagon; then lead harness near the other end of pole; collars hung on the off-side hame, leaving surface exposed to the air, with top of collars buckled, to facilitate inspection.

During the time the unharnessing was being done some of the mounted men, together with the cooks, cared for the cook-wagon and water-wagon animals, unloaded the field range, and set up the kitchen tent flies. Each section of each wagon company had its separate mess. The Pack Train, Headquarters, and Veterinary Detachment messed with one of these.

An hour was now spent in putting hay on the picket lines, grooming animals, and cleaning harness, after which all animals were taken to water, one section at a time. An officer was detailed to see that animals were properly watered. Each wagon company carried canvas water troughs, which were put down at the source of water, generally tank cars at the railroad. Only two camps were made where water was not obtainable in this way.

A number of water kegs holding five gallons each were carried suspended from the rear axle of escort wagons for a reserve water supply, and had the command been away from other water these kegs would have come into use. After animals were watered they were tied back on the picket line and given oats in nose-bags. After that came supper for the men, the cooks having had ample time for work while the animals were being cared for. Hay was again put out for the animals, and a picket line guard established for the night. The above was the daily program of making camp, except when a loading base for supplies was reached, and then all cargo wagons were diverted from the column on arrival and loaded before being brought into camp. On these occasions the picket lines were put up by the mounted men not assisting in the loading, with the help of the drivers of the trains supply wagons. At loading bases other troops drew forage direct from the dumps, which saved the trains from having to load and deliver at the same camp, and although the loading took more time than the discharge of cargo, camp was established in about the same time at loading places as at other times.

In the morning, while on the march, it was the first duty of the men after reveille to feed oats in nose-bags filled the night before. The men then ate before taking the nose-bags off and filled the bags for the noon halt. All animals were again taken to water and then harnessed. Picket lines were taken down by mounted and extra men. The time just before leaving was taken up by the police of camp. The average time taken from reveille to taking up the march was one hour and a half, but this time might have been cut from twenty to thirty minutes, had water been nearer, and with no delays at water points, owing to the presence of other troops.

The wagon company was allowed one field wagon for each section, one wood wagon per section, and the water wagon. The rest of the wagons were

(Continued on page 279)

The Rochester Cavalry

(Headquarters Second Squadron and Troop F, 101st Cavalry, N. Y. N. G.)

BY

Second Lieutenant WILLIAM H. MARKS, 101st Cavalry

IT IS the purpose of this article to enumerate and explain methods which have been used during the past six years to build up a cavalry outfit, financially as well as in other ways. The organizations that are mentioned were selected primarily because they have a more or less successful record as military units and because they have proved that, although facilities play a very important part in the efficiency of a military organization, much can be done without them.

Location

To account for the generous amount of space that is later devoted to the facilities enjoyed by Squadron Headquarters and Troop F, 101st Cavalry, however, it is better to state at the outset that these organizations, which are housed in one armory at Rochester, N. Y., are possessed of an ideal location and excellent appointments. It was thought necessary to explain the military layout because improvements have gone hand in hand with the military development of the units.

Growth

Troop F and Squadron Headquarters have experienced a remarkable rejuvenation during the last six years. They are a growth from old Troop H, 1st New York Cavalry, which was organized in 1912 by the grace of city authorities in setting aside a part of the water works stables to be used as stables for the few horses that were bought by the troopers. There were few troopers, too, and for an armory they had nothing more than what was formerly the New York State Industrial School. Needless to say, facilities were limited.

Then came the war. With a few months' service on the Mexican border as its only field experience, the troop went out in 1917 and was promptly changed into a machine-gun unit. The organization saw service in France, lost a number of its personnel, and was mustered out in 1919. In the meantime several units had been housed in the old home of the troop in Rochester. There were a few horses left, a few middle-aged men, and a handful of young recruits, who had determined that they would at least don a uniform during the course of the war.

Very few of the former members of the troop re-enlisted after serving in the World War; so that the work of rebuilding the troop was taken up by a handful of former troopers, who took an interest in the organization and fell to in earnest to reorganize it. During the war the State appropriated sufficient funds to permit the purchase of a strip of land ideally located for cavalry work and the erection of a shell of an armory.

New Blood

It was at this time that the two men whose efforts have played such a large part in the development of Troop F re-enlisted as privates. Their advancement was rapid, until at the present time Major Kenneth C. Townson is commander of the second squadron of the 101st Cavalry and Captain Stalham S. Baker is directing the training of Troop F. Both officers served with the 310th Cavalry at Fort Ethan Aleen, Vt., during the World War.

Major Townson and Captain Baker had very definite ideas as to how a National Guard cavalry unit should be handled—a fortunate circumstance, as it happened, for not long after they had re-enlisted the officers who were in command were compelled to relinquish their military activities because of business reasons, and Major Townson, then first sergeant, was commissioned first lieutenant and assigned to command the troop. Shortly afterward Captain Baker was commissioned second lieutenant.

Policies

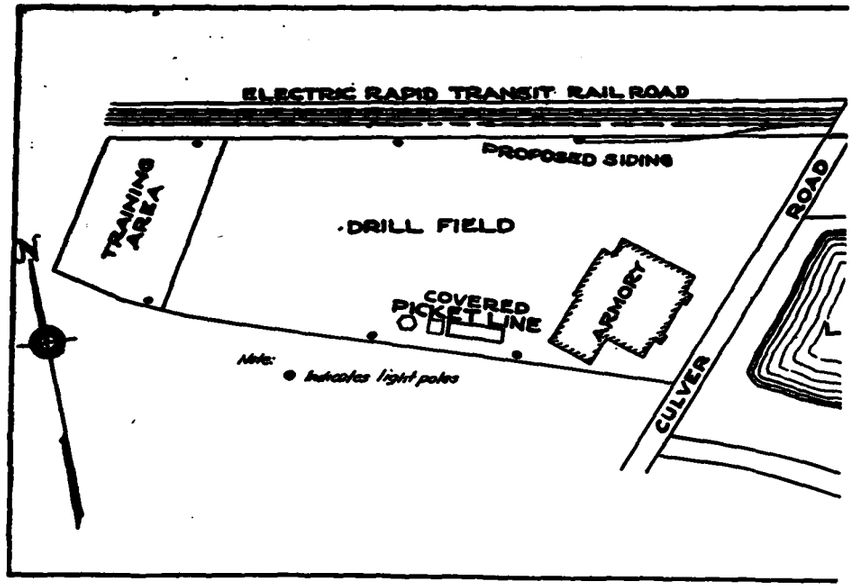
Certain policies have been pursued unswervingly since Major Townson and Captain Baker assumed leadership. Favoritism of any nature was immediately eliminated. It was reasoned that privates who were confident that their efficiency would be rewarded and non-commissioned officers who realized that they could earn a commission when there was a vacancy would make the best soldiers. The results of this policy are best attested by the fact that of the eleven officers assigned to Squadron Headquarters and Troop F at the present time nine were once privates in the troop. The two who were not are the squadron doctor and squadron veterinarian.

There is one exception to the efficiency basis of promotion. When there is little to choose between the abilities of two men, the one who is more popular with the men usually has been selected. This exception has been seldom exercised.

In addition to rewarding ability when it was displayed, it always has been the aim of the officers to encourage initiative and aggressiveness. The ways in which this has been done are too numerous to mention in full, but several are worthy of note. One—perhaps the easiest and most important—is the simple expedient of unexpectedly giving subordinates command of platoons and the troop, a practice that has been followed in the Rochester units for years. Another has been to appoint different troopers each year to chairmanships of standing and special committees to arrange troop sports and activities. Still another method has been to encourage troopers to become especially proficient in some particular line of military duty. Sometimes a trooper's confidence in himself, even if it extends only to the use of one of the weapons of the mounted service, has proved to be the touchstone that was necessary to quicken his whole military character.

Military Organization

It has also been a stern policy of the commanders to impress upon the men that the National Guard is primarily a military organization. By this it is not

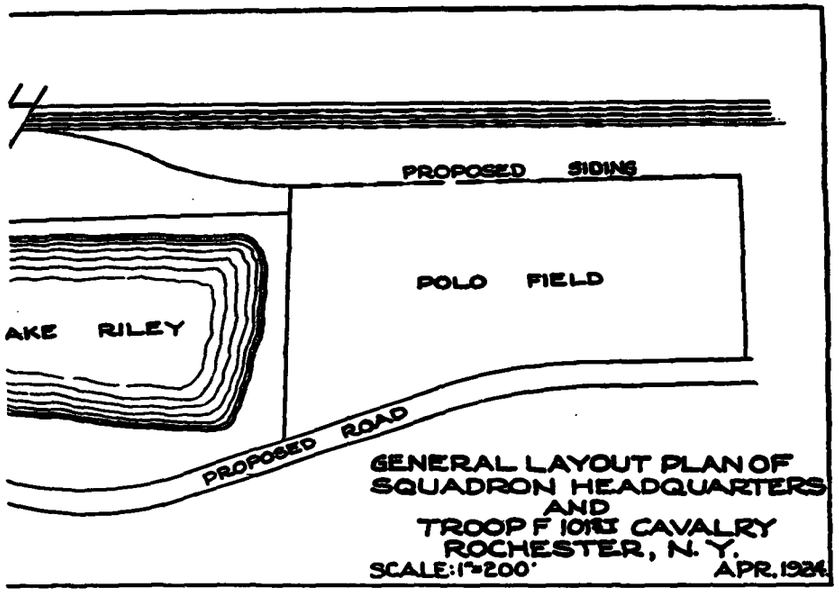


meant that good fellowship has been frowned upon. A large share of the success of the units, on the contrary, has been due to the enthusiasm and morale that has resulted from proper supervision of athletics, social functions, and the like. But the men have been strongly impressed with the distinction between the military and the social. They have come to realize that drill hours are business hours, and to expect corresponding relaxation after the last formation has been dismissed. Relations between the officers and men are friendly, to say the least, and it is a matter of pride with the commissioned personnel that the troopers do not hesitate to come to them about personal difficulties as well as military affairs.

Recruiting

Recruiting, recognized from the first as one of the most important activities of the troop, is accomplished in a simple but effective manner. The recruiting committee, composed of First Sergeant Harry Rosenberg and three troopers, early decided that the most practicable method of gaining new men when needed was to appeal to the troopers themselves. A rule was established that no man would be accepted unless he was proposed and vouched for by a trooper in good standing. A formal waiting list was dispensed with and in its stead a system was adopted whereby a man who wanted to join the troop, but was unable to do so because of the lack of an existing vacancy, was allowed to serve with the troop as a regular trooper until a vacancy occurred.

When a recruit is indorsed he is interviewed by an officer designated for that purpose. This interview is held to explain to the prospective trooper



just what his obligations will be and what will be expected of him. Next follows the formal oath of service, and then the recruit is introduced to the troop at the next meeting of the civil association. The recruit serves in the recruit squad and stays there until he is judged competent to assume the duties of a private. Throughout his early training he finds that the greatest stress is placed on horsemanship, discipline, and morale.

Drill Attendance

Many different ways of impressing troopers with the necessity of attending drill regularly have been tried. The ultimate decision was that morale contained the solution of this problem, it being argued that the troopers would come to drill if they found it interesting. However, despite the generally excellent attendance the units have enjoyed during the last six years, there has been no lack of trouble with the inevitable slackers. Troop punishment, usually consisting of manual labor on nights other than drill nights, has been found effective. Court-martials have been tried in extreme cases, and in a comparatively recent instance transformed a man from utter worthlessness to anything but that. On the whole, however, recourse to military law has not been found advisable. Perhaps the most efficient method of assuring good attendance has been the use of the troop truck and a squad of men under a noncommissioned officer to pick up the stragglers. This "mopping up" party is always courteous, but always insistent. Moreover, it is usually successful in its missions.

Administrative Organization

The administrative organisation of the units is three-fold: There is the civil association, a corporation known as the Rochester Cavalry Troops, Inc., and a Discipline Committee. Each of these branches has its distinct field of jurisdiction and activity; each has its head and co-operating committees and members; each is responsible to one central authority.

Civil Association

The civil association is composed of all members of the troop, who have equal voting power regardless of military rank. It is headed by regularly elected officers and provided with the usual business committees of a civil organization. This association is empowered to transact the routine business of recruiting, entertaining, collecting dues, arranging for exhibitions, and settling accounts with tradespeople with whom debts have been contracted. A recruit automatically becomes a member of the civil association when he joins either the troop or the headquarters detachment. Dues are one dollar a month.

Rochester Cavalry Troops, Inc.

It was necessary to incorporate another body, known as the Rochester Cavalry Troops, Inc., to engage legally in horse renting as a gainful business and to relieve officers and troopers of the responsibility of debts incurred in running the organization. The corporation is incorporated for $5,000 under the laws of the State of New York, and has its own president, treasurer, and directors, all officers of the troop or headquarters. This body has transacted all of the buying, selling, and renting of organization-owned horses. Every member of the troop or headquarters is a stockholder in this corporation.

Discipline Committee

The Discipline Committee, composed of seven enlisted men, whose identity is not known to the officers of either organization, was formed at the request of and by the men themselves. The function of the committee is to observe, consider, and pass judgment on any enlisted man in either the troop or headquarters who is negligent, discourteous, unmilitary, slovenly, or detrimental to the good name and efficiency of the units in any way. The committee may punish offenders in any manly way that is not cruel or dangerous, and in extreme cases may suggest further punishment by the officers under military law. Extreme care has been exercised in the selection and purchase of the eighty mounts now owned by the Rochester cavalry units. Both the troop and headquarters are fully mounted, the former since 1919 and the latter since it was transferred from Buffalo to Rochester, in 1921. The selection, purchase, and sale of the troop horses always have fallen to Captain Baker. The task of buying 150 horses over a period of four years, particularly when it is considered that often it was necessary to range far and wide to secure horses of good cavalry type of bay color and at a reasonable price, was

one which called for no mean business ability and no shallow knowledge of horses. The present horses of the units, except those loaned by the Government, were drawn from the Genesee Valley, Texas, and the Middle West. Very few blooded mounts are owned by the units—a situation that is hoped to be remedied shortly.

Care of Horses

As to the care of the horses, it can be said that their sleek appearance and general soundness are evident to the experienced eye. They are groomed and exercised daily, shod, and groomed with a vacuum machine once a month, and allowed to run free in pasture once a year. In the winter the riding hall is used as a corral, and in the summer the inclosed drill field serves that purpose. The training of the mounts is well supervised by Stable Sergeant Raymon Thrasher, as numerous ribbons won at the Rochester Horse Show, the Avon Horse Show, and other smaller shows testify.

Riding Facilities

The beneficial or detrimental effect of location, terrain, and appointments on the success of any military organization is admittedly extremely important. In this respect the Rochester units are exceptionally fortunate. The armory is situated on the southeastern outskirts of the city, in the finest residential section. Across the road a dirt bridle path leads through a city park to the country beyond. Shady lanes, woods, and fine country roads may be reached almost immediately after one leaves the armory, stretching to the east and south for many miles. Three towns are within two hours' riding, and at each town may be procured dinners worthy of an appetite sharpened by hours in the saddle, served delectably and well. The surrounding country is flat or slightly rolling, except for a few hills, whose sandy sides afford excellent opportunity to train green horses to slide.

Drill Grounds

In the rear of the armory is a seven-acre lighted drill field. The flood-lighting system, installed by the County of Monroe in 1919 at great expense, has proved of inestimable value in permitting outside mounted drilling at night, and is believed to be one of the very few such systems in existence. It consists of powerful electric lights set on concrete poles 45 feet high, which are distributed to the best advantage around the field. The drill field itself is 1,000 feet long and 450 feet wide.

Armory

The armory building is comfortable and commodious. On the ground floor, fronting on Culver road, are the assembly room, locker rooms, mess hall, and shower baths, which, with the stables and engine room on the right and left, form the three sides of the riding hall. Directly across the riding hall from the front entrance, a large door opens onto the drill field. Upstairs are the officers' quarters and offices, from which three doors open to the balcony that

overlooks the riding hall. The balcony was but recently completed. It seats 200 persons.

The stables and saddle rooms are complete in every detail. The stalls are 120 in number, arranged facing each other in eight rows, and separated by iron partitions and wire screens. Each stall is equipped with a stationary feed box and a collapsible hay container. Along the entrance of the stalls run manure alleys two inches deep. Six watering troughs are placed conveniently around the stables, which are well lighted and ventilated. Above the stables are the storage rooms and forage loft.

One saddle room and swo small ones keep one armory employee busy all through the day. The troop saddle room is equipped with two rows of saddle pegs that encircle the room. The saddle pegs are made of cast iron wide enough to permit the saddles to rest on the bars, and each is equipped with enough hooks to accommodate complete saddle equipment. The saddles are cleaned once daily. The two smaller saddle rooms, equipped in a similar manner, are used to house the saddles of Headquarters Detachment and of officers.

Horses

The horses are bought and maintained by the revenue secured by renting them out to civilians by the hour and month. Civilian riding classes are encouraged for the express purpose of teaching patrons how to ride and handle cavalry horses correctly. The monthly contract system was originated principally to lessen the tendency of the horses to become spoiled through the different handling of different riders. The success of this system, which permits a civilian to have the exclusive use of a horse, except when the mount is used for military duty, for twenty dollars a month, is undoubted and is becoming increasingly popular with both armory officers and rental patrons.

Sports

Military and purely recreational sports have been found to be of great benefit to the esprit de corps of both organisations, not only to increase the aggressive spirit so necessary to good cavalrymen, but to sharpen the interest of the men in physical activities of all kinds. Every fortnight mass games are played by the troopers after drill, under supervision of an officer, sometimes mounted and sometimes dismounted, and about once in three months a night is devoted to a regular program of sports and contests, which the friends of the troopers are invited to witness. After the sports, there are dancing and refreshments. Many eligible recruits are attracted in this manner.

Equitation

From the first snowfall until shortly before the annual encampment a special equitation class of twenty men rides weekly under the supervision of the sergeant instructor. Sergeant Walter Vrooman, the instructor, who has been with the troop four years, puts the class through a progressive schedule

that is interesting and hard. His willingness, efficiency, and co-operation during his sojourn with the Rochester troops have been cause for gratification on the part of the commanders.

Polo

Polo has not yet become generally favored by the troopers, although there are about ten men, mostly officers of the troop and headquarters and reserve officers, who play three times a week, in a city park, from spring until fall. The Rochester Polo Club was represented in the southern tournament of the United States Polo Association held in April at Camden, S. C.

The annual banquet and annual dance of the units are held in the spring and fall and are purely social affairs.

Still further contemplated improvements in the facilities at the armory include a new polo field, now under process of construction directly across from the armory, and the location of a subway station and freight siding at the armory. The latter are part of a new subway system now being built by the city. When the sidings are completed it will be possible to load forage, equipment, and horses on trains at the armory.

First Cavalry Division Trains at Maneuvers Sept.-Oct., 1923

(Continued from page 271)

loaded with cargo. The average load of forage was six sacks of oats weighing 160 pounds, each laid flat on the bed, and eighteen bales of hay, well lashed under the bows. Wagon covers were used with this load. A wood load consisted of seven-eighths of a cord. Pack-mules carried two sacks of oats or three bales of hay.

During the period of maneuvers and marches to and from maneuver area the pack-trains were not required to operate in any territory over which wagon and motor transportation could not pass, except in one instance, when targets were carried into the mountains for placement by the engineers. It is the opinion of the author that the necessity for the pack-trains is rapidly disappearing in large cavalry commands, owing to the improvement and increase of roads and the means of transportation. The relatively small amount of cargo carried, as against the large number of animals, with a total cargo capacity of a pack-train, 12,000 pounds, exclusive of their equipment, makes an expensive means of transportation. The number of mules required for a pack-train (64) would furnish teams (4 lines) for 16 wagons having a cargo capacity of 44,240 pounds. Pack-trains are now mainly useful for service with detached units in mountainous country.

Enter the 1924 Colorado Endurance Ride

A Plan for a Test in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units*

BY

First Lieutenant WOODBURY F. PRIDE, 9th Cavalry

I. General Considerations

OBVIOUSLY the work of a corporal commanding a squad of eight men, one unit, cannot be compared with the performance of a captain commanding a troop of 127 men, divided into four units, one of which, the machine rifle platoon, is quite different in organization and employment from the rifle platoons. Likewise, the handling of a squad, platoon, and troop cannot be compared on a common basis.

If it is desired that squads, platoons, and troops compete, it will be necessary to divide the test into three classes: A, B, and C. It will not be necessary to change the conditions of the test.

The tactical principles involved in the third phase apply with equal force to a squad, platoon, or troop.

II. Name of Test

It is recommended that the test be called "The Mosby Test." No other American cavalryman has shown greater ingenuity, initiative, and daring in the actual leading of small units.

III. Eligibility of Competitors

(*a*) If the test contains one class, any captain or lieutenant of cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.

(*b*) If the test be divided into three classes it should be as follows:

Class A—Troops of cavalry. To be commanded by captains or lieutenants.

Class B—Platoons. To be commanded by lieutenants or sergeants.

Class C—Squads. To be commanded by corporals.

(*c*) Either sergeants or lieutenants may command platoons, depending upon which of the two actually acts as platoon leader within the organization of which the platoon is a part.

(*d*) Lieutenants or captains may command troops, depending upon the officer to whom command of the troop is assigned by higher authority.

(*e*) A competitor may not enter or command more than one unit in the test.

(*f*) A unit may be commanded by several different competitors during the test.

(*g*) If the competitor is on duty with an organization of the Regular Army or National Guard, in which he actually exercises command over a unit of

*This essay was awarded the second prize in the recent prize essay contest.—Editor.

appropriate size (see III, *b*, *c*, *d*) in the ordinary performance of his duties, he will enter both himself and his unit.

(*h*) If the competitor be of the Regular Army or National Guard, and otherwise eligible (see III, *a*, *b*), but is on such duty that he does not exercise command in the ordinary performance of his duties, he may enter the test and will be assigned a unit to command in Phase 3.

(*i*) Reserve officers or non-commissioned officers of the Enlisted Men's Reserve will be assigned units to command in Phase 3.

(*k*) First sergeants and other non-commissioned officers above the rank of duty sergeant will be excluded from competition, as there is no command appropriate to their grades.

IV. Place of Holding Test—Judges

(*a*) First there should be regimental tests. The judges to be preferably of field rank, three in number, selected by the regimental commander.

(*b*) The winners of the various regimental tests within any corps area would compete at a time and place to be designated by the Corps Area Commander. The competing units might rendezvous at the place of competition by marching, thus decreasing the expense involved The judges for the Corps Area Test to be cavalry officers selected by the Corps Area Commander.

(*c*) The winners of the Corps Area Tests would be entered in the National Test, to be held under the supervision of the Chief of Cavalry, and at a time and place to be designated by that office.

In the event that funds are not available for transportation of units, competitors eligible for the National Test might be sent to some centrally located point where cavalry is stationed (as Fort Riley, Kansas) and be assigned a unit to command in Phase 3. Units might be transported by marching, at their own expense or by popular subscription.

V. Conditions of the Test

Any horse may be ridden by competitors.

The First Phase

Equipment—Uniform, regulation for season. Competitor armed with saber and pistol.

Horse equipment—Optional.

Course—5 miles long. Competitors to take course individually.

The first two miles will be across country over a route unknown to the competitor, but which shall be plainly marked by flags and contain the following:

Three jumps between 3 feet 6 inches and 3 feet 8 inches in height and a maximum width of 3 feet.

Three ditches between 7 feet and 8 feet wide, with perpendicular sides and at least 3 feet deep.

Two pistol targets (standing silhouette).

Two saber heads.

On completion of the two-mile ride the competitor will leave his horse and saber, but will continue to wear his pistol. He will be handed a map and directed to proceed to some obscure point one mile away. This point will be indicated on the map by a small circle enclosing the point. Competitor may proceed to this point by any route, but entire mile must be covered on foot.

Upon completing one mile on foot, competitor is given another horse and map, and directed to ride two miles to finish. Finish will be indicated on map as above. This two miles should contain no artificial obstacles, but should be laid over the most difficult terrain available.

Scoring:

A. First two miles.

Third refusal or runout at any obstacle .....Elimination

Failure to score three hits on the four targets .....Elimination

(Either two hits with pistol and piercing one head with saber or piercing two heads with saber and scoring one hit with pistol.)

Failure to finish two miles in ten minutes or less .....Elimination

B. Failure to cover one mile on foot in twelve minutes or less from time of completing first two miles .....Elimination

C. Failure to complete last two miles in twelve minutes or less from time of completing one mile on foot .....Elimination

The Second Phase

Who are eligible—All not eliminated in First Phase.

Equipment—Uniform, regulation for season.

Horse equipment—Optional.

Conditions—A night ride of approximately forty miles over a course unknown to the competitor.

The competitors will be assembled on the night of the ride and each will be issued a sealed envelope containing four numbered messages and a Geological Survey map of the vicinity. The maps each have indicated on them four stations, numbered serially. Each of the messages has a corresponding number. The competitor will be required to deliver the numbered messages to the station of corresponding number and in the order 1, 2, 3, 4.

After each competitor has been issued his envelope and the general rules of this Phase explained by the judges, a signal will be given by the starter, from which signal time for this Phase will be taken.

At any time after the starting signal has been given, competitors may open their envelopes, study their maps and go to the stables where their horses are kept, where each will saddle and bridle his own horse and start the ride.

There will be a detail at each of the four stations to check in messages.

Each message delivered will bear the signature of the competitor.

Time for this Phase will close seven hours from the time of the starting signal.

Scoring:

Failure to deliver any message at its proper station and in correct sequence .....Elimination

Failure to finish ride within prescribed time limit .....Elimination

Horses of all competitors, not otherwise eliminated, will be ridden by their riders before the judges 36 hours after close of ride.

Failure of any competitor to show that his horse is in serviceable condition 36 hours after close of ride .....Elimination

The Third Phase

Who are eligible—All not eliminated in First and Second Phases.

Equipment—Full field equipment for officers and men, including rations and forage. No vehicles with troops and only normal amount of pack transportation.

Conditions—A tactical situation will be prepared containing the following points:

(*a*) Competing unit is in enemy territory.

(*b*) Hostile cavalry and air service are active in the vicinity.

(*c*) Mission, to proceed to some point 25 to 35 miles away.

(The important point in assignment of mission is that unit competing must get to the point indicated—it cannot turn back.)

At any time after first five miles have been covered a meeting engagement will be simulated between two cavalry forces of nearly equal size.

At any time thirty minutes after first meeting engagement a second will be simulated, force encountered to be infantry. Infantry to exceed cavalry in ratio of 1½ to 1.

At any time desired after the second meeting engagement it may be assumed unit has reached its objective, and it will be required to go into camp. It will be emphasized that the camp is for one night in enemy territory. Actual camp-site to be selected by competitor, the judges merely indicating the general vicinity or that unit may go into camp any time after passing a certain point.

Scoring:

A. Orders as issued by competitor for initiating march will be scored for technique and tactical principles as follows:

Technique	2 points
Tactics	8 points
Total	10 points

B. For the first five miles the following points will be scored:

March discipline	5 points
Gaits	5 points

Condition of equipment (whether loose, falling off, properly adjusted, attention paid to adjustment at halts) ..... 2 points
Security measures adopted, including reconnaissance ..... 8 points

Total ..... 20 points

C. For the first meeting engagement the following will be scored:
Orders (given promptly, clearly, show aggressive spirit) ..... 10 points
Tactics (illustrate aggressiveness, use of maximum force at important point, keep objective in mind, simplicity, security, use of mobility and shock, attack carried out vigorously and in manner to win, leaders leading their units) ..... 15 points

Total ..... 25 points

D. For the second meeting engagement the following will be scored:
Orders, same as in C, above ..... 10 points
Tactics, same as in C, above, and in addition actions must be such that competitor's unit is enabled to get through or around enemy and continue on its mission ..... 15 points

Total ..... 25 points

E. Camping. The following points will be scored:
Selection of camp-site with reference to water, sanitation, security afforded by terrain against terrestrial and aerial observation and surprise, defensive possibilities of camp-site ..... 5 points
Security measures adopted. Includes security groups posted and orders issued to provide for entire command in case of attack ..... 10 points
Care of men and animals ..... 5 points

NOTE: All through this Phase the following should be borne in mind: Does the leader actually lead? In combat situations, does he inspire by his example? In camp, does he look to the comfort of his men first and his own last?

The Winner—The competitor who makes the highest total score in Phase 3.

VI. PRIZES

(*a*) For winning individual a suitably engraved gold medal or loving cup. If test be divided into three classes, as in III (*b*), medal or cup to show class.

(*b*) Similiar prizes for second and third place.

(*c*) For winning unit. Prize money to be divided among men as follows:

1. Squad—equally among members.
2. Platoon—divided or spent as men desire.
3. Troop—organization to be presented with suitably inscribed shield or banner. Money to troop fund to be spent as men desire. The following are suggestions: radio equipment, player piano, pool tables, or other equipment for recreation room.

The Preston System of Identifying Horses and Mules

BY

Major C. L. SCOTT
Remount Service, Quartermaster Corps

WHAT IS AN ANIMAL?

DOES any one know why the Army persists in referring to horses and mules as "animals"? There are almost countless numbers of animals, such as the cat, the dog, the cow, etc. Even in the Army we have as public animals the horse, the mule, the dog (in Alaska), the cow (in Medical Department), the ox, and the carabao (in Quartermaster's Corps). When we mean a horse or a mule, we should call it properly by its class name. In discussing the old descriptive card and hoof brands, I will refer only to the horse, whereas the general defects in the old system will apply equally to the mule.

PRINCIPLE OF PRESTON SYSTEM

A board of officers appointed by the War Department has made over a year of thorough study and many experiments of the Preston System of identifying horses and mules and has recommended its adoption. As a detailed description of the system will be published if it is adopted by the War Department, it will not be necessary to explain the system in detail herein. Only a general description of it is given.

Under the Preston System, each horse (and mule) is given a serial number or symbol, consisting of a letter and three figures. The serial number is branded on the left side of the neck, in 2-inch letters, close up to the mane. No other horse in the Army has this same brand, and the brand for this particular horse remains permanent and is positive identification throughout its military service. Example of brands: A012, 0A12, 01A2, 012A.

This brand is further supplemented by a horse (and mule) register, which is established by filing the record card of each horse and mule in a property record book. The record card and method of handling is illustrated on next page.

Section 1 of this record card is made out in triplicate at time of purchase; original accompanies the horse wherever he goes; duplicate is filed at purchase point on local register; triplicate sent for file to Office of Quartermaster General, Remount Service, for Army Horse Register. Section 2 is filled out at time horse is issued to service. Section 3 is completed in organization and put on organization horse register.

When an animal dies or is separated from service, final disposition is noted on record card and same is withdrawn from file and mailed to Remount Service, Washington, D. C. (This requirement or report must be made before another horse will be issued to the organization concerned.

HORSE (MULE) RECORD

Symbol: A000.
Class: Riding.

SECTION 1—*General Description and Purchase Record*

Color. Bay.	Sex. Gelding.	Ht. 15	Wt. 1,000	Yr. foaled 1909.	Breed. Half-bred.	Sire. Ashton.	Dam. Unknown.	Purch'd at Kan. City.	Date. 2/8/16.	By C. H. H.	Price. $175.

Remarks: Shipped to Fort Reno 6/4/16.

SECTION 2—*Issue Record*

Issued to 8th Cavalry.	At Fort Bliss.	Date. 5/6/16.	Remarks. Good polo prospect.

SECTION 3—*Service Record*

Received: Date. 5/10/16.	From Reno.	Assigned to Troop F.	Named Frank.	Transfer. Troop H, 8th Cav.	Transfer.

Remarks: Good polo pony.

Final separation from service and reason therefor: 6/10/25—Condemned and destroyed—ring bone left fore.

Upon receipt of the original record card of the horse on final disposition, the Remount Service notes same on triplicate copy, removes this record from the live to the dead file of the Quartermaster General's Office, and takes up the symbol for reassignment. The original record of the horse is then forwarded to the Veterinary Corps for use in obtaining data, keeping records, making studies, etc.

Note that the record card is concise, on one small sheet, and much simpler than the present descriptive card. It reduces the paper work of organizations because it is practically complete upon receipt in an organization. Section 3 only has to be filled out in organizations, and the record card is then filed in a property record book like other Quartermaster property. The horse (or mule) is then identified positively and permanently, the same as the pistol and the rifle now are, even though they are not as valuable as a horse.

The brand and the above record will do away with descriptive cards and hoof brands, thus saving both money and time in keeping both of these methods up, as is now done in each organization.

Operation of Hoof Branding and Descriptive Cards in Time of Peace

That the old system of hoof branding and descriptive cards did not serve as a method of identification, I think I can illustrate by my own experience in handling horses and mules in the Army.

(*a*) Upon first being commissioned, I joined a troop of cavalry and went to the stables to get acquainted with the horses of the troop. A large amount of information about the troop horses was obtained from the first sergeant and stable sergeant. There were some questions that they could not answer, and we sent for the descriptive cards of the troop. To my amazement, they gave us no information of any value. The bay horse with black points and a star, on the descriptive card that we were examining, could have been any one of a dozen horses. A horse whose hoof number was 12 and which was a bay gelding, *age 6,*

was shown on the descriptive card as a *black gelding, age 10.* The stable sergeant then happened to remember that some six months previously the black horse had been traded to the band for the bay horse. The descriptive card had not been traded nor corrected and the horse had only been given the number of the traded horse. A horse in the corral whose hoof number was 28 had no descriptive card in the troop. Investigation disclosed that the blacksmith, in renewing the number upon shoeing, thought that the 28 was a 23 and had so branded the horse.

(*b*) Later I went with my regiment to foreign service in the Philippine Islands. The horses which I received from the troop which I relieved were duly transferred and the number receipted for was correct. Some days later, upon checking the horses with the descriptive cards, we could not plainly distinguish the hoof brands and could make nothing out of the descriptive cards. The personnel of the old troop was not there to tell us. The result was that we discarded all the old descriptive cards and made new ones for all horses in the troop. Upon returning to the United States, two years later, in taking over another troop, the same thing happened.

(*c*) At times I have put what was known as a useless horse before an inspector. His sick record in the troop would be examined and would show only a few days of sickness. The inspector would order him retained in the service. Investigation later would disclose that the horse in question had been in Troop E, had a long sick record, and was useless. He was then palmed off to Troop G and was still useless. In turn, he had found his way to my troop, as useless as ever. Each time he had been transferred he lost his identity and started a new record in the troop which he joined. In the veterinary hospital he had been recorded as #9E, and then as #50G, and then later as #20F. That he was the same horse, there was no means of determining unless the veterinarian should happen to recognize him, and in the service the veterinarian changes as often as the horse.

(*d*) On many occasions I have gone to the stable and admired, we will say, a fine-looking old bay horse 20 years of age, who was gray and grizzled around the muzzle and eyes and who was still the best horse for field service in the troop. I have wished that he could talk and tell me where he was raised, how he was bred, and the service that he had seen. His descriptive card would show him a bay horse seven years old! The date of purchase would be unknown, his breeding would be unknown, everything would be unknown except his age, which would be known incorrectly!

This brings me to a point brought out among civilians. You ask them how old a horse is. They will say, "He was foaled in such and such a year." In the Army a horse's age is recorded, say, as seven on the descriptive card, under the heading "Age," and it stays that way if he lives 20 years. He starts seven and winds up at seven.

In substance, if we will frankly admit it, all of us who have been interested in our horses know that the descriptive card is valueless and a tiresome lot of paper work; that the hoof brand requires much time and labor; that the

branding iron is expensive, and that the conditions I note above were and are general throughout the service. The only real records of our horses that we have are carried in the heads of the persons who know them.

Descriptive Cards and Hoof Brands a Failure in War

The World War came upon us in 1917. Practically all Regular Army officers who were on duty with divisions had to devote their time and attention to thousands of details—the training instructions, feeding, clothing, and handling of men, etc. No wonder they lost track of and could not keep up the horse and mule records. Few of those whom I saw thought of or had time to properly supervise the animals, let alone the records. Being in the Remount Service, my job was to study and furnish horses and mules and nothing else. From March, 1918, to June, 1920, I had opportunity to see our 30 camps and 30 Remount depots connected therewith and some 250,000 horses and mules. The following are some facts that I noted and recorded:

(*a*) At one camp, where I commanded a Remount Depot, the following is a typical illustration of hoof brands: A company would draw out a horse and brand him 28 on left fore foot and 1-D-62 on the right fore foot. This horse would get injured and have to be turned in to the Remount Depot for replacement. He would shortly recover, and then be issued again and get the brand 60 left fore, I. H. W. H. right fore. The organization would then leave camp, and the animal would go to another organization, and would be branded 80 left fore and A-B-17 right fore. After the second branding you could not identify him with the jumbled figures on his feet, and about the third branding the horse would need a year to grow new hoofs in front.

(*b*) As to identification in a depot which I commanded, a check of the horses and mules in the depot showed 102 *ahead*. A check in the division showed some organizations 20 horses and mules *ahead*. A check in the remainder of the organizations showed some 120 horses and mules *behind*. Surveys had cleared some officers, and others who were behind were waiting for a stray horse or mule to wander into their camp and thus make up their shortage. Some organizations one day would go ahead and the next day behind. Hoof numbers were generally illegible or so confused as to be of no value. Many of the horses' feet looked like Chinese puzzles. The whole horse-and-mule-question was jumbled up and organization commanders had neither the time nor the proper system to keep it straight.

Later I checked, or had check made, in 29 other camps and found the same condition existing to a more or less degree. I finally formed the conclusion that the descriptive cards and hoof brands were worse than useless. An organization could by hook or crook come into possession of a horse or mule, make out a descriptive card for him, hoof-brand him, and then have what was considered a positive proof of lawful possession. No positive record of issue was on file anywhere, as could be done by number (A012) under the Preston System.

Branding Animal the Only Solution

Many will at once say that the work on the descriptive cards and with the hoof brands was not properly done. I admit this; yet I still claim that even when more than average attention was devoted to both the descriptive cards and the hoof brands they were not satisfactory. This was discovered at the Cavalry School, where we unquestionably have officers interested in horses and above the average in horse intelligence. Even at this school, with only 500 or 600 horses, it was not possible to keep them straightened out without the brand. Again, if you look into the question of handling horses and mules in large lots, you will find that the civilian who has devoted his life to the study of them, and whose personnel rarely shifts, has had to resort to one method of identification, and that is the *brand*. Branding is recognized as efficient as identification, on the ranch as well as in the high-class breeding establishments. The brand can be applied neatly and plainly without disfiguring the horse, as is demonstrated by civilian breeders of percheron and thoroughbred horses, and as had also been demonstrated at the Cavalry School and by the board in its experiments.

Conclusions

I submit herewith the conclusions arrived at by the Branding Board after over a year of study and experimentation and upon which the recommendations of adopting the Preston Branding System was made. I voice the desires of the board when I ask the service in general to give this new system of identication of horses and mules a reasonable amount of study and a fair trial. Do not condemn it offhand as a crazy innovation:

1. The board, after thorough study of the present system of identification of public animals, has reached the following conclusions:

(*a*) That the present system of identification is not efficient, either in time of peace or in time of war.

(*b*) That the branding of animals on the hoof is undesirable and injurious, particularly in time of war, when numerous shifts of animals between organizations must be made.

(*c*) That the present descriptive cards of animals give little aid in identification, are not accurate and reliable data, and entail an extensive amount of paper work.

(*d*) That a great saving can eventually be made to the government by eliminating all hoof-branding irons and descriptive cards that are now furnished to all organizations handling animals. If the Preston brand is carefully and properly applied at the time of purchase, it will need only occasional freshening up or renewal.

(*e*) That the present system of identification of animals is so unreliable as to afford little or no assistance to the Remount Service or the Veterinary Corps in the collection of valuable data in regard to animals of all classes.

2. The board, based upon the study of branding in all its phases and upon the different experiments conducted by the board for over a year, believes that the Preston System of Branding, with the brand properly and carefully applied, will accomplish the following purposes:

(Continued on page 311)

Indoor Polo in France, 1922-1923

BY

Major HAROLD M. RAYNER, Cavalry

SHORTLY after our arrival at the French Cavalry School at Saumur, France, for the 1922-1923 course, Majors Chamberlin, West, and I were invited to play polo with the school teams, and after a few days were each assigned one green and two trained ponies. Outdoor polo was played about twice a week until the rainy season, in December, forced us indoors.

One of the large riding halls was selected, and on polo days the surface was dampened and dragged, thus giving a fair playing surface. Our schedule permitted our playing about twice a week, and this play and constant stick work on the wooden horse improved our play and hitting.

It is of interest to note here that the installation of the wooden horse and the improvement of the play of the school team were due to Major J. K. Brown, Cavalry, U. S. A., during his course as a student in 1921-1922.

As an invitation had been received from the French Horse Show Society for our participation in the military tournament at Bordeaux in February, our definite line-up was decided on as follows: Major Rayner at No. 1, Major West at No. 2, Major Chamberlin at No. 3. This line-up was maintained throughout the entire year, after having been well tested in matches at the school.

At Bordeaux the play was "Indoor Polo," played out-of-doors on the Horse Show Grounds. A large playing surface was fenced off and a netting hung to a height of about ten feet, to keep the ball in play.

We participated, as a team, in only two matches, and individually on French teams, in three for instruction purposes. Our first match, against the 1st Hussards, was won by the score of 10 to 1, in a two-period game, but our second match, with the 2d Dragoons, was lost by the score of 7-6, as we allowed our adversaries 6 goals handicap in a two-period game.

From February to April we played as much as possible at Saumur, training our ponies, improving our team and stick-work, for we had been invited to enter an international match at the Grand Palais in Paris during our Easter vacation. In this match there were also entered an English 13-goal team, which had been playing all spring at Cannes, and a French civilian team from the Bagatelle Club, supposedly the best French indoor team.

After a conference between representatives of the three teams, it was decided to play matches of four periods of seven minutes each. At Major West's suggestion, no handicaps were to be allowed. A preliminary round robin of two-period matches was played to accustom players and horses to the inclosure and crowds. In this preliminary round we won from both the other teams, making the surprisingly large number of nine goals in one period against the English, who, up to that time, had been looked upon as easy winners.

In the finals we again defeated the English team by the score of 11-7, in a very hard match. It was slightly better team-work against a more or less

individual play built around the English No. 3, Major Magor, a 6-goal man, who was dangerous at all times.

Our last match was with the French team, which we won by the score of 12-5, winning possession for one year of the Cachard Trophy*—a sculpture in bronze by Herbert Hazeltine—practically the French Indoor Polo championship trophy. This trophy must be won three times by a team to become its permanent possession.

The English team, by defeating the French team, won second place.

The next large tournament to which we were invited was that held at Vichy, from June 29-July 3. Several French regiments had entered teams and a Belgian cavalry team was also invited. Upon our arrival at Vichy we were informed, however, that we were to play only in exhibition games and not for the cup.

Our first match, against the 1st Hussards, was a three-period game, which was won by the score of 11–6½, allowing our adversaries 5 goals handicap. Our second match, against the 10th Dragoons, was also a three-period game, which we won by the score of 9½–6, allowing our adversaries 6 goals handicap. Our last match was won from this same team in a two-period game by the score of 6–4, allowing our adversaries 4 goals handicap.

The play for the cup resulted in a tie between the 1st Hussards and the Belgian team. This ended our season of indoor polo, which resulted in nine victories and one defeat—a record of which we felt proud, as we had always used, except at Paris, horses furnished by our adversaries.

Our impressions of the French play was that it was too slow and largely individual. Their ponies were well bred, hardy, and well suited to the indoor game, but full advantage was not taken of their speed, nor had sufficient attention been given to team play. But these defects are being overcome, since French writers have repeatedly drawn attention to the necessity of playing at top speed and as a team.

This game is widely encouraged in France, especially in the cavalry, as suitable terrain or riding halls are almost always available, and the results obtained from the fast riding and the quick thinking demanded by such a game are well known. Nearly all the regiments play it to learn the rudiments of polo, to train their ponies, and to try to qualify for the finals held at Paris each year.

The French Horse Show Society encourages it in every way by holding tournaments and giving trophies, because they realize that widespread polo creates a demand for better mounts, which is one of their aims. The public at large enjoys the game, as it can easily follow the play and see the ball.

The goal at which the French are aiming may be of interest to our polo players at home. It is, briefly, to arrive at the point where they can challenge the Americans and the English in outdoor and indoor matches; and it is towards this goal that the polo authorities are striving and making satisfactory progress.

*Photograph of this Bronze appeared in April, 1923, *Cavalry Journal*.

* The French Civilian Team won this trophy in April, 1924, in Paris.

The Spanish Cavalry Instruction Unit

BY

Major HAROLD THOMPSON, Cavalry

ON BEING ordered to Spain last May to continue certain studies begun in the preceding summer at the University of Madrid (completed in addition to the following), the Chief of Cavalry's Office cordially supported the desire of the writer to be attached to a Spanish cavalry regiment. Through the requests of our military attaché, Major C. B. Hodges, U. S. A., and of interested Spanish General Staff officers, King Alfonso graciously permitted my assignment, and designated as the unit the Cavalry Instruction Group, King's Hussars, at Carabanchel.

On being gazetted, the unit orders stated that the American officer would be considered as an additional field officer of Hussars and of the unit, and, as thus recognised, I was permitted to perform the usual duties, garrison and field, and to serve as a member of various boards and on the unit tribunal, etc.—in all—a greatly appreciated opportunity to associate and serve with officers of the Royal Spanish Cavalry.

The Cavalry Instruction Unit at Carabanchel barracks was established by royal order of January 15, 1921, for purposes similar to the corresponding named infantry unit. These are, briefly, the formation of a separate tactical and administrative unit of the cavalry arm for experimenting and testing cavalry arms and equipment, carrying out tentative mounted exercises and proposed closed- and open-order formations prior to adoption; to demonstrate fire problems in collaboration with the Cavalry School of Fire (situated near by), and, in conjunction with the Infantry Instruction Unit and the Artillery School of Fire, to work out tactical problems and exercises for the High Command and the student field officers at the War College.

Despite the brief time since being organized, the unit has been steadily developing the objects mentioned, except for a short period while in the Melilla region, Morocco, August to November, 1921. In this period of the reconquest, as it is called, after the incidents of annual, the unit joined the advance cavalry of the punitive column of General Ruiz Trillo, and besides performing advance guard, reconnaissance, patrol, and convoy duties, it participated in the actions at Kandusi, Sbu-Sba, Arak Mesa, Dar Drius, and the important operation against Azib-el-Midar. In October the unit executed numerous demonstrations in field exercises and fire problems for group of staff officers and commissions from other arms. Its work completed here, it returned the 1st of November to take up anew and develop the phases outlined.

The decision to locate the unit of Carabanchel was due to the desire to have the different combat arms together, to take advantage of the varied terrain, the nearness of the rail-head and sources of supplies, and to certain climatic advantages.

The Carabanchel military reservation is three miles west of Madrid, on the Madrid-Portugal Highway, and is connected to the capital by the Madrid-

Villa Prado Railroad. The reservation proper contains some 6,000 acres of rolling ground, traversed by several small streams and arroyos. The northern part is hilly and wooded. Bunch and prairie grass cover in large parts a fairly light, porous soil. The drainage is excellent. Besides the reservation proper, crown lands, parts of which are available for maneuvers, adjoin the reservation to the north, and by lease good terrain for exercises and practices have been acquired to the west and south, on which is the aviation camp of Cuatro Vientos. In all, the territory available for the troops is nearly as large as the Fort Riley Reservation. Among the climatic advantages may be mentioned the very clear atmosphere, due to the high altitude of the central plateau; practically open winters, thus permitting all-year-round work; good drainage, which easily absorbs the spring rains, and absence from the extreme heat experienced in the capital during July and August.

The troops stationed here are the Artillery, Cavalry and Infantry Schools of Fire (school troops), a regiment of sappers, the Infantry Instruction Unit (a battalion), and the unit in question, the Cavalry Instruction Group.

The reservation has been used by troops for several centuries. All arms of the garrison troops of Madrid make use of the target ranges in that season; otherwise the unit groups and schools have a free run of the reservation. For administrative purposes, the units are considered to be a part of the Madrid province and under its Captain General, and also under the military governor of the capital. Commanding officers of the units referred to, under the supervision of the senior, arrange their respective training programs jointly, so as to avoid interference and overlapping.

In the formation of the Cavalry Instruction Group (or unit) it was determined to organize the group as a demi-regiment, which, in the Spanish cavalry is both a tactical and an administrative unit, viz., a lance squadron, a saber squadron, and a machine-gun squadron (with communication and demolition elements). By law regiments in the Peninsula are composed of four lance or saber squadrons, one machine-gun squadron, and one depot squadron.

As a matter of fact, the organization of the squadrons differs slightly from that of the regular line squadrons. This difference, which includes reserve mechanics, ammunition men, etc., is one of the details, in keeping with the organization changes, of the functions of the unit.

The King is colonel of the group, but actual command is exercised by the lieutenant-colonel, Sanz Balza.

One major, the administrative field officer (*comandante mayor*), is responsible for all administrative work and the interior regimen of the squadrons. He also has, with his assistants (captains) duties of the personnel adjutant and some of the adjutant's functions. The other major, or tactical field officer (Jefe de Armas), commands the three squadrons, is responsible for all training plans, drills, tactical exercises, stable management, and equipment. Both field officers, under the lieutenant-colonel, are given a wide range of responsibility. In a regular line regiment the two remaining majors would each com-

mand a demi-regiment, their duties being largely tactical. In this unit the duties of the two field officers never appeared to overlap.

Referring to the other officers, the senior captain is the group adjutant, functions directly under the commanding officer, and is the liaison agent between the majors and the lieutenant-colonel. One captain is assistant to the administrative field officer and is quartermaster; another captain, also this major's assistant, acts as disbursing officer.

The captain quartermaster is property officer for all unit field property and reserve equipment. He is assisted by a warrant officer and a property corporal in the issues and in the care of stock records. In general, worn or damaged equipment is turned in for new, the former being sold or destroyed, as the inspector orders.

The other captains command the 1st and 2d lance and saber squadrons and the machine-gun squadron. One surgeon (captain) and two veterinarians (captain and lieutenant) and a chaplain are permanently assigned the unit. Ten lieutenants serve with the troops.

Two civilians, master armorer and the saddler, are also assigned. These men, graduates of the army technical schools for their crafts, have assimilated rank of warrant officer. They receive scale rates of pay according to their rating (1st, 2d, or 3d class) and length of service and are subject to military regulations and processes.

The non-commissioned officer staff is limited: one warrant officer, assistant to the adjutant; one warrant officer, assistant to the quartermaster; one sergeant, clerk for the tactical field officer, and one property corporal, for captain quartermaster. In addition, clerks, not exceeding four, are detailed from the squadrons for duties under the administrative field officer. The medical department details one private for each squadron. The warrant officers and the sergeant are mounted and armed with pistol and saber; the property corporal is with the train and is armed with the pistol. The other detailed men, aside from the hospital corps men, are counted in the respective squadrons.

In squadron headquarters groups, all carry the carbine except the warrant officer; the latter, 1st-class private, and four 2d-class privates carry the saber, and the private, 1st class, carry the lance. The duties of this soldier and the four privates are those of messengers, liaison agents, etc.

As mentioned later, there is a distinction between horseshoers and blacksmiths. The former prepare the foot, do the fitting and actual shoeing (in addition, they are, as farriers, the veterinarians' assistants), whereas the blacksmiths do the forge-work only. Men are detailed as assistants to these two. Horseshoers stand regular drills and exercises.

Officers' personal orderlies (*asistentes*) are detailed permanently, one for each officer. They are required to successfully complete their recruit instruction and attend a stated minimum of drills thereafter. They contribute greatly to the efficiency of the individual officer. Regulations govern their rations, messing, etc.

Two teamsters are with the ration wagon and two with baggage and ammunition wagon; the remaining teamster and the cook are with the rolling

kitchen. The 1st squadron (Hussars) carried two orderlies (for squadron headquarters group) as permanent barrack orderlies and three cyclists (carbine); the former are dismounted and carry the carbine, but it is understood that the addition of these men to existing tables of organizations is not certain. It is proposed, on the other hand, to add two pack-horses for reserve ammunition, upon taking the field.

In the machine-gun squadron it will be noted that this unit consists of two machine-gun sections (platoons), one communication section and one demolition section. The unit is complete in itself, despite the varied elements, and, with its adjacent lance squadrons, all constitutes the demi-regiment. In a line regiment the other two lance squadrons, together with the depot squadron, form the remaining demi-regiment.

Arms

The Lance.—The weapon at present used by the unit and tentatively adopted by it in place of the regular issue one is the Argentine lance. The shaft, of a tough, whippy bamboo, is nine feet long, with a flat, spear-shaped head, 8 inches long, and a heavy, steel-shod butt-piece, ogival shape. There is a grip and a leather arm-thong about the middle. All the officers strongly favor this lance as against the issue type, which is a German model, with a browned steel shaft (hollow) and fluted throughout its length. The head is rigid, a drawn-out part of the shaft. The disadvantage of the former is a question of cost of making, as this kind of wood grows only in South America.

It is interesting to note that Spanish cavalry officers here are divided as to the merits of the saber and the lance. From observation of these two squadrons, employing both lance and saber, the men appeared to be more skilled in the use of the lance. Several troopers told the writer that they felt more confidence in their ability to handle the lance.

Saber.—This differs slightly from our issue saber, being about two inches longer. The sides are fluted, with one cutting edge, and the straight point. The guard and scabbard are of polished steel. The balance is excellent. Weight with scabbard, about six pounds.

Although the manual prescribes both cutting and thrusting exercises, the edge is preferred. The officers appeared to handle the saber very well, due to their predilection for the weapon and to their enthusiasm for the foils.

Pistol.—The new model pistol, Campo-Giro (Spanish ordnance manufacture), has just been issued to the machine-gun squadron and will be adopted by the arm. This weapon, caliber 9 millimeters, model 1916, is very similar to the Browning. It carries 9 cartridges, and is issued with one extra clip magazine. Captain Corrales praises it highly as to accuracy, ease of manipulation, and power of penetration. Record pistol practice was over when the writer joined.

This weapon is considered more from the point of view as a defensive one, and accordingly only certain classes are armed with it.

Carbine.—The cavalry carbine (*mosqueton*) Mauser, caliber 7 millimeters, model 1916, has replaced the 1893 model. It is four inches longer than the

old model and possesses certain mechanical advantages over the former. At the known distances observed, up to 800 meters, it functions splendidly. The weapon is slung from a bucket on the off-side of the cantle, although in general practice it is carried across the left shoulder. The sling is not used as a means of support in firing.

Saddlery and Other Equipment

The new military saddle combines details of both the English and Italian field saddles and also embodies certain ideas of Major Sanchez-Mesas. Bearing surfaces are covered with a heavy felt, no blanket or rug being used, although a small number are carried in each squadron for emergencies. The knee-rolls are pronounced. The wide and high arch of the pommel permits plenty of space over the withers. Saddle-cloths, when worn for dress occasions, are of canvas, with Hussar facings, light blue. The breast-strap is universallly employed. Officers use the same saddle with numnah.

The saber belt is of plain tan leather, with steel buckle, one saber sling and hook; the bandoleer, of like material and with steel buckle, carries one leather cartridge pouch suspended by a loop. The original container is placed in the pouch, 50 rounds. The reserve ammunition is carried in pouch attached to the cantle.

On the pommel are the pockets, of conventional model. The cantle bags are very like our own, except in one particular, in that the grain sack is secured to the interior of the bags (running transversely the greater length); the mouth ends are withdrawn from the cover flap for filling (sack is divided into two parts by a cloth wall); coir hay-nets are secured to the pommel rings. In the cantle pockets are carried the fatigue cap, alpargatas, and work clothes, the pommel pockets holding two undershirts and two pairs of drawers, two handkerchiefs, two gloves, towels, soap, and grooming kit.

While mentioning this latter, one can't help commenting on the curry-comb. It is of the usual form, steel back and teeth and leather back grip. In addition it has at each end a half inch of metal rod projecting at right angles to its plane, so that in knocking the comb against the heel or stall side the teeth are not bent together. It serves the purpose admirably.

The cape-cover is of a light, close-woven canvas, olive drab, square-shaped, opening like the clothing roll. The cape is rolled in this and secured over the cantle pockets to the cantle. Spurs are of steel, like our issue. The haversack, of leather with canvas lining, for carrying bread, is suspended over right shoulder and swings from left side; it is worn during all mounted drills.

The cincha is of leather, with a hemp strip in center and a canvas back, three toggles and buckle arrangement. Stirrups are steel, open, with plain tread. Lancers have a leather boot six inches long, strapped to the arch of the off stirrup.

The bit and bridoon bridle is like the Saumer type, there being five classes of curbs of varying severity. The halter tie-rope, of heavy woven cord, is made up by taking nine turns about one of the bight, and then secured under the

maxillary space to the throat latch. This latter, by the way, is worn very taut. Reins are plaited for about nine inches from beyond the buckler rings, and, as mentioned, the breast strap is worn.

The saber carrier consists of a semi-oval-shaped case of heavy leather, at the upper part of which is a hair pad of wash leather. Two fitted shoes, with nails, are carried within, a cover flap and strap securing all. An aperture exists between pad and case, through which is passed the saber. Two straps from the pad secure the carrier to the near cantle rings. The saber rides very easily, there being little lateral movement at the extended gaits.

To the off side of the cantle is secured the canteen, or wine bottle. This is of pear-shaped metal, leather-covered, and has a stopper plug and chain.

Stable Management

A stable corporal in each squadron is in charge of stables and all pertaining to feeding and general management.

As all troops are present for each feeding period, he attends and supervises the issue of hay and grain. The officer of the guard attends reveille and evening feeding, one officer from each squadron the others.

The feeding schedule during the summer period here is:

1st feed period, 6:15 a. m.—1.2 kilos oats and chaff.

2d feed period, 11:15 a. m.—1 kilo oats and chaff and 2½ kilos green alfalfa.

3d feed period, 5:30 p. m.—2 kilos oats and chaff.

4th feed period, 9:00 p. m.—2 kilos oat straw.

Water call at reveille, after morning grooming, and before 5:30 feeding.

The general principle in feeding is that of fairly small quantities, in frequent periods, as far as is practicable. In the remount stations at Mingahove, Posadas, and Córdova, it was noted that the number of periods was 3 in excess of the foregoing.

In making the issues the stable corporal and his assistants employ a wooden measure with marked lines within, which indicate the weights of oats and chaff. The bottom is of a coarsely woven wire, thus permitting dust to escape. Other regiments employ blowers for this purpose. Individual troopers are issued woven fibre baskets (so pliable that they can be rolled) in which they receive the grain allowance for their animals.

Actual allowances at this time are 5 pounds of oat or wheat straw, 5 pounds of green alfalfa, and 12 pounds of oats, with a 4-to-5-pound allowance of wheat straw for bedding. Oats are always mixed with chaff.

Baled hay is hardly ever seen, although units have fed it in Africa. On the other hand, oat straw and sometimes wheat is immediately fed as hay, chopped or cut prior to issue. This is not supposed to be fed unless it has had two months to mature, after harvesting; green corn, chopped, is likewise used, as well as alfalfa, the oat-straw component being proportionately reduced.

Oats are widely grown in Spain, yet of those seen here and in the south one would hesitate to call them prime quality. In general heads are long and

thin, fairly hard, with a heavy husk and long beards, the color varying from almost white to dark brown and the taste being quite oatmeal-like. One would say that they would run about 30 to 35 pounds the bushel.

All units employ cutting and crushing machines. Corn is not fed, as a rule, but many kinds of beans, always crushed, of course. The feeding of steamed oats is more common than with us. Salt is not issued as a part of the ration, the squadrons purchasing small amounts through the mess fund for the purpose. Animals requiring special feeding are segregated and fed by the stable corporal.

Grooming compares most favorably with that seen elsewhere. All troops attend this duty, sergeants alone being exempt, and in turn supervise that of their respective sections (platoons).

At the reveille feedings, animals are brushed off, heads and feet cleaned, and tails brushed out. On the completion of mounted work, saddle equipment is wiped off; then grooming follows, supervised by one or more officers and the section sergeants.

As grooming is considered a police duty, men are not held strictly to a uniformity in dress and may smoke during work, although little conversation is permitted. The cavalryman works deliberately, but does his work remarkably well. As a digression, it may be said that the troopers show a real affection for their mounts. A cement footbath for the unit is used in washing off the hoofs; these are oiled for gala turn-outs. One is tempted to add that the grooming cloth is used legitimately and as prescribed.

The tactical field officer inspects daily at the completion of grooming. All squadron officers attend, and when the inspection of one squadron is over, all accompany the major to the next squadron. The veterinarian accompanies him, as this inspection is prior to animal sick-call. These inspections may take place with the animals paraded, in the stalls or in line in the main runway. The commanding officer averages four or five inspections weekly.

After grooming and until night feeding, two stable men are constantly on duty policing the standings. All soiled bedding and manure is carried away daily by local farmers, a noticeable result of this being the small number of flies.

Animal sick-call, previously mentioned, follows watering (after grooming). Previously, the veterinarian has accompanied the *Jefe de Armas* at the stable inspection and noted any animals for treatment, in addition to those reported by the farrier (horseshoer). Animals are then brought to the hospital, light cases, as a rule being disposed of first. Several cases of glanders developed on the return from Morocco, consequently mallein tests and visual examinations were in order. The post mortem of several suspects destroyed showed the characteristic ulcers in the nasal membrane, all being chronic cases. One thoroughbred mare, an open-market purchase, had wasted considerably; the membrane in this case presented numerous old scars of the disease. All standings, feed troughs, and stalls were disinfected, equipment in contact with these animals destroyed, and near-by animals isolated. No further outbreaks took place, however.

The procurement of good type cavalry mounts has been somewhat of a problem in the past few years, not only due to the large purchases of animals during the World War by the allies, but also to the requirements of the colonial troops in Morocco. For this latter situation the Government had to go into the open market, and at a time when surplus war stocks were sold managed to purchase horses in France, Hungary, and some English animals. The cavalry military breeding farms and remount stations have responded, and though the number of animals is not sufficient as yet for the needs of the arm, the situation is getting better.

As a result of the aforementioned conditions, the unit, though well mounted, shows a number of different breeds, including a large number of mares. Thus the two saber squadrons have several platoons of Hungarian animals, as well as French, and some half-bred and thoroughbred English horses, besides a number of Anglo-Arab and Anglo-Arab-Spanish mounts. The number of cold-blooded animals is very small. The machine gun squadron has a number of the native type, Anglo-Arab-Spanish, from the cavalry remount station at Alcolea (Córdova province) and Hungarians. Next to the national breed, the cross of Anglo-Arab with the native Spanish horse, the officers praise very highly the Hungarian mounts.

Questions of breeding aside, the majority of the animals of the unit are ideal from the point of view of light cavalry. It may be stated that horse-breeding by the State has long been recognized and in the last half century has truly reached a high standard of development.

In the 1922 Year Book of the Military Horse-breeding Farms and Remount Stations is the history of such efforts, both governmental and private, with State ordinances relating thereto, from early to modern times. Such authorities as Vásquez, Torres Rico, and Bermúdez de Castro are of the belief that the future of a truly national type of light cavalry mount is in the selective breeding of the best types of the thoroughbred and Arab and the native Spanish horse, the result being the Anglo-Arab-Spanish type. Certainly the proofs of this policy are now becoming evident, not only being noted in the unit, but especially in the animals of the mare and colt reservations (Cavalry) at Córdova, Jérez de la Frontera, and at Alcolea, one of the cavalry remount stations.

Due to lack of space, notes on drills, stables, schools, uniforms, messing, barracks, and methods of shoeing had to be omitted in this article.

In conclusion, the writer desires to pay tribute to the fine personality and to the professional qualifications of the Spanish officers of all arms whom he met during the tour, so well exemplified in those with whom he was intimately associated—his commanding officer and the field, staff, and troop officers of the Spanish Cavalry Instruction Unit. Their zealous performance of duty, fine loyalty, keen intelligence and professional interest, and high sense of honor, coupled with a splendid cavalry esprit de corps, have made a profound and lasting impression.

A Plan for a Test in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units*

BY

Captain W. G. SIMMONS, 6th Cavalry

THE failure or success of cavalry units in combat is directly dependent upon the character of the leadership given them, provided, of course, that units have received the requisite amount of training prior to their entry into the theater of operations.

The two principal factors affecting the leadership of cavalry units are the inherent personal qualities of the leader and his knowledge and application of proven tactical and strategical principles.

The test, therefore, must necessarily cover the two factors mentioned and should be conducted in accordance with the following general plan:

The details and rules governing the tests should be published to the Cavalry Service several months in advance of the time scheduled for it to be held. Each regiment of cavalry of the Regular Army and each State having National Guard or Reserve cavalry units within the State would be permitted to send one representative to compete. The number of entries thus allowed might be increased, in the discretion of the Chief of Cavalry.

Upon the publication of the rules and details for the test, elimination contests should be held in each unit, open to all officers and non-commissioned officers of appropriate rank or grade, for the selection of final competitors.

At the time scheduled for the test, all competitors would assemble at Fort Riley, Kansas, where a board of officers composed of the Chief of Cavalry or his representative, the Commandant of the Cavalry School, and three senior instructors of the Department of Tactics of the Cavalry School would then conduct the test.

The board would first decide upon the personal qualities of each competitor, as exhibited in boxing contest, polo, cross-country riding, handling of unbroken remounts, and such other contests as in the discretion of the board seemed necessary. The question of success or failure in these contests should not be considered, but only the personal qualities of each competitor as evidenced by his conduct in them. This estimate of the personal qualities of each competitor would be materially aided by reports from the commanding officers of the contestants or their personal records on file in the War Department.

Competitors would next be tested as to their knowledge and application of tactical principles, by their actual leadership of an appropriate unit in combat exercises, to include mounted action, dismounted action and a combination of the two.

*This essay was awarded third prize in the recent prize essay contest.

TEST IN COMBAT LEADERSHIP

For this test the units of the school regiment on duty at Fort Riley would be used, each contestant drawing lots for the unit he is to command and also drawing lots for place.

The board would prepare and adapt to the ground at Fort Riley, or in that vicinity, the problems to be given. Each contestant would be given the same problems, over the same ground. The nature of the problem and the ground over which conducted would be kept secret from all competitors until the time he was to be tested.

In order that the test may be fair to all, it is essential that the conditions be exactly similar for all contestants—these conditions including the situations presented, the ground over which conducted, and the state of training of the troops used, in so far as this is practicable. It is manifestly impossible for similar conditions to obtain for all contestants, unless all are assembled at some central point. Fort Riley, being the fountain head of all cavalry training and, in addition, the geographical center of the United States, is particularly desirable and appropriate as the place where the tests should be held.

The results to be obtained by making this contest an annual one deserve serious consideration. This would unquestionably stimulate interest in the subject of *Combat Leadership*, which would, in turn, lead to a greater proficiency by officers and non-commissioned officers in this important subject.

It should not, of course, be contemplated that the originator of the idea of the test and donor of the prizes should continue the award of prizes each year. Less valuable prizes could probably be obtained from other sources, or no prizes awarded.

The annual tests might cover a period of three years, holding a test in squad leadership the first year, platoon leadership the second year, followed the third year by a test in troop leadership. Succeeding tests to follow in the same order in subsequent years.

Another alternative is that of conducting the tests for squads, platoons and troops simultaneously each year. In this case, each unit should be permitted to enter a representative in each class.

In view of the interest which would be aroused by such a contest and the valuable training resulting therefrom, the approval of the War Department could no doubt be obtained without difficulty.

The principal difficulty in conducting the test, in accordance with the plan given above, is that of funds for the transportation of competitors to Fort Riley and return. This difficulty could be overcome by the use of regimental or other organization funds, by subscription or assessment within units sending representatives, and, lastly, by the substitution of nominal prizes in place of the large cash prizes, and the use of funds available as prizes for the expenses of competitors not otherwise provided for. The distinction of having won a place in such a contest should be ample reward for successful competitors. It is possible that if the approval of the War Department were obtained, public funds might be made available for this purpose.

(Continued on page 311)

Why the Army War College

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel HENRY DICKINSON, 109th Cavalry,
Tennessee National Guard

MAY the stub of this pencil, purloined from the Army War College, furnish inspiration to write comprehensively and with some interest of our Army's greatest institution of learning!

Upon my return from the G-1 Course last February, friends asked me innumerable questions of the why and wherefore of the Army War College. How I like it? Did I have to work hard? Had I learned anything? And did I feel now as if I could command an army corps or a squad? My answers were as varied as the questions, depending entirely on the frame of mind of the interrogator. One chap, a lieutenant-colonel of infantry, Officers Reserve Corps, impressed me with the serious intent he had hidden behind several more or less facetious questions. To him I unfolded the following:

Well, Pius, old man, like Cæsar, only as to Gaul, I arrived, I saw, but was conquered, or, rather, spent seven of the most interesting and instructive weeks of my life having hoofs trimmed, mane and tail plucked, clipped all over, being rebroken, as it were. First came our introduction to the Executive Officer, Colonel Gibbins, an ex-cavalryman from our State—say, just like you'd want, a regular fellow—and then off to our first lecture. No grass grows under the feet of that faculty, no dilly-dallying; just a welcome, and then a run into the loading shoot for a trip through many labyrinths of military lore.

Our first lecture was by Colonel Parker Hitt, who, with Colonel Joseph Baer, was, we found later, to ride day herd on us for our entire drive through. A couple of hard names, don't you think? Informative period, Colonel Hitt called it, and very thorough and instructive it was.

After Colonel Hitt's lecture, we were given our first sight of and an opportunity to hear Major-General Hanson E. Ely, the Commandant. First impressions are usually the best. During my whole stay and up to the last minute mine remained the same. General Ely was the last man I saw on leaving, and I surely appreciate every moment that I was able to spend with him, and regret that I cannot be thrown with him oftener for military duties. He is every inch a soldier and looks it; but if, after seeing him, there still remains a doubt, well, when he thrusts both thumbs in his belt, half turns away from his audience, looks at them over his right shoulder, with deep, piercing, gray eyes, overhung with heavy black brows, then your attention is caught and kept, as it begins to dawn upon you that you are having the rare privilege of hearing a military genius express himself within uncertain terms, every word coming like a bullet from a gun, with that whip-lash crack that means business on the receiving end. General Ely speaks, pleads, exhorts, and orders, and his text is patriotism, fortitude, and self-abnegation. When he is through with you, you have been sold the National Defense Act, the one-army plan, and you believe in it and will fight for it whenever you get the chance.

After the first lecture Colonel Simonds, the Assistant Commandant, took us in to meet the General. Not much was said (except to one, "Where were you wounded?"), but a kindly smile and a few words made us know that we had arrived, feel at home, and that each one of us was one of the integral parts of the college for the next seven weeks, anyway, and, as we found later, forever.

After this we were shown our individual desks in large, well-lighted and ventilated rooms on the second floor, called committee rooms. Of course, you know more or less that the purpose of the Army War College is to study plans, supply, personnel procurements, strategy and tactics, and methods for all of them. Our particular course, the G-1, dealt with personnel procurement. For this course the student body was divided into four committees, each committees, receiving a certain hypothetical war plan, for which we were to suggest, governed by existing laws, methods of personnel procurement and a thousand and one things coming under this branch of the General Staff. A chairman was appointed by the faculty for each of the four committees, who, with the aid of his assistant chairman, divided the work up among the several committeemen, dividing groups of the main committee into subcommittees, each with its chairman. These several subcommittees were allowed the use of the War College Library, with its 200,000 books, mostly military; the Congressional Library, with its unlimited supplies of every kind, and finally the help of the personnel of the War Department and the faculty of the Army War College. We were told that the War Department personnel and the college faculty would give us every aid, and in this we were not misled. They helped us with a full measure, heaped up and running over; also, the non-commissioned officers and civilian clerks throughout were always courteously helpful with never-failing cheerfulness. Some of them worked lated at night to do our typing in order that our reports could be gotten in on time.

After some three weeks each of the four large committees went into conference on the work of the several subcommittees. Here friendship ceased and criticism ran rampant. The lion and the jackass, the bear and the wolf, took off their sheep's clothing and went at each other, hammer and tongs. Why, do you ask? Well, because later the entire student body, together with the faculty, had another conference to pass on these reports, and it is well understood in that first gathering in committee conference that no pin feathers or hang nails will be left when the college, as a whole, tears into the committee reports. You would have been surprised at how little these several committee reports were changed in either the first or second conference. The work had been well done, valuable suggestions made, some of which were original and will undoubtedly be adopted by the general staff, for this is one of the most important things the college is for. It is a research laboratory, invaluable to our Government, for while its personnel is being taught, it learns and suggests, piling one stone on top of another, making it one of the greatest institutions of its kind in any country.

"The official mission of the college is to train mature, specially selected officers from those who have shown judgment, capacity, and willingness of application and have demonstrated their suitability for higher training in command or staff duty by their work in the schools leading up to the War College and by their records in the service. Successful completion of the course at the Army War College is given a particular significance by the provisions of the National Defense Act as amended by an Act of June 4, 1920, which limits future eligibility for the War Department General Staff to graduates of the Army War College." (Recruiting News, 6/15/23, by Maj. Gen. E. F. McGlachlin, U. S. A.)

For the National Guard and Reserve officers who may attend only one of the six courses, it may safely be said that it is a liberal education, especially in patriotism, which can be gotten nowhere else in the same way. Other advantages to these officers are innumerable, such as the chance of becoming familiar, to a certain extent, with the interior workings of the General Staff, Adjutant General's Office, Militia Bureau, records of previous wars, and last, but not least, the opportunity to meet and know each member of the faculty of the college, members of the general staff, students of the college, and the other National Guard and Reserve officers in attendance. You can rest assured that each of us made friendships which will engender a better understanding between the regulars, who give their whole time to the service, and those of us who only give a part of our time. After all, we have only one Army, and to strengthen it with all our intelligent ability is what we are working for.

When the 1924 G-1 Course and a subcourse on a very interesting personnel subject ended, January 28, we had the pleasure of welcoming the next transient students who came to attend the G-4 or Supply Course. Our class carried on other work, but we were allowed to attend the G-4 lectures, and most interesting they were, you may be assured; but more of lectures later.

About January 30 our class began the preparation of a plan which vitally concerns National Guard and Reserve officers. It is entitled "Report of National Guard and Reserve Officers on National Guard and Reserve Features of Plans A, B, C, and D. (Hypothetical War Plans)." This again shows the prescience of the faculty in allowing us to lay this first stone in a plan which will be worked on by successive classes of National Guard and Reserve officers, until it will eventually assume such character that there can be no doubt that it will be available by the general staff in the plan for the use of the National Guard and Reserve Corps in every national emergency.

For the work on this plan we were given a large private committee room on the third floor, which we immediately turned into a semi-sane ward, where senatorial courtesy seemed not wanting. One could say anything and say it as long and as loud as one liked to, but the auditors were not compelled to sacrifice either time or nerves listening in.

However, impossible as it may seem, at last a plan was evolved which the chairman of the committee, Brigadier-General M. B. Payne, Connecticut National Guard, had the temerity to present to the whole college and the

faculty. After a rather long and sometimes heated debate, mostly between the gentleman from Illinois and others, the plan was adopted, practically *in toto*. The adoption of a plan does not mean that it will last forever, for the next itinerant class may change the plan to suit itself, provided it can persuade that watchful element of our society who are known as the Regulars to believe as it does. After that report each member of the class took up his individual unit mobilization problems, which all of us brought to a happy conclusion on the last day of our stay.

One of the most interesting and instructive features was the series of lectures, delivered in the large auditorium on the first floor, daily, at 9 a. m., for the benefit of the whole college. Men of national and international reputation regaled us with their experiences, knowledge, and humor. To attend the lecture course alone would be a liberal education in the history of our country, policies of the War Department, with ramifications extending into practically every category of human endeavor, on many diversified subjects, well chosen and well delivered. The lecturer's way was always smooth and pleasant until he asked condescendingly if there were any questions any one would like to ask. Usually he asked this question with a semi-benign smile, signifying, "I know I have covered this subject completely and I know none of you chaps will have the nerve to ask me any questions." Alas! how soon was his equanimity disturbed! Usually about six seekers of knowledge or hecklers of speakers, snipers, were on the job at once.

One of them especially, with a decided "stony" stare, always pointed an accusing index finger at the poor lecturer, as if to say, "Now you tried to put something over on me, so I am going to show you up."

Men have been known to open their eyes, still damp from that soft, sweet dew caused from slumbering under a tree of roses, and ask an apparently intelligent question. It is apprehended that some of these questions were previously prepared, either by one of the faculty or inspired by a knowledge of the announced subject of the lecture. Order was always kept by our courteous, but inflexible Assistant Commandant, Colonel Simonds, acting as the Speaker of the House.

One lecturer, Mr. Barney Baruch, talked for an hour and a half, holding his audience spellbound. It seemed as if he had covered his subject so thoroughly that there could not possibly be any questions for him to answer. Yet, at the end, he had to stand a rolling barrage of questions for two hours. He stood it well, saying he was having the questions and answers transcribed, so that when he next came to lecture he would be prepared. Next year another class will be in the War College to greet Mr. Baruch. He may finally attain perfection, but it is doubtful if the questions will ever cease. Following practically all lectures, either General Ely or Colonel Simonds summed the whole matter up in a concise, clear, and interesting manner, which impressed on us the value of understanding and interpretation by the trained military mind.

The social life of the college is most pleasant, as the association afforded the visiting officers with the faculty and the Regular Army students presents

endless chances for obtaining information in all branches of the service, such as can hardly be had anywhere else. Visitors' cards to the clubs of the city, especially to the Army and Navy Club, were courteously sent us by the Commandant. Therefore, at 4:30 each afternoon except Wednesdays and Saturdays, we scattered to the four winds of the city, each to pursue his special bent. A great many were comfortably housed at the Army and Navy Club, under whose hospitable roof we found opportunity for enjoyment and rest. The night-herd riders from the faculty of the War College were most ingenious in finding straying mavericks, and these cowboys, with their quaint ways and indulgent devices, always improved every occasion for the good of the service.

Each day, after a hearty lunch at the Officers' Club, we hastened to the rear of the college, where two baseball games, played simultaneously, held the attention of all. Many tried to play, some succeeded, but few were stars; so the games were enjoyable, as well as affording an opportunity for exercise and relaxation. They were noisy and cheerful and gave us an excellent opportunity to become well acquainted. Friendly epithets were generally used in place of military titles, while faculty and students carried on like boys at a school recess. Lord Wellington said that England's wars were won on the cricket fields. General Ely has probably adopted baseball as the best American medium to accomplish the same results.

On Wednesdays and Saturdays a half holiday was had, and all were encouraged to play golf on the excellent links at Washington Barracks or ride horses furnished by the quartermaster. A great many of the students availed themselves of these facilities, and so we whiled away the time for that short and interesting seven weeks of research, lectures, play, fun, dialogues, and debates about everything on earth. An end must come to everything, and ours began with a series of banquets and luncheons, hospitably given, greatly enjoyed, cordially received, with speeches, songs, skits, 'n'-everything.

At a banquet two famous overseas aviators gave us an exhibition of flying blindfolded. Had each one not fallen from his plane we would have probably seen two of the greatest feats ever performed in the air. Eight dignified colonels were put through the manual of arms with popguns, and after a strenuous half hour the winner was informed that on account of his proficiency he would be made the next Chief of Infantry of the United States Army. Would it be strange if that came true? There is strong belief that it will. A great exposition of bulldog tenacity was shown when a general, following the many ignominious falls of several junior officers, succeeded after eight trials in riding a bucking broncho. His suppressed smile of complete satisfaction brought joy to the hearts of every cavalryman present, for was he not one of our breed? So the banquet passed into a pleasant memory, full of fun and good feeling, a get-together party at parting, one that will never be forgotten.

Following this a luncheon was given by the Regular officer students to the National Guard and Reserves, pleasant from start to finish, marred only by a noisy altercation breaking out among three of the Regulars. So apparently in earnest were they that every short-termer thought the fight had started. It

was simply a clever skit to inform each of us that we had been made one of them, that we had been initiated, had become a Regular, so to speak, and forever afterwards would be considered one of this great class at the Army War College. Gratified? Well, I'll say we were. We simply dimpled with pleasure. Out of doors our teeth would have been sunburnt.

Then came the final social function, presided over by General Ely, the faculty dinner to us. This filled our cup, eveen though we were sorrowful at parting, brim full of joy. It was an occasion we will always be glad to remember. Then the faculty made each of us one of the graduates of the college, welcome to return and feel at home at any time. Good-byes and farewells followed and many voices choked while saying them.

The faculty of the Army War College is composed of about fifteen officers from all branches of the service. These gentlemen are thoroughly imbued with the three great essentials which make a success of the organization. They are united in purpose, altruistic service, and spirit. These make the college a tower of strength. The altruistic service of the faculty causes the student body to exert every effort to meet the faculty more than halfway, which brings out of them the best that in them is. The last and greatest of these essentials, spirit, is that which if they were without the college would have long since sunk into obscurity.

It is my firm belief that if the Army War College continues in existence up to and through our next war, that the war will be carried on to such a successful end and the enemy will be so overwhelmned with our well-laid and well-executed plans that it will be our last war, provided after it the Army War College remains in existence and is kept up to its present high standard. After the war is over, the college should be called "America's College to Maintain Peace."

Didn't I have any kicks about anything, Pius? Well, I'll say I did! Why didn't the government make provision for us to stay as long as we wanted to—through all the courses? I'm trying to get back now, and I'll keep on trying, and some sweet day, boy, I'll land.

O, just one word more! Did you ever feel like a millionaire or a successful train robber? Well, if you are ever lucky enough to become one of the chosen few for the War College, and return home and wait—wait sometimes with hope, sometimes with misgivings—you will feel like the chap from whom I got a letter today. It ran thus: "I was greatly relieved today to receive my diploma from the War College." Yep, it's a great and glorious feeling. No, no more tonight; must be getting along home, Pius.

Enter the 1924 Colorado Endurance Ride

The Italian Cavalry School at Tor di Quinto

BY

Major H. D. CHAMBERLIN, Cavalry

THE Italian Cavalry School is composed of two distinct and separate institutions. The first of these which an officer attends, usually while a lieutenant or as a young captain, is at Pinerola, in northwestern Italy, not far from Turin.

At Pinerola the instruction is of a general nature, comprising tactics, arms, administration, etc., in addition to equitation. It is similar to the present Troop Officers' course at Fort Riley, though perhaps a trifle more elemental.

School of Application

After completing the nine months' course at Pinerola, certain selected officers are detailed to pass three months under instruction at Tor di Quinto, which is solely a school of application. Riding instruction alone is given, with no theoretical work. In principle, all officers of cavalry and some of artillery take the course at Pinerola and many of these go to Tor di Quinto, though not necessarily during the same year in which they have attended Pinerola.

Tor di Quinto is at present under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Starita, a distinguished officer and a leading horseman in Italy for many years. He was severely wounded during the war, having had one heel shot away during one of the glorious exploits of the Italian cavalry. Nevertheless, he is constantly on a horse and is a superb and fearless rider over any obstacles or country.

In his address to the class at the commencement of the course, Colonel Starita dwelt upon the point that Tor di Quinto was a school of morale, the purpose being to develop those most essential characteristics of a cavalryman—boldness and daring across country at fast paces; hence little elementary instruction is given during the course. The work is all devoted to jumping obstacles and riding in the manner and at the gaits which will be necessary during the crises of cavalry employment in time of war.

Tor di Quinto is five miles from the center of Rome. The students live in the city and go to and from work in busses provided by the school. Lunch is served at the school. During the racing season students are given liberty Thursday afternoons to attend the races, where, of course, much valuable horse knowledge is gained in a pleasant manner. There are some military races for officers only.

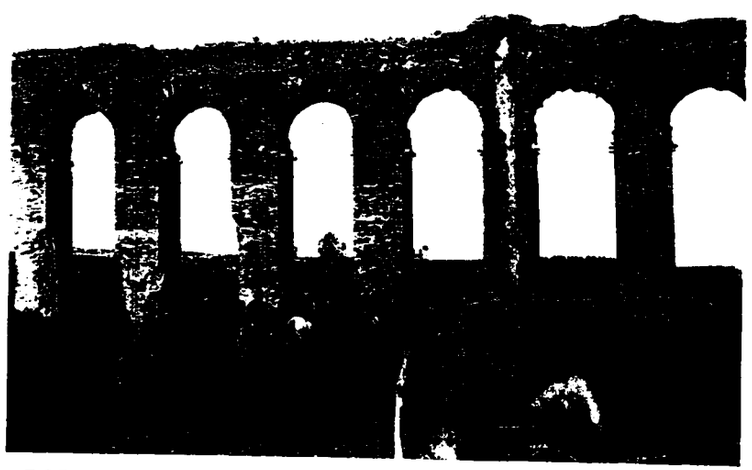
Riding Time

The actual time on the horse's back at the school averages about five hours per day, which every one agrees is ample. About thirty students attend each course, and they are divided into two platoons, under two captain instructors.

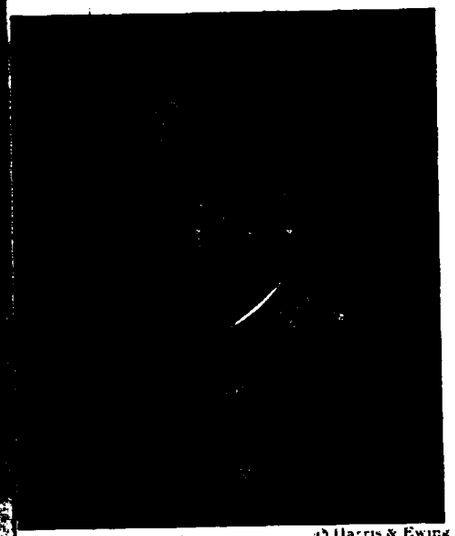
For ten years or more Italian teams have been winning far more prizes



CAPTAIN VALLE, INSTRUCTOR TOR DI QUINTO



PORTION OF ROME HUNT, STARTING ACROSS CAMPAGNA ROMANA AND PASSING UNDER OLD AQUEDUCT



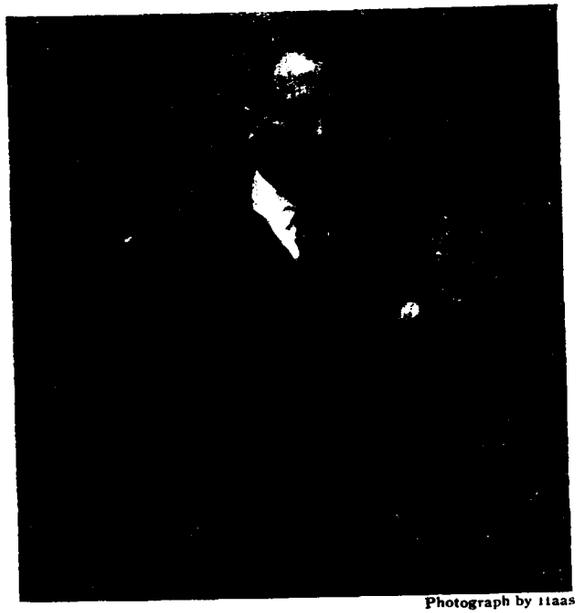
© Harris & Ewing

MAJOR E. W. TAULBEE,
Cavalry



© Harris & Ewing

FIRST LIEUT. P. McD. ROBINETTE,
Third Cavalry



Photograph by Haas

FIRST LIEUTENANT FREDERICK H. BONTECOU
Cavalry Reserve Corps

MEMBERS ARMY OLYMPIC TEAM

Courtesy of *The Spur*

in jumping classes than any other country, at all the large European horse shows, the London show at Olympia included. When one asks why, the envious and unjust answer is, "Better horses"—that old, familiar wail. However, from what I have seen and heard, their horses are no better, and probably not as good, as those of other nations. Certainly, the average horse at Tor di Quinto is far below that at Weedon, the English Cavalry School, and also below that at Saumur, the French Cavalry School. Of course, there are excellent individuals in all countries.

Reasons Why Italians Win at Shows

The reasons for the Italian superiority are three in number and very simple:

First. From a mechanical point of view, they have developed the most advantageous seat for the horse in getting his own and the rider's mass over an obstacle; hence maximum efficiency from the machine.

Second. Inasmuch as the Italians specialize in cross-country work and show jumping and spend but little time at anything else, such as schooling and polo, they ride over many more obstacles per day than do the French, English, or American officers. Since the old saying, "Practice makes perfect," holds especially true for riding jumpers (as well as for the jumpers themselves when worked with judgment), the Italian experts have become absolute masters of show jumping.

Third. The training of their horses is eminently correct. The horse is taught to jump when mounted as he does at liberty, and the riding and training are accomplished with this in view.

It is not within the scope of this article to discuss or explain the training of horses or the exact principles of the Italian system of equitation. However, one sees that with a correct seat and correct training, both perfected by an unusual amount of practice over every type of obstacle, the Italians are difficult to beat.

The Italian system of equitation is not, in my opinion, suitable for our cavalry, inasmuch as our use of the pistol and saber and our type of mounted action require a very "handy" horse, which, as a general rule, the Italian system does not produce. However, I believe an adaptation of our military seat along Italian lines, when riding across country and when jumping, is practicable and advisable, for it saves both horse and man and gives better general results.

Jumping Seat

It is to be noted that the jumping seat taught at Fort Riley has already undergone marked changes since 1919, tending toward the Italian method. This was due to the fact that several of our officers who participated in the equestrian sports during the Inter-Allied Games in Paris in 1919 were quick to see and to profit by the advantages of the Italian seat and the results it ob-

tained. These ideas were carried to Fort Riley, and "going with the horse" has been adopted to some extent, although there is still much difference between the two methods, due principally to fundamental differences in the seats themselves.

Captain Caprilli, of the Italian cavalry, who unfortunately died before reaching the zenith of his career, founded about twenty years ago the method of equitation now universally employed in the Italian Army. He developed it from what is known in Europe as the "American seat"; in other words, the racing seat which that wonderful jockey, Tod Sloan, first took to Europe. The marvelous success that Sloan gained soon converted all horsemen to the mechanical and practical advantages of this seat, so that today such a thing as sitting in the saddle during a race (as advocated by Fillis) is unheard of.

Lieutenant-Colonel R. Ubertalli has since been one of the greatest exponents and teachers of Caprilli's system. He will probably be in charge of the Italian Olympic team. His galaxy of star performers include many well-known riders, among whom are Majors Caffaratti, Antonelli, Valerio, Captains Lequio, Fourquet, Valle, Cacciandra, Borsarelli, Santa Rosa, and many others, all of whom are masters of the art of show jumping.

A notable thing in the equipment of the Italian trooper is that his horse is provided with a Pelham bit. The advantages are economy, less weight, and the possibility of the horse's drinking without unbridling. For the rider of the ability of the average cavalry soldier, the Pelham undoubtedly will serve as well, if not better, than the bit and bridoon. In fact, more horses run away from the pain caused by a severe bit than from the lack of control furnished by a mild one.

The horses, as stated above, are not as handy as ours; nevertheless, they go beautifully across country, extending themselves naturally and making the greatest use of neck and head in clearing obstacles. The most remarkable characteristics of the horses at Tor di Quinto are the calmness and willingness with which they jump. These horses are all ridden in snaffle bits, as are all Italian horses in jumping competitions, with but rare exceptions.

Body Forward

Briefly stated, the Italian rides with a very short stirrup, keeps the heels and knees driven down as far as possible, and at a fast gallop does not sit down in the saddle, only the knees, thighs, and stirrups serving as a seat. Contrary to appearances, this seat is very secure and the legs can be employed very vigorously. The rider does not "tuck under" the seat, as in the French, English, and American schools, but keeps the loin straight or even a bit concave. There is no exception to the rule that the body must be inclined forward *at all times*, whether backing the horse or racing him. With such short stirrups, the rider not accustomed to the seat becomes tired in the knees and loin at first. After one or two weeks, one finds it a very easy way of riding at fast gaits.

There is an excellent pack of hounds at Rome, and the Hunt Club very generously invites the whole school, staff and students, to attend. The country is quite varied and difficult to negotiate in many places. One finds few obstacles that come down, but as the horses are always trained over fixed obstacles, they jump very cleanly.

Before the war the Italian Government bought many Irish horses, but, due to the necessity of economy in Italy, as elsewhere, and to the high price of Irish horses, especially when bought with lire at the present low exchange rate, there are only a few very old Irish horses left. The others are principally half-bred Italian horses, with either Italian or imported thoroughbred sires and native mares. This horse is usually not very large, about 15-0 to 15-3, but very agile, courageous, and remarkably good at obstacles of a reasonable height.

Identifying Horses and Mules

(Continued from page 289)

(*a*) Serve as a positive identification of an animal throughout its entire military service.

(*b*) Give far more satisfaction to the service after being put into operation than the present system of hoof brands and descriptive cards.

(*c*) Will allow the Remount Service to do away with the present purchasing officer's number, which is now placed on the croup, and the classification number, and in reality only add one more small brand which is applied to the animal.

(*d*) Reduce the expense to the government of furnishing branding irons and descriptive cards to all organizations which are not assigned animals, and save much time in the application of hoof brands and in the preparation of descriptive cards.

(*e*) Enable the Remount Service, Quartermaster Corps, to collect data of inestimable value on its breeding work, various breeds of animals, or hardiness and stamina of animals obtained in different parts of the United States, etc. Enable the Veterinary Corps to keep up its statistical data for following an animal through its entire service, and to obtain more accurate and complete data as to the effect of various diseases, injuries, etc.

A Plan for a Test in the Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units

(Continued from page 301)

Cash prizes, if awarded, should be awarded to individual competitors, and should be divided between first, second and third places, with the understanding that winners will use prizes for some purpose directly connected with their profession.

Francis Marion, a leader par excellence, of small cavalry units during our War for Independence, is probably the outstanding cavalryman of that conflict. He possessed all desirable attributes of a leader of cavalry. Notwithstanding the fact that he often had but a handful of men, he was feared and respected by his enemies. He was loved and admired by his men. He may be said to be our first leader of small cavalry units. To call this test "The Marion Test," in his honor, would be most fitting.

The Westchester Horse and the "Custer Trail"

From Bronxville, Westchester County, New York, to West Point

BY

Colonel CHARLES FRANCIS BATES, U. S. A., Retired

AT A RECENT meeting held for the purpose of organising the "Westchester Horse," at Bronxville, N. Y., an organization formed to encourage horseback riding and the extension of bridle paths throughout Westchester County, it was suggested that the Park authorities name one of the bridle paths the "Custer Trail." The route of this proposed bridle path was as follows: to begin at Bronxville and follow the Bronx River Valley to White Plains and Kensico and through Mohansic Park to Anthony's Nose, thence across* Bear Mountain Bridge, now in process of construction, and then swing westerly on the arc of a circle away from the Hudson for a short distance and back to West Point.

Historical Aspect

From a personal point of view, it is most appropriate to call this bridle path the "Custer Trail" for the following reasons: Mrs. Elizabeth B. Custer, the widow of General Custer, after the death of the General on the Little Big Horn, was forced to seek employment at a nominal salary in New York City. She has made her summer home in Bronxville, where she votes and has done much of her literary work. The burial place of General Custer is at West Point. Such a trail as proposed would lead from Mrs. Custer's long-time home to General Custer's final resting place. General Custer was born in New Rumley, Ohio, but his adopted home was Monroe, Michigan, where he met Mrs. Custer. In 1861 Custer graduated from West Point just in time to take part in the battle of Bull Run, and continued actively on duty with the Army of the Potomac, becoming a brigadier-general at the early age of twenty-three. In 1864, immediately after his marriage, he took his girl bride from Monroe, Michigan, to the Army of the Potomac, where on the Virginia battlefields she acquired her love of horses and outdoor life. The large and enthusiastic Monroe colony in Bronxville are wont to attribute much of Mrs. Custer's mental acumen and intellectual brilliancy to her long horseback rides with her cavalry husband, the longest march being on horseback with the regiment, the Seventh Cavalry, proceeding from Texas to their new station at Fort Lincoln, North Dakota. Only a few years ago Mrs. Custer's love of travel led her to India, where she rode through the Khyber Pass, the Afghanistan Gateway to India, probably the wildest and most dangerous spot in the still uncivilised world.

*To be finished in the Fall of 1925.

Civil War Record of General George A. Custer

The picturesqueness of General Custer's career as an Indian fighter has obscured his far more brilliant record as a division commander in the Civil War. His first large independent command was the brigade composed of the 1st, 5th, 6th, and 7th Michigan Cavalry, which General Custer led with conspicuous ability in the heavy cavalry fighting at Gettysburg. This detached cavalry battle was several miles from the main position occupied by General Meade's Army, and the site is marked by a very remarkable monument with a bronze bas relief representing a spirited cavalry charge of Custer's men.

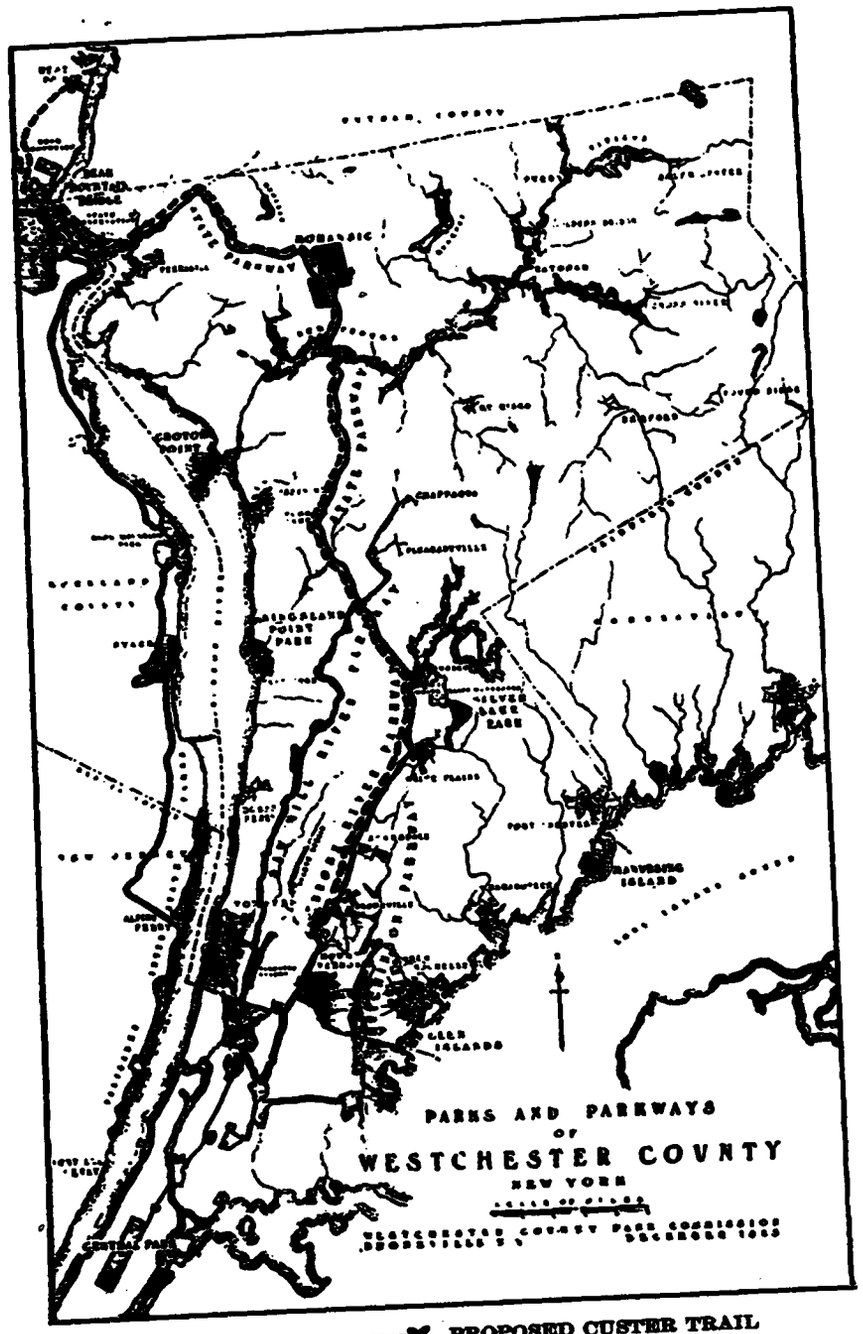
Let us follow for a moment General Custer with the Army of the Potomac. General Meade and General Sheridan were at odds. The Northern Army had been greatly annoyed by General J. E. B. Stuart's successful raids. Sheridan is said to have remarked at a conference that if he were given a squad of men he would go out and whip J. E. B. Stuart. Grant hearing this, and desirous of keeping two such valuable men as Meade and Sheridan apart, said, "If Sheridan says he can do that, you had better let him try." Sheridan was given an independent cavalry force to carry out his mission. Sheridan had formed the habit of putting Custer in the advance when anything difficult was to be done, and did so in this instance. Custer engaged Stuart's divisions at Yellow Tavern, near Richmond, and Stuart himself was killed. Immediately after Stuart's death the four Michigan Cavalry regiments under Custer made a general charge, and the Confederate horse, after desperate resistance, gave way in complete rout.

Third Cavalry Division

Shortly after the action at Yellow Tavern, Custer was made a major-general and assigned to the command of the Third Cavalry Division, which contained the following regiments: 1st Connecticut, 1st Vermont, 1st New York (Lincoln), 2d New York, 8th New York, 15th New York, 3d New Jersey, 1st, 2d, and 3d West Virginia and 2d Ohio. The 18th Pennsylvania Cavalry was assigned to duty with the Division for a time.

This Division greatly distinguished itself in action. At North River, two regiments were ordered to swim the River and make a flank attack, while another column charged over a burning bridge and saved it from complete destruction. The following is quoted from General Custer's order to "The Soldiers of the Third Cavalry Divison." "During the past six months, although in most instances confronted by superior numbers, you have captured from the enemy, in open battle, one hundred and eleven pieces of field artillery, sixty-five battle flags and upwards of ten thousand prisoners of war, including seven general officers. Within the past ten days and included in the above, you have captured forty-six pieces of field artillery and thirty-seven battle flags. You have never lost a gun, never lost a color, and have never been defeated." General Custer said at the conclusion of his order, "I only ask that my name may be written as that of the commander of the Third Cavalry Division."

This Division was heavily engaged in and around Appomattox and received the flag of truce on the surrender of General Lee. General Sheridan



made a personal gift of this flag of truce, (an old towel,) to General Custer, saying in his letter accompanying it, "I know of no one whose efforts have contributed more to this happy result than those of Custer." Mrs. Custer later gave this flag of truce to the War Department.

Personal Bravery

It is said that General Custer was engaged in more individual exploits of arms and captured more trophies than any other man in the United States Army in the Civil War. Several horses were shot under him and he himself was wounded. Early in the war before Richmond, Custer, while still a junior officer, captured from its Confederate rider a beautiful black horse named "Harry." This horse was one of his proudest possessions and was his favorite mount afterwards in the service. Custer also took from the rider of "Harry" a long, straight Toledo blade, so heavy that few but Custer could wield it. On this sword were the words in Spanish, "Draw me not without cause, sheathe me not without honor." This became the life motto of the boy general.

General Grant subsequently became very critical of General Custer in the matter of the Little Big Horn campaign, but it is well to note in this connection how strongly Grant endorsed Custer's record just after the Civil War in the following letter:

Headquarters Armies of the United States,
Washington, D. C., May 16, 1866.

Dear Sir: This will introduce to your acquaintance Gen. Custer, who rendered such distinguished service as a cavalry officer during the war. There was no officer in that branch of the service who had the confidence of Gen. Sheridan to a greater degree than Gen. C., and there is no officer in whose judgment I have greater faith than in Sheridan. Please understand then that I mean by this to endorse Gen. Custer in a high degree.

Gen. Custer proposes to apply for a leave of absence for one year, with permission to leave the country, and to take service while abroad. I propose to endorse his application favorably, and believe that he will get it.

Yours truly, U. S. Grant.

To Sr. M. Romero, Minister, etc.

"Custer's Luck"

The record of General Custer in the Civil War has been given in some detail for the reason that in the popular estimation his fame rests largely on his successes as an Indian fighter. This does the General a great injustice. Much of what has sometimes been called "Custer's Luck" was simply the success that comes from downright hard work, unlimited energy and dauntless courage.

First Important Indian Campaign

Custer's first Indian campaign on a large scale was in western Oklahoma. Sheridan, who was in general charge, decided on a winter campaign. Several tribes had killed and scalped many settlers in Kansas and the southwest, and women had been captured and frightfully mistreated. "Boots and Saddles" sounded in the early morning hours in old Fort Supply in 1868 during a November blizzard. "How about it, Custer?" said Sheridan. "It's all right, we can move, the Indians can't," said Custer, and to the tune of "The Girl I Left Behind Me," the old Seventh Cavalry floundered through a foot of snow out upon the war trail against Black Kettle's band. After four days in the saddle, on the last of which a Thanksgiving dinner of hardtack was eaten from half frozen fingers, the Indian camp was located and struck at daybreak. The charge broke on the unsuspecting Indians with the sound of hundreds of thundering hoofs galloping to the tune of "Garry Owen," the regimental air of the Seventh Cavalry. Black Kettle and many of his band were killed, and the Indians of the southwest learned that they could not conduct a campaign in midwinter with their starved ponies weak from lack of forage. Most of them bowed to the inevitable, returned to their reservations and remained there. So great had been the depredations of the Indians that the 19th Volunteer Cavalry from Kansas had been raised and was under Custer during the remainder of the campaign.

Custer's Last Stand

General Custer's fight at the Little Big Horn has been the subject of heated controversy. Critics say Custer committed the military crime of dispersion which yet when successful becomes a strategic success. The only thing that an Indian fears is an attack from all sides, but that attack must always be whole-hearted and must never let up when once launched. It took the whole Sioux nation about four hours, poor shots as they were, to annihilate Custer's little band. Custer was likewise unfortunate that he did not have with him at the Little Big Horn his old squadron commanders, Captain Louis Hamilton, the grandson of Alexander Hamilton, and Major Elliott, both of them ideally fitted for the peculiar style of Indian campaigning. Both these gallant officers had lost their lives at the Washita fight with Black Kettle, but permanent peace with the Indians of that locality was made by their sacrifice.

One of the greatest disadvantages with which Custer had to contend against the Sioux was that the Government had permitted enormous amounts of ammunition to be sold to the Indians through the big trading agencies. Through these sources, the Indians had acquired Winchester rifles, so that they were very much better armed than the soldiers, who had quick-fouling short-range carbines. It took the sacrifice of Custer and his command as well as the previous defeats of the infantry by Sitting Bull to arouse the Government to the fact that it must stop the traffic in arms and ammunition with the Indians. When this was done, while it took some time, there was little further fighting

with the Sioux. A hot pursuit by converging columns from all sides was the one thing which got on the nerves of the Indians and this was always Custer's plan of attack. The Indians paid Custer the greatest possible compliment as he fell last and alone surrounded by the bodies of his friends and relatives. His valor won for him the privilege of nonmutilation; his body was untouched by savage hands.

Custer Highway

West of the Mississippi there is a warm feeling of kinship as well as comradeship for the men of iron courage and stern resolution who strove in season and out of season to protect the settlers. This is shown in the naming of the Custer Highway, an automobile road fifteen hundred miles long from Omaha to Glacier National Park, the changing of the name of the Little Big Horn to the Custer River, and the naming of numerous towns and counties after the General.

The Custer Trail

The Valley of the Bronx, rich with historical associations, would be a very fitting place for the designation of a trail in memory of our Civil War and Indian fighters. There was picturesque and interesting fighting during the Revolution in the old town of Eastchester near Bronxville and Tuckahoe and in Mount Vernon. At Hartsdale, the so-called "Bashful New Englanders" attempted unsuccessfully to harass the British advance on Washington's Army at White Plains. The proposed trail would pass right along the base of Chatterton's Hill, where Alexander Hamilton and his two-gun battery checked the Hessians temporarily in the battle of White Plains. As the Custer Trail would cross over the Hudson at the Bear Mountain bridge, it would pass near other points of Revolutionary interest. Stony Point is near the scene of the desperate but successful bayonet charge of "Mad Anthony Wayne." Here from Anthony's Nose the iron chain and great log boom, believed to be sufficient to prevent the passage of the British fleet, was stretched under the protecting guns of Forts Clinton and Montgomery.

Network of Bridle Paths

There are three great bridle paths and park reservations now in sight or promised, and planned to run north and south through Westchester County along the Bronx, the Saw Mill and Hutchinson River Valleys. These trails could all be made to converge at Anthony's Nose on the Hudson. If the trail along the Bronx is named for General Custer, one of the others might be called "Sheridan's Ride" for this great cavalry leader.

Memorial at Bronxville

The eight or more states west of the Mississippi in which Custer marched and fought his Indian campaigns, and the seven states represented by the

(Continued on page 328)

Federal Control of the National Guard

BY

Colonel L. C. SCHERER, Cavalry
Militia Bureau, War Department

Federal and State Powers:

THERE is no doubt that the Congress of the United States has constitutional power to legislate as to every detail of the organization, arming, and discipline of the National Guard. The only constitutional restriction is the reservation to the States of the power "to appoint officers" and the authority "to train according to the discipline prescribed by Congress."

Militia Includes National Guard:

The powers conferred by the Constitution relate to the militia of the United States, and Congress has defined the militia and divided it into three classes, viz., the National Guard, the Naval Militia, and the Unorganized Militia. The powers conferred by the Constitution relating to the militia apply, therefore, to the National Guard, wholly included in the militia. There is no question as to the power of Congress to define the composition of the National Guard, and that power is further affirmed by the Constitution in the provision that "no State shall keep troops without the consent of Congress." Congress has, under this proviso, legislated to the effect that States "shall maintain no troops other than those authorized in accordance with the organization prescribed" in the National Defense Act, which act in part deals with the composition and organization of the National Guard.

Authority of State:

To the extent that Congress has acted within its constitutional power and assumed control of the National Guard, the States have no right of control. Where Congress has not exercised its powers, the control remains with the States, where it inherently belonged. State legislation is, therefore, legal and binding, provided it is not contrary to the enactments of Congress or is limited to the "appointment of officers" and "the authority to train."

Growth of Federal Control:

It is instructive to follow step by step the development of the Organized Militia, part of which later became the National Guard, for it sets forth the continual increase in Federal control and the gradual relinquishment of State power. Study of this development is often necessary to clear up matters in doubt, and information gained is valuable in passing upon proposed State and Federal legislation.

Federal Appropriations:

As early as 1808 the Federal Government made appropriation for the Organized Militia. The amount involved at first was small, and little increase

is noted for nearly a century, and correspondingly the power assumed by Congress in legislating for the Organized Militia was limited. Most of the task of developing of the militia remained with the States. In recent years appropriations were increased, and with increased appropriation came increased Federal regulation and control. At present the annual National Guard appropriations are over 30 million dollars. It is the purpose of this article to indicate the present extent of Federal regulation and the manner of its exercise as prescribed in the National Defense Act.

Federal Laws:

The National Defense Act prescribes for the National Guard in great detail regarding composition and numbers, organization, personnel, equipment, training, discipline, and inspection. This legislation is the result primarily of the efforts of the National Guard itself and of its members. Federal agencies have concerned themselves principally with analyzing legislation proposed by the States and embodying in the acts such restrictions as were deemed necessary to insure Federal supervision and control of expenditures.

Federal Control:

Federal regulation of the National Guard is exercised through various agencies, usually designated in the acts themselves.

The President of the United States:

The President of the United States is charged with the enforcement of the requirements of the National Defense Act, with action in case of failure or refusal of any State to comply with promulgation of instructions to make effective certain requirements contained in the various acts of Congress. He is also, under a specific section of the law, charged with making all necessary rules and regulations and issuing such orders as may be necessary for the control, organization, discipline, and government of the militia, which includes the National Guard.

Secretary of War:

The Secretary of War is charged with the promulgation of regulations to make effective certain specific requirements mentioned in the acts, and usually is the agency through whom the President exercises his powers.

War Department:

The functions of the President of the United States and of the Secretary of War are exercised through the War Department and its branches, according to the provisions of the various acts or according to regulations made in aid of the various acts.

The War Department General Staff:

Subject to revision and approval by the Secretary of War, the plans and regulations under which the initial organization and territorial distribution of

the National Guard and the Organized Reserves shall be made shall be prepared by a committee of the branch or division of the War Department General Staff, hereinafter provided for, which is charged with the preparation of plans for the national defense and for the mobilization of the land forces of the United States. For the purpose of this task, said committee shall be composed of members of said branch or division of the general staff and an equal number of reserve officers, including reserve officers who hold or have held commissions in the National Guard.

National Guard Regulations:

Under the provisions of section 5, National Defense Act, all policies and regulations affecting the organization, distribution, and training of the National Guard are prepared by committees of appropriate branches or divisions of the War Department General Staff, to which are added an equal number of reserve officers, including reserve officers who hold (or have held) commissions in the National Guard and whose names are borne on lists of officers suitable for such duty, submitted by the governors of the several States, and who while so serving are assigned as additional members of the general staff. When such policies and regulations are approved by the Secretary of War, they constitute the approved policies of the War Department for the development of the National Guard. In the formulation of such policies and regulations the views of the Chief of the Militia Bureau will be obtained.

The Chief of the Militia Bureau:

The Militia Bureau of the War Department shall be under the immediate supervision of the Secretary of War, and shall not form part of any other bureau, office, or other organization, and is established by law to facilitate the administration and to promote the development of the National Guard while not in the service of the United States. The primary function of the Chief of the Militia Bureau is the development of a high state of efficiency in the National Guard.

The development of the Militia Bureau forms an interesting chapter in the history of the National Guard. Ever since the reorganization of the National Guard following the Spanish-American War, the guard has felt the propriety and need of a separate bureau in the War Department charged primarily with National Guard matters. Such matters were at first handled by a section of the Adjutant General's Office. In 1908 that section was made a separate bureau, and in 1916 the bureau was authorized by law and designated the Militia Bureau.

Corps Areas:

For purposes of administration, training, and tactical control, the continental area of the United States shall be divided, on a basis of military population, into corps areas. Each corps area shall contain at least one division of

the National Guard or Organized Reserves and such other troops as the President may direct. The President is authorized to group any or all corps areas into army areas or departments.

Corps Area Commander:

The corps areas constitute the principal territorial administrative units outside the War Department, and their primary function in peace and in war is the organization, training, and mobilization of troops. The development of the National Guard is a most important function of the corps area commanders, who are enjoined to give this work their personal attention and to co-operate with the Militia Bureau and the local authorities at all times, to the end that uniformity in organization and training may be assured.

The functions and responsibilities of corps area commanders in connection with the National Guard while not in the service of the United States are hereinafter indicated.

The powers essential to the discharge of these functions, while limited by law, are sufficient to enable corps area commanders to maintain the National Guard troops within their corps areas in a state of preparedness for induction into the service of the United States. Corps area commanders exercise direct command over National Guard troops only when such troops have been called or drafted into the service of the United States and have been assigned to their command by competent authority.

Corps Area Staff:

For the purpose of assisting the corps area commander, there have been designated and assigned a certain number of officers as the staff of the corps area commander. All of these are charged with functions toward the National Guard similar to those assigned to them for the Regular Army and the Organized Reserves. One of the officers, designated by the title of "Officer in charge of National Guard Affairs," has the especial function of keeping the corps area commander informed as to National Guard matters.

Instructors and Sergeant Instructors:

Under the corps area commander there have been detailed for duty with the National Guard Regular Army officers and non-commissioned officers, who are usually assigned to specific National Guard organizations for the purpose of assisting in training, and for the purpose of acting as assistants to the corps area commander in maintaining Federal control of the National Guard.

State Authorities:

The development of the National Guard entirely within a single State is a function of the authorities of that State, and the power of appointment of officers and the authority to train the National Guard is reserved to the States by the Constitution. The States also have control of matters and all details not specifically covered by Federal legislation.

Functions of the State authorities and their power of control over the National Guard within its boundaries are limited only by the provisions of law enacted by Congress and by regulations promulgated in accordance with these laws.

Federal aid is extended in arming, equipping, training, and disciplining; and Federal control is exercised in distribution, organization, and discipline of the National Guard, to the end that the National Guard may at all times be ready for immediate mobilization or call or draft into Federal service.

Federal Recognition:

Federal control over the National Guard is exercised through the War Department and the War Department agencies, as explained above, by the promulgation of the acts of Congress and the regulations; by the review of reports and returns from various sources, and by personal contact between the National Guard personnel and the War Department personnel, but the principal method of control is through the process of the extension, withholding, or withdrawal of Federal recognition.

Federal Recognition Defined:

Federal recognition of an individual or of a unit of the National Guard of a State is the action of the Federal Government, exercised through the Chief of the Militia Bureau, in acknowledging and recording that the individual or unit has qualified according to the provisions of the National Defense Act and regulations made thereunder.

Federal recognition will not be extended to an individual or to a unit without express application of the State, and not until the necessary data and records have been submitted to insure that all the provisions of the National Defense Act have been complied with.

Status After Federal Recognition:

After Federal recognition has been extended to an individual or to a unit, a Federal status has been acquired in addition to the State status, and no change of that Federal status will be made, nor will an individual be discharged, or an organization be disbanded or consolidated with another organization, without the express authority of the Secretary of War.

Non-compliance with Federal Act:

Whenever any State shall, within a limit of time to be fixed by the President, have failed or refused to comply with or enforce any requirement of this act or any regulation promulgated thereunder and in aid thereof by the President or the Secretary of War, the National Guard of such State shall be debarred, wholly or in part, as the President may direct, from receiving from the United States any pecuniary or other aid, benefit, or privilege authorized or provided by this act or any other law.

Withdrawal of Federal Recognition:

Action under this authority is exercised through the War Department by the withdrawal of recognition from an individual, from a unit or from the entire National Guard of a State, as circumstances warrant. Advance notice that recognition will terminate on a certain date unless the requirements are met will be sent through the Chief of the Militia Bureau.

The Westchester Horse and the "Custer Trail"

(Continued from page 317)

cavalry regiments in the Third Cavalry Division, together with Ohio and Michigan, the states of his birth and adoption, might well unite in erecting a suitable memorial at Bronxville, the beginning of the trail. The governors and their military staffs might assemble there for a commemoration service which would be a fitting tribute to the men who have made and preserved our nation. The historical traditions of the Revolutionary War and of the Civil and Indian Wars would all be combined.

There could be no more effective Americanization at the gateway of New York City than such a ceremony. It would give direct notice to those not familiar with our history who are striving in a subtle way to undermine our patriotism and nullify the laws of the land to beware of the indignation of an aroused America. In the sight of her loyal sons and daughters, the memory of those who died in her service from 1776 to 1876 is most precious. In these earlier wars, the young Republic of the West was made ready for heart service and supreme sacrifice, and when the time came, her hundreds of thousands went forth in unending stream across the Atlantic to fight for their lives and the life of the world in the most righteous war of history.

AN ARTILLERYMAN ON CAVALRY LEADERSHIP

"THE COMMANDER of a large mass of cavalry must unite in his person so many extraordinary qualities that no one who realizes this can wonder why a Seydlitz is seldom seen. But we need not therefore renounce the useful assistance of cavalry; only we must congratulate ourselves when a cavalry leader, even though not perfect, is found to be, at any rate to some extent, equal to the discharge of the duties of his arm."—*Letters on Cavalry,* page 119, by Prince Kraft zu Hohenlohe Ingelfingen.

Enter the 1924 Colorado Endurance Ride

Army Olympic Team

BY

First Lieutenant P. M. ROBINETT, 3d Cavalry

ON THE eve of the departure of the American Equestrian Team for the International Horse Show in London and the Olympic Games in France I have been asked to write a "few notes as to the team's prospects" in the forthcoming competitions.

I cannot help recalling the statement made by Major J. A. Barry, the team captain, at a dinner given at the Radnor Hunt Club last October, to the effect that the team, mounted on the best horses in America and with an even break in the luck of the game, had only the mathematical odds of their number against that of the field of winning these competitions.

Any one familiar with jumping horses will realize that this is a correct statement, for there is no sport in the world less dominated by a few individuals than is the sport of "timber topping." It is not to be understood, however, that the team is downhearted or pessimistic. It should be understood that the team believes that it has the greatest string of jumping horses ever assembled in the United States, and that these horses will give a good account of themselves in Europe.

After months of preparation and after having attended eight of the leading horse shows of America and Canada, where the best jumpers of the continent have been shown in open competition, Major Barry has chosen from the horses available the following horses as jumpers: *Bally MacShane* and *Little Canada,* both owned by First Lieutenant F. H. Bontecou, Cavalry Reserve Corps, of Port Chester, New York; *Nigra* and *Jack Snipe,* both from the Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas; *Joffre,* formerly with the American Forces in Germany; and *Sure Fire,* loaned to the team by Mr. O. W. Lehman, of Chicago. In addition to the above-named horses, *Miss America, Proctor,* and *Brown Boy,* now being trained for the three-day event, are very good jumpers and further strengthen the team, especially for the International Horse Show. Of these horses *Bally MacShane* is, without doubt, the greatest jumper of the lot.

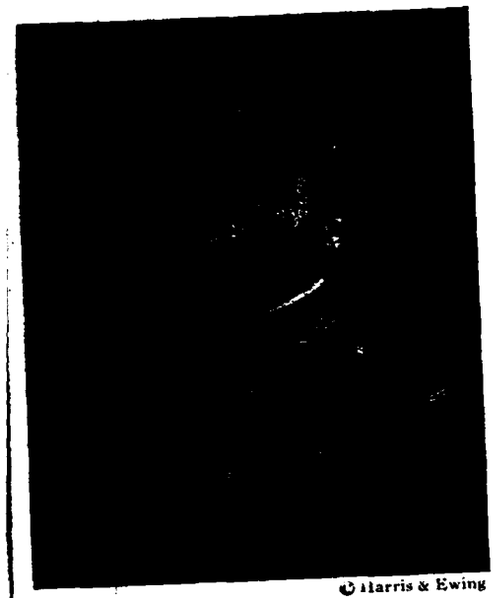
For the Equestrian Championship (the event involving training, endurance, and jumping) Major Barry now has in training the following horses: *Miss America,* a Canadian-bred mare given to the Government; the thoroughbred gelding *Blank Check,* loaned to the team by Mr. F. P. Garvan, of New York; the thoroughbred horse *Pathfinder,* which has already made himself famous in the last three Eastern Endurance Rides; the Cavalry School's *Proctor; Roulette,* a thoroughbred horse given to the Government; *Brown Boy,* a tough little horse owned by Lieutenant P. M. Robinett; *Tango Dance,* a thoroughbred horse owned by Captain V. L. Padgett and until recently regarded as the very best prospect for this event, but now slightly lame; and *Ky,* Major E. W. Taulbee's thoroughbred gelding. The best horses available for this event have been tried out and some of them dropped because they were not suitable. There are horses in America which would have strengthened the team in this event, but they were not available. However, it is believed that our entries, to be chosen from this list, will do credit to themselves.



Photograph by Keystone View Company

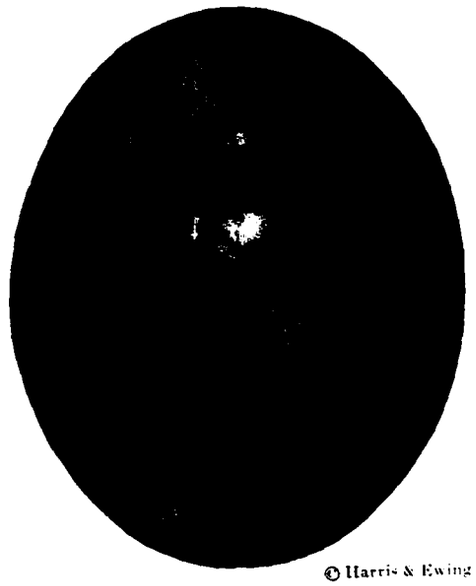
MAJOR JOHN A. BARRY, THIRD CAVALRY
Captain Army Olympic Team

Courtesy of *The Spur*



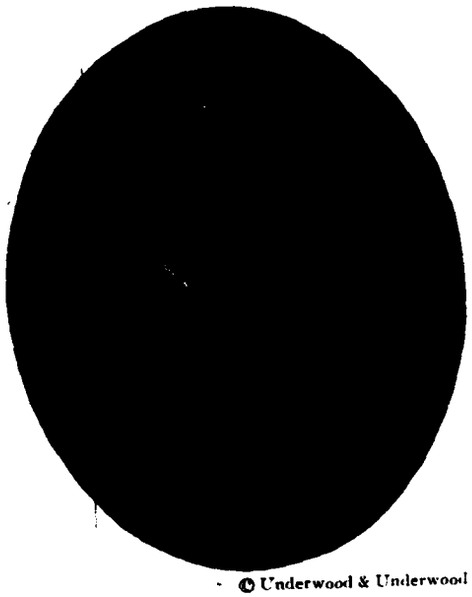
© Harris & Ewing

FIRST LIEUTENANT FRANK L. CARR.
Cavalry



© Harris & Ewing

MAJOR C. P. GEORGE
Sixteenth Field Artillery



© Underwood & Underwood

MAJOR SLOAN DOAK,
Cavalry



© Harris & Ewing

CAPTAIN V. L. PADGETT,
Third Cavalry

MEMBERS ARMY OLYMPIC TEAM

Courtesy of The Spur

Horses, C. A. and E.

BY

Colonel HENRY C. WHITEHEAD,
Chief of Remount Service, Quartermaster Corps

THE above is the official designation of the funds appropriated by Congress for the purchase of horses for the Army. This item in Army appropriation now before Congress provides for the purchase of horses "for such organizations and members of the military service as may be required to be mounted."

The cessation of hostilities in Europe and the restoration of peace left the Army with a large surplus of horses and mules, which was disposed of with dispatch. Reductions made in the peace strength of the Regular Army after the National Army was demobilized resulted in additional surplus animals, which were disposed of whenever they became in excess of actual requirements of the Army.

Since 1920 there has been no appropriation for horses, except a few thousand dollars each year for the purchase of immature remounts. These, with a few that have been bred at the remount depots, have been practically all required in providing the service schools with young horses to be used for instruction in training remounts.

Based on tables of organization of 1920 and 1921, the peace-time animal strength of the Regular Army is 30,656 horses and 24,805 mules. Due to shortages of horses and mules, it became necessary to reduce the animal strength, and this was accomplished by War Department letter of April 23, 1923, which reads in part as follows:

> "The accompanying tables, A to R, inclusive, set forth the present temporary allowances and distribution of animals to all units of the Regular Army, and to posts, stations, and establishments. In so far as tactical units are concerned, these temporary allowances should not be confused with the actual peace-strength allowances for an Army of 125,000, which are now being computed and which are soon to be published. This reduction in the allowance of animals became necessary on account of existing shortages and the necessity of transferring 2,445 horses to the National Guard. The allowances set forth in these tables distribute practically all the animals that will be on hand July 1, 1924. Therefore no replacements of horses and only approximately 4 per cent replacement of mules can be furnished prior to July 1, 1925, and then only in case Congress appropriates funds for the purchase of replacements."

The estimates, prepared nearly a year ago, for the fiscal year 1925 carried only the actual replacements required to fill shortages estimated to exist July 1, 1924, and normal replacements for the fiscal year 1925. The estimated cost was based on the purchase of mature horses of good type. This figure

was cut before it reached Congress, and again by the House; so that it is doubtful if mature horses of good type can be bought in the numbers required. Certainly, the number of horses required could be had for the sum fixed in the bill as it passed the House, but it may be necessary to lower the desirable standard, buy immature horses, or take fewer horses than are actually required.

There is a great revival in riding throughout the country. Racing on the flat and over timber at the established race courses, and point-to-point races, hunting, polo, horse shows, and endurance rides are flourishing. Riding clubs are more numerous than ever before and are well supported, not only in the East and on the Pacific coast, but from coast to coast. Riding for exercise, for pleasure, and for sport was never before so popular and so widespread.

Better riding horses are demanded in increasing numbers. The right sort are hard to find and are not to be had in any considerable numbers at a reasonable price. This has had a very stimulating effect on breeding. Breeders are trying to get rid of scrub, nondescript horses, which are worth nothing, and to breed good ones, which are worth real money. There is a great demand for breeding stock. Some three hundred straight-gaited, pure-bred stallions of riding type have been distributed by the Government in the past three or four years, and the demand is constantly increasing. We have not yet begun to benefit by this breeding, but the youngsters are coming on in increasing numbers every year. In ten years from now we shall find fifty good riding horses where we find one today. And this does not mean that our horse population will greatly increase, but the scrubs will disappear and be replaced by good ones. It will be a slow process because of the scarcity of good mares, and it will take two or three good top crosses to produce acceptable brood mares out of most of those that are not now hopeless.

These remarks apply to riding horses only. Draft-horse breeders have been using good, pure-bred draft stallions for many generations of horses, with the result that we have had an abundant supply of artillery horses of excellent type and quality. There are indications, however, that, because of the war and the depression following the war, breeding has been neglected, and we may soon be confronted with a shortage of good draft horses.

On the whole, we may look forward to being better mounted in the near future, but not in the immediate future. We shall begin to eliminate from the Army the type of horse that drives troopers to desert and make officers sick. Officers will begin to find better private mounts in a fair market.

It has been and is still a very serious undertaking for an officer to secure suitable private mounts. We have been able to render little assistance for the past three or four years because the few young horses bred at the remount depots had to go to the schools as training colts. Beginning with the new fiscal year, and after satisfying the demands from the schools this summer, we hope to hold such suitable remounts as are produced at the depots for sale to officers.

Desirability of Lighter Spurs

BY

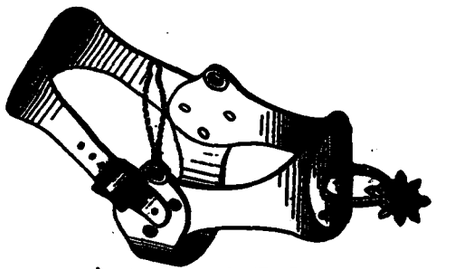
Colonel W. C. BROWN, U. S. A., Retired

A PAIR of regulation spurs without straps weighs 10 ounces (⅝ pound), which is unnecessarily heavy, for we can make just as good a spur, amply strong and rigid, of an aluminum alloy containing 5 per cent silicon, or No. 43 alloy, as it is called technically, which will weigh only about 3.4 ounces per pair. Steel has a specific gravity of 7.85, while that of No. 43 alloy is 2.68, and it requires but little figuring to show that if made of the lighter metal a saving of about 6 6-10 ounces in weight per pair would result.

Arrangements have been completed for the manufacture, at the Jeffersonville Depot, Q. M. C., of fifty pairs of spurs for experimental purposes. These are to be cast from the light aluminum alloy above mentioned.

A study of those paragraphs of field service and drill regulations pertaining to the marching of cavalry, as well as our own experience, shows that even in a practically level country the trooper usually walks and leads for about 1¼ miles in an average 25-mile march. In a hilly or mountainous country the proportion of the distance in which the trooper dismounts and leads is much greater. So recently as in the Mexican Punitive Expedition of 1916, the writer recalls orders being in force calling for cavalry commands to dismount and lead for practically half the distance marched. Some of the cavalry columns on that expedition had very long marches, much of it over mountain trails, where we had to lead both up and down hill to save horse flesh, and even at that some troops lost 10 per cent of their animals—a loss, however, due more to lack of forage than to hard marches.

In camp the trooper usually, to prevent their loss, wears his spurs from the time he rolls out of his blankets at daylight until he turns in at dark; so that on average marches, including duties about camp, he probably walks each day, wearing his spurs, for about five miles—10,560 steps! Recalling now the fact that each steel spur is unnecessarily heavy by 3.2 ounces, it requires but little calculation to show that even this small excess in weight means, in walking five miles, lifting unnecessarily a weight of 2,112 pounds—something more than a ton!



THE MILLS SPUR

An attempt to lighten this very article of field equipment was made by an equipment board as far back as 1879, as shown by G. O. No. 7, A. G. O., of that year, in which we find, under the head of *Spurs and Straps:* "The board recommends for adoption the spurs and straps of the pattern designed by Major Anson Mills, Tenth Cavalry. They consist of three leather straps riveted together with copper rivets; the spur riveted to the heel strap, and all as per pattern submitted."

An attempt to lighten this very article of field equipment was made by an equipment board as far back as 1879, as shown by G. O. No. 7, A. G. O., of that year, in which we find, under the head of *Spurs and Straps:* "The board recommends for adoption the spurs and straps of the pattern designed by Major Anson Mills, Tenth Cavalry. They consist of three leather straps riveted together with copper rivets; the spur riveted to the heel strap, and all as per pattern submitted."

A few of these were subsequently made up at Rock Island Arsenal and weighed, straps and all, about 6 ounces per pair, much less than the heavy brass spurs then used, which latter were brittle and difficult to make fit snugly to the heel. The writer wore a pair of Mills spurs in 1879 on marches, mostly in mountainous country, aggregating over 2,000 miles.

They fit the heel snugly and without compression, and were the most satisfactory field spurs he ever used, being less liable to breakage, and do not chafe the heel of the boot or shoe. A detachable rowel protector, in the shape of a two-part ring shield passing around and encasing the rowel, was provided, which, when desired, greatly lessened the severity of the spur.

When the proceedings of the 1879 Equipment Board reached the War Department, the Chief of Ordnance reported having 92,000 spurs and straps of the old brass pattern on hand, and although General Sherman and the Secretary of War approved of the Mills spur, the Ordnance Department was allowed to use up the old stock. I am informed that when this stock was about exhausted the War Department's approval of the Mills spur was forgotten and the Ordnance Department continued to manufacture and issue the old pattern, and these were worn until a few years ago, when the present regulation spur was adopted.



Taking advantage of the merits of the Mills spur, the writer in 1903 patented a "spur attachment for leggins," shown in the accompanying cut. Its object was to provide a spur attachment for leggins which permitted the user to quickly remove the yoke and rowel whenever circumstances might render spurs undesirable. This removal was effected by simply turning a lock-bar attached to the yoke and disengaging it from pins projecting from a metallic plate. This plate was riveted to a small thick leather strap, which in turn was stitched to the heel of the leggin, as shown in the cut. The device, however, was never adopted.

Editorial Comment

OUR FIRST CHIEF

BEFORE ANOTHER NUMBER of this publication appears Major General Willard A. Holbrook will have by operation of law, having attained the statutory age limit, passed to the retired list.

The Cavalry Service and the United States Cavalry Association are not saying farewell to their first Chief. He shall always be one of, and the first among, us.

Upon the creation of the office of Chief of Cavalry in 1920, General Holbrook assumed the onus of organizing the functions of his branch. The signal triumph of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States in maintaining its indispensable position in the scheme of national defense, along with the continued steady progress of the development of the Arm, is in itself a sufficient testimonial of the record of General Holbrook. He transmits to his successor an efficient Service, embued with the traditional spirit of the mounted Arm. Under his inspirational guidance the potentialities of the Cavalry have been adequately realized and the possibilities of the corps through his personality have in the eyes of those who were not informed come to be more fully and exactly recognized and definitely appreciated.

Friend, counselor, scholar, gentleman, SOLDIER—we feel the loss of him and we will miss him.

General Holbrook carries with him into his new field of endeavors the earnest and continuing good wishes of each cavalryman—officer and enlisted man.

GENERAL MALIN CRAIG

THE CAVALRY SERVICE and the United States Cavalry Association desire to extend their congratulations to General Malin Craig upon his designation as Chief of Cavalry, effective this month, following the retirement of General Holbrook, and to welcome him to his new duties.

A cavalryman of the first rank, he has, as it were, been loaned for a short period to the Army, and now again returns to his own.

The Middle West has again furnished us with our Chief. General Craig was born August 5, 1875, in St. Joseph, Missouri. Appointed to the Military Academy from Pennsylvania, he was graduated in 1898. He graduated with honors in 1904 from the Infantry and Cavalry School, from the Staff College in the following year, and from the War College in 1910 and 1920. His service has included General Staff duty from April 10 to September, 1912, and from June to August, 1917. He participated in the Santiago Campaign in 1898, the China Relief Expedition in 1900 and in the Philippine Insurrection from 1900 to 1902.

During the World War General Craig served in The Adjutant General's Office and in the Office of the Chief of Staff from June to August, 1917. As

a Colonel he was on duty in the United States and in France until January, 1918, as Chief of Staff in the Forty-first Division. As a Brigadier General, he was successively Chief of Staff, First Army Corps, during the Aisne-Marne, St. Mihiel, and Meuse-Argonne offensives, and of the 3d Army during the march into and occupation of Germany. He also commanded the 166th Infantry Brigade.

He was appointed a Brigadier General, Regular Army, July 3, 1920.

Until his present assignment as Commander of the Coast Defenses of Manila and Subic Bays, General Graig was Commandant of the Cavalry School.

His citation for the Distinguished Service Medal reads: "For exceptionally meritorious and distinguished services. He served in turn as Chief of Staff of a Division, a Corps, and an Army, in each of which capacities he exhibited great ability."

The Cavalry with confidence anticipates under the supervision of General Craig a pleasant continuance of its past and present well rounded activities.

THE AIM OF THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

> "To DISSEMINATE KNOWLEDGE of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States."

The above is what the Constitution of the Association says is its aim and purpose. The Constitution further says that the CAVALRY JOURNAL shall be a "professional and scientific" magazine. The present management believes that it should closely adhere to the above.

Our frequency of publication does not admit of competing with the daily newspapers and civilian published service weeklies. We are not looking for news in the ordinary sense of the word, for news is not thought-out matter. The routine issuances of the War Department, such as orders, bulletins, and circulars, ordinarily do not fall within the JOURNAL'S scope, for that material comes to the attention of the military in their daily duty, so far as it applies to them. Here the JOURNAL tries to avoid a duplication of effort.

The CAVALRY JOURNAL endeavors to obtain from competent persons original material, the product of the writers' own minds, presented in an attractive and interesting form. Information of permanent value is, above all, prized.

The encouragement of the art of writing in the Army is one of the principal endeavors of the JOURNAL.

The JOURNAL does not exist to entertain, amuse, and only in a very small sense to divert. It thus also tries not to enter the field of the conventional magazine. It concentrates on pleasing no particular group. Impressionism if selected is taboo.

The constant endeavor is to publish things that will fulfill its purpose. Every item and illustration is dedicated to that aim. It would seem best conservatively to progress along these lines, and if growth continues it can then be concluded that it is because some real worth inheres in the JOURNAL.

VIGOROUS POLICY

WE BELIEVE that every member of the Association wants a tactful aggressiveness to mark all of our activities. The management is therefore proposing a vigorous policy. There are degrees of vigor and aggressiveness. Since you are in favor of this way of doing things, please try to accept the degree used, for no two men will do a job in exactly the same way. It is hoped that every one will remember that the purpose is to make the Association grow, and will aid in carrying out this idea.

CAPTAIN ROYDEN WILLIAMSON, 1st CAVALRY BRIGADE, IN COLLABORATION WITH CAPTAIN WAYLAND B. AUGUR, WINS PRIZE ESSAY CONTEST

FOURTEEN ESSAYS WERE RECEIVED and considered by a committee of the Executive Council of the U. S. Cavalry Association composed of Colonels James H. Reeves (Cavalry), G. S. C., Herbert B. Crosby, Cavalry, and Major John C. Montgomery (Cavalry), G. S. C.

The winners were announced as follows on May 20:

First prize, $100.00: Captain Royden Williamson, 1st Cavalry Brigade, in collaboration with Captain Wayland B. Augur.

Second prize, $60.00: First Lieutenant W. F. Pride, 9th Cavalry.

Third prize, $40.00: Captain William G. Simmons, 6th Cavalry.

Two other essays were given honorable mention by the judges, that of Colonel A. G. Lott, 8th Cavalry, and one submitted by three officers working together—Captain Charles Cramer and 1st Lieutenants Clayton E. Snyder and George J. Rawlins, all 5th Cavalry.

The following comment was submitted by the judges with their decisions:

> "While the board of judges is of the opinion that none of the plans submitted constitute in themselves a complete plan for the conduct of test in Combat Leadership of Small Cavalry Units, it is, nevertheless, felt that the essays contain many excellent suggestions which should serve as a basis for the final preparation, under the direction of the Chief of Cavalry, of the details of the test desired."

A SUCCESS

SUCCESS is the correct epithet for the U. S. Cavalry Association and JOURNAL. The paid-up membership is increasing slowly as a whole and rapidly in the Reserves and National Guard, where the future field lies. In the last two years the net financial worth of your Association has more than *doubled*. The book and magazine and saddlery departments are steadily expanding, rendering efficient, individual, unduplicated service at a satisfactory profit. You are not carrying a dead horse. You are a member of a producing agency. Do yourself justice by telling the other fellow this.

Enter the 1924 Colorado Endurance Ride

Topics of the Day

ONE HUNDRED PER CENT SUPPORTERS

THE FIRST and Second Machine-Gun Squadrons and Fourth and Eleventh Cavalry are one hundred per cent supporters, every officer and troop a paid subscriber to the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

RESERVE NEW MEMBER CONTEST

THE ASSOCIATION is conducting a contest among the Reserves for new members. The prizes are libraries of books, each worth about $20.00. The division and the regiment or machine-gun squadron in each division getting the most new members, provided the number is over respectively 40 and 5, prior to August 31, 1924, will receive a set of books. In addition, the regiment or machine-gun squadron in the six divisions setting the highest mark for new members in this period, provided the number is over 8, will receive another similarly valuable library.

There are more Reserves in the Association now than ever before—above 330. This is almost solely due to the activity of the Reserve units themselves in selling the Association and JOURNAL to their members. There are still over 2,500 Reserve Cavalry officers eligible whom we need.

TRYOUTS FOR CAVALRY RIFLE AND PISTOL TEAM

THE TRYOUTS for the Cavalry Team are being held at Fort Des Moines, Iowa, again this year. A total of 22 officers and 28 enlisted men have assembled for the competition, preparatory to the National Matches. Lieutenant-Colonel A. H. Davidson is the team captain again.

The following matches will be shot:

No. 1—Cavalry Regimental Team Championship:

Course: The National Rifle Team Match Course, 1924.
Open to: One team of two (2) competitors from each regiment.
Prizes: The team making the highest score will be awarded the Cavalry Regimental Team Championship Trophy, and a bronze medal will be awarded to each member of the team.

No. 2—Cavalry Individual Championship Match:

Course: The National Rifle Team Match Course, 1924.
Open to: All officers, warrant officers, and enlisted men.
Prizes: The individual making the highest score will be awarded the Cavalry Individual Championship Trophy and a gold medal; 2d place, silver medal; 3d place, bronze medal.

No. 3—200-Yard Individual Championship Match:

Course: 20 shots at 200 yards offhand.
Open to: All officers, warrant officers, and enlisted men.
Prizes: The individual making the highest score will be awarded a silver medal; 2d place, bronze medal.

No. 4—1,000-Yard Individual Championship Match:

Course: 20 shots at 1,000 yards. No sighting shots.
Open to: All officers, warrant officers, and enlisted men.
Prizes: The individual making the highest score will be awarded the Fort Bliss Trophy and a silver medal; 2d place, bronze medal.

The individual making the highest aggregate score in the tryout, first elimination with rifle, will be awarded the Holbrook Trophy and a gold medal; 2d place, silver medal; 3d place, bronze medal.

The individual making the highest aggregate score in the tryout for the National Match, Pistol Team, will be awarded a gold medal; 2d place, silver medal; 3d place, bronze medal.

The Cavalry Regimental Team Championship Trophy will be retained by the winning regiment and the other trophies by the organizations to which the winners belong for one year or until the next competition. Should the winner of any trophy not be a member of an organization, the custody of the trophy will be subject to disposition by the Chief of Cavalry.

Should the individual winning a trophy be transferred the trophy will be transferred also and the Chief of Cavalry notified of such action, provided the transfer does not take the individual out of the Cavalry arm. In such case the trophy remains in the cavalry organization from which the individual transferred. Acknowledgment of the receipt of trophies will be made to the Chief of Cavalry by commanding officers concerned.

All medals awarded will become the permanent property of the winner.

No individual can compete for trophies or medals in individual matches who has been a shooting member of the Cavalry or the Cavalry-Engineer Team in more than one of the Cavalry Team Matches of 1921-22-23.

The Captain, National Match Team, Cavalry, has been directed to report to the Chief of Cavalry the winners of these competitions and the disposition made of the trophies.

The Cavalry Team won the second place in the Service Team Match in the National Matches last year at Camp Perry, Ohio.

REMARKABLE RECORD OF TENTH CAVALRY WAGON TRAIN

THE INSPECTOR GENERAL OF THE ARMY is informed by the Commanding General, Eighth Corps Area, that during the past fourteen months the wagon train of the Service Troop, 10th Cavalry, marched 4,156 miles with the loss of but one mule.

THE CAVALRY FUND

THE CALL FOR CONTRIBUTIONS TO THE CAVALRY FUND is being made at this time. As fully outlined in the Annual Report of the Association, mailed to each member in January last, and in the April CAVALRY JOURNAL, this Fund now undertakes to support all activities, except Army Polo Team (under the Central Polo Committee, War Department), such as the Eastern Endurance Ride, of which the Association is a sponsor and which requires a fee of $500 per year, medals for the Cavalry Rifle Teams, the encouragement of the Olympic Team, and any other activities considered appropriate by the Executive Council by whom the Fund is disbursed.

This means that *one* call for funds is made each year for all these matters instead of a request for each of them. It means that a budget is made. Every general and field officer will be asked for $3 and every one of lower grade $1.50. Contributions may be made individually or, where feasible, by units, if so desired. Funds from other sources, as from Cavalry expositions, are welcome. The Reserves and National Guard will be invited again to partake in this work.

The hope is that a working capital can be built up gradually. This will eventuate if all contribute, for the budget is so constructed as to show a surplus each year. Co-operation only is necessary.

Due to the clerical work entailed in this call, and the extremely small force available to handle this labor, only ONE CALL will be made. It is therefore requested by the Executive Council that prompt response be made. The results last year were very gratifying when calls were made for each activity. Now that THE CAVALRY FUND has come into being, there is every expectation that the results will be much greater.

CAVALRY R. O. T. C. ENROLLMENT FOR SECOND SEMESTER

	Course.	
	Basic.	Advanced.
First Corps Area—Massachusetts Agricultural College, Amherst, Mass.	91	17
Norwich University, Northfield, Vt.	58	41
Third Corps Area—Virginia Military Institute, Lexington, Va.	39	24
Fourth Corps Area—University of Georgia, Athens, Ga.	57	9
Fifth Corps Area—Culver Military Academy, Culva, Ind.	44	6
Sixth Corps Area—University of Illinois, Champaign, Ill.	188	26
Michigan Agricultural College, East Lansing, Mich.	49	11
Eighth Corps Area—University of Arizona, Tucson, Ariz.	107	17
New Mexico Military Institute, Roswell, N. Mex.	62	15
Agricultural and Mechanical College of Texas, College Station, Texas	83	23
Ninth Corps Area—Oregon Agricultural College, Corvallis, Oreg	57	11
Totals	835	200

COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE

THE COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE will be held at the Broadmoor Hotel, Colorado, starting August 3, 1924, lasting until August 10, with five days of riding. Horses must reach Broadmoor polo stables August 2. The start and finish of each day's ride, as heretofore, will be at the hotel. the following are the sponsors of the Colorado Endurance Ride: American Remount Association, Arabian Horse Club of America, Horse Association of America, the Kentucky Jocky Club, the Morgan Horse Club, Thoroughbred Horse Association, and the Genesee Valley Breeders' Association.

The judges this year are Major Henry Leonard, Chairman; D. Bryant Turner, Esq., and Lieutenant-Colonel W. H. Neill, Remount Service, Q. M. C., U. S. Army. Pure-breds, cross-breds, and grades are eligible, to be ridden by white males designated by owners. Prizes are: First, $500, the Broadmoor Silver Cup, Blue Ribbon, Arabian Horse Club Medal, Horse Association of America Medal, Morgan Horse Club Medal; Second, $400, Red Ribbon, Horse Association of America Medal, Morgan Horse Club Trophy; Third, $300, Yellow Ribbon, Horse Association of America Medal, Morgan Horse Club Trophy; Fourth, $200, White Ribbon, Horse Association of America Medal; Fifth, $150, Pink Ribbon, Horse Association of America Medal; Sixth, $100, Green Ribbon, Horse Association of America Medal; $100 in gold will be presented to the rider who displays the best horsemanship in the ride, regardless of his place at the finish. An individual silver cup is awarded each year to the winner of the first place and becomes his permanent property. The name of the winning horse, names of his riders and owner, together with his time and condition scores, are engraved on the Broadmoor Cup, which remains permanently at Broadmoor; also, a bronze medal is given by the Horse Association of America to each rider completing successfully the 300-mile endurance ride.

The general conditions are practically identical with those of the Eastern Endurance Ride; which were published in the April, 1924, number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

THE SPANISH CAVALRY

THE ACTIVE SERVICE of the Spanish cavalry at the present time has lead the CAVALRY JOURNAL to make special effort to procure current data on the operations and training in this country.

SUCCESS IN THE MILITARY SERVICE

IN THE COAST ARTILLERY JOURNAL for April, 1914, Major W. K. Wilson, C. A. C., in summing up his pithy article on the above subject, gives as his formula for success in the military service these factors: Desire to succeed, self-confidence, persistence, hard work, patience, cheerfulness, self-control, courage, preparedness, honor, and loyalty. This composition is well worth getting and reading.

CHIEF OF CAVALRY'S RIFLE TEAM

SERGEANT EMORY J. COLE, Troop G, 6th Cavalry, is announced as the member of the Chief of Cavalry's Rifle Team for the 6th Cavalry for the year 1923.

THE ARMY POLO TEAM

MAJOR LOUIS BEARD, Quartermaster Corps, has been selected by the War Department to captain the Army Polo Team which will defend the Junior Championship Cup, at Rumson, New Jersey, in August of this year, which was retained last year at Narragansett Pier, having been won for the first time by the Army Team in 1922. Major Beard will also head the Army Team which it is understood will be invited to England, probably in June, 1925, to play the British Army Team, which was defeated by the Americans last year at the Meadowbrook Club in the International Military Polo Championship. The primary mission of the team is viewed as preparation for the International Military Championship in England in 1925. The secondary aim is the defense of the Junior Cup.

In the past great steps forward in Army polo have been made by the persistent development of a few good players. It has been found unsafe to rely continually on the same men. Therefore it has been decided to find new men. The mount question this year is very difficult, because few horses have been bought by the Government since the war and the majority of those on hand are now worn out. In the past the selection of mounts has been in the hands of local authorities. Lack of understanding as to requirements has sometimes resulted in unsuitable horses being forwarded.

In furtherance of these plans Major Beard was directed by the War Department to make a trip of inspection in order to get first-hand information as to the prospects for material for the Army Team this year and next year. Fort Sam Houston, Fort Bliss, Fort Riley, and Fort Leavenworth were visited. It was made clear to the respective commanding officers by Major Beard that this method was being followed this year, not because of any lack of faith in independent selections, but because it was necessary to make comparisons in order to assemble as economically as possible the most desirable players and horses. The most hearty co-operation was met with from all concerned. It was impressed upon all that every effort was being made to give every one a chance, and that the team selected for the play of 1924 would be with a view to development rather than with a view to selection of a team for a particular tournament. This year's polo team is being selected with the hope that both players and ponies will be developed to a higher point for the general benefit of Army polo.

At some polo centers the officers offered to lend their private mounts to the team. At Kelly Field, in lieu of players and ponies, financial assistance was offered. Commanding officers themselves permitted a selection of as many ponies as were needed from their very best. The polo seen on this trip showed much improvement. The principles of the game seemed to be well understood by even the beginners. Although handicapped by the lack of proper playing field and trained ponies, the games were surprisingly good. In the selection of ponies the high grade of post polo was kept in mind, and only a small percentage of first-class ponies have been taken from each place; it was also hoped that the selection of a pony from an organization would give that unit a closer personal interest in the team.

The personnel and ponies on June 1 were completely assembled at Mitchell Field. The players are: First Lieutenant John A. Smith, Field Artillery, Camp Travis, Texas; Captain C. A. Wilkinson, Cavalry, Fort Leavenworth, Kansas; Captain C. H. Gerhardt, Cavalry, Fort Riley, Kansas; Major J. L. Devers, Field Artillery, West Point, New York; Major A. H. Wilson, Cavalry, West Point, New York; Major L. A. Beard, Quartermaster Corps, Mitchell Field, Long Island.

There are thirty-six ponies obtained from various posts, viz: 8 from West Point, 2 from the Army War College Detachment, 2 from Fort Myer, 4 from Fort Riley (extra pony at Mt. Myer—sick), 1 from Fort Leavenworth, 3 from Fort Sam Houston, 1 from Fort Bliss, 7 from Fort Reno, Oklahoma, 1 loaned by Major S. W. Winfree, 3 private mounts of Captain C. A. Wilkinson, and 4 private mounts of Major L. A. Beard.

The detachment to care for these ponies consists of 1 sergeant in charge, 1 sergeant horseshoer, and 18 privates.

Little opportunity has been had to play so far, due to weather conditions. Each officer has been tentatively assigned his quota of ponies and most of the time has been spent in conditioning ponies and becoming acquainted with them. The same methods of training as those used by former Lieutenant T. H. McCreery are being employed.

The first tournament play will begin at Meadowbrook about June 12, at which time we will compete in both the high and low goal events. This will take up to July. During July special match games will be played on local fields to select the team to defend the Junior Championship Cup at Rumson.

As soon as the weather will permit, there will be regular match play three times a week for all teams on Long Island, including the Army team. This play, together with the opportunity to observe the trial matches for the international, should afford excellent opportunities for development.

The ponies as a whole are a better lot than we have had before. Only a few of the old ponies are back again and some of the good ones are missing, but, considering the string as a whole, it is quite acceptable in any company.

Major Beard, in commenting on the prospects, stated: "It is suggested that the Army as a whole be thanked for their help, without which we could not function, and the team expects to render a good account of itself, even though it will be its first year together."

TRAINING REGULATIONS FOR CAVALRY

THE FOLLOWING TRAINING REGULATIONS for use in Cavalry training have been completed and published to date by the Adjutant General of the Army:

10–5. Doctrines—Principles and Methods, Basic.
50–15. Instruction, Dismounted, without Arms.
50–20. Instruction, Dismounted, with Rifle and Automatic Rifle.
50–45. Instruction, Mounted, without Arms.

50–50. Instruction, Mounted, with Rifle.
50–55. Instruction, Dismounted, with Pistol.
50–60. Instruction, Mounted, with Pistol.
50–65. Instruction, with Saber.
50–70. Saber Exercise (scope).
112–5. First Aid—Outline of First Aid for the Injured and Sick.
113–5. Hygiene—Principles of Personal Hygiene.
145–5. Musketry.
150–5. Marksmanship—Rifle, Individual.
150–10. Marksmanship—Rifle, General.
150–15. Individual Score Book for the Rifle.
150–30. Marksmanship—The Automatic Rifle.
150–35. Marksmanship—Machine-gun.
160–5. Signal Communications for all arms.
165–5. Signal Corps—Wire axis installation and maintenance within the division.
190–5. Topography and Surveying—Map Reading.
190–10. Topography and Surveying—Conventional Signs.
190–15. Topography and Surveying—Military Sketching.
190–30. Topography and Surveying—Use of Maps in Firing.
200–5. Scouting and Patrolling—Dismounted.
240–10. Technique of Machine-gun Fire—Direct Laying.
240–20. Machine-guns—Combat Practice.
300–50. Equipment—Field Ranges—Description—Care and Use.
360–10. Training Remounts.
425–25. The Cavalry Rifle Squad (drill), with Addenda.
425–30. The Cavalry Rifle Platoon (drill).
425–35. The Cavalry Machine Rifle Squad and Platoon (drill).
425–45. The Cavalry Troop (drill).
425–50. The Cavalry Squadron (drill).
425–55. The Regiment (drill).
425–60. Duties of Machine-gun Personnel.

These training regulations take the place of the Cavalry Drill Regulations of 1916. Photographic illustrations are quite generally used in these pamphlets. Due to lack of funds, some regulations which have been approved are not yet printed. Some of which have been printed are out of print temporarily, also due to exhausted appropriations. In such cases it is suggested that a new request be made about once a month.

In so far as available, they are issued to the Reserves and National Guards, as well as the Regular Army. They cost only $0.05 per pamphlet, as a general thing, but a few are listed at $0.10. They are obtainable from the Superintendent of Public Documents. Post-office money order is the customary way to remit. Checks are not acceptable.

REPORT OF REMOUNT SERVICE

HORSEMEN AND BREEDERS will shortly receive the report issued by the Remount Service, now coming to be one of the important non-military activities of the Army, as far as the public is concerned. This service now has on hand 352 stallions, of whom 287 are thoroughbreds, all of which are at the disposal of farmers and horse-breeders. They are located at breeding centers throughout 40 States. Twelve more stallions and one brood mare, all gifts, were added during the past year, in addition to 14 mares, 4 yearlings and 10 weanlings, all thoroughbreds, presented to the Army by Miss Anita M. Baldwin, owner of the Santa Anita Rancho, California. As the Remount Service reports:

> "The breeding plan, operated by the Remount Service of the Quartermaster Corps of the Army, has been in operation for three full years, with most encouraging results. Beginning with 159 stallions at stud in 1921, increased to 219 in 1922, there are at stud for the current breeding season over 300 stallions. Hundreds of applications for stallions are constantly pending—a circumstance which indicates a remarkable growth of public interest in the breeding of light horses since the inauguration of the breeding plan.
>
> "During the breeding season of 1921 there were bred 4,129 mares to 159 stallions, with a reported get of 1,777 foals, or approximately 43 per cent. For the breeding season of 1922, 7,000 mares were bred to 219 stallions, with a reported get of 2,700. During the breeding season of 1923 approximately 8,000 mares were bred to 259 stallions. While complete reports as to the foals obtained from the breeding in 1923 are not as yet available, it is estimated that at least 3,200 foals will result from that breeding.
>
> "From the results as above reported, it is confidently expected that within the lapse of a comparatively short period of time, if the Remount breeding operations so auspiciously began are continued without interruption, there will be in the country a considerable number of excellent half-bred horses, which when placed on the market will command exceedingly good prices and will do much to meet the ever-growing demand for horses for the farm, for cow horses, for hunters, and for polo ponies. At least two famous race-horses have been sired by Remount stallions, viz., *Sally's Alley*, by *Allumeur*, and *Wise Counselor*, by *Mentor*."

CHANGES OF ADDRESS

AFTER MUCH STUDY and experiment of the various ways in which it is possible to keep a mailing list up to date, the CAVALRY JOURNAL decided about two years ago to adopt the general policy of changing all addresses in accordance with the latest Army List and Directory appearing before date of publication of the CAVALRY JOURNAL. When subscribers send in changes of address these requests, of course, take precedence. Last-minute changes are effected by checking up from the records of the Office of the Chief of Cavalry. This step is especially efficacious for the July issue, in consideration of the great number of changes of station in the summer, because the Army List and Directory appears about May 10 (dated May 1) and the JOURNAL is mailed about June 29 or a few days earlier. The effectiveness of the system is apparent upon examination of the figures; of the 2,000 copies of the JOURNAL mailed each issue, not over ten ever come back to the Association headquarters.

New Books Reviewed

Manual of Military Training. By Col. J. A. Moss and J. W. Lang. Vol. I, 1,036 pages, 91 illus.; Vol. II, 789 pages, 251 illus., index. George Banta Publishing Company, 1923. (Price, $2.50 per volume.)

Review by Brigadier-General E. J. McClernand, U. S. A., Retired

The National Defense Act gave us a small Regular Army, a National Guard, an Organized Reserve, and, for the first time in our history, a definite military policy.

With the passage of the said act the importance of providing for suitable training was so evident that, in addition to the military schools and colleges throughout the country, provision was made for a Reserve Officers' Training Corps and the Citizens' Military Training Camps, with the basic idea of expanding a comparatively small peace establishment into a great war army. To accomplish this successfully will require not only a corps of highly educated professional officers, but, in addition, an assured supply of reserve officers possessing intelligence, with adequate training. The time that can be allotted for this training being necessarily limited, it is essential that the instruction be intensive and well thought out. The Manual of Military Training will aid materially in this work. While its usefulness will be greatest with the Reserve Officers' Training Corps and the Citizens' Military Training Camps, it will also be of great value to the National Guard and in no small measure to the Regular Army.

The Manual is intended for the infantry, but it also contains much of value to other arms. The Reserve Officers' Training Corps Basic Course (Infantry) and the Red and White Courses Citizens of the Military Training Camps are covered in the first volume, and the Advance Course for the former, with the Blue Course for the latter, in the second, with much additional matter in each volume.

Military courtesy and discipline, as important today as in the time of the Cæsars, are properly defined and stressed in the early pages, with frequent reference thereto later, as opportunity offers.

The aforementioned subjects and the courses prescribed by the War Department are ably treated and their scope broadened to include the essentials of what a captain should know in order to make his company an efficient fighting machine. Likewise the battalion and regimental commanders will find much of value to themselves in the Manual, and indeed officers of all arms and grades may study it to advantage.

The importance of trained instructors in the early use of both volumes is manifest, but after the subjects treated have been properly explained in lectures and demonstrated on the drill ground and in the field, they can be mastered by even the busy man, with average education, and will afterwards serve as valuable books of reference.

Grounding the soldier thoroughly in his elementary instruction, the Manual carries him forward, in a progressive and logical way, until he is turned out a finished infantryman, an adept in the use of his rifle and the other arms handled directly by the infantry. Beyond the school of the company and the usual course in marksmanship, some of the other subjects treated for his benefit are physical training, musketry, guard duty, military hygiene, individual cooking, combat principles, scouting and patrolling, and much else of value.

All of the subjects enumerated in the foregoing paragraph enter, of course, into the elementary education of the officer; but of necessity he is carried farther, and well-digested and tersely written chapters have been prepared for him on infantry drill regulations, munitions, field fortifications, wire entanglements, camouflage, the machine-gun, one-pounder and light mortar, tactics, administration, military law, and other subjects essential to his education.

The authors acknowledge their indebtedness, evidently great, to the Infantry School at Fort Benning, and they themselves are to be congratulated upon the completeness of their labors.

If taken seriously, the Manual will go far in helping us to secure a dependable army.

NEW BOOKS REVIEWED

Veterinary Notes: The Stableman's Companion. By Major R. S. Timmis, D. S. O., Royal Canadian Dragoons. 107 pages, index, photos, 5⅝ x 4¼ inches. Forster Groom & Co., Ltd., London. (Price, 2 shillings.)

This pocket-size booklet is offered by a well-known author in the hope that it may aid in the care of animals, when suffering from minor ailments and other troubles, until professional assistance can be had. The treatment of the subject is trite and in simple language, so that almost any one can grasp what is said. Chapters include "Drugs and Their Administration," "A Condensed Pharmacopœia," "Diseases That Are Commonly Called Colics," "Diseases of the Lungs and Respiratory Tract," "Diseases of the Heart, Blood, and Lymphatic Systems," "Fevers and Their Diseases," "Diseases of the Skin," "Infectious and Non-infectious," and "General Notes for the Horsekeeper." The work is illustrated with excellent photographs of champion specimens of the types of horses. In a few words detailed directions are given for the administration of medicines and other aid. The index enables one at once to find the particular information desired. Since the United States Government book, "The Army Horse in Accident and Disease," is now out of print, this new effort is timely and seems to cover the same ground.

Bolivar. By *Major* Henry Rowan Lemly, U. S. A., retired. Bibliography, illustrated, appendix, index, 452 pages. The Stratford Co., 1923. (Price, $4.00.)

Review by Lieutenant-Colonel Kerr T. Riggs (Cavalry), G. S. C.

The average American knows that the countries of the northern part of South America won their independence from Spain about a hundred years ago, and that the recognition of their independence by the United States was quickly followed by the enunciation of the Monroe Doctrine; he also knows that Simon Bolivar was the great leader in the revolutions which overthrew the Spanish power; but most of us are lacking in knowledge of the military history of the campaigns for independence and of the character of the remarkable man who won the unquestioned title of Liberator of Venesuela, Colombia, Ecuador, Peru, and Bolivia. Our ignorance is perhaps excusable because of the scarcity of readable accounts in English of this critical and extremely interesting period of South American history.

Major Lemly's book was written after long residence in South America, where he had access to all the sources of information. The book is a biography of Bolivar, and Bolivar was the principal figure in almost every important event in South American history from 1813 until his death, in 1830. It consists essentially of an interesting and carefully prepared chronological account, with illuminating comments. Its last chapter is a symposium of the estimates of Bolivar's character by writers of all nations. Because of the irregular nature of the operations, the small forces engaged, and the lack of training of the troops on both sides, few lessons in strategy or tactics are to be learned from Bolivar's campaigns. However, as a study of an important, but generally neglected, portion of world history and a portrayal of the character of the great Venesuelan hero, the book is of real value to military man and civilian alike.

Simon Bolivar was born in Caracas in 1783. Both of his parents were of noble birth and ample fortune. He was educated in Spain, spent several years in travel in Europe during the period of Napoleonic wars, and visited the United States before returning home to lead the life of a wealthy planter. Soon after his arrival in Venesuela, Bolivar identified himself with the cause of independence, which had agitated the Spanish colonies for some years, and received a colonel's commission from the revolutionary junta. Venezuela declared its independence in 1811, but Spanish authority was soon reestablished and Bolivar was forced to seek safety in the island of Curaçao. Hearing the next year of important revolutionary movements in New Granada (now Colombia), he joined the Colombian revolutionists and obtained command of an important expedition into the interior. On this expedition he was highly successful, capturing town

after town from the Spaniards and finally pushing on into Venezuela, although the Colombian revolutionary government had refused to authorize him to do so. He made a triumphal entry into Caracas in August, 1813.

From this time on, Bolivar was universally recognized as the foremost patriot and hope of South America, and the remainder of his life was devoted to the destruction of the Spanish power and the organization of governments to take its place. The story of the long struggle against heavy odds, in which Bolivar spent his great fortune and wore out his life, is too long to be set down here. When victory over the Spanish forces was finally complete, Bolivar made repeated attempts to lay down his power and retire to private life, but this was always prevented by the political dissensions which arose in various parts of the country and which required his presence to restore orderly government. Accused by his enemies of desiring to set up a monarchy and deserted and betrayed by some of his most powerful subordinates, the Liberator died in 1830, a temporarily discredited man and a victim of the traditional ingratitude of republics.

THE PROFESSION OF ARMS. By Captain Elbridge Colby, Inf., U. S. A. 183 pages. D. Appleton & Co., 1924. (Price, $1.50.)

This book gives a general description of what American military life is, what it stands for, and what it tries to accomplish. It will be of benefit to young men who are contemplating entering the Army as a career. To many civilians it will give a picture of the Army which will dissipate certain misconceptions they may entertain as to the democracy of our national defense project. The work treats of the army educational system, has chapters on the various arms, their purposes and uses, and emphasizes the value of preparedness. The book is a bit different from others along the same general lines. It will help to fill a place which has had many unoccupied corners.

"WARS OF THE AMERICAN NATION. The military history of the United States from early colonial times to the end of the World War, with comments on the strategy and tactics of our military operations, the development of our military policy and its influence on history." By P. S. Bond, Lieutenant-Colonel, U. S. Army, and Enoch B. Garey, LL. D., President of St. John's College, Annapolis, Md. The New Military Library, Annapolis, Maryland, 1923. 207 pages, illustrated with 46 battle maps and 18 scenes. (Price, $2.00.)

Reviewed by Colonel John R. M. Taylor, U. S. A., Retired

In this the authors have written a good book and supplied it with good maps. The illustrations might well have been omitted. It does not follow that there are not errors of statement, like the one on page 172, that the United States force which occupied Manila was "all untrained volunteers," nor that one necessarily agrees with the opinions expressed upon the highly controversial questions involved; but the authors have gone ahead and produced a book in place of talking about it, and a book on the subject was needed. It is fundamentally an argument for military preparation, and the argument is sound, but it may be doubted whether universal training and a regular establishment of 300,000 men is in the sphere of practical politics. Apart from its cost, it is very doubtful whether 300,000 men can be obtained by voluntary enlistment, while it is even more improbable that the United States can adopt compulsory service in time of peace. Since the Revolution, we have had five major wars in 134 years. However unanswerable were the arguments for prior military preparation when made at the beginning of each of these wars, the intervals between them have always been enough to produce an enormous amount of forgetting. For no long period have we had an obvious enemy.

However, for shorter periods we have had probable enemies, and in the past we have not taken advantage of these periods for the necessary preparation. We at last have machinery designed to take advantage of such periods. It is logical to maintain a position in readiness. It is equally logical to determine what the readiness is for.

"For War" is not sufficient; there are so many different wars. Indeed, we are rather of the habit of thinking of "war" as we might think of "shooting" without any qualification of what we were going to shoot; yet, obviously, it makes a difference whether you are going to shoot quails or elephants.

It is a truism that war is a continuance of policy. With us it is extremely improbable that any group of military men can originate policy. The most they can do is to point out that a certain policy will probably lead, not to war in general, but to a particular war, waged under certain conditions and in a definite theater of operations. If this is accepted in time, the war can be provided for in advance. It does not seem probable that in any near future we shall be able to do much more than this in the way of large-scale military preparation. We have not done this much in the past.

After all, the amount spent upon an army is fundamentally insurance. It is one of the duties of the regular establishment to sell this insurance, but in doing so it must remember that insurance costs money, and that, after all, it may be an unnecessary expense. However sincere and enthusiastic the agent may be, he weakens his position when in New York, for example, he advocates a policy covering fire insurance and burglar insurance and earthquake insurance and cyclone insurance and insurance against having twins. Accordingly, the agent who hopes to interest a client had best be ready to inform him just what form of insurance he needs most and how much it will cost. If the cost seems prohibitive, he will not place the policy. The agent must always be ready to meet the objection that, although insurance is an excellent thing—perhaps a necessary thing—after all, the prospect cannot put all his income into insurance, because he has to keep some of his income on which to do business.

THE HORSE. By William S. Tevis, Jr. 97 pages. Privately printed. Clifford Publishing Co., San Francisco, Calif., 1922. (Price, $1.50.)

A light treatise on the horse, suited for persons desiring a rather general introduction to the subject. It is written in a pleasing manner, principally, it would seem, from the personal experiences of the author on his ranch, and it deals rather with the cowboy type of horse. Grip seems to this horseman to be the principal means of keeping one's seat. He advises teaching children to ride at tender ages, beginning at, say, four. There are some interesting remarks on the psychology of the horse and of what he is capable. A great many of the methods prescribed for breaking and riding do not apply to the United States Army, but undoubtedly they have their use in the environment in which the author has passed his life.

SWIMMING SOLDIERS. By Captain Elbridge Colby, Infantry. 128 pages, limp binding, over 100 drawings. Quartermaster Association, Washington, D. C. (Price, $1.25.)

The purpose of the author is to impress the desirability of teaching soldiers to swim, to show how to teach them to swim, to advance methods of promoting and regulating swimming in commands, and to call attention to occasions when swimming can be used for military purposes.

The strokes are described and illustrated by drawings. Schemes for competitions are outlined. Rules for swimming pools are suggested. Life saving is exhaustively treated.

The writer emphasizes that the mobility of a unit is increased which is composed by men who can swim. Methods for overcoming disadvantages of swimming with military equipments are discussed.

The booklet is well gotten up and fills a need, being especially valuable because of its illustrations.

Foreign Military Journals

Cavalry Journal (British), April, 1924.

In an article entitled "Mobile Division of the Future," it is stated that the ideal mobile force must have the maximum of mobility combined with the greatest possible hitting power and a minimum of vulnerability. The gist of the writer's remarks is that the weight on the horses' backs must be decreased and the squadron property must be lessened. It is up to the auxiliary arms—ordnance, aircraft, armored cars, artillery, whippets, anti-aircraft—to develop respectively the transportation that can keep up, the strategic reconnaissance, flank protection, howitzers on tractors, more reliable communication methods, and a real defense against hostile planes. Suitable formations will solve the problem of vulnerability, since concentration for cavalry does not mean having a brigade in one field; the regiments can be separated by a mile; and likewise for the squadrons. The "resolute man on the galloping horse" will still do the job. Leadership for the cavalry is the most important item and should above all be most cultivated.

An account of the thrilling charge of the Dorset Yeomanry at Agagia, in the Libyan Desert in November, 1915, is told by an eyewitness. The Senussi tribe, accompanied by some Turks and Germans, were gotten out of their position into the open, and then, from a distance of 1,200 to 1,400 yards, into the teeth of machine-guns, they were charged, after a steady advance up to within 50 yards of their lines. The Yeomanry routed them and killed many with the sword. The captured Turkish General Gaafar Pasha said, after he had gotten over his shock and was inclined to be contemptuous, "C'était magnifique, mais ce n'est pas selon les règles"; and then he added, "It is only the British cavalry who would have done that."

Colonel E. D. Miller once more gives of his polo wisdom in thirteen pages on training of young players in the cavalry. Polo teaches, besides horsemanship of the highest utility, quick thinking, etc.; also team play, unselfishness, esprit de corps—all essentials of an officer. He maintains that the cavalryman has many advantages in his chance to learn polo, in the way of free mounts, free forage and keep, free grooms, regimental and post clubs to pay traveling expenses, and skilled instructors. These are distinct reasons why cavalrymen should begin playing at once upon joining their regiments. He emphasizes that the potentialities of good instruction are rarely realized in the army today. There are good players in almost every unit, and they should take the young officer in hand at once. Polo should be as much a part of a cavalryman's education as equitation.

Journal of the Royal United Service Institution, May, 1924.

The leading article in this number deals with the subject *Air Strategy*. It is a valiant attempt by Wing Commander Edmonds, of the British Air Service, to put his arm on a par with the Army and the Navy of the British Empire as an agency of defense, making them three agencies instead of two. As the critics at the lecture pointed out, although the gentleman covered his subject very generally and shows a deep knowledge of strategy, he failed to appreciate that the enemy will, too, have likely almost as efficient an air service. His first blow is to be the decisive one. The enemy's morale is to be at once broken. Peace will follow because of an awe-stricken population. The airplane is only one of the inventions of man. War has been won always by the man on the ground. It likely always will. Nature does not give its rewards to man so easily. The area to be fought over has been widened and lengthened by advances in science. That is about all. The preliminaries are more extensive. The grand battle starts sooner, with the combatants at greater distances from each other. When all these agencies are neutralized, then comes the close-in work, which makes the decision. History proves all this conclusively. The lecturer is forecasting what the future will bring. He is enthusiastic about his arm. But a knowledge of the past is essential to a good prognosticator.

FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS

Journal of the United Service Institution of India, April, 1924.

An officer of field rank suggests that the retiring age limits are at present too high. He bases his contention on the fact that in the late war commands were held by far younger men. War is the only criterion of an army's efficiency, and this writer bases his conclusions on war practices. He does not recommend that the retiring ages be lowered to correspond to the average age of the various ranks during the late war, but suggests a middle point between the war figures and the present retiring age. The retired list would not be unduly loaded, so as to cause adverse comment and legislation, and promotion would be speeded up, the latter always a necessity in peace time.

The Royal Engineers Journal, June, 1924.

This number is noteworthy for its good section devoted to the review of military journals, containing over thirty pages. A new British magazine, *The Fighting Forces*, edited by Lieutenant-Colonel F. E. Whitton, is announced, a quarterly for the British Army, Navy and Air Force. The contents are appraised as quite varied and able, mostly in very short articles.

This issue of the *Royal Engineers Journal* reviews the leading French, German, Swiss, and Spanish language military periodicals.

Revue de Cavalerie, September-October, 1923.

In a continuation of the study on "Cavalry and Aviation," it is emphasized that the latter has made surer the communication between the former and the larger units of the field force.

The author concludes that a special type of aviation is necessary for cavalry, and an aviation especially equipped. The air service and the cavalry are complementary. The air force increases the rapidity of maneuver of the cavalry, makes its reserves more mobile, and by this increased mobility supplies the *sine qua non* of success—a real arm of maneuver.

In a glorification of the horse as a means to be utilized by the individual to gain the physique and morale necessary for military success, it is pointed out that the cavalry, more than any other arm, must know how to *dare*, especially in the following up of a victory. It is urged that equestrian sports encourage in the officer the taste for risk, and thus are alone valuable for the cavalry as a training media.

A very full description is given of the VIIIe Olympiade, to be held in Paris this year, showing by drawings the types of obstacles and the various dimensions of the same.

Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires, October, 1923.

In this number the fourth and last installment of the article on tanks appears. Small groups of tanks have an undoubted mission with an advance guard. They do not patrol; they must have at least a definite task to accomplish. They are especially adapted to taking part in the first contacts with the enemy, and to assisting in the preliminary work of forcing the enemy to disclose his dispositions, strength, and present intentions. Tanks will generally be useful on a front of this kind, where there is a series of local engagements leading up to an assault.

Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires, November, 1923.

This number contains a discussion of the political mistake of the invasion of Belgium in the World War. Among the indirect results, the author mentions the wave of resentment which ran through the United States, intensified by ex-President Roosevelt, and how the exponent of the strenuous life prepared us for the intervention which was

bound to cope. It was then that we poured our resources into the Allies' magazines, without which they would not have been able to withstand the superior forces with which they were being confronted. The writer says that the words of Roosevelt, spoken in those momentous days, are not able to rest, but will ever echo.

Revue Militaire Générale, October, 1923.

Jean Fleurier, in an article entitled *Insomnies*, wonders whether the tendency of the cavalry in late years to fight less on horseback, considering the whole field of cavalry work, is due to a decadence of manliness or to a more tenacious holding to life. He cites the fact that the peoples who still charge on horseback as a normal method of attack are rather primitive. He thinks that machine-guns and the other modern advances in warfare are not the main causes of this change in tactics of cavalry. He emphasizes that to charge it is necessary to *dare*, and above all to dare, without so much deliberation, at *once*.

By Captain Royden Williamson, Fifth Cavalry

La Revue de Cavalerie, January-February, 1924.

To students and graduates of the Cavalry School, inculcated as they are with the principles of the jumping seat as taught at Riley, this number of the *Revue* is of unusual interest for the absorbing study it contains by L. de Sevy on the mechanics of jumping. This author is without a peer in his researches in theoretical equitation. His article is illustrated with a series of photographs taken with a slow-motion camera, and his analyses confirm in toto the Riley teaching.

It is not the rider who rises from the saddle at the take-off, M. de Sevy demonstrates, but the saddle which drops from beneath the rider.

"Thus, at the precise instant when the hind quarters are flexed," he declares, "the rider, momentarily deprived, by reason of the inclination and loss of contact with his saddle, and consequently of his habitual means of entrainment, undergoes a double crisis of both entrainment and impulsion. In these conditions all evidence proclaims that the rider must necessarily and in ample time be sufficiently forward on his mount to be with it at the completion of its propulsive effect. Then the recoil to which he is subjected, instead of displacing him, replaces him in the saddle as it resumes its horisontal position."

How this actually takes place is pointed out in an analytical discussion of a series of thirty-two instantaneous, slow-motion pictures of *Lady's Memory*, Commandant Hornent up, a few days before this horse, clearing 2 meters 10, won the high jumping championship at the Paris Concours Hippique.

"In order always to be 'with his horse,' the rider ought to dispose of the same means of impulsion as it does," M. de Sevy contends. "Thus two dancers, moving to the same rhythm, are ever light one to the other, having at the same moment the same point of contact with the floor and the same impulsion. But since this is impossible, the horseman can hope to be with his horse at the end of its effort only by having impeded it to the least possible degree and by having been himself disturbed to the least degree."

It is impossible in this very brief synopsis to touch upon all the points elucidated in this article or the deductions which the author makes. A number of illustrations, showing effects through correct and incorrect positions, conclude this illuminating study. It is to be noted that little or no mention is made of soft contact with the mouth throughout the jump or of the maintenance of the forward position away from the jump, either in the text or in the comments on the illustrations, both of which are so constantly insisted upon at Riley. On the other hand, there is nothing to indicate that these details are at variance with this author's views.

"Liaison between Cavalry and Aviation," and how they shall attain the necessary combination in missions of discovery, in view of their essentially different characteristics, is discussed by Commandant de Mesmay.

"The Italian Cavalry at Vittorio-Veneto," by Lieutenant-Colonel Prioux, is based upon reports of the Italian high command and a study by the Italian general staff, but it offers nothing not already presented in a recent account of this campaign published in the CAVALRY JOURNAL for January, 1923.

An account of the operation of La Brigade de Chasseurs d'Afrique on the Strouma, August, 1916, by Captain Tainturier, gives a typical example of the rôle of cavalry at the beginning of a period of operations in a war of movement, and Lieutenant de Foucaucourt's article on the use of armored cars in Syria during the French occupation is valuable, but horsemen and horse masters will find of greater practical suggestion the notes on the results obtained from feeding cavalry horses with certain forms of seaweed, by General Descoins, and Veterinarian Brocq-Rousseu's comments thereon. The experience gained by a regiment of Greek cavalry, the mounts of which were restored to vigor after a period of impoverishment and debility, is vitally interesting.

Polo continues to make remarkable progress in the French service, to judge by the accounts given of the matches and teams of 1923, and the report on the Championnat International du Cheval d'Armes of the Army of the Rhine indicates that good horses and fine horsemen are not lacking in the French service any more in this motor-ridden age than of yore.

La Revue Militaire Générale, November 15, 1923.

It is refreshing to find how strong is the defense of the cavalry when we turn to the fundamentalists. On this account the most interesting article in this number to members of the cavalry service is that of Captain R. Baillot on the life and influence of a teacher of masters, General Maillard. Having served with exceptional distinction in the war of '70 and in Algeria, this officer was a major in the 76th of the line when he was called to the École-de-Guerre. There his brilliant qualities led to his appointment as professor of infantry tactics, and his profound studies, the finesse of his observations, and his great facility of elocution won him a remarkable reputation among the masters of the military art.

Is is as a moulder of men that General Maillard was particularly notable. During the nine years that he held this chair he had as students in his classes Marshal Foch, 1885-87; Marshal Franchet d'Esperey, 1882-84; General Maistre, 1885-87; Marshal Pétain, 1888-90; Marshal Fayolle, 1889-90. The influence of his teaching may be summed up in the quotation the author gives:

"The secret of victory," said Maillard, "does not lie only in maneuver, it lies in moral force. This force, old as the world yet ever young, more redoubtable than cannon or rifle, ready to spring surprises, animates the masses and prepares them for the great sacrifices which victory demands."

Maillard thus was the preceptor of France's marshals and leaders among the victors of 1918. But it is his attitude toward the mounted arm which chiefly interests us. A teacher wherever he went, General Maillard used to converse with such charm, such eminent authority and firm impress of kindliness, that when he commanded the 5th Infantry Brigade at Sedan in 1895 all the officers of the dragoon regiments there would flock to listen to him. He would discuss the rôle of the opposing cavalries in the battles around Metz, narrating the facts and commenting upon them with criticisms of unimpeachable discernment.

"He, who knew little of horses and who no longer rode," writes Captain Baillot, "had faith in the cavalry, because he comprehended admirably its rôle. Guided by logic and good sense, he strove ever to bring to light, with the possibilities of the arm when animated by the spirit of rational offensive, the value of its morale. As witness to the high

[illegible] in 1870, he would cite incidents he himself had witnessed, such as the time when our dragoons and mounted riflemen took off their smart uniforms of white [illegible] which were being ruined by the rain the morning of Rezonville. The teachings of the master have been taken to heart, the doctrine rests, and thus has been left the salutary influence of General Mirlland on the French cavalry."

Mirlland died in 1902, but his work lives after him.

Contrary to popular opinion during the war that the Central Powers were enjoying a marked advantage in having early achieved that unity of command which the Allies attained only when the great drive on Amiens in March, 1918, led at once to the famous agreement at Doullens, Captain de Gaulle shows how this was not so. In a most enlightening essay, he exposes how the weaknesses of spirit and of heart of certain personalities prevented during more than two years the establishment of single command among the forces of the two Imperial governments, finally when attained only to be reduced to nothing upon the death of Francis Joseph and the Emperor Charles' weak inauguration of political and strategic policy of renunciation of victory.

The chief of the Austro-Hungarian general staff, Marshal Conrad von Hotzendorf, did not always see eye to eye with Falkenhayn, and was only maintained in power by his favor with the old emperor. With Hindenburg and Ludendorff his relations were more amicable, but mutual jealousies and double dealing, which so greatly irritated the Austrian general staff as seriously to compromise the campaigns on the San and in the Carpathians, were the rule.

The first installment of this most illuminating article entitled "L'Envers d'un Decor" appears in this number.

"The German Infantry, Its Combat Procedure," by Commandant Pujo; the second installment of "The Strategy of Ludendorff on the Russian Front," by General Camon, and the conclusion of Commandant Charbonneau's "The Maneuver of a Wing During the War of 1914-18; the operations of the 1st Colonial Corps from the offensive of the spring of 1917" also appear in this issue.

Revue Militaire Generale, December 15, 1923.

Cavalry students, quite as much as infantrymen, will find profit in Commandant Padovani's account of the historical development of the French infantry, which forms the leading article in this number.

No one, of whatever arm he may be, can lay claim to the name of soldier who does not know something of the process of evolution by which the "Queen of Battles" has been formed. With each augmentation of fire power and increase of range in infantry weapons, the unit of combat has descended, from battalion to company, company to platoon and section, finally to arrive at the little unit forming the combat group. Thus the evolution of combat procedure has proceeded in a normal manner. So, too, the means of combat have been governed by a natural law which man in war has ever obeyed. He wishes to kill without himself being killed.

Thus, with the improvement in fire power, protective means to render him invulnerable gave way to increased confidence in the effectiveness of fire as his best protection. The history of infantry has been an oscillation between these two conceptions.

But in 1918, as the author points out, the experience of the war brought a renewed demand for personal protection over and above rapidity and range of fire. The light tank was the answer to this demand.

"Yet man himself is his own first arm," as Commandant Padovani says in conclusion. "War is waged by materials, but the victory is won by the infantry's morale."

"The Strategy of Ludendorff on the Russian Front," by General Camon, and "Combat Procedure of the German Infantry," by Commandant Pujo, are continued in this number. Captain de Gaulle's "L'Envers d'un Decor," on the difficulties of the Central Powers in obtaining unity of command, is concluded.

Revue Militaire Generale, January 15, 1924.

The fourth installment of General Camon's study, "The Strategy of Ludendorff on the Russian Front," published in this number, is peculiarly interesting because of the references to the employment by Ludendorff of his cavalry in the Vilna campaign. This study is based upon the recently published books of Ludendorff, Hindenburg, and Falkenhayn, and it would be hopeless to attempt adequately to review so detailed an account of these great operations in the space here allotted. Suffice it, then, to glance at the general outline of the Vilna operation.

The attack on Kovno took place August 16, 1915. Despite insufficient effectives, Ludendorff decided on the Vilna maneuver. The plan was as follows: to pierce with a powerful shock mass the Russian front in order to reach, in rear of the Russian right at Vilna, Molodetschno and Minsk, the three principal lines of rail supply of these Russian armies, and thus provoke their retreat in disorder. Then, with the shock mass well in hand, to crush successively those Russian corps which might be unable to hold together in a general action, drive what remained of them where they would be surrounded as far as the marshes of Pripet by all the German forces.

To produce the disorder requisite to success, it was necessary that the shock mass when in rear of the Russian right take the Grand Duke by surprise. So the shock mass was to be preceded by cavalry divisions supported by infantry in trucks. This cavalry was to break through the breaches effected by the infantry and, deploying fan-wise, in the rear, destroy the railroads as far back as possible.

The maneuver, as we know, did not give all the results expected. The Russians, who had three armies echeloned in the direction of Petrograd, were not surrounded and a stalemate resulted, although the immensely rich region of Lods fell into German hands. But the operation was typically Napoleonic in conception and strategy, a drive against the enemy lines of communication. And, as General Camon indicates, if the methods of Napoleon did not give in 1914-15 the results that they did in 1812, it was not because the means of war were so different, but because of the incomprehension of Moltke on the western front and of Falkenhayn on the eastern.

"And therein," he writes, "is a precious evidence of the perenniality of strategic form and a powerful argument in favor of the study of military history."

"Was the Withdrawal of the Belgian Army on Antwerp in August, 1914, an Error?" is the title of an academic controversy which has been rampant in the military press for several months. The attempt of a French writer to prove that it was is effectively and conclusively countered in this number of the *Revue* by Colonel Nuyten, his presentation of the subject having been begun in the preceding issue. He staunchly defends the plan of campaign of King Albert in his retirement to the Antwerp position as affording a means of placing the Belgian Army on the flank of the German enveloping movement through Belgium, and contends that had the King acceded to the demands of the French High Command to fall back on Mons, the Belgian forces would have been engulfed, the battle of the Yser would never have been fought, and in all probability the channel ports would have been retrievably lost to the Allies.

"The Russo-Rumanian Campaign of 1917," by Colonel Bujac, throws interesting light upon the employment of von Schettow's cavalry against the retreating Rumanians in their move toward the Sereth. The cavalry feature of this study, which is continued and concluded in the subsequent issue, teaches the ineffectiveness of the cavalry mass when allowed to run down.

Lieutenant-Colonel Jess's essay, "Les Grandes Manoeuvres," contains much valuable suggestion for the planning of large maneuvers in America. He submits a plan for the utmost utilization of time, with a minimum of effort on the part of the troops employed, to the end that the fullest possible instruction may be accomplished.

Revue Militaire Generale, March 15, 1924.

Of foremost interest to American readers in this number is that of Commandant Janet's detailed study of the attack of the 10th Colonial Division in the second battle of Champagne, September 25, 1915. As this division formed part of the 2d French Colonial Corps, General Blondlat, which participated as part of the 1st American Army at St. Mihiel, its operations possess a special interest. The 2d Cavalry Corps, in three divisions, acted as reserve to the 6th Corps, forming the second line to the 2d Colonial Corps in this operation, the most important engaged in by the French forces between the commencement of the stabilization of the front and the Verdun attack. The account is in great tactical detail and affords many lessons of exceptional value.

Militar Wochenblatt, February 5, 1924.

Those who point to the World War in support of their arguments on the uselessness of cavalry stand confronted and confounded on all sides. For even in Germany, which seeks by all the means which existing circumstances forced upon it by the terms of the Treaty of Versailles to perfect to the utmost the military forces allowed to it, is not without strong advocates of the cavalry arm. Friedrich Payer, vice-chancellor of the late imperial government, according to the *Wochenblatt*, in this number, writes in his memoirs:

"Conscientious patriots cannot to the present day forgive the Reichstag for reducing by several regiments the peace strength of the cavalry, in view of the proven necessity for this branch during the late war." And Payer's views concur with those of other prominent officers.

"We, the people of Germany," he writes, "are only able to discuss these questions academically. For the Treaty of Versailles dictated the organization of our army down to the smallest details, thereby laying down the rules of strength proportion between the cavalry and other arms. It is, therefore, gratifying that Oberleutnant G. Brandt should give his experience in the employment of cavalry during the recent war and show the cavalry's success.

"The result of his studies is his prophesy of a great future for cavalry. Should its strength be diminished, he holds that it will have to be recreated."

After discussing cavalry limitations and the care which the arm requires, this writer goes on to say:

"To command so difficult a weapon as a large cavalry unit an artist is necessary. Lieutenant Brandt demands with justice, therefore, that the higher leaders study cavalry tactics and strategy more than they do, together with attention to the limitations of this arm. Not only must the leaders be capable in these respects, but each individual horseman must be able to ride proficiently and each horse must be well trained if cavalry is to meet the requirements of modern war. Unconsciously this brings up the question of service. Just how long must each man serve in order to attain the required proficiency? Is it possible to train a useful cavalryman in eighteen months or in still less time?

"Lieutenant Brandt, above all, contradicts the idea that modern war offers no place for the use of cavalry. He furnishes in his book ample proof of how useful a strong, well-led cavalry force can be. He advocates that the cavalry divisions, even in time of peace, should be at war strength, though, in our opinion, this is not practicable as tending to make the mounted forces paramount and so too much out of touch with the other arms."

Enter the 1924 Colorado Endurance Ride

Reviews by Major Harold Thompson, Cavalry

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish), January, 1924.

This number contains the following royal order, of date of December 13, 1923:

HONORS

Acceding to the solicitation of the Chief of Cavalry, War Department, to perpetuate the memory of Lieutenant-Colonel Fernando Primo de Rivera, killed in action, after having given repeated examples of heroism, the King has ordered that in the future the Army Register will honor the name of this hero, inserting it at the head of the 14th Cavalry Regiment, the Alcántara Chasseurs, and at the head of the active list of lieutetnant-colonels, adding the words "killed, heroically, at Monte Arruit, 5th of August, 1921."

It is the King's will that in the annual review, on roll-call, that the colonel of the regiment reply to the name, as indicated in the above legend, which will figure in the Register.

The Assistant Minister of War,
GENERAL LUIS BERMÚDEZ DE CASTRO.

Colonel Federico García Rivera, general staff, contributes an interesting article on "Cavalry Marches," based largely upon a reconnaissance ride of 300 kilometers. No just deduction can be drawn from this march, due to certain ideal conditions, as the group was small, the high road followed being marked throughout by kilometer posts, the frequent watering places, and time not being an essential factor. Actually the trip lasted nine days, but the writer's conclusions are interesting for their very frankness. First, that under the conditions stated, in a march of thirty kilometers no rest is necessary, except one of five minutes to tighten cinches; alternation of the walk with the trot in the proportion of a little over two to one, respectively; that watering en route and immediately continuing the march should always be observed where practicable, and that a graphical representation of the gaits and times is necessary.

Noteworthy, too, is the fact that in this march dismounting and leading are not even mentioned. The animals used were average, and all except one stood the march well.

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish), February, 1924.

For the regimental mounted championship tests, Salvá has some constructive criticisms. This test for Cavalry officers includes condition of training of the horse ridden, a march over known distances with certain time limitations, a cross-country ride of prescribed length over natural and artificial obstacles, and a jumping trial over prescribed obstacles.

Some suggestions are: Penalties to be established by the Cavalry School of Equitation; coefficients should be changed. (Present regulations: Training, 3; march, 3; cross-country ride, 5; and jumping trials, 5.) The second is too small, compared with the training coefficient; the third, the most important of all, too small, and the last, too large in proportion to its actual importance: More careful training to be insisted upon; the march to be lengthened and more varied, and to be a demonstration of a carefully planned march table; the cross-country ride not to be a steeplechase, and the jumping trials, instead of being obligatory, should be voluntary; this last suggestion on account of the great inequality of ages.

The prize essay of the *Memorial*, offered in a late number in 1923, was won by Captain José Durango, cavalry, a well-known instructor at the Spanish Cavalry Academy at Valladolid. The theme was "Means of obtaining the officer class for the Army in their various grades and promotions in the same."

The writer begins with the general statement that history teaches that a state of peace is never a secure patrimony of any people, since wars have always, at greater or less intervals, broken out, upsetting such Utopian dreams; hence he argues, nations must be prepared for wars, and the preparation must be such as to be truly national, always considering economic features. In conclusion, as future wars will be national in character,

the nation in arms, the officer class is charged with such preparations as can be given in peace time.

There should be three classes of officers, viz: those of the active or regular forces, those of the territorial forces, largely employed in war time in the work of the services of supply, and a new class, officers of complement, necessary to fill the losses in the active army and also to relieve such regular officers as may be employed in non-combatant duties.

Premised that these three classes are necessary, the writer invites attention to the qualities officers must possess: Physical energy, moral qualities, military education, and intellectual training.

Revista Militar (Argentina), January, 1924.

A translation of Lieutenant-Colonel Brandt's article, "Cavalry," by Lieutenant-Colonel Brulle, appears in this issue.

The theme, in this paper, is based upon what the German author conceives to be the principal form of combat for modern cavalry, the fire-fight combined with the greatest mobility. In the beginning, he differentiates between what he chooses to call the infantry form of combat and that of the mounted arm. The principle formerly adhered to, that of having the led horses far to the rear, is done away with in modern methods of fighting; on the other hand, the class of combat to be relied upon principally must be that in which, on broad fronts, cavalry will operate, alternating the mounted work with the dismounted fire-fight, the led horses to be close at hand, under all conditions where shelter will permit.

Many faulty practices in connection with dismounting too soon to enter combat dismounted are pointed out, such as weak advance guards fighting on foot, the main body too far in the rear and inactive, failure to make flank attacks under such circumstances, too long delay in deploying, etc.

For a squadron on the march, he would have a platoon with its machine rifle as the advance unit. (A squadron of 150 sabers.)

In the advance, once inside the zone of exploitation, patrols are not sufficient. They must be reinforced, because fighting is necessary. To avoid that such advance be not delayed by advanced enemy posts and small resistance units, single squadrons must be ordered forward at the opportune moment, eventually regiments if so required, to commence the exploitation attack on a broad front, and in previously indicated directions, with the object of hastening this exploitation. Also there should be a responsible commander in each sector of the exploitation and with such unity of command there will be greater advantages than when strong patrols from various squadrons are exploring side by side, whose co-operation is not thus guaranteed.

The squadron, charged with exploiting an attack, should deploy mounted, as is done on foot: mounted patrols well forward, then a line of machine rifles, in groups if necessary, with wide intervals; and behind these a line of mounted skirmishers. Frontage will depend upon the accidents of the ground and the number of machine rifles. Heavy machine-guns and artillery with the cavalry may follow with the main body; fighting to be by mounted charge, or on foot, as the leader determines, the enemy to be attacked on all sides, wherever possible.

To the objection of some, that the conduction of the squadron is not possible in so wide a zone (1,000 to 2,000 meters), the author says it is far more difficult to lead a squadron dismounted, for it must be practiced and the platoons given clear missions. Whereas, mounted, with the commander of the squadron ahead and leading his platoon commanders, all goes well.

Should the enemy cavalry in an attack penetrate an advancing unit thus deployed, that is, in small groups, he will find no real objective. A number of pointed discussions follow, tactical in nature, relative to flank attacks in such advances, their possible re-

sults, inferences to be drawn and warning admonitions. With all the foregoing, the author's cautions against confusing the scouting attack with the principal attack, which follows. This scouting or exploring attack should be on a broad front, the decisive one on a narrow front and in depth.

He calls attention to the fact that the fear of leading the troops mounted close to the enemy will invariably cause a too early dismounting to fight on foot. The work of fighting on foot, at least deduced from certain conclusions of the World War, has led to several sophisms, among which are that all available men must be dismounted and led to the firing line, thus leaving the horses immobile and at a great distance, and on the other hand, when some platoon penetrated, mounted, into the enemy zone and was truly surprised, on account of following its security patrols too closely, it has been deduced that it would never be a mistake to dismount too early for the fire fight.

By no means, the author adds, alluding to the foregoing remarks, should these deductions be considered safe ones. Cavalry should not blindly imitate the infantry combat; if so, it will voluntarily renounce its characteristics, that is, speed and mobility.

In concluding this phase, the writer does not hesitate to say that in cavalry combat, except defensively, the led horses must be truly mobile. On making contact with the enemy, the cavalry must deploy mounted, forming into small groups, in no cases should the horses be bunched together. When it is impossible to advance further mounted, then the advanced small groups must proceed on foot to the fire-fight, along with the machine rifles. As soon as the situation permits it, the mounted advance must be again resorted to. If the number of men on the fire line is not sufficient, then more must be brought up and dismounted. In the defense (cavalry in defense of a point or line) or in cases where there is indisputable evidence of obtaining a rapid success, the animals should be immobile, with all available rifles on the firing line.

Revista Militar (Argentina), February, 1924.

Major Martin Gras, a well-known officer and an author of note, of the Argentine Cavalry, makes an eloquent plea for the establishment of a school of application for cavalry. From his arguments apparently many other cavalrymen agree with him.

The difference in the professional preparation which the cavalry officers receive and that received by artillery and engineer officers is indicated, namely, the officers of the two latter named arms entering their respective schools of application after a year's service with troops. The young cavalry officer, however, finishes his professional training when he leaves the military college, and is this much behind his brother officers of said arms.

Later, when he enters the Superior War School, he is less prepared because of the earlier deficiency. Owing to the late formation of the cavalry brigades, these have not yet been able to exert a favorable influence on the professional preparation of officers.

The factors entering into the most modern methods of employing cavalry, the lessons taught by the World War, all combine to make the cavalryman "sit up and take notice"; for, as the Major says, we must face the situation as it exists. He acknowledges that the high Command has understood the new orientation, and has initiated new regulations, training and tactical, but the writer insists that these are not sufficient in themselves.

It is pointed out the actual cavalry school is in reality a school of equitation, and functions excellently as such. The suspension of the courses in 1923 has caused a serious crisis not yet overcome.

Major Gras then states that the time is opportune for establishing a School of Application for Cavalry. This school, similar to those of the other arms, he would have under the Inspector General of the Army, as it would be a special school of the cavalry arm, destined to offer a special preparation for cavalry officers. The commandant and other officers of the proposed school should be appointed now, and a regiment designated

an infantry regiment, to be supplied with the most effective and modern of cavalry weapons, so that it could serve as a model in regard to methods of instruction and maneuver exercises.

The creation of the unit thus described now would be advantageous, because the 1925 budget could include in its appropriation needs not foreseen now. It is interesting to note at this point, that the author suggests that an experienced field officer, who has had battle experience during the World War, would be most useful to his projected school in the rôle of military instructor. No nationality is suggested.

Naval Lieutenant Guillermo Colho continues from the January number his interesting paper on "Chemistry in Modern Warfare."

Chapter V treats of chlorine, its physical properties, chemical properties and its reactions. In one paragraph, which refers to inoffensive uses of chlorine, the writer laments the lack of chemical warfare service officers in the Argentine service. Then follow the preparation of chlorine, by electrolysis, by bioxide of manganese method, Weldon and Dunlop processes, Deacon's method and electrolytic methods for preparing the gas. Its preparation as it occurs at Edgewood arsenal then is described at length, with pencil sketches and plate photos.

The translation of the article by Lieutenant-Colonel Brandt, German cavalry, by Lieutenant-Colonel Brolle, Argentine cavalry, is concluded in the February number.

Inconveniences and advantages, pro and con, are referred to touching the led horses, when mobile and immobile, with well-known arguments. The statement is made that in patrolling, the distant officers' patrol has been superseded by the airplane; largely for one reason, the greater ease with which the aviator can report happenings. Note that the German cavalryman states that for patrol work, in reconnaissance, the force cannot be a fixed unit or number of men, that always the mission will control the composition of such patrol. In case that a cavalry division has to furnish reconnaissance units, one regiment should be assigned to the duty; thus the regimental commander will determine the composition of patrols, assign a place for receiving reports, and unity is not violated thereby.

The translator emphasizes the paragraph which states that it is a mistaken idea to believe that in modern warfare a cavalry division, being more mobile than the infantry unit, can be moved about at will without suffering greatly in its ability to march and to fight. A factor overlooked is that of armored cars, light type, especially in a country where good roads abound. Units of armored cars should by all means form a part of large cavalry commands, especially if the mission is one of reconnaissance in force.

For cavalry not equipped thus, means of combating armored cars, are suggested, as special use of artillery near dangerous roads, preparation of mines, pits and hand-grenades. Another enemy to fear is the airplane. Even night marches, due to the illumination means employed by the pilots, cannot give absolute protection. Hence, the use of side roads, across country if possible, for the main roads will be carefully observed.

If cavalry in the advance seeks cover and halts at each appearance of airplanes, the delay caused is a victory for the pilots. Formations must then be adopted to reduce the efficiency of an attack by planes. He suggests an aerial observation unit, mounted, with the squadron machine-guns, and at the appearance of low flying planes, the command "Machine-guns, aerial combat," at which the machine-gunners will dismount, emplace the pieces, and open fire, while the rest of the squadron or unit will proceed under the direction of its leader.

The question, "Why is it more difficult to lead cavalry in the attack than mixed units?" is answered by a number of comparisons, in which time and the smaller cavalry units are the important factors, plus the "hydra" uncertainty. Reference is made to what the writer calls the lamentable condition of the German cavalry before the war, that is, the lack of competent cavalry leaders who thoroughly understood the character-

istics of the arm, the subordination of cavalry regiments to army corps, and the absence of permanent cavalry divisions in peace-time training.

Some of the differences noted between the elementary training of the infantryman and the cavalry trooper are not applicable, from our (American) point of view, as the dismounted work is basic with us from the disciplinary point. The paper concludes with remarks relative to inculcating the cavalry spirit.

Revista Militar (Argentina), March, 1924.

Our Native Horse is the title of a lecture by Doctor Solanet, of the Veterinary Faculty of Buenos Aires. The argument is stated that the native Argentine horse is the product of the descendants of the native Spanish horses, brought to the Rio Plata country about 1500. The writer in his opening paragraphs states that from geological and paleontological remains, there is no evidence that the horse is indigenous to the southern part of the new world. Those remains found and cases cited have clearly proved to be those of animals of European origin, similar to those of Spain. In addition no native name has ever existed for the horse, whereas all other domestic animals have always had Indian names.

The exterior conformation of horses of Uruguay, Chile, Argentina, and Paraguay coincides with that of the animals brought by the first Spanish explorers, the conformation naturally having become modified by over 400 years of environment, etc.

Tracing briefly the formation of the native Argentine stock and its development, the author presents some interesting statements. Prior to 1500, and later, the Spanish horse, for war purposes, was one of the best in Europe. The Arab horse, both of the Asiatic and African type, brought into Spain by the Moorish invaders, crossed with the peninsular animal; the latter, developed through preceding centuries, during the dominion of the Celts, Romans, and Goths, produced an ideal type for light cavalry. By the then advanced breeding methods employed by the Spanish Arabs, the race was further developed and perfected, the peak of their perfection being reached coincident with the fall of Granada and Columbus' discovery of the New World. Hence the animals brought to South America, and particularly to Rio Plata in 1500, were the best of their type.

The long sea voyage killed off the weak, leaving only robust animals to breed. Once in the country, the new environment began to tell. Followed the destruction of Buenos Aires, and the escape of many animals into the wilds, and then began a struggle for existence, which is thus summed up: Rearrangement of the digestive tract of the animals caused by the drouth years; weak-lunged animals went under in the flights from the Pampas Indians and from prairie fires; those of weak respiratory systems died as the result of the sudden climatic changes; in the long trips to find water others fell, and naturally, the weaker stallions went, under the attacks of the more powerful males. The total result of these conditions of climate and environment was to produce the native Argentine type, of which hardihood and swiftness were striking characteristics.

In over three centuries, the selection, as illustrated, was natural, in the breeding. Only the best were used. Statements and comments of breeders, foreign visitors, and writers are quoted at length. Then the decadence of the native type set in, the result of breeding, not selected European animals of the native stock, but any kind of horse. This was specially noticeable when stallions of race-horse type were crossed with native mares. Only a negative result could be expected, avers the author, from taking an excellent animal, the product of centuries of natural selection, and crossing it with an artificial type. A false idea as to external conformation and to speed, lead to all this.

The doctor alludes to what fifty years of this cross-breeding have done, by claiming for such half-breeds inability to do real work, as evidenced by their delicate nature, their slowness of gait over broken country, and their lack of resistance to changes of climate. The results of crossing the native animal with the race-horse, as outlined, are similar

to the same crossing with other types, such as Cleveland, Anglo-Norman, Trakenen, and Holstein.

It is interesting to observe that the author remarks pertinently as to the cavalry animals of the army, in which organization he claims that there is a proof of this inferiority. Quotations are made as to the breaking down of animals on maneuvers and marches, and, to cite a single example, he states that of a certain group of selected horses sent to France all received an unenviable recommendation. Only a small part of the cavalry, and that on duty on the far-flung frontiers, has been able to report its mounts in good condition at the end of maneuvers and marches.

Recommendations are made, such as to bring the native stock back to type, including a careful selection of types to breed from, etc. Conditions are suggested for 200-league marches, with weights to be carried on the stallions, marches to include day and night movements, feeding on what is actually encountered on the route, and a standard of judgment to be set by army officers. In this manner, only the hardiest and speediest reproducers of the native animal would be selected and then used for breeding purposes.

Boletin del Centro Naval (Argentina), September-October, 1923.

This includes a continuation of Lieutenant Coilho's work on "Gas in Modern Warfare." The author traces in the initial chapter the development and progress of this branch in the United States Army, including the first investigations made in 1917, by our Bureau of Mines, first preparations at our entrance into the World War, organization and preliminary problems, experimental station at the American University in Washington and its work, organization of the gas service for the A. E. F., including organizations of the 1st Gas Regiment, Edgewood Arsenal, and the creation of the chemical warfare service. The German gas service is similarly treated, with detailed explanations and discussions of the means employed, personnel, etc., all copiously illustrated. Most of the photographs and sketches are from American sources.

Revista del Ejército y de la Marina (Mexico), December, 1923.

This issue contains an article by Vargas Vila, paying deserved tribute to General Obregon, the constitutional President of that Republic. In highly poetic language he lauds the military and civic virtues of the General, and annotates the successful laws sponsored and passed by the Congress under direction of the President.

Colonel Escorcia continues his theme on "Modern War," this number treating of anti-aircraft protection.

A résumé of the art of shoeing, by Captain Veterinarian Herran, Colombian Army, from the "Memorial del Estado Mayor," includes a brief recapitulation of shoeing from ancient to modern times, with illustrations and clear and precise description of the horse's foot and its functioning, together with a general description of modern methods of smithwork and shoeing.

Memorial del Ejército (Chile), November, 1923.

"Duties of Junior Officers With Troops" is the theme of Lieutenant Luciano Julio. Many of his remarks in regard to the physical deficiencies of men called to the colors are very appropriate. One of the first and most important duties of junior officers, in their rôle of instructors, is to overcome physical defects, to increase physical powers of the recruits, and to awaken their mental initiative and intelligence. Some few officers are born instructors, natural ones; yet hard-working officers, interested in their profession, can develop themselves into good instructors; but the one thing lacking, so the author states, is pedagogical instruction, which should be given to officers during their instruction course. Other remarks are very pertinent, as, for example, when he condemns a system of instruction based upon question-and-answer method. He would have

instruction given to recruits, especially when general brief instructions are understood, in the form of conversation, pictures, or sketches, anything to gain the greatest interest and attention of the soldier. During such theoretic instruction, when the soldier is more relaxed, more himself, the officer instructor is better able to learn more of his individual character. The author concludes with some timely remarks on the characteristics of officers and how these influence the men they lead.

La Cooperazione delle Armi (Italy), September-October, 1923.

An interesting study of the cavalry problem in Italy appears in this number, covering tactical evolution, reorganization, and employment of minor units. The Italians have gone into the matter thoroughly, determined to abandon all previous prejudices for and against the arm, and think their way to a logical conclusion as to its worth and proper organization and use. The consensus of opinion, it is found by the Italians, is that the arm will maintain its "raison d'être" as long as speed and surprise remain the most necessary elements of war.

In reconnaissance and covering work, use as reserves and maneuvering, combat and pursuit means, it is realized that cavalry retains, and is the only branch to have, not only mobility, but a certain kind of elasticity and adherence which are constant attributes in all conditions of terrain, weather, and visibility. It is found that the eminent military authorities consider the cavalry the special arm which "seeks contact with, operates the maneuver, and gives pursuit to the enemy."

The tactical evolution of the cavalry is dealt with at some length. The possibility of the use in the future of minor units is freely admitted by all nations. Action of prompt and resolute character based especially on rapid movement and surprise still remains the property of cavalry alone.

The study ends with discussion of the Italian problem of reorganising their cavalry in consonance with their doctrines, in view of their short terms of service and budget requirements. They may try to solve the necessity of a longer term of service by having cavalry recruits serve longer than other branches and give a family credit for this service, so that the other sons will not have to serve the full term. This is called the "compensation" system. This, coupled with the small number needed, would also likely give better men to the cavalry, and the special services would get the other sons, with shorter terms to serve.

Cavaleristisch Tydschrift (Netherlands), January, 1924.

The Trains of the Light Brigade.—As the light brigade cannot carry any large quantities of supplies, its train must be able to catch up with the main body every night. In spite of its disadvantages the writer recommends motor traction for most vehicles of the train. The trains belonging to the light brigade may be divided into the *corps trains* and the *brigade train*, the former being divided into the *combat train* and the *baggage train*.

The Combat Train.—This part of the train must follow the brigade in all its movements. The cavalry contributes pack-horses loaded with surgical dressings, etc., and the ammunition wagons of the regimental staff and the squadrons. All these vehicles are to be drawn by horses. The ammunition wagons of the squadrons and one of those of the regimental staff carry cartridges for light machine-guns; the other four wagons per regiment carry cartridges for heavy machine-guns.

As the pack-horse carrying the light machine-gun can carry only about 1,200 rounds of ammunition, and as the normal expenditure may be considered 2,000 rounds a day in an ordinary action, each squadron must be followed by its own ammunition wagon. If the regimental commander wishes to combine the whole combat train and place it at the rear of the organisation, special orders must be given for this.

The machine-gun troop carries 4,125 cartridges per heavy machine-gun, so it is not necessary for it to be followed directly by its ammunition wagon.

The combat train for the cyclist units will probably consist entirely of motor vehicles. The rolling kitchens of the field artillery are attached to the combat train. The transport of infantry is transported by motor trucks.

Baggage Train.—This consists of such motor vehicles as freight trucks, rolling kitchens, ration trucks, etc. Those that are to keep as close to the troops as possible are: for cavalry, rolling kitchens and trucks carrying fodder and equipment; for cyclist, rolling kitchens and supply, repair, and equipment trucks; for field artillery, equipment trucks. Those that are to move back and forth between the supply base and the group of vehicles just mentioned are: for cavalry, trucks for fodder and rations; for cyclists, trucks for rations; for field artillery, wagons carrying rations and fodder.

Leaving out the train for the infantry battalion (which has not yet been decided upon), the first group of vehicles includes about 25 motorized rolling kitchens, 50 trucks for equipment and other things, and 3 wagons for equipment; the second group includes 23 motor trucks and 6 wagons.

As the light brigade approaches the front, the first group of vehicles must move back and forth between the light brigade and the divisions following it, taking care not to interfere with the movements of the infantry and maintaining the proper distance from the light brigade. Hence the movements of this group are to be regulated by the commander of the light brigade.

When contact is made with the enemy, all vehicles of the first group are to be left behind the following divisions, except the rolling kitchens and fodder trucks, which are to move up closer. If these latter are unable to follow the light brigade, the troops will have to go back to first principles and live off the country for a few days.

Movements of the second group between the supply base and the first group of vehicles should be made mostly at night. Both groups are to be under the orders of the train commander, who is a member of the brigade staff. It may be advisable to provide each group of vehicles with a wireless receiving set.

Brigade Train.—This includes the Signal Corps detachment (in part), the platoon of engineers in trucks, the medical section in trucks, the topographic sections in trucks, and the ammunition column of the field artillery. The organization of this train has not been definitely settled. Most of the component parts must be able to rush to the front if needed.

The artillery ammunition column (horse-drawn) can be given separate orders.

Cavalristisch Tydschrift (Netherlands), March, 1924.

German and French Cavalry Regulations.—The Germans are greatly restricted in the use of motor vehicles and heavy machine-guns by the terms of the peace treaties. The recently published official pamphlet "Kriegserfahrungen mit dem leichten Maschinen Gewehr bei der Kavallerie," seems to the writer about like the basis for future cavalry regulations. According to it, the German Cavalry Division would have 192 light machine-guns. An interesting table is given, showing organization of the cavalry in the Belgian, Dutch, French, and German armies.

Horse Replacement and Veterinary Service in the German Army During the World War.—This article is practically a review of General von Wrisberg's book, "Heer und Heimat 1914-1918."

A real shortage of horses was felt in 1916. In spite of the numbers furnished by the "general governments" of Brussels and Warsaw, several cavalry regiments had to be dismounted, the number of horses assigned to each reserve unit decreased, and the remount horses of the classes of 1912 to 1916 put into service. In the summer of 1917 the Quartermaster General called for 10,000 horses a month. During the following

winter many horses were released for use on the farms, but in January, 1918, the Supreme Command called for 20,000 horses, and from April to June for 18,000 a month. Half of these had to be purchased in neutral countries. The Ersatz organization in Germany had at that time only 12,000 horses, instead of the 56,000 required.

The East Prussian did very well as a saddle horse and the Oldenburg, Mecklenburg, and Hanoverian as draft horses. Neither thoroughbred horses nor the heavy types proved very satisfactory.

Veterinary Service.—Contrary to expectation, the combating of infectious diseases required much more attention than caring for wounded horses. Many horses acquired malignant glanders in Russian stables and the disease soon spread to Germany. Blood tests were used very successfully in combating it.

Even more damage was done by mange, which also came from Russia. Treatment was not difficult as long as the necessary fats and oils were available, but the troop units disliked to send their horses to hospital and often failed to report cases. In June, 1918, there were 71,400 cases of mange on both fronts. SO_2 in gaseous form was used with success in treating the disease.

The veterinary organization grew until in May, 1918, there were 406 *Prussian* veterinary hospitals, which treated 165,826 horses in that month, or about 17 per cent of the total number in service.

THE HORSE IN GAS WARFARE. By Captain H. Weekenstroo, Veterinary Corps.

The statements made in this article are based mostly on articles published by the German veterinarians W. Scherwitz, Burau and Langemarck and the French veterinarians Louis Francois, Jaculet, Plantureux, and Marcel Quentin.

When poison gas is mentioned, phosgene is to be understood, as it was most commonly used.

Most authorities agree that the horse is less sensitive to ga poisoning than either man or the dog. This is true also of asses and mules. Many of the horses that were killed by gas were in the transport service—that is, they were old animals and in many cases had chronic affections of the heart and lungs. A young animal had a good chance to recover if properly treated. As even severely gassed horses did not show many signs of sickness at once, they were sometimes made to pull heavy loads, which was extremely detrimental. The proper treatment was to take them back from the front in a motor truck, if possible, and keep them in airy stables or outdoors, if the weather was good. As a rule, the horses either died in a short time or began to get better about the fourth day after being gassed.

Many types of masks for horses were tried, starting with adaptations of the nose-bag. It has been hard to find a suitable mask, for two reasons: the varying shape of the head in different horses and the difficulty in giving the horse enough air to do hard work. The requirements for a good mask are the following:

(1) Simplicity of construction; (2) Ease in putting it on the horse; (3) Such construction that movements of the jaw are not impossible and that the mask will not be injured by the teeth of the horse; and (4) Ease in washing and cleaning.

Capt. J. van Slooten, of the Dutch Indian Army, has made a mask that would probably be very effective. The Chenot mask was used in the French army. The one that the writer considers best is the Mennerat mask (French).

JAMES FILLIS, THE MOST-CELEBRATED AND BEST-KNOWN RIDING MASTER IN THE WORLD. By his pupil, Lucas Kirsten, captain in the 21st Uhlan Regiment. Translated from "Sport-Welt," September, 1913, by Captain J. R. Diemont.

James Fillis was born in England in 1851. Thrown on his own resources at an early age, he naturally gravitated to the stables and became a well-known jockey. Feeling that he had gone as far as he could in England, he went to France in 1847 and fol-

lowed Daugher on his trips to various countries. Fillis had a riding school at Havre at one time, and later was in charge of the stable of the King of Naples and that of Baron Gustave de Rothschild. In 1870 he trained horses for the French Army, working from 4 in the morning until 8 at night. He did much circus riding, appearing in Berlin for the first time in 1891. He visited all the leading countries of Europe with his marvelously trained horses. In 1897 he appeared in St. Petersburg. He remained there until 1910, training many horses for the grand dukes and instructing the officers of the Russian Army, in which he held the rank of captain. The last years of his life were devoted to teaching his children, who were riding in the United States when this article was written. Fillis died at Paris in May, 1913.

Fillis was a many-sided man; he was an excellent linguist and musician, a sound philosopher, and a wonderful teacher. He was extremely modest, and had to be urged for a long time by his friends before he would write his first book, "Principles of Horse Training and Equitation," which appeared in 1891. The "Daily Training" appeared in 1902.*

Fillis would take but few pupils, for he said that as soon as they began to grasp his ideas they thought there was nothing more to learn. The writer of this article first saw Fillis and his horses at Frankfort in 1896. After appearing at the circus every day for two weeks, when Fillis was at Leipzig in 1896, he persuaded the master to accept him as pupil, and then followed the circus as long as it stayed in Germany and Austria, a period of several months.

Fillis' great principle was always "onward." He did not believe in any theories that could not be put into practice. He was full of energy and ready to mount any kind of a horse. He was straight as a spear, weighed 56 kilograms, had long legs, and sat rather low in the saddle. There was no stiffness about his riding. Fillis has been criticized for doing things that are not "classic." The author replies that posture alone is classic and not gait. Fillis' ideas may be boiled down to three main points: (1) Trying to secure balance by raising the neck, bending in the back of the neck, not the shoulder; (2) Impulse by bringing down the joints used in jumping; (3) Lightness, by yielding of the lower jaw.

The greatest horses that Fillis trained were *Redoubt*, *Gant*, *Germinal*, *Markir*, *Povero*, *Macstoso*, and *White Star*.

Markir could do the following things: (1) Two beats of the hoof and serpentine in passage; (2) Changes of foot in gallop, two hoof-beats, pirouettes and curvets, with extension of the front legs; (3) Spanish walk forward and backward, then walking forward and backward again, changing diagonal; (4) Gallop, double changes; changes at the fourth jump, at the third and second jumps, and between beats; on both hands; (5) Passage; (6) Piaffer and swaying piaffer; (7) Spanish trot; (8) Piaffer backwards.

* "Principes de dressage et d'equitation," "Journal de dressage."

Enter the 1924 Colorado Endurance Ride

The Cavalry School

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—Fort Riley, Kansas

Brigadier-General Edward L. King, Commandant

CAVALRY SCHOOL NOTES

Among the recent distinguished visitors to the post have been Major General Helmick, Inspector General of the Army; Brigadier General Drum, Chief of Operations and Training of the War Department General Staff, and Colonel Glasgow, of the office of the Chief of Cavalry. General Helmick inspected the administrative features of the post and General Drum inspected the training activities. Each made an interesting talk to the commissioned personnel of the garrison. Colonel Glasgow was busy during his visit with the assignments of officers to duty for the ensuing year.

By invitation of the Chamber of Commerce of Oklahoma City, through Colonel R. E. McNally, Cavalry Executive Officer, 312th Cavalry, the Cavalry School sent a team to the horse show held in that city, made up of the following: Major J. K. Brown in charge; Major J. B. Thompson, and Captain C. H. Gerhardt, of the Department of Horsemanship; Captains C. C. Smith, H. L. Earnest, W. A. Falck, and A. W. Roffe, of the Advanced Equitation Class; Mrs. R. L. Coe, wife of Captain R. L. Coe; Sergeants Saunders and Wilkinson, Corporal Duey, and Private Christenson of the 2d Cavalry. The other competitors came from Fort Sam Houston, Fort Sill, Fort Reno, and civilian riders.

All traveling expenses of the team and horses were paid by the horse show. Officers were quartered at the Oklahoma Club at the expense of the horse show. Mrs. Coe was entertained by Mrs. R. J. Hill, wife of Major Hill, of the Medical Corps. The enlisted men were quartered near the Coliseum and were messed by a detachment from the Fort Reno Remount Depot.

In all, twenty-two horses were shipped, arriving in excellent condition, and they held their condition during the entire show. Through the kindness of Major A. H. Jones, commanding officer at Fort Reno, eight grooms were furnished us from the Remount Depot, and their work was of a very high order. Major Jones and Captain Whitthorne, of the Remount Depot, spared no pains to insure the comfort of our enlisted men and horses.

Upon invitation of Colonel McNally, the horse show opened each evening with an exhibition school ride by the Cavalry School officers, and this proved to be one of the most interesting events of the show, both to the civilians and the military visitors from other posts.

It is felt that various benefits resulted from this show, such as stimulation of interest in horsemanship in all the posts competing; excellent experience for all the competitors; stimulation of interest in good horses in the surrounding country; a fine advertisement for the Army; bringing together of the Army and civilians on a plane of common interest, resulting in a marked increase in recruiting for the Army.

The people of Oklahoma City proved to be most hospitable, and various entertainments were given every day for the visiting officers. Colonel McNally deserves great credit for the show, for the preliminary arrangements were well worked out and the show itself ran smoothly. The judging of the jumping classes was automatic, being run on a scale of faults such as are used at the Olympia Show at London, and the conformation judging was ably handled by Mr. Lowe, of Kansas City.

Out of a possibility of sixty-one (61) ribbons with our entries, the Cavalry School won 2 champions, 15 blues, 15 reds, and 8 yellows—a total of 40. Mrs. Coe was placed 7 times.

Sergeants Saunders and Wilkinson, Corporal Ducy, and Private Christenson, of the 2d Cavalry, took 7 prizes.

The last hunt of the season was held on April 13, followed by a breakfast at the polo bungalow, at which Major McHenry, of the Medical Corps, M. F. H., was presented with a handsome silver pitcher in appreciation of his services as master. During his régime the Cavalry School Hunt has been developed to a point where it is now a recognized hunt, being a member of the Masters of Foxhounds and of the United Hunts and Steeplechase Association. Many of the members now hunt in costume.

On May 7 the Commandant led the entire commissioned personnel of the garrison over the Russian Ride Course. About 160 officers took part in the ride.

Outdoor polo has been started with games on the practice field on Republican Flats.

In March about 60 officers of the post held a West Point reunion dinner in Godfrey Court, forming in cadet formation on the upper parade and marching to the mess hall. Colonel Walker, class of '82, acted as cadet captain; General King, class of '96, as cadet adjutant, and Colonels Henry, class of '98, and Romeyn, class of '99, as cadet lieutenants.

A large outdoor swimming pool is being built in the ravine between the upper and lower posts. It is to be 9 feet deep at one end and 3 feet deep at the other, with a shallow extension at one end for children. It is expected that it will be open before the hot weather sets in.

A number of interesting exhibitions and competitions have been given in the West Riding Hall, including exhibitions by the different troops of the 2d Cavalry, a drill by Machine-Gun Troop No. 1, and a driving exhibition by Battery A, 9th Field Artillery. Captain Hutchinson on *Ace Full*, won a jumping competition between members of the Troop Officers' Class, with Captain Guenther, on *Reed*, second, and Captain Stickman, on *Lebanon*, third.

The Department of Cavalry Weapons recently staged a dismounted attack of a war-strength squadron, with machine-gun, one-pounders, artillery, airplanes, and tanks attached, against a dismounted enemy in position, in which service ammunition was used throughout.

Among the articles of equipment recently recommended by the Cavalry Board is a vacuum grooming machine for use in Remount stations, Quartermaster stables, veterinary hospitals, National Guard organizations, and other units in which there are normally only a few men to care for a large number of animals. A modified McClellan saddle, with a girth similar to the flat saddle girth and leather skirts to replace the quarter straps, spider rings and cincha, has also been recommended for adoption.

Enter the 1924 Colorado Endurance Ride

Regimental Notes

FIRST CAVALRY—Camp Marfa, Texas

Colonel Le Roy Eltinge, Commanding

During the past quarter the 1st Cavalry celebrated its ninety-first birthday. Appropriate ceremonies were held and a brief address was read by the regimental commander, Colonel Le Roy Eltinge. A gymkhana offered amusement to the personnel during the day. Three polo games were contested: Ladies *vs.* Ladies, Ladies *vs.* Officers on mules, and one of the semi-weekly round-robin games.

On February 22 a horse show was held. Members of the command were a credit to the instructors in horsemanship and all events were closely contested.

Work was begun on a new target range, which will be modern in all respects.

Great interest is being shown in polo, 22 out of 26 officers turning out regularly. Five teams are organized and play twelve periods on Wednesdays and Sundays. Tuesdays, Thursdays, and Fridays are devoted to individual practice. A baseball league has been started, the winning troop at the end of the season to be presented with a handsome cup. All troops have entered enthusiastic teams in the contest. The local community is taking an active interest in this baseball league, attending the games regularly.

SECOND CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Colonel C. A. Romeyn, Commanding

The regiment has attained its authorized strength and for several months the flow of recruits has been sufficient to fill all vacancies.

Each troop has given exhibitions in the riding hall. The demonstration by Headquarters Troop during the latter part of March marked the completion of the second series of exhibition rides. However, individual troops are called upon from time to time to exhibit, complimentary to visiting officials, conventions, and delegations. The rides all vary, but all demonstrate the training of the horse in jumping and drill movements, and of the trooper in horsemanship, jumping, and of the use of weapons mounted. All troops complete their rides by an exit through a flaming arch on a fire jump.

On April 15 the regiment went into camp near the National Range preparatory to target season.

Shortly after going into camp the regiment was reviewed by General Helmick, the Inspector General of the Army. Accompanied by General King and Colonel Hickok, I. G. D., he inspected the regimental camp. Before the inspecting party left camp, Captain Byrne, leading Troop C in column of fours, followed by Lieutenant Kemp with Headquarters Troop, leading all pack-horses, gave an exhibition of riding down steep inclines. Part way down the slope of Sherman Heights the troops, in formation, jumped off the sheer wall of the Rimrock, a drop of four feet.

On May 3 Troop G, commanded by 1st Lieutenant Comrow, Headquarters Troop, under Lieutenants Sullivan and Baker, and the mounted band, under Warrant Officer Rech, marched to Manhattan in order to engage in a field day under the auspices of the Reserve Officers Association. The troops returned to camp on May 6.

The following letter of appreciation was received from the Manhattan Chamber of Commerce:

MANHATTAN CHAMBER OF COMMERCE, 311 POYNTZ AVENUE,
MANHATTAN, KANSAS, *May* 12, 1924.

GENERAL EDWARD L. KING,
Post Commander, Fort Riley, Kans.

DEAR SIR: The Chamber of Commerce of Manhattan wishes to take this opportunity of thanking you and the men of your command for your respective parts in making the "Field Day" in Manhattan a success.

We desire also that you express our thanks to Colonel Romeyn, Commanding Officer, 2d Cavalry; First Lieutenant Sullivan, 2d Cavalry; First Lieutenant Conrow, 2d Cavalry; First Lieutenant Baker, 2d Cavalry; Band Leader Bech, 2d Cavalry; Headquarters Troop, G Troop, 2d Cavalry Band.

We appreciate the fact that had we not received the unqualified support both from yourself and the officers and men of your command, we could not have hoped for a successful day.

Be assured that your efforts have been appreciated and that we look forward with pleasure to your future visits in our city.

Yours very truly,

A. O. DUER, *Manager.*

Our last tactical demonstration took place on May 8. The entire regiment, reinforced by artillery, machine-guns, and airplanes, took part in a combat problem.

On the following day the regiment was formed into a war strength squadron, dismounted, in order to engage in a musketry demonstration for the Department of Cavalry Weapons. The squadron was reinforced by a detail of bombing planes, a battery of field artillery, a mounted machine-gun troop, two dummy tanks armed with machine-guns and run on trucks, and a one-pounder detachment. The actual problem covered over a square mile of territory between Cameron Springs and Four Way Divide. The artillery took position 1½ miles in rear of the initial squadron position, using shrapnel to bombard the enemy prior to the assault. The machine-guns fired continuously, using both overhead and direct fire to cover the dismounted advance. The weather was especially severe. A high wind, with sleet, rain, and flurries of snow, made conditions for both the troops and the spectators very uncomfortable. Nevertheless, the realism of the demonstration was sufficient to engage the interest of every one. The commandant and the spectators expressed their extreme pleasure at the cheerfulness and accuracy with which the exhibition was carried out, in spite of weather conditions.

On May 9 and 12 Service Troop under 1st Lieutenant Kemp demonstrated the use and manipulation of wagon transportation for the Horsemanship Department.

Weather conditions being too wet and cold for our clipped horses, the regiment returned to the post on May 10. Target practice is being completed, the troops marching to the range mounted.

Troop F, under Captain Palmer, is now en route to Lincoln, Nebraska. The troop left on May 14 in order to give exhibitions at the Reserve Officers Convention. The troop is accompanied by Battery A, 9th Field Artillery. Exhibitions are planned at each halt. The total distance to be marched is approximately 320 miles. The troop is expected to be back on June 4.

Plans are being made for a regimental field day on Organization Day, May 23, which marks our *eighty-eighth* birthday.

THIRD CAVALRY (Less First Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia

Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, Commanding

A horse show, for the purpose of raising funds to defray expenses of the Olympic Equestrian Team, was held in the riding hall at Fort Myer March 8. This gave the many horse enthusiasts of Washington and vicinity an opportunity to witness the performances of the horses and riders who will represent the United States in the Olympic games. Although the Olympic jumping class was open to all, no civilian attempted to show in that event. Mrs. C. P. George, wife of Major George, commanding the Field Artillery at this post, captured the blue ribbon in the Ladies' Saddle Class. She was mounted on a horse owned by Major George. Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin took first and third prizes in the polo pony class, followed by Major Montgomery for second and fourth places. They were mounted on ponies of the War Department string. Two thousand five hundred dollars was cleared by this show.

The first social activity of the post since the death of ex-President Wilson was an exhibition drill, followed by a tea dance, March 14, in honor of Brigadier General S. D. Rockenbach, commanding the District of Washington. The ride consisted of the usual troop events together with the spectacular drills of both the 1st Battalion, 16th Field Artillery, and the 2d Squadron, 3d Cavalry, and jumping by the Olympic team. General Rockenbach expressed his appreciation of the drill.

The last of our usual Friday afternoon exhibition drills, followed by a tea, was given March 28. The public has free admittance to these drills and their interest and appreciation of them is evidenced by the great demand for seats throughout the season.

Funds for the promotion of post athletics, amounting to over $1,400.00, was raised by the third annual "Society Circus," April 23. The main attraction, under the able leadership of 1st Lieutenant J. B. Patterson, 3d Cavalry, was the troop of thirty-two girls of Washington and Fort Myer, who put up a very creditable exhibition in duplicating the saddle drill which is usually put on by Troop E. Some of the prominent military officials to hold boxes were: The Secretary of War, Mr. Weeks; the Assistant Secretary of War, Mr. Davis; the Assistant Secretary of the Navy, Mr. Roosevelt; Major General W. A. Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry; Major-General J. L. Hines, Deputy Chief of Staff; Major-General John A. Johnston; Colonel H. S. Hawkins, commanding 3d Cavalry; Colonel M. E. Locke, G. S. C.

The 2d Squadron, plus Headquarters and Service Troops, left the post on April 28 for a five-day practice march. Twenty officers of the 305th Cavalry, from Philadelphia, with Lieutenant Colonel Howard R. Smalley, executive officer, accompanied the troops. The reserve officers, at their own request, rode in the column as a platoon the first day, as squad leaders in the troops the second day, as platoon leaders the third day, and as platoon leaders and troop commanders the fourth and fifth days. The regularly assigned officers of the 3d Cavalry assisted in the instruction in the conduct of the march. The itinerary of the march was as follows: 1st day to Bull Run, about 28 miles; 2d day to Warrenton, about 26 miles; 3d day, maneuvers and return to Warrenton, about 20 miles; 4th day to camp at Bull Run; and 5th day back to Fort Myer. After the first day's march Troop G was ordered to return to the post to participate in the funeral of the late Major-General Walter H. Gordon, retired. Colonel Groom, commanding the 305th Cavalry, inspected the troops upon their return to Fort Myer. The officers of the 305th Cavalry invited the officers of the 3d Cavalry to tea at the Army and Navy Club, Washington, on the afternoon of the return of the troops. The official and social relationships thus afforded these regular and reserve officers was mutually appreciated and the opinion was generally expressed that it would be well if more of such opportunities to get together could be granted.

On May 7 the entire command was inspected and reviewed by the Adjutant-Generals of all the States in the Union who had been assembled in Washington to undergo a few days' course of instruction in administrative work.

General Pershing on May 10 inspected the Olympic horses and witnessed the jumping performances of the team.

The 2d Squadron, 3d Cavalry, under Major J. M. Wainwright, left the post May 12 and marched to Camp Meade, Maryland, for about a month of target practice. Upon completion of the rifle and pistol firing, two of the troops will be kept at Camp Meade to assist in the training in the Citizens' Military Training Camp.

THIRD CAVALRY, FIRST SQUADRON—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

Lieutenant-Colonel Herbert S. Mann, Commanding

The squadron has started record practice with the rifle and preliminary practice with the pistol. Thus far the results in rifle firing point to a very successful target season.

About 120 officers and non-commissioned officers of the Massachusetts and Connecticut National Guards were here for four days, May 7 to 11, for preliminary instruction and training in cavalry tactics, in preparation for their usual summer encampment. Three of our officers and six non-commissioned officers assisted in this preliminary training in addition to which the squadron gave demonstrations in troop, combat, and other tactical exercises. Lectures were given by the squadron commander and post veterinarian.

A very successful horse show was held in the post riding hall on April 1. Exhibition drills by Troop C, 3d Cavalry, by a bareback squad, and by batteries of the 7th Field Artillery were the outstanding features of the show. Both arms won places.

An even better horse show was held on the 1st of May and very keen competition between officers and non-commissioned officers and privates of the 7th Field Artillery and the 1st Squadron, 3d Cavalry, was in evidence, the Cavalry winning out by a close margin.

Preparations are now under way for a big outdoor horse show on May 31 for the benefit of the Fort Ethan Allen Polo Association.

The Chief of Cavalry arrived at the post on Friday, May 9, and put the squadron through a full pack field inspection that afternoon, inspecting barracks and stables the following morning.

The squadron is preparing for the march to Camp Devens, Massachusetts, for the summer training period, and will leave Fort Ethan Allen on June 9, marching a distance of about 218 miles.

FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort McIntosh, Texas

Colonel E. E. Booth, Commanding

Major-General Holbrook, Chief of Cavalry, visited the post February 20 and held an inspection and review of the regiment. A reception and dance was given in his honor that evening at the post gymnasium.

The Fourth Cavalry was prominently featured in the annual two-day fiesta stages by the city of Laredo in honor of Washington's birthday. The regimental band gave several concerts on the plazas of the city. Troop B, in command of Captain C. L. Stafford, took a leading part in the torchlight procession, and Captain R. E. Willoughby was chief marshal of the parade.

Appropriate exercises and a very successful horse show were held on March 3 on the occasion of regimental Organization Day. Headquarters Troop, Captain R. E. Willoughby commanding, won the largest number of points among organizations; 2d Lieutenant R. J. Merrick, among officers, and Private, 1st Class, Elias L. Kassar, Headquarters Troop, among the enlisted men. Total results were as follows:

Number of places and total points won by organizations:

Organizations.	Places First.	Second.	Third.	Total points.
Headquarters Troop	4	2	0	26
Service Troop	1	1	1	9
Headquarters Detachment, 2d Squadron	0	0	1	1
Troop A	0	0	0	0
Troop B	1	0	1	6
Troop C	0	2	1	7
Troop E	0	1	1	4
Troop F	1	0	1	6
Troop G	0	1	0	3

Number of places and total points won by officers:

Name.	Places First.	Second.	Third.	Total points.
Captain R. E. Willoughby	0	0	2	2
Captain Thomas A. Dobyns	0	2	0	6
Captain Clyde E. Austin	0	2	0	6
Captain Percy S. Haydon	0	0	4	4
Captain C. Loyd Stafford	1	1	0	8
2d Lieutenant R. J. Merrick	4	0	0	20
2d Lieutenant John T. Ward	2	2	0	16
2d Lieutenant C. V. Bromley	0	0	1	1

Competitors for the rifle and pistol team to be sent to the cavalry try-outs have started work under Captain P. S. Haydon.

Polo has been played regularly twice a week since the return of the team from the midwinter tournament at San Antonio. More officers are playing than can be mounted for a full game on any one day. Steps are being taken to remedy this condition, however, and by autumn the Fourth will be in shape to give an even better account of itself at San Antonio than it did in the last tournament.

FIRST SQUADRON, FOURTH CAVALRY—Fort Meade, South Dakota

Lieutenant-Colonel C. E. Hathaway, Commanding

A detachment of the 1st Squadron, 4th Cavalry, consisting of two officers and twenty-eight enlisted men from Fort Sam Houston, Texas, participated in the Regimental Organization Day Horse Show at Fort McIntosh on March 3.

On March 6 this detachment, under command of Captain H. H. Cheshire, 4th Cavalry, left Fort McIntosh and arrived on March 8 in Fort Sam Houston, a distance of 169 miles. Considering the fact that the average age of horses in this squadron is fourteen years, this march of three days, averaging 56⅓ miles per day, is deemed quite remarkable. Horses and men arrived in excellent condition.

The most outstanding feature of this march, however, is the fact that two escort wagons, fully loaded, accompanied the above detachment. This transportation completed the march, notwithstanding the fact that fully 25 miles of the distance was very hard pulling, through deep sand, in only *four days*.

On March 22 the squadron received an order from the War Department directing a permanent change of station from Fort Sam Houston, Texas, to Fort Meade, South Dakota.

An advanced detachment, consisting of two officers and twenty enlisted men, left Fort Sam Houston on April 12 and arrived in Fort Meade on April 15. This detachment worked in repairing the post for the arrival of the squadron.

Just before the departure of the squadron, Lieutenant-Colonel C. E. Hathaway assumed command, relieving Colonel E. A. Keyes. The officers of the squadron presented Colonel Keyes with a handsome riding crop, a pair of boot hooks, and a bootjack in commemoration of their pleasant service while under his command.

The stock train, carrying two officers and 30 enlisted men and the 232 animals of the squadron, left Fort Sam Houston on May 2 and arrived at Fort Meade on May 8. The animals came through in excellent condition, with no serious injuries. The troop train, carrying ten officers, their families, and 177 enlisted men, left Fort Sam Houston on May 3 and arrived at Fort Meade on May 6.

Due to the fact that Fort Meade has been abandoned for ten years, it is badly run down and in need of much repair. The command is at present engaged in repairing the target range, which practically has to be rebuilt.

The reservation covers 12½ square miles of beautiful country. The post is situated in a valley between two mountain ranges. It is an ideal location for mounted troops. There are numerous places to ride or maneuver. There is also excellent hunting and fishing in the vicinity.

The squadron polo team, before leaving Fort Sam Houston, was rapidly developing into one of the strongest teams in that vicinity. The team is composed of the following players: Lieutenant J. T. Ward, No. 1; Lieutenant Charles H. Noble, No. 2; Lieutenant H. Braham, Jr., No. 3; Lieutenant J. L. Lake, Jr., No. 4. Substitutes, Lieutenant-Colonel R. A. Keyes, and Lieutenants J. I. Gregg and D. F. Stone. It is hoped that a team can be sent from Fort Meade to participate in the fall tournament at Colorado Springs.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas

Colonel W. R. Scales, Commanding

The regiment completed the saber test early in June with the following results:

Total number tested, 355, of which 111 qualified as expert swordsmen; 218 as excellent swordsmen, 21 as swordsmen, and 5 unqualified. The test was conducted by a board of field officers of the 1st Cavalry Brigade, pursuant to instructions from headquarters of the 1st Cavalry Division.

The regiment is busily engaged in rifle practice and excellent results are being obtained. To date 174 officers and men have completed record practice with the following results: 89 qualified as expert riflemen, 49 as sharpshooters, 59 as marksmen, and 7 unqualified. Major F. C. V. Crowley is the officer in charge of firing, and every indication points to a betterment of the regimental percentage of qualified men for the regular season of 1922, which was 90.69; all organizations attained the minimum percentage required.

On May 3 Troops A, B, and C, under command of Captain J. M. Tully, left the post for Brownwood, Texas, to participate in the activities in connection with the annual convention of the West Texas Chamber of Commerce.

The troops proceeded to Menard, Texas, by marching, a distance of 146.5 miles, and entrained thereat for Brownwood, arriving there on the 10th. The return journey started on the 16th by rail from Brownwood to Menard, thence by marching to Fort Clark, arriving here on the 23d.

Troop G, under command of Captain E. M. Daniels, and consisting of 3 officers and 64 enlisted men, left the post on May 11 for Fort Sam Houston, Texas, for duty in connection with the summer training camps at that post. The journey was made by marching and terminated on May 20. This troop will be engaged on that duty until September 1, when the return journey by marching will commence.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia

Colonel Robert J. Fleming, Commanding

The officers and ladies of Fort Oglethorpe entertained at a barn dance, on the evening of April 8, at the Officers' Hop Room, which was very appropriately decorated for the occasion. Preceding the dance, Lieutenant-Colonel and Mrs. Oscar A. McGee entertained at dinner at the Hitching Post Tea Room, honoring the officers and ladies of the 1st Squadron.

On April 9 Major-General Hunter Liggett, Inspector General of the Army, accompanied by Colonel R. R. Haskell, Inspector General of the Fourth Corps Area, arrived for inspection of the garrison.

During the period from April 14 to 19 many officers and enlisted men of the 6th Cavalry participated in the special mounted events held in Warner Park, Chattanooga, under the auspices of the B. P. O. Elks. Besides the racing and jumping events, there were two novelty features, namely, night polo games and mounted wrestling, both of which proved highly exciting.

On April 25 the Fort Bragg Polo Team, consisting of Lieutenant G. F. Williams, 1; Lieutenant J. Green, 2; Lieutenant H. D. Baker, 3; and Major R. C. Batson, back, with

Warrant Officer B. Odle substitute, and eighteen of their fine ponies, arrived at Fort Oglethorpe, fresh from the tournaments at Pinehurst.

On the morning of April 29 the Fort McPherson team and ponies arrived at the post The team included Lieutenant G. C. Bruner, 1; Major W. G. Jones, 2; Lieutenant R. F. Parmley, 3; Lieutenant B. M. McFadyen, back, and the substitute was Lieutenant Smith.

A delightful social event on the evening of April 29 was the dance given by the officers of the 6th Cavalry at the post gymnasium, honoring the visitors who were attending the polo tournament and the patronesses, who were chosen from Chattanooga society. The gymnasium was most elaborately decorated for the occasion and the music was furnished by Breniser's Orchestra from Chattanooga. At midnight a buffet supper was served.

On the morning of May 2 Troop G, Captain Wharton G. Ingram commanding, left Fort Oglethorpe by marching en route to Camp Knox, Kentucky, where it will remain for the summer training camps.

On Sunday morning, May 4, at 9:30, the officers of the 6th Cavalry entertained with a paper chase for the visiting polo players. The many guests assembled at the Officers' Club, and the ride through Chickamauga Park was enjoyed by every one. Upon returning, a hunt breakfast was served at the clubhouse at 12 o'clock.

May 4, Organization Day of the 6th Cavalry, falling on Sunday, the sixty-third anniversary was celebrated the following day. Commencing at 8:45 in the morning, there were mounted events held; at 11:00 o'clock there was a regimental formation at the band stand, where Colonel R. J. Fleming made a very appropriate address on the history of the regiment. In the afternoon the enlisted men played a polo game at 3:00 o'clock, while in the evening they enjoyed a masked ball in the gymnasium from 9:00 until midnight.

The officers celebrated the evening by giving a regimental dinner at the Hotel Patten, in Chattanooga. This was a very delightful occasion, and during the evening appropriate remarks were made by the commanding officer, Colonel R. J. Fleming, and captains of the visiting polo teams, who were guests.

The 6th Cavalry Polo Team on May 11 won the finals and the Fourth Corps Area championship by defeating Fort Bragg in a thrilling game, 12-9. Handsome individual silver platters were presented to the members of the winning team, whose line-up was as follows: Lieutenant T. Q. Donaldson, Jr., 1; Captain Renn Lawrence, 2; Major C. W. Foster, 3; Lieutenant F. O. Dewey, back, and Lieutenant H. L. Watson, substitute.

On May 10 the Service Troop, Captain Wallace C. Steiger commanding, returned from the target range after qualifying 100 per cent with the rifle. It was with much pleasure that the regimental commander commended this fine record.

On May 13 the regiment was paraded in honor of Master Sergeant Joseph Henderson, of Headquarters Troop, 6th Cavalry, who was retired after thirty years' service. Master Sergeant Henderson's retirement from active duty is a distinct loss to the service, and in particular to this regiment, in which he has served entirely so long and honorably. He is the bearer of the highest honor which can be bestowed upon one in the military service, the Medal of Honor, the citation for which is in substance as follows:

During the day of July 2, 1909, on Patian Island, in the Philippine Islands, detachments of Troops A, B, and C, 6th Cavalry, were ordered to capture a band of native outlaws, who were in a cave on a very steep mountain side. A cannon and one machine-gun were obtained from the 9th Mountain Battery with which to attack the cave. The mountain being so steep, it was necessary to tie the cannon to a tree about twenty-five yards from the mouth of the cave, in order to direct the fire into the cave. During the firing the rope with which the cannon was tied broke. Sergeant Henderson voluntarily went three times, under heavy fire, with a new rope and secured the gun to the tree each time. This gunfire resulted in bringing the outlaws out of the cave, and further resulted in the final extermination, in hand-to-hand fighting, of the Moro outlaw Jakiri and his entire band.

On May 17 Colonel R. J. Fleming left the post for Camp McClellan, where he will be camp executive officer for the summer training camps.

The 6th Cavalry, less the 2d Squadron, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Omar A. Mullen, left Fort Oglethorpe on the morning of May 19, marching to Camp McClellan, where it will remain for the summer, leaving Major C. W. Foster in command of the post.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

The regiment ran the saber qualification course in February and qualified 94.11 per cent. Of the 340 who ran the course, there are 45 expert swordsmen, 198 excellent swordsmen, 77 swordsmen, and 20 unqualified.

In March the 7th Cavalry Rifle Team, composed of Captain R. R. Allen, Lieutenants P. M. Martin and S. P. Walker, and Sergeants H. P. Hawking, L. P. Mayton, A. Lafevers, and Corporals J. B. Jensen and F. Kulczynski, outshot a rifle team from the Southwestern Rifle Association. The 7th won by the close margin of 29 points in the aggregate.

The intertroop baseball tournament terminated on April 15, after a series of 56 games had been played. Troop F achieved first place, while Troop A secured second place. Both troops were the recipients of handsome silver cups, presented by Colonel Lee. A strong regimental team is now in readiness to enter the Post League, which will open at an early date.

On April 19 the regiment was paraded, dismounted, and reviewed in honor of First Sergeant Walter S. Rumer, Troop F, who was retired after thirty years' faithful and efficient service. Brigadier-General Joseph C. Castner, Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, and Lieutenant Colonel A. F. Commiskey commended Sergeant Rumer on his excellent record and wished him much enjoyment in his retirement. As tokens of appreciation from the regiment he received a handsome gold watch, a leather travelling bag, and a trunk. Colonel Lee made the presentation. In the evening the Non-Commissioned Officers Club tendered Sergeant Rumer an elaborate banquet at the club rooms.

On April 28 the regiment, less the 2d Squadron, marched to the Dona Ana target range, New Mexico, 27 miles north of Fort Bliss.

A ready camp awaited the troops, an appreciated fact realized by the efficient detail sent to prepare camp. Practice firing began on April 30, one day ahead of the original schedule. The first group, for record, fired on May 5, and qualified 98.21 per cent. This group of 2 officers and 58 enlisted men had 31 expert riflemen, 18 sharpshooters, 5 marksmen, and 1 unqualified. Under the old qualification there would have been 39 experts, 14 sharpshooters, 1 marksman, and 1 unqualified. Captain R. R. Allen topped the list of experts, while Sergeant F. B. Hackett, Troop B, had the highest score of the enlisted men. The second group, comprising 1 officer and 59 enlisted men, fired for record on May 9 and qualified 98.3 per cent. The achievements of this group are: 26 experts, 22 sharpshooters, 11 marksmen, and 1 unqualified. The old qualification would have given 30 experts, 22 sharpshooters, 7 marksmen, and 1 unqualified. There are several more groups to shoot before this contingent will finish shooting and return to the post, at which time the 2d Squadron, now engaged in dismounted pistol practice, will proceed to the Dona Ana target range.

Some very high scores have been made in the dismounted pistol firing at Fort Bliss by the 2d Squadron. Troop E qualified 97.62 per cent, with 27 experts, 19 sharpshooters, 10 marksmen, and 2 unqualified. Troop F qualified 2 officers and 41 enlisted men. Troop G has 44 qualified to date. These results for Troops F and G are not final, since they have not completed firing for qualification. It is anticipated, however, that the qualification percentages will be high.

"The Garry Owen Trumpeter," new regimental newspaper, made its debut on March 8. After the first two issues the paper changed its mimeographed garb for that of a real

printed sheet of four pages. It is a very creditable paper, newsy and well edited, and thoroughly departmentized. Since its natal day this periodical has been enthusiastically received by both officers and men. From its inception Colonel Lee has been an untiring and earnest supporter of this publication. The paper was initiated by Sergeant V. Richeson and is published without cost to the Government.

Captain Delmore Wood, a former Garry Owen, recently joined the regiment, having come from a tour of duty in the Philippines. His advent has heartened the Garry Owen poloists, for he is a polo ist of the first order, and played in many a victorious game on the 7th Cavalry team some years ago.

Three reserve officers were assigned to the regiment recently, Captain F. E. Walker, Denver, Colo.; First Lieutenant A. R. Jensen, El Paso, Tex.; Second Lieutenant S. A. Small, El Paso, Tex.

The 7th Cavalry band has during this quarter broadcasted two delightful concerts from radio station N. D. A. H., El Paso, Texas; one under the auspices of the El Paso Chamber of Commerce and another under the auspices of the Lions Club, El Paso. During National Music Week the band played several concerts in the city of El Paso, alternating with other civilian and military bands. The band has also played concerts regularly Sunday afternoons at the post. All concerts were well attended.

EIGHTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel A. G. Lott, Commanding

All troops finished the saber qualification course early in March. The results were by no means ungratifying:

Troop.	Per cent qualifying.
A	76
B	73
C	98
Headquarters Detachment, 1st Squadron	100
E	92
F	94
G	85
Headquarters Detachment, 2d Squadron	90
Headquarters	82
Service	100
Regiment as a whole	86

On March 24 the regiment participated in a division maneuver west of El Paso, the principle object of which was the testing of all means of communication. Results were excellent.

The regiment has just completed a most successful intertroop baseball season. The games were well played and some fine material was developed for the regimental team. Troop F carried off the honors.

On April 12, as a result of a challenge by the bachelor officers of the regiment to the married officers, a baseball game was duly played. There were four mad innings, but the baseball displayed was of doubtful quality.

Work on the area service club is progressing and it promises to be one of the best buildings on the post.

On April 28 the 2d Squadron marched to Dona Ana target range for the regular target season. The remainder of the regiment is having pistol practice, and with most of the men having fired record it appears certain that over 80 per cent will qualify.

On May 3 Major-General Hinds, Commanding General, 8th Corps Area, visited Fort Bliss. The first squadron, 8th Cavalry, formed a guard of honor on this occasion. Barracks and quarters were inspected, and the General expressed himself as well pleased with the condition of the command.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Lieutenant-Colonel Kerr T. Bigga, Commanding

A C. M. T. C. program arranged by Captain J. A. Blankenship, and presented at the city theater Sunday afternoon, May 11, was a big success, and was enjoyed not only by the audience at the theater, but by hundreds of radio fans in the city. The conditions were ideal, and no doubt the program could have been heard all over the country. It consisted of a number of fine selections by the 9th Cavalry band, under leadership of Staff Sergeant M. Brown, a talk on the 9th Cavalry by Chaplain Kendall, vocal solos by F. A. Dunnal and L. E. Morris, and splendid talks by Mrs. W. A. Scothorn and Dr. F. W. O'Donnell on the advantages of the citizens' military training camps. R. B. Fegan donated the use of the city theater and the telephone line to Milford, whence the program was given to the air by KFKB, the Brinkley-Jones Hospital Association station.

Captain Blankenship offered a 9th Cavalry pennant to the most distant radio fan reporting the concert. A band program will again be broadcasted from the War Department theater, by KFKB, on May 20 at this post, at which time a special program on the chimes, played by Sergeant Clyde O. Andrews and accompanied by the band, will also be broadcasted.

A refrigerating plant is being installed in connection with the consolidated mess which, when completed, will make it the best equipped of any in the service.

The 9th Cavalry farm has acquired a supply of ferrets, Belgian hares, and large red pigeons. It should not be long before there will be enough hares and squabs for use of the entire mess. The ferrets are giving a good account of themselves by ridding the farm of rats.

Five enlisted men of the regiment have been selected for the pistol and rifle tryouts for the Cavalry Team.

A basket picnic for the women and children of this regiment was held at the 9th Cavalry picnic grounds (Sergeant Briggs' place) from 11:30 A. M. to 4:00 P. M. Saturday, May 17. Barbecued pig was served at 12:30. The 9th Cavalry band furnished the music. Impromptu events were held under the direction of Chaplain Kendall, and prizes were awarded to the winners.

The reception, with smoker and dancing, in honor of the retirement of First Sergeant Washington and Sergeant Richard Morgan, Troop E, was held at the 9th Cavalry Club beginning at 8:30 P. M., May 17.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Colonel J. C. Rhea, Commanding

During the quarter the regiment completed known-distance rifle practice, pistol practice mounted and dismounted, and saber practice with good percentages.

Additional permanent installations were made at the camp site of the summer camps. Troop labor was used.

The R. O. T. C. camp started here June 5 with sixty students. On the eighth of June the Arizona National Guard went into their annual camp here.

Troop B was sent on detached service June 1 to perform salvage work in Camp Harry J. Jones, at Douglas. The Service Troop is hauling the salvaged lumber. This is a 220-mile round trip and is made once a week.

His friends will regret to learn that Captain S. G. Stewart, 10th Cavalry, suffered a broken leg in an accident at polo on Memorial Day and was transferred to Letterman General Hospital.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California

Colonel H. J. Brees, Commanding

The period from March 17 to March 30 was designated as the regimental period for instruction and training. During this period regimental parades, practice marches, and tactical exercises were held. On March 27 the entire regiment marched to Salinas, camped over night, returning to the Presidio the next day. The march proved a great success and demonstrated that the troop and squadron marches, which were held during February and March, had thoroughly schooled the individual soldier and the organizations in the duties pertaining to field service.

The regiment was represented in the Pacific Coast Polo Tournament held at Coronado during March by the "A" Team, consisting of Captain R. C. Gibbs, Captain Norman E. Waldron, Captain J. C. Rodgers, Lieutenant C. L. Conlon, and Lieutenant S. M. Lipman. This team gained much valuable experience playing against the fast civilian teams participating in the tournament.

While the "A" Team was at Coronado the "B" Team, composed of Captains J. T. Pierce, L. R. Moore, Lieutenants P. A. Noel, W. G. Wyman, and G. L. Caldwell, participated in the Peninsula Polo Tournament, held at Palo Alto, on the Stanford University field. This team acquitted itself admirably, winning the handicap tournament.

The polo team will be greatly strengthened next year by the addition of Captain Roy E. Craig, who has been assigned to the regiment and is expected to join at an early date.

During April and May the entire regiment has been engaged in target practice, devoting a month to rifle firing and a month to pistol firing. It is expected to have all firing except automatic rifle firing completed by June 1.

Troop B, commanded by Captain James M. Adamson, left this station May 1, en route to the Presidio of San Francisco, to participate in the Military Carnival and 9th Corps Area Field and Track Meet, held in connection with try-outs for the Olympic Games Team. This event was held at Golden Gate Park, San Francisco, May 10. Troop B thrilled the vast throng of spectators by their daring feats of horsemanship. A musical drill by two platoons was a feature, reaching the climax when the troopers jumped their mounts through a band of fire. Many unusual thrilling exhibitions of fancy jumping were staged.

The try-outs for the regiment's representatives on the Cavalry Rifle Team were held during April, under the supervision of Lieutenant C. E. Morrison. The following-named men have been selected to represent the regiment at Fort Des Moines: Sergeant Waldo Rohlik, Troop A; Sergeant Thomas P. Farrell, Troop B; Sergeant Floyd Barrett, Troop G; Corporal Richard V. Wilsewski, Troop A; Corporal John L. McCoy, Headquarters Troop.

The Intertroop Baseball League closed May 1, with Headquarters Troop leading the league. They were awarded a handsome silver cup, presented by the regimental commander at a parade held to celebrate the occasion. The squadron baseball championship was won by the "Chinese Squadron," composed of Headquarters and Service Troops. The selection of a regimental team is now under way. The regimental team will play the 2d Battalion, 76th Field Artillery, a series of games to determine the post championship.

There has been keen competition among the troops for the possession of two pennants which are awarded monthly to the troops having the best barracks and the best stables. Troop F is now the proud possessor of both pennants, having wrestled the flag for the best barracks from Troop E and the flag for the best stables from Service Troop.

Troop F is making preparations to leave this station June 1 for Camp Lewis, Washington, where it will remain until September, on duty in connection with the summer training camps. Troop F will leave its mounts here, proceeding by rail. On arrival at Camp Lewis mounts will be furnished, and the personnel will devote its efforts to training them for the various demonstrations and maneuvers required.

On May 12 the regiment was paraded in honor of the retirement of 1st Sergeant Emma T. Uhl, Headquarters Troop.

TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold and Sam Fordyce, Texas

Colonel John M. Morgan, Commanding

The greater portion of the past quarter has been devoted to target practice. Fort Brown troops have practically completed rifle practice, with only a few men yet to fire the record course. At Fort Ringgold, where weather conditions have been better, the 2d Squadron has completed rifle practice, and the officers are highly elated over the results. Only ten men failed to qualify. Ninety-five per cent of those firing qualified as marksman or better. The average score for the squadron is 282.98.

Major-General Ernest Hinds, Commanding General of the 8th Corps Area; Colonel John F. Preston, General Staff, Chief of Staff; Lieutenant-Colonel Milosh R. Holgard, General Staff, Assistant Chief of Staff for Supply; and First Lieutenant Eugene McGinley, aid-de-camp to Major-General Hinds, visited the Fort Brown and Fort Ringgold commands May 8 and 9.

Much interest has been shown in athletics during the past quarter. At Fort Brown the post league baseball schedule has included baseball games on Wednesday and Saturday afternoons and Sunday mornings. These games have been largely attended by civilians from Brownsville as well as by the military personnel. Field meets were conducted on March 27 and April 24, these including dismounted events in the morning and mounted events in the afternoon. In the first meet Troops A and C tied for first place, with Troop B securing the next highest score. In the second meet Troop C received first honors, with Troop A second, and Troop B third. On March 21, commencing at 8 o'clock in the evening, a very good boxing program was given; a similar evening's entertainment being conducted on April 22.

At the invitation of Mexican officials Colonel Morgan attended the Cinco de Mayo celebration at Matamoras, accompanying the Mexican consul of Brownsville in the parade which formed in Brownsville and proceeded to the main plaza, Matamoras. The regimental band participated in the parade, and rendered a number of selections during the evening's program.

At Fort Ringgold Lieutenant-Colonel Cooley, who has been ordered to duty with the Cretin High School, St. Paul, Minnesota, gave an elaborate farewell dinner to the officers and their wives on May 7. The officers of the post entertained Lieutenant-Colonel Cooley at a farewell party May 11. Besides the picnic dinner, a big "badger" fight was enjoyed, Lieutenant Evans being given the honor of releasing the "badger."

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel J. J. Boniface, Commanding

The social life on the post during the past two months has been made very enjoyable by including special feature dances in addition to the regular scheduled affairs. March 12 was "Frontier Night," with all the appearances of an old frontier dance hall celebration. On St. Patrick's Day a barn dance was given. A dance was given at our Officers' Club on March 14 for the officers and ladies of the 76th Field Artillery.

Colonel Joseph S. Herron, Field Artillery, has recently come to the post, and commands the 76th Field Artillery.

Troop B has been receiving their well-earned congratulations upon winning the regimental Athletic Cup on March 26, winning the squad drill contest on March 28, and winning the regimental bowling tournament, which ended on April 9. Troop B won the Athletic Cup for April.

Colonel W. C. Short, Inspector General, completed his annual inspection of the 13th Cavalry between April 29 and May 8.

Regimental Day, May 1, was celebrated as the twenty-third anniversary of the birth of the 13th Cavalry. Field day events, followed by baseball and polo, took up the entire day.

The 13th Cavalry Polo Team leaves shortly to participate in the 9th Corps Area and Northwestern Championship Tournament at Boise, Idaho. The probable line up will be: Captain Shafer, No. 1; Captain Dodge, No. 2; Lieutenant Culton, No. 3; and Lieutenant Febiger, No. 4.

Committees are at work arranging details for the 13th Cavalry Tournament, scheduled for June 21 to 29. Some of the strongest Army teams in the country are to take part this year. Teams from Fort Riley, Fort Leavenworth, Fort Des Moines, and Colorado Springs have already promised to be here.

Major-General W. A. Holbrook has been with us for the past few days. The entire regiment regrets that this will probably be his last official visit to the 13th Cavalry.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY (Less First Squadron)—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel F. M. Caldwell, Commanding

Eight reserve officers were attached to the regiment on April 7 for duty in the event of an emergency.

The Midwinter Military and Civilian Horse Show was staged on the evenings of March 17, 18, and 19. The entire regiment, from the commanding officer to the last recruit, took part in some way. An exhibition drill was given by the Headquarters Troop each night, and consisted of eight men riding one horse and driving a horse, tandem style, in front of him, through various movements—at the walk, trot, and gallop. Troop G also gave an exhibition drill.

In the various military events, such as officers' and enlisted men's jumpers, remount class, light-weight and heavy-weight hunters, and polo ponies, it was necessary to hold elimination contests to cut down the number of entries.

The horse show was staged to raise funds for the Chief of Cavalry and Chief of Artillery's funds and for the Army participation in the Olympic games.

The light-weight hunter class was captured by Sergeant R. B. Dunley, Troop B, 113th Cavalry, Iowa National Guard, on *Bill*, a Government horse. The heavy-weight hunter class was won by Captain E. A. Williams, 14th Cavalry, on his private mount, *Soldier*. Officers' jumping class was also won by the same officer on the same mount. Sergeant Dunley repeated on *Bill* in the enlisted men's jumping. The officers' light-weight chargers was won by Lieutenant Willis on his horse, *Caprice*, that he trained during the previous summer and winter. General Duncan's private mount, *Flemington*, a three-year-old, trained by First Sergeant Clay, 14th Cavalry, and ridden by Captain Williams, took the third ribbon in this class. Captain Mullenix, on his private mount, *Guy V. Henry*, easily won the heavy-weight charger class. Captain Olmstead, Troop C, 113th Cavalry, Iowa National Guard, won a special class of heavy-weight chargers for National Guard and Reserve Officers only.

Lieutenants McEnery and Murphy, after jumping off a tie twice, won the pair jumping, open to all, on *Snake* and *Shamrock*, both Government mounts. Corporal Campbell, of the 113th Cavalry, won the special enlisted men's jumping class. Sergeant Jones, of the 113th Cavalry, won the National Guard Enlisted Men's Mount class, beating Sergeant Dunley, on *Bill*, by a hair. Captain Williams, 14th Cavalry, repeated in the Officers' Remount class on his private mount, *Sally P.*

Much to the surprise of every one, Lieutenant Koch, on *Geronimo*, placed third in the three-gaited saddle class. The civilian entries made a clean sweep in all the other saddle classes except one. In this class, the Ladies' Saddle class, Mrs. Kinnison, wife of Lieutenant Kinnison, 14th Cavalry, won a second place, against keen civilian competition, on *Paddy*, a Government mount.

Headquarters Troop made a clean sweep in the best-trained mount for enlisted men, with 1st Sergeant Brown, on *Red Dog*, the winner. The best cavalry mount class was won by Sergeant Kristiansen, Troop F, on *Man of War*, with 1st Sergeant Brown, on *Red Dog*, a close second.

In the polo-pony class, open to all, the best any of our ponies could do was third place, Captain Williams, on *Peaches*, winning. The first two places went to Mr. Hubbell and Mr. Everett, of the Wahkonda Polo Club, on *Nancy* and *Prince*, respectively.

The escort wagon class produced winners in the artillery for first and second places, with the Service Troop winning third place.

Mrs. Whitelock, on *Paddy*, won the Ladies' Saddle class for post ladies only, with Mrs. Adams and Mrs. Peabody winning the 2d and 3d ribbons.

Championship classes were held for saddle horses, hunters, and chargers. Mr. L. Robinson, on *Golden Rod*, owned by Mr. John Hogan, of Des Moines, who had previously won the five-gaited saddle class, took the ribbon in the championship saddle class.

Captain Williams, on *Soldier*, won the hunter championship, and Captain Mullenix, on *Guy V. Henry*, won the charger championship.

There were three classes for civilians only. Cash prizes were given to enlisted men and cups to officers and civilians, with ribbons for the first three places.

On March 21 and 22 the Non-commissioned Officers' Club staged an old-fashioned minstrel show. Master Sergeant Craig, the regimental sergeant major, starred both as an end-man and as a singer. The show was well staged and conducted like a professional show.

On April 1 Sergeant Montreville M. Whitenight, of Troop F, was retired after more than thirty years' service. A smoker was given in Sergeant Whitenight's honor by the officers and men of the regiment.

Regimental try-outs for the cavalry rifle and pistol teams were held during the month of April. *Three officers and seventeen enlisted men took part.*

A basketball schedule between troops of the regiment was inaugurated April 30, games being played twice a week.

FIRST SQUADRON—Fort Sheridan, Illinois

Major William West, Jr., Commanding

During the past quarter the command was recruited to and maintained at full strength. On February 10, 11, and 14 the squadron performed in an exhibition of fancy riding, monkey drill, and jumping, at the post riding hall, in honor of Brigadier-General George Van Horn Moseley and friends and visitors from Chicago, Milwaukee, and other lake towns.

FIRST MACHINE GUN SQUADRON—Fort Clark, Texas

Lieutenant-Colonel Emmet R. Harris, Commanding

On March 10 Captain Berg and one platoon of Troop B returned from Eagle Pass, Texas, where they had been on temporary duty for the past three months.

During the second week in April a post competition in track and field events was held to determine the candidates for the Olympic tryouts. Men from the squadron won a total of nine (9) first places, ten (10) second places, and nine (9) third places, out of a possible eleven places. Of the six men selected to represent the post as competitors in the 8th Corps Area Boxing and Wrestling Tournament at Fort Sam Houston, Texas, four were selected from the 1st Machine-Gun Squadron.

Major-General Robert L. Howze, commanding the 1st Cavalry Division, accompanied by Major Adna R. Chaffee, Assistant Chief of Staff, G-3, First Lieutenant J. G. Boykin, A. D. C., and Colonel Le Roy Eltinge, commanding 1st Cavalry Brigade, arrived at this post on April 14 for the annual tactical inspection of troops. On April 15, an inspection and review of the entire command was held which was followed by a field exercise. The morning of April 16 the quarters and stables were inspected, and in the afternoon all forms of gunnery training to include specialists were inspected.

Major-General Ernest Hinds, commanding 8th Corps Area, and his staff, inspected the quarters and stables of this command on April 28.

The *squadron has received* and is wearing its distinctive organisation insignia. This is a badge formed from the shield and motto of the squadron coat-of-arms. The insignia is worn on the blouse and service hat and, being in red, gold, and green enamel, makes a handsome addition to the uniform.

Range practice was started the middle of April on the thousand-inch range. The squadron is firing, for the first time, the new machine-gun course prescribed by Training Regulations 150-35.

108th CAVALRY POLO AT NEW ORLEANS

By Captain Rhey T. Holt, Cavalry

During the past year the effort to organise and develop polo among the various line organizations of the 108th Cavalry has met with little success, due mainly to the inability of securing a suitable practice or playing field and the inability to spare sufficient time from professions and vocations on the part of the personnel. Polo at these outlying stations has amounted to nothing more than individual stick work and training of a few polo pony prospects.

At New Orleans, some six months back, the National Guard Polo Association of New Orleans was formed, comprising the officers of the 141st Field Artillery and both commissioned and enlisted personnel of Headquarters Troop, 108th Cavalry. A short time prior to the forming of this association, all officers and men interested in learning to play polo were grouped in a class, and instructed from the ground up in the elements of riding and training of ponies. This phase of instruction was carried out for a period of three to four months, and, considering the great amount of rain in this locality during the winter, this advance training was very successful and all participants deserved much credit for their perseverance under such adverse weather conditions. The next step consisted of building a wooden horse with cage, where prospective players were instructed in preliminary stick work, followed by training of mounts with stick and ball and the blackboard classes, where rules and team play were taken up. The first instruction of actual play was taken up during March, when all players were put through practice periods at the walk; later at the canter and collective gallop. Until May little effort was made to organise teams, the time being spent in confirming players with the rules and tabulating them for their positions later on.

The horse proposition was and still is a great hindrance, but by trying out and working every animal which could possibly be considered a prospect we have secured about 14 playing animals from among the 32 cavalry mounts and about 9 from among the artillery horses, with 6 or 8 more undergoing the process of training. The general rule has been that each player must train his own mount, although in a few cases instructors have partially trained and turned over to other players good prospects. Two players have become so enthused over the game that they have purchased ponies, and it is believed that the near future will find others following their example.

The stage has now been reached where we have four teams: an Artillery team (141st Field Artillery); a Cavalry team (Headquarters Troop, 108th Cavalry); a second Cavalry team (termed the Freebooters); and a team termed the Buffaloes (with a miscellaneous personnel); also three or four additional players. There are two games each Sunday afternoon on the field at Jackson Barracks, in which the above teams participate. Due to the number of players and scarcity of mounts, each game consists of three to four periods of five minutes each, and the games are alternated each period to allow more rest for animals.

These games are now gaining much publicity in New Orleans. They are often followed by a tea dansant at the Cavalry Club, and are attended by many of the best class in New Orleans as well as by the families and friends of both Regular and National Guard officers.

With the present interest in polo on the upgrade, it is believed that during the fall outside teams may be brought in for special games, and that the National Guard will receive the credit due for reviving the game which some ten or twelve years ago was quite an attraction at New Orleans.

110th CAVALRY, Massachusetts National Guard, Boston, Mass

Major Dana T. Gallup, Commanding

Every year on Patriots' Day a member of the 110th Cavalry represents Paul Revere and repeats the ride from Boston to Lexington. This is one of the leading features of the celebration in all the towns along the route. Another member represents John Dawes, who made a similar ride over a different route on the same night as Revere, only did not have Longfellow as a press agent. These riders are always sergeants in the outfit, and are accompanied by an escort from the regiment. This has been an annual custom for ten or fifteen years. First Sergeant Austin, of "A" Troop, as Revere, started from North Square, in Boston, on April 19 of this year.

The regiment goes to camp from July 5 to 19 at Quonsett Point, R. I., again this year.

Lieutenant R. A. Mangini, of Headquarters Troop, conducted a class in riding for girls throughout the winter and had around twenty-five under instruction. Another class is now getting under way to run until camp.

On June 18 there will be a competition for individuals in the outfit for prizes given by the First Provisional Troop, an organization formed during the war as part of the State guard. It developed into quite a crack outfit.

305th CAVALRY—Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Colonel John C. Groome, Commanding

Lieutenant-Colonel H. R. Smalley, Cavalry, Executive Officer

Through the co-operation of Colonel Hamilton Hawkins, 3d Cavalry, Fort Myer, Va., authority has been secured by Lieutenant-Colonel H. R. Smalley, U. S. A., on duty with the 305th Cavalry, for a week's training of the officers of that regiment with the 3d U. S. Cavalry. The training will be without expense to the Government, as no funds are available.

The officers of the 305th who are to attend will leave Philadelphia on Saturday, April 26, going in automobiles, by the way of Baltimore, where they will be entertained at luncheon, at the Hotel Chateau, by the officers of the 306th Cavalry. On arrival at Fort Myer they will be quartered at the Officers' Club and attached to the 2d Squadron, 3d Cavalry.

On Monday, April 28, they will leave on a five days' practice march to Warrenton, Va., with the cavalry troops of Fort Myer, under command of Major Wainwright, 3d Cavalry.

The lieutenant-colonel, 2 majors, 5 captains, and 14 lieutenants of the 305th will attend.

Colonel John C. Groome and the officers of the 305th Cavalry entertained at dinner, at the Hotel Sylvania, in Philadelphia, on April 16, in honor of Major-General William H. Hay, U. S. A., retired, and Lieutenant-Colonel William R. Pope, Cavalry, U. S. A., acting Chief of Staff, 62d Cavalry Division.

The final meeting has just been held of the second annual class of instruction in equitation for Cavalry Reserve officers, given under the direction of the 305th Cavalry.

The class was held from 5:15 to 7 o'clock Wednesday evening, May 21, in the armory of the First Philadelphia City Cavalry. The horses were partly those belonging to the City Troop and others belonging to the U. S. Quartermaster and used in the school for Quartermaster officers at Schuylkill Arsenal.

The method of instruction was taken from the present manual and from methods taught at the Cavalry School at Fort Riley. The officers seemed to enjoy the work, and even though the course had to be limited to only eleven rides the progress was very noticeable. During the last several rides instruction in jumping was given, and although only one officer had ever jumped very excellent performances were made on low jumps.

An important feature of this instruction has been that it has provided something tangible for regimental enthusiasm to center upon and in addition has been a great incentive to recruiting.

The instruction was given by Major Edward N. Hay, Cavalry, O. R. C., graduate of the Cavalry School, Fort Riley, Kansas, National Guard and Reserve Officers class. In his absence classes were conducted by Major R. R. D. McCullough, 305th Cavalry. Major McCullough is a West Point graduate and graduate of the Troop Officers class, Cavalry School.

The series of monthly dinners of the 305th Cavalry culminated on May 29 with the most successful of these dinners. On that date the Regimental Annual Dinner was held at the "Rabbit Club," Bala, Pa.

Forty officers of the regiment were present and among the guests were the following: Lieutenant-Colonel H. R. Smalley, Cavalry; Major Pelham D. Glassford, Field Artillery; Major Gardner, Finance-Organized Reserve Corps, Philadelphia; Captain De Molyen, formerly of 7th British Lancers; Captain John C. Groome, Jr., Cavalry, Organized Reserve Corps, and Mr. Dahlstrom and Mr. Everett Kent, Philadelphia.

On the afternoon of May 29, prior to the Regimental Annual Dinner, a number of the officers of the 305th Cavalry attended the horse show at Devon, Pennsylvania. On this date the 305th Cavalry had four entries in the Military Chargers Class. Although not winning the Blue Ribbon in this event, they were awarded the second and third places. Captain George A. Goodyear, of the Regular Service, won the Blue and the handsome cup presented by Colonel John C. Groome, commanding officer of the 305th Cavalry. The second place was annexed by First Lieutenant Max Livingston, riding *Fleetfoot;* third place by Second Lieutenant William McKinley Bray, on his hunter *Killarney;* Fourth place went to the 1st City Troop, Philadelphia.

Great credit is due to Lieutenant Max Livingston from the fact that the jumps were negotiated under extremely unfavorable conditions. Rain marred this event; the show ring was covered with mud and water, through which the horses floundered, making jumping extremely hazardous. Although taking second place to Captain Goodyear, on *The Rambler,* it must be taken into consideration that the worthy performer of this Regular Army officer had previously beaten all the good hunters in this section at the recent Philadelphia indoor show, which had put him "on edge" for this event; also, Mr. Livingston was upon a green hunter, under the most adverse conditions, but even that, only a slight margin separated the winner of the event and second place.

With deep regret Colonel Groome has announced in a general order the death of Captain Clarence Walsh, Staff Section of the 305th Cavalry. Captain Walsh died in Philadelphia on June 1 and was buried with military honors at Arlington National Cemetery, Washington, D. C., on June 6.

Major Robert R. D. McCullough, Cavalry, Organized Reserve Corps, assistant executive officer of the 305th Cavalry, is now in charge of the Philadelphia office during the absence of Colonel Smalley. The latter has been ordered to temporary duty as adjutant of the Summer Camp at Camp Meade, Maryland.

312th CAVALRY—Oklahoma City, Oklahoma

Lieutenant-Colonel D. R. Bonfoey, 312th Cavalry, Commanding

Colonel R. E. McNally, Cavalry, Executive Officer

This regiment was the first in the corps area to be recruited to full strength. It is hoped that the regiment will do its two weeks' summer training at Fort Logan, Colorado. It is a logical place due to its central location and the small amount of mileage available. If it is possible to go about the middle of July, almost all the officers will attend. It is hoped that a troop of cavalry will march down from Fort D. A. Russell to participate in this training.

In conjunction with the annual Southwest American Live Stock Association show the Executive Officer of the 312th Cavalry put on as an entertainment feature a fine horse show from March 3 to 8. The citizens of the town co-operated magnificently in this work, and the show was in every sense a very great success, reflecting credit upon all concerned. Teams came from Fort Riley, Fort Sill, Fort Reno, and Fort Sam Houston. The various firms in the vicinity, such as Wilson & Co., Younger, Bigley & McDaniel, and the local chamber of commerce contributed prizes, money, decorations, and service. All expenses of visiting teams and their entertainment were provided. Comfortable accommodations were made available for the enlisted men. This event has proved a great stimulus to the organized reserves in this vicinity, and already the chamber of commerce has included in its budget a sum sufficient to cover a similar show next year. The spirit of this section in supporting this activity is all the more remarkable when it is considered that for a number of weeks prior to the show many counties of the State were in the throes of martial law, there had been a local disastrous flood, and later a loss of the cotton crop, resulting altogether in the greatest financial depression the State had experienced in years.

314th CAVALRY—Lexington, Kentucky

Colonel George Taylor Smith, Cavalry Reserve Corps, Commanding

Captain Carl B. Byrd, Executive Officer

The interest and activities of the regiment have been focused since the first of the year upon an organization which when completed will be unique in character and will be the nearest to a "three in one" component yet devised. The scheme is to organize a troop of cavalry, Kentucky National Guard, composed entirely, or as nearly so as possible, of Reserve officers, including the officers of the 314th Cavalry, living in Fayette County. The Regular Army officers on duty with both the National Guard and the Organized Reserves will then combine in instructing this organization both as National Guardsmen and Reserve officers. Negotiations are being made for armory, stables, and grounds with the Ashland Country Club. The personnel is already signed up—70 in number.

During the winter the officers of the regiment have co-operated with the Reserve Officers Mess of Central Kentucky, which hold monthly dinners. At these dinners there was always a lecture on a professional subject by one of the Regular Army officers on duty in this city. At one meeting eight reels of training films were shown.

At the last 314th Cavalry dinner there was an attendance of twenty-five (25) officers from six different counties.

Quotas for Reserve Officers Training Camp and for instructors at the C. M. T. Camp are full, while applications for the three months' course at the Cavalry School are so numerous that it will be difficult to select the lucky men.

Although the school year is not over, officers in the regiment have completed and passed seven subcourses; 28 officers are taking the correspondence course in cavalry.

Enter the 1924 Colorado Endurance Ride

VOLUME XXXIII OCTOBER, 1924 NUMBER 137

THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Devoted to the Interests of the Cavalry, to the Professional Improvement of Its Officers and Men, and to the Advancement of the Mounted Service Generally

EDITOR

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry

Copyright, 1924, by
The United States Cavalry Association

Published quarterly by the United States Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street, Washington, D. C. Editor, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Cavalry. Managing Editor, Captain George A. Moore, Cavalry. Entered as second-class matter March 22, 1920, at the post-office at Washington, D. C., under the Act of March 3, 1879. Acceptance for mailing at special rate of postage provided for in section 1103, Act of October 3, 1917, authorized May 29, 1920.

$2.50 per year; single copy, 65 cents. Canadian and foreign postage 25 cents additional

Recommended

The German Cavalry in Belgium and France, 1914.

By Lieutenant-General von Poseck, Inspector General of Cavalry, German Army. Maps, index. (Price, $4.00.) The only COMPLETE story of the very IMPORTANT work of the German Cavalry at the beginning of the World War. How the Cavalry facilitated the rapid advance of the German armies, the concentrations, marches, reconnaissances, initial maneuvers, MOUNTED and dismounted fights, CHARGES, services of security and information, meeting engagements, the WHOLE story told in chronological order by units and so tied up and related that one can easily follow it through on the excellent maps. Material for this book came principally from EYE-WITNESSES and is therefore doubly valuable. Read what Cavalry DID.

As to Military Training

Arranged by Major J. F. Wall, U. S. Cavalry. 267 pages. Illustrated. Maps. (Price, $2.50.) Compilation of IMPORTANT parts of manuals. Handy for saddle pocket. "A handy compendium of useful information well adapted to the needs of the mounted service and which any one entering upon a military career may study with great profit."—W. A. Holbrook, Major-General, U. S. A., Chief of Cavalry.

Elementary Equitation

By Beretto de Souza. 338 pages. 96 illustrations. $3.50. An excellent book in its field. Clarity of explanation, fortified by a large number of very helpful drawings, is one of the principal virtues of this book. The writer is a well-trained and experienced riding-master, who bases his methods and explanations on sound principles of anatomy and horse mechanics. Helpful to any rider. Emphasis upon certain desirables—lightness of hand, suppleness of trunk and arms, for example—just to mention a few—is sure to get under the skin of the most confirmed horse-killer. The chapter on "correct position of the rider" is particularly good. Matter not commonly found in horse books on the side saddle is presented in this book. The several gaits, the use of the legs and the reins are given quite fully, as well as excellent cautions as to the *manner* of applying these aids. A few simple suppling exercises and flexions are described, and the last chapter deals with stumblers, shiers, rearers, runaways, punishments, and rewards.

A History of Cavalry

By Colonel Denison. 467 pages. Index. 11 maps. (Price, $4.20.) The BEST constructed book on our shelves and the ONLY history of Cavalry. Every statement of fact substantiated by reference to the original source. Accurate, vivid, full of information, with pen photos of the great cavalrymen of all ages. Shows the development of arms, armor, tactics, organization, the growth of the infantry and artillery along with the Cavalry and the interplay one on the other, and in this sense is a SHORT HISTORY OF WARFARE. All important battles described. SECOND EDITION. No Cavalry library complete without this book.

As to Polo

By Forbes. New Edition. 25 diagrams of plays in colors. 151 pages. (Price, $3.00.) The STANDARD book on American game. Details, equipment, stick-work, team play. How to play EACH position.

Breaking and Riding

with Military Commentaries. By Fillis, former Ecuyer-en-chief to the Central Cavalry School at St. Petersburg. 356 pages, index. 70 illustrations. New Edition. (Price, $7.50.) Horse-lore Classic by master with fifty years' horse experience. Not pupil of Baucher, Fillis improved on his method. Fillis taught principle there must always be progression; that horse must be kept up to bit; that horse must always be kept straight. Not equitation manual. Possesses instead GENIUS. Fillis' method of instruction is by relation—instruction in simplest form. Book for practical horsemen. Definite, full explanation by master-horsemen of how each movement is accomplished. Therein lies Fillis' value.

Equitation

By Bussigny. Photographs; 361 pages. (Price, $7.50.) The perfectly trained horse, mounted by a perfectly trained rider, is goal of this system of PRACTICAL exercises. After 65 years' horse experience, this pupil of Baucher, an old French campaigner, gives the results of a LIFE'S OBSERVATION of the horse. Careful, DETAILED EXPLANATION and illustration. Scientific.

BOOK DEPARTMENT

U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

1624 H STREET N. W.

WASHINGTON, D. C.

Cavalrymen! Read This!!

YOUR Association is in the magazine business. As a dealer, the Association gets a commission you as individuals cannot get. If every Troop and officer sent their magazine orders through the Association, the profit in a year would pay for the publication of one number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL. We guarantee as low prices as can be gotten, meeting all competition.

Send ALL your magazine and book orders through YOUR Association.

SERVICE FOR THE SERVICE

Check the books you wish and give mailing address below:

Name.....

Address.....

CONTENTS FOR OCTOBER, 1924

VOL. XXXIII, No. 137

A MESSAGE TO THE CAVALRY 391
Major-General Malin Craig, Chief of Cavalry.

THE VALUE OF COMPETITION IN TRAINING 392
Major-General Eli A. Helmick, the Inspector-General.

THE BRITISH HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY 399
Lieutenant-Colonel R. G. Howard-Vyse, Royal Horse Guards.

IN SUMMER TRAINING WITH THE CITIZEN CAVALRY 406
Major William Waller Edwards, Cavalry.

THE JAPANESE CAVALRY SCHOOL 411
Captain Y. Inouye, Cavalry, Imperial Japanese Army.

CAVALRY MARCHES 413
Lieutenant-Colonel Gordon Johnston, Cavalry.

ARMY POLO AND THE JUNIOR CHAMPIONSHIP 418
Major L. A. Beard, Q. M. Corps, Remount Service.

OLYMPIA AND THE VIII OLYMPIADE 420
Major J. A. Barry, Cavalry.

A TRIBUTE TO THE CAVALRY 426

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL TEAM IN THE COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE 427
Major John T. McLane, Cavalry, and Major C. C. Benson, Cavalry.

THE CAVALRY BOARD 442
Major K. S. Bradford, Cavalry.

THE COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE 447
Major C. L. Scott, Q. M. Corps, Remount Service.

GRADUATION EXERCISES, THE CAVALRY SCHOOL 449

HORSE SHOW OF THE FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION 452

EDITORIAL COMMENT:
THE ASSOCIATION AND THE JOURNAL—A PLEA FOR PROMPTNESS—THE CAVALRY FUND—THE ARMY AND MOUNTED COMPETITIONS—THE RASP 458

NOTICE OF THE ANNUAL MEETING OF THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION 460

TOPICS OF THE DAY:
A ONE-THOUSAND-DOLLAR FUND—EQUESTRIAN EVENTS OF THE VIII OLYMPIADE—THE 1924 ENDURANCE RIDE—RESERVE NEW MEMBER CONTEST—THE OLYMPIC RIFLE AND PISTOL COMPETITION—THE COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE—THE CAVALRY TRY-OUT MATCHES AT FORT DES MOINES—MAILING LIST OF THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—CAVALRY C. M. T. C. AT CAMP MEADE, MARYLAND—RESERVE OFFICERS TRAINING CORPS HORSE SHOW, MICHIGAN AGRICULTURAL COLLEGE, EAST LANSING, MICHIGAN—THE CAVALRY TEAM AT THE NATIONAL MATCHES 461

NEW BOOKS REVIEWED 470

FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS 473

POLO 488

THE NATIONAL GUARD 491

THE ORGANIZED RESERVES 495

REGIMENTAL NOTES 497

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President:

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Retired.

Vice-President:

Brigadier-General STUART HEINTZELMAN.

Secretary and Treasurer:

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel WM. J. GLASGOW, Cavalry.
Colonel JAMES H. REEVES (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Colonel HERBERT B. CROSBY, Cavalry.
Colonel LEON B. KROMER (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Colonel WILLIAM P. DRAPER, Cavalry Reserve Corps.
Colonel ARTHUR C. COLAHAN, 103d Cavalry.
Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry.
Major JOHN C. MONTGOMERY, Cavalry.
Major JONATHAN M. WAINWRIGHT, 3d Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

(1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.

(2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and non-commissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.

(3) Honorary.

Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for a least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL: and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for $2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of $2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.

Recommended

The German Cavalry in Belgium and France, 1914.

By Lieutenant-General von Poseck, Inspector General of Cavalry, German Army. Maps, index. (Price, $4.60.) The only COMPLETE story of the very IMPORTANT work of the German Cavalry at the beginning of the World War. How the Cavalry facilitated the rapid advance of the German armies, the concentrations, marches, reconnaissances, initial manœuvers, MOUNTED and dismounted fights, CHARGES, services of security and information, meeting engagements, the WHOLE story told in chronological order by units and so tied up and related that one can easily follow it through on the excellent maps. Material for this book came principally from EYE-WITNESSES and is therefore doubly valuable. Read what Cavalry DID.

As to Military Training

Arranged by Major J. F. Wall, U. S. Cavalry. 267 pages. Illustrated. Maps. (Price, $2.50.) Compilation of IMPORTANT parts of manuals. Handy for saddle pocket. "A handy compendium of useful information well adapted to the needs of the mounted service and which any one entering upon a military career may study with great profit."—W. A. HOLBROOK, Major-General, U. S. A., Chief of Cavalry.

Elementary Equitation

By Baretto de Souza. 338 pages. 96 illustrations. $3.50. An excellent book in its field. Clarity of explanation, fortified by a large number of very helpful drawings, is one of the principal virtues of this book. The writer is a well-trained and experienced riding-master, who bases his methods and explanations on sound principles of anatomy and horse mechanics. Helpful to any rider. Emphasis upon certain desirables—lightness of hand, suppleness of trunk and arms, for example—just to mention a few—is sure to get under the skin of the most confirmed horse-killer. The chapter on "correct position of the rider" is particularly good. Matter not commonly found in horse books on the side saddle is presented in this book. The several gaits, the use of the legs and the reins are given quite fully, as well as excellent cautions as to the *manner* of applying these aids. A few simple suppling exercises and lexions are described, and the last chapter deals with stumblers, shiers, rearers, runaways, punishments, and rewards.

A History of Cavalry

By Colonel Denison. 467 pages. Index. 11 maps. (Price, $4.20.) The BEST constructed book on our shelves and the ONLY history of Cavalry. Every statement of fact substantiated by reference to the original source. Accurate, vivid, full of information, with pen photos of the great cavalrymen of all ages. Shows the development of arms, armor, tactics, organization, the growth of the infantry and artillery along with the Cavalry and the interplay one on the other, and in this sense is a SHORT HISTORY OF WARFARE. All important battles described. SECOND EDITION. No Cavalry library complete without this book.

As to Polo

By Forbes. New Edition. 25 diagrams of plays in colors. 151 pages. (Price, $3.00.) The STANDARD book on American game. Details, equipment, stick-work, team play. How to play EACH position.

Breaking and Riding

with Military Commentaries. By Fillis, former Ecuyer-en-chief to the Central Cavalry School at St. Petersburg. 356 pages, index. 70 illustrations. New Edition. (Price, $7.50.) Horse-lore Classic by master with fifty years' horse experience. Not pupil of Baucher, Fillis improved on his method. Fillis taught principle there must always be progression; that horse must be kept up to bit; that horse must always be kept straight. Not equitation manual. Possesses instead GENIUS. Fillis' method of instruction is by relation—instruction in simplest form. Book for practical horsemen. Definite, full explanation by master-horsemen of how each movement is accomplished. Therein lies Fillis' value.

Equitation

By Bussigny. Photographs; 361 pages. (Price, $7.50.) The perfectly trained horse, mounted by a perfectly trained rider, is goal of this system of PRACTICAL exercises. After 65 years' horse experience, this pupil of Baucher, an old French campaigner, gives the results of a LIFE'S OBSERVATION of the horse. Careful, DETAILED EXPLANATION and illustration. Scientific.

BOOK DEPARTMENT

U. S. CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

1624 H STREET N. W.

WASHINGTON, D. C.

Cavalrymen! Read This!!

YOUR Association is in the magazine business. As a dealer, the Association gets a commission you as individuals cannot get. If every Troop and officer sent their magazine orders through the Association, the profit in a year would pay for the publication of one number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL. We guarantee as low prices as can be gotten, meeting all competition.

Send ALL your magazine and book orders through YOUR Association.

SERVICE FOR THE SERVICE

Check the books you wish and give mailing address below:

Name.....

Address.....

CONTENTS FOR OCTOBER, 1924

VOL. XXXIII, No. 137

A MESSAGE TO THE CAVALRY 391
Major-General Malin Craig, Chief of Cavalry.

THE VALUE OF COMPETITION IN TRAINING 392
Major-General Eli A. Helmick, the Inspector-General.

THE BRITISH HOUSEHOLD CAVALRY 399
Lieutenant-Colonel R. G. Howard-Vyse, Royal Horse Guards.

IN SUMMER TRAINING WITH THE CITIZEN CAVALRY 406
Major William Waller Edwards, Cavalry.

THE JAPANESE CAVALRY SCHOOL 411
Captain Y. Inouye, Cavalry, Imperial Japanese Army.

CAVALRY MARCHES 413
Lieutenant-Colonel Gordon Johnston, Cavalry.

ARMY POLO AND THE JUNIOR CHAMPIONSHIP 418
Major L. A. Beard, Q. M. Corps, Remount Service.

OLYMPIA AND THE VIII OLYMPIADE 420
Major J. A. Barry, Cavalry.

A TRIBUTE TO THE CAVALRY 426

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL TEAM IN THE COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE 427
Major John T. McLane, Cavalry, and Major C. C. Benson, Cavalry.

THE CAVALRY BOARD 442
Major K. S. Bradford, Cavalry.

THE COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE 447
Major C. L. Scott, Q. M. Corps, Remount Service.

GRADUATION EXERCISES, THE CAVALRY SCHOOL 449

HORSE SHOW OF THE FIRST CAVALRY DIVISION 452

EDITORIAL COMMENT:
THE ASSOCIATION AND THE JOURNAL—A PLEA FOR PROMPTNESS—THE CAVALRY FUND—THE ARMY AND MOUNTED COMPETITIONS—THE RASP 458

NOTICE OF THE ANNUAL MEETING OF THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION 460

TOPICS OF THE DAY:
A ONE-THOUSAND-DOLLAR FUND—EQUESTRIAN EVENTS OF THE VIII OLYMPIADE—THE 1924 ENDURANCE RIDE—RESERVE NEW MEMBER CONTEST—THE OLYMPIC RIFLE AND PISTOL COMPETITION—THE COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE—THE CAVALRY TRY-OUT MATCHES AT FORT DES MOINES—MAILING LIST OF THE CAVALRY SCHOOL—CAVALRY C. M. T. C. AT CAMP MEADE, MARYLAND—RESERVE OFFICERS TRAINING CORPS HORSE SHOW, MICHIGAN AGRICULTURAL COLLEGE, EAST LANSING, MICHIGAN—THE CAVALRY TEAM AT THE NATIONAL MATCHES 461

NEW BOOKS REVIEWED 470

FOREIGN MILITARY JOURNALS 473

POLO 488

THE NATIONAL GUARD 491

THE ORGANIZED RESERVES 495

REGIMENTAL NOTES 497

The United States Cavalry Association

DESIGN

1. The aim and purpose of the Association shall be to disseminate knowledge of the military art and science, to promote the professional improvement of its members, and to preserve and foster the spirit, the traditions, and the solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States.

—ARTICLE III of the Constitution.

Organized November 9, 1885

OFFICERS

President:

Major-General WILLARD A. HOLBROOK, Retired.

Vice-President:

Brigadier-General STUART HEINTZELMAN.

Secretary and Treasurer:

Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. MORRIS, Cavalry.

EXECUTIVE COUNCIL

Colonel WM. J. GLASGOW, Cavalry.
Colonel JAMES H. REEVES (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Colonel HERBERT B. CROSBY, Cavalry.
Colonel LEON B. KROMER (Cavalry), General Staff Corps.
Colonel WILLIAM P. DRAPER, Cavalry Reserve Corps.
Colonel ARTHUR C. COLAHAN, 103d Cavalry.
Lieutenant-Colonel EDWARD DAVIS, Cavalry.
Major JOHN C. MONTGOMERY, Cavalry.
Major JONATHAN M. WAINWRIGHT, 3d Cavalry.

MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSCRIPTION FOR THE CAVALRY JOURNAL

Membership shall be of three classes, which, together with the conditions of eligibility therefor, are as follows:

(1) Active, for which all general officers of the Army of the United States and all commissioned officers of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States shall be eligible.

(2) Associate, for which all present and former commissioned, warrant, and noncommissioned officers of honorable record of the military or naval services of the United States not included in class 1 shall be eligible.

(3) Honorary.

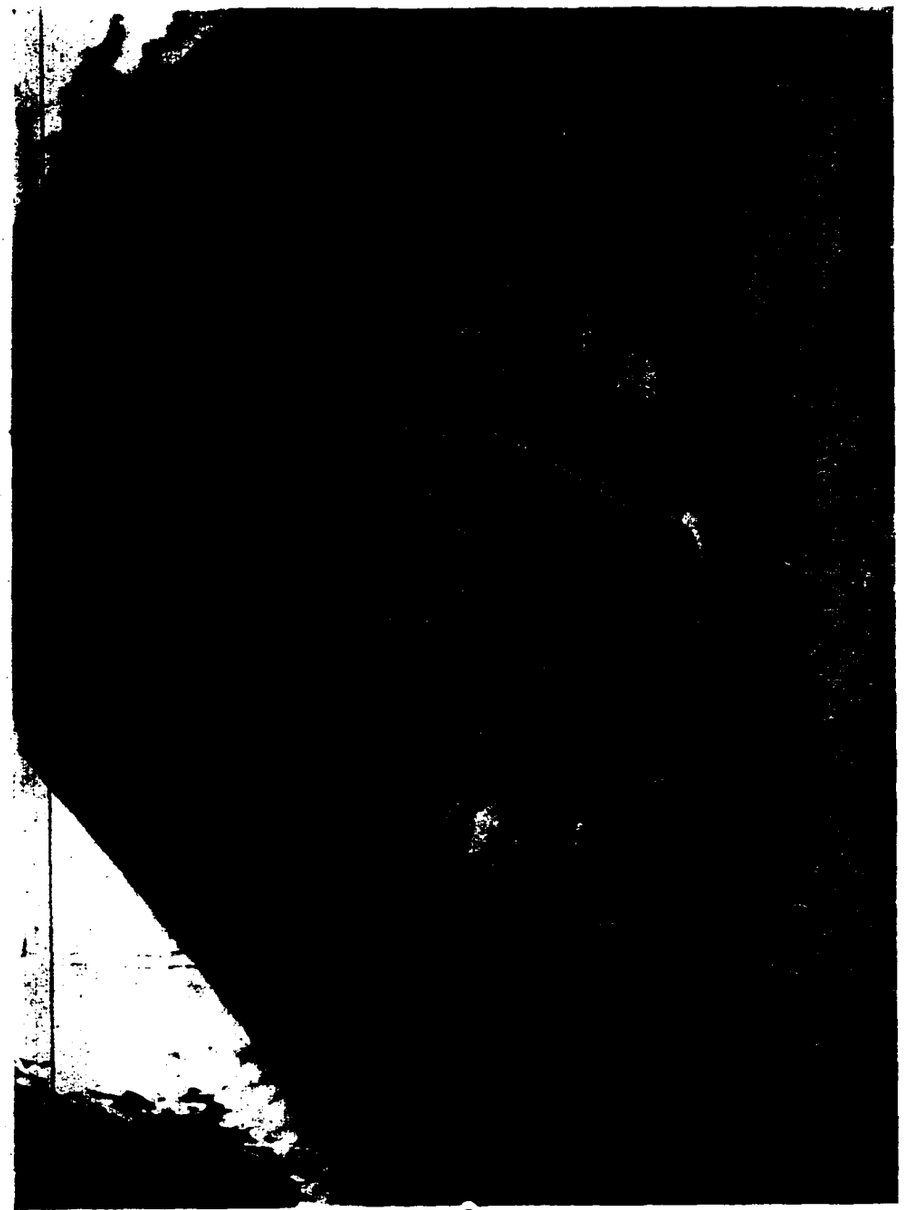
Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility and be accompanied by payment for a least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL: and, the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership from the date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced.

Active and associate members of the Association shall subscribe annually for the JOURNAL and make payment therefor in advance.

Application for membership should be addressed to the Secretary, U. S. Cavalry Association, 1624 H Street N. W., Washington, D. C., showing present or former military status and accompanied by remittance to the order of the Association for $2.50, first year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL. Membership is continued after the first year by renewal of subscription to the JOURNAL.

Any person or organization not eligible for membership may subscribe for the JOURNAL at the regular subscription rates of $2.50 per year. Canadian and foreign postage, 25 cents additional.

Members and subscribers are requested to give prompt notice in advance of change of address.



GENERAL PHILIP HENRY SHERIDAN

Courtesy of U. S. Army Signal Corps

THE

CAVALRY JOURNAL

Vol. XXXIII OCTOBER, 1924 No. 137

A MESSAGE TO THE CAVALRY

IT GIVES me great pleasure to take up the splendid work of my predecessor, Major-General Willard A. Holbrook, and to acknowledge, as an inheritance from him, an enthusiastic and loyal cavalry, which will make my task as Chief of Cavalry a most pleasant one. By cavalry, I mean not only the cavalry of the Regular Army, but that of the National Guard and Organized Reserves, including the Reserve Officers' Training Corps.

It is appropriate, at this time, that I emphasize certain elements that enter into the life of the cavalry. Good comradeship within the cavalry is essential. All cavalry officers should make one of their primary duties the study of the history of cavalry in past wars. The success of a cavalry organization depends, largely, upon the contentment of the enlisted personnel. Experience has proved that the officer who maintains an interest in the various activities of his men finds quick response and a superior quality of service rendered by them.

Because of its importance, I take this opportunity to lay stress on individuality in the cavalry service. The acts of individuals and small units are vital to the success or failure of cavalry operations. Summing up, the cavalry service demands a maximum of the human element to obtain efficiency.

The inherent nature of cavalry activities has no place for hesitancy in the mental or physical make-up of the cavalryman, while at the same time it calls for good "horse sense." Physical activity and self-training to acquire the willingness to take a chance after quick and logical deliberation will go a long way toward fitting one's self efficiently for cavalry service.

Finally, I want to drive home the fact that the cavalryman must not neglect the care of the horse, his best friend. A fit horse makes a fit cavalryman.

Malin Craig

Chief of Cavalry

The Value of Competition in Training

BY

Major-General ELI A. HELMICK, The Inspector-General

THE chief mission of the Regular Army in time of peace, under our system of National Defense, is to organize and instruct the citizen components of the Army of the United States. The theoretical and technical instruction of these components is the special function of officers who are prepared for this work in our Service and Staff Schools. The practical exemplification and demonstration which form an important part of the instruction are supplied by units of the Regular Army specially trained for the purpose. It is plain, therefore, that the efficiency of our troop training in time of peace is of greater importance at the present time than it has ever been in the past.

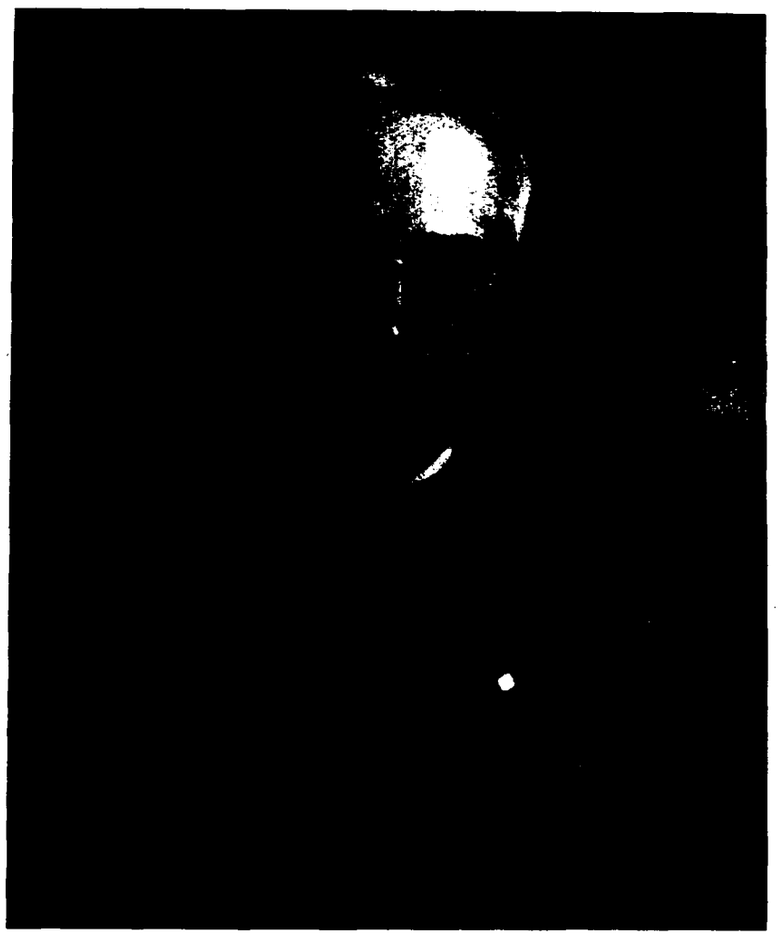
Difficulties to be Overcome

It is difficult to obtain the desired standard of efficiency in the training of our regular units in time of peace. The period of instruction extends over the entire year. The enlisted men are discharged from day to day throughout the year and replacements are received in the same way. There is no fixed starting point for instruction and at no period of the year have the men in any one unit had an equal opportunity for training. Moreover, there is the never-ending fatigue incident to the upkeep of buildings and grounds at our troop stations. It should not be surprising under these conditions—and they have not been overstated—to find a state of discouragement and monotony that seriously retards training. The correction of the difficulties named is not within the power of the War Department. They can, however, be overcome, in part at least, and any scheme which will help to overcome them is worthy of consideration.

Importance of Competition

It is the purpose of this article to call attention to the importance of rivalry and competition in raising the standards of efficiency in our training. Rivalry is one of the human instincts and is particularly strong in youth. Stated simply, rivalry is the desire to beat the other fellow; to do a thing quicker and better than he can. The appeal to this instinct is one of the strongest appeals that can be made to man. It has always been resorted to in educational institutions, in sports, and in industrial and commercial life. It has enabled us to reach a very high standard in shooting, both ashore and afloat, with small arms and guns of large caliber.

Our success in rifle marksmanship is due, in large part, to competition accompanied by the award of prizes, trophies and additional pay for excellence in individual qualifications. In the Coast Artillery, companies manning guns of the same model and caliber for a number of years competed annually in their firing for record and their relative standing was published in orders.



MAJOR-GENERAL ELI A. HELMICK
The Inspector-General

System in the Navy

The Navy has a well-developed system of competition to advance its training. The system applies, in a general way, to each of its three important departments of instruction, viz: gunnery, engineering, and communications. In determining the relative degrees of excellence only vesssls of the same type are compared. Excellence in each department of training is rewarded by the award of trophies, money prizes to certain personnel, and the authority to place insignia of excellence on the winning vessel and on the uniform of those members of its personnel who contributed most to its success. The ship which gains the highest rating in its class in the three departments of instruction is authorized to fly the battle efficiency pennant. In addition, the Captain receives a letter of commendation from the President of the United States, and the ten officers who, next to the Captain, contribute most to the winning of the pennant, receive letters of commendation from the Secretary of the Navy. Letters of commendation also go to the Captain and ten officers on those ships which receive a rating of 95 per cent or better of the rating made by the pennant-winning ship.

Results in France

During the World War, when divisions were anxious to get to France, it was not necessary to resort to special means to create interest. Everyone was anxious to learn. They asked only to be taught. After the Armistice, however, it was different. The troops in France wanted to get back to the States, and those in the States thought only of getting to their homes. During this period the principle of competition wherever used produced excellent results. Competitive inspections, horse shows, and transportation shows did more than anything else to create and maintain an interest in the training essential to discipline.

I was in command of Base Section No. 5 at Brest, France, where it was decided to embark for home the bulk of the American troops. Camps had to be built and the entire embarkation machine constructed and put into operation. Troops were coming through and being prepared for embarkation during this period of construction. I never doubted our ability to build the camps and organize and construct the operating machine, for there was, on the whole, neither lack of men nor materials. I was, however, seriously concerned as to whether it would ever reach the standard of cleanliness and order I hoped to realize, and which was essential to efficient operation. Weather conditions were adverse and troop units remained in camp from a few days to a week or two only. We did, however, reach standards in all these respects far beyond my most sanguine hopes, and it was due largely to a scheme of friendly rivalry. In brief it was this: Each one of the great cafeteria kitchens was to be marked during the week on a selected and published number of points. At the end of the week the kitchen receiving the best rating would fly a red flag with one white star. If it won a second time, an additional star was added to its flag. If it succeeded in winning a third time, it was given a blue flag with a white "C," indicating that it was the champion kitchen for

the time, and the entire kitchen personnel was sent to a leave area for a period of two weeks. The same system was applied to the billeting areas, to the stables, the trucks, the animal transportation, and passenger cars. As soon as the scheme was published, flag-staffs were raised, and everybody set to work. Our troubles were over; but one essential thing remained, namely, careful, conscientious and fair ratings. These were kept up from day to day and from week to week. The camp became a model, not only of cleanliness and order, but in the efficiency of its operation. My task and that of other commanders was to note, acknowledge and commend the winning individuals and units. The laggards were shamed into activity or had to submit to discipline. Honest efforts and hard work continued, of course, for nothing worth while can be accomplished without them, but they alone could not have accomplished the success gained. Honest effort and hard work, *plus competition*, did it.

Results at Camp Grant

At Camp Grant, Ill., after the war, conditions were far from satisfactory. General George Bell was in command. The 6th Division was the garrison. The period of education and recreation was at its height and Camp Grant was the parent institution. Between this work and that which was absolutely essential to keep the temporary buildings in a habitable condition and to care for and guard the great mass of Government property at the camp, there was little time to be given to military training and to the formation of proper soldierly standards. Yet the training was fair and soldierly standards were high, and again COMPETITION DID IT. General Bell introduced a system of competitive inspections primarily to stir up interest in training and incidentally to determine the relative efficiency of training in the units of the division. The inspections also determined the most soldierly men in organizations. I had an opportunity to see the effect of these inspections. They were most satisfactory. Special insignia to be worn on the sleeve were awarded to the men showing the highest soldierly standards, and in addition passes were granted as a reward for excellence.

Inspection Results

Last year I inspected the troops composing our largest garrisons. In making the inspection of one of these commands, I noticed that the conditions of barracks, especially dining rooms, kitchens, dormitories, and store-rooms, and of guards and guard-houses were all most satisfactory. I also noticed as the inspection progressed, that disciplinary training and soldierly standards were not on an equally high plane of excellence. I found that competitive inspections accompanied by the award of prizes, pennants, ribbons or banners, had created an interest which accounted largely for the satisfactory conditions noted. A similar scheme of competition had not, up to the time of my inspection, been applied to disciplinary training and soldierly standards. There had been an immense amount of fatigue. It had been necessary to utilize the labor of troops in handling and housing large quantities of military stores.

Training, for a time, had to be placed in a position of secondary importance. Within the year, however, there has been an opportunity to give proper attention to training and the competitive principle has been used in this command with excellent results. A recent service paper contained a detailed account of winning organizations—companies, platoons, and squads.

It is generally difficult to obtain satisfactory standards in service detachments on duty at our Service and Staff Schools. I was interested in observing a competitive inspection conducted recently at one of these schools. The first, second, and third best squads were selected, and the first, second, and third best men from the recruit detachment. The inspection was made by three officers, one of whom was a field officer. The officers themselves presented excellent soldierly standards—neat and correct as to uniform and equipment. The commandant did not content himself with a mere announcement of the winning squads and recruits; he assembled the entire party—squads, men, and inspecting officers—in his office and expressed his personal gratification and commendation of the interest shown and of the results reached by the men. It took but a glance into the faces of the men to see how much this personal interest of the commandant meant to them, and what beneficial effect it would have, not only on them, but on every individual in the detachments which they represented at the inspection.

Application to Units

Colonel A. J. McNab, in working out a scheme of training, devised what he calls a job sheet. The things a soldier must know are listed along the top of a card. The names of the men are written along the left margin of the card. In the rectangle under the subject in which instruction is being given, and opposite the names of the men being instructed, is placed the data required. If a man is not present for inspection, the rectangle is left blank; if present, the degree of progress is noted as follows: * fair; ** good; *** very good; **** excellent; ***** capable instructor. Each instructor uses the card, whether he be a squad leader or a platoon commander. The squad leader's ratings are supervised by the platoon commander, and the ratings of the platoon commander in turn are supervised by the company commander. A large sheet is provided to be posted in the company assembly room where each man can see his rating and compare it with others in the company. The idea is competitive and designed to build up interest.

Rivalry is valuable not only between individuals and units, but it may be used to advantage to encourage the unit to surpass its best previous record. The "Race to Berlin," instituted after the Armistice in France, had for its object to encourage a speeding up in the handling of personnel and supplies. Each base port strove to surpass its previous weekly record and the one which made the greatest advance won the race. It accomplished its purpose in producing speed but it was wasteful. It is not doubted, however, that taking into consideration the time and the conditions under which it was instituted, the ends gained justified the means.

The July number of the Cavalry Journal for this year contains prize articles outlining plans for tests in combat leadership of small cavalry units. These tests are based on competition between selected units. The idea, in my opinion, is excellent. It can be utilized in posts containing garrisons in size from a squadron to a division, to great advantage, I am sure. I think also that the Corps Area Commanders can make use of the competitive idea with success during their annual inspections in both garrison and field training. I am doubtful as to the advisability of extending it further than this. In support of this idea, it may be said that in the Coast Artillery they have come to the conclusion that it is no longer advisable to attempt to determine the relative efficiency of ALL units operating guns of the same model and caliber for the reason that the conditions under which the widely separated units operate are too dissimilar. Competitions are now confined to units in the same district. In the Navy a similar impression is gaining ground, and the question of confining competition to like vessels in the squadron or fleet command is being considered.

It is very questionable, also, if it is beneficial, on the whole, to offer money rewards to personnel taking part in competitions, for the reason that it encourages covetousness, avarice, and selfishness, all of which are incompatible with a spirit of harmony which must exist in every efficient unit.

I had an unusual opportunity for observing training during the World War, and within the past year I have inspected more than half of our regular troops. The most efficient commands, so far as garrison training is concerned, were those in which the greatest interest had been built up. The least efficient were those deadened by routine and monotony.

I have enumerated the above incidents to show the value of rivalry and competition in aiding us to reach satisfactory standards of efficiency in our troop training. While their utilization in our service is not new, their real value has not been understood and, as a result, they have not been generally applied.

It must be understood also that competition and rivalry alone will not accomplish the purpose we seek. *They are aids only.* Their great value lies in their power to produce interest—to overcome monotony. It must not be forgotten also that their use can be overdone. It has been overdone in the past. The basic idea in competition involves a relative rating of individuals or units. *This must be done with fairness and justice* or harmful results will follow instead of good ones.

Basic Principles

In utilizing competition certain basic principles must be observed Too many different factors should not enter into the competition. The scope of the competition should be so limited that the competitors—individuals or units—will work under the same or similar conditions. As a general principle, I should say that, except in those things that are capable of accurate determination, such as excellence in rifle marksmanship and gunnery, competition should be confined to garrisons or commands serving in the same

locality or district. I have in mind now comparative excellence in disciplinary and field training. In disciplinary training, intra-garrison competitions are most valuable and comparatively simple to conduct. Rules and methods of judging must be carefully prepared. *Above and beyond all else, the judges must be fair and just.*

To evolve and carry out any competitive scheme with success will require, beside those things already mentioned, hard work and some imagination on the part of the unit commander. It is not the work of the officer on the drill ground or in the field—as important as that work is—that counts most. IT IS THE TIME SPENT IN STUDY AND WORK TO EVOLVE THE BEST WAY TO PUT THE JOB OVER. It is study—not once a month or once a week, but every day—AND ALWAYS BEFORE THE PERIOD OF INSTRUCTION ARRIVES. When I go about making inspections I find so many officers whose work with their units gives me the impression that they have not prepared themselves; that they have not the detailed knowledge of their training manuals which is essential to efficient instruction; that their work is a matter of routine. I find so few officers who give the impression that they are enthusiastic in their work. The best scheme will not work well if the man who has it in charge is indifferent. A poor one may succeed if the leader is interested.

So it follows that in the application of the aids discussed in this article, as in everything else connected with our training, it is the part played by the leader that counts. If he is interested and enthusiastic in his work he will find some way to overcome the obstacles—even those that the War Department can't remove. The ideas set forth in this paper may help him. They will be of little use to the indifferent officer; there can be no short cuts to success for him. It is the officer who is desirous of interesting his men and of making their work less monotonous that I am appealing to. For if he can create an interest in his men, he will certainly reach a satisfactory state of training in his unit, establish a high soldierly standard among his men, and will be able efficiently to exemplify and demonstrate to the citizen components of the Army of the United States the methods and standards which have contributed to his success and which, if followed, will enable them to succeed.



The British Household Cavalry

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel R. G. H. HOWARD-VYSE, Royal Horse Guards

(Formerly Chief of Staff, Desert Mounted Corps)

THE sight of the British Household Cavalry escorting His Majesty on occasions of State, or mounting Guard daily at Whitehall, is probably familiar to most visitors to London; and perhaps it is for this reason that the flattering suggestion has been made to the writer that a short description of them, with special reference to his own Regiment, might be not without interest to the readers of the American CAVALRY JOURNAL.

The strictly official title of the Regiment is The Royal Regiment of Horse Guards, but it is usually referred to colloquially as The Blues. When the Commanding Officer addresses his Regiment on parade, the first word which proceeds from his mouth is "Blues"; and every officer and man is taught that the title of "A Blue" is one which can only be taken from him by death or disgrace.

So much having been said by way of clearing the ground for future reference, it will be well, since most of their characteristics are the same, to deal with the three Household Cavalry Regiments as a whole, and occasionally to enlarge upon what the writer takes leave to believe are the special attributes of the Blues. In so doing he trusts that his pride in his Regiment will not give the impression that he is unduly puffing it up. He would, as a matter of fact, have found it much easier to write on some subject with which he is less intimately connected.

ORIGIN OF THE BLUES

At the time of the Restoration of the Monarchy in the person of King Charles II, orders were given for the disbandment of the whole of the Standing Army, which had proved such a menace to the liberty of the subject in Cromwellian days. But, before these orders could be completely carried out, the need of a permanent armed force of some sort became apparent, and consequently certain corps merely went through the formal act of laying down their arms and immediately taking them up again. Among these was Colonel Unton Crook's Regiment of Horse; and the Blues claim direct descent from this regiment. This claim, however, has never been authoritatively recognised; and the Blues, together with the First and Second Life Guards (who rank above them), date officially from 1661, as the three senior Regiments of the British Army.

Though from the time of their origin the special functions of the three Regiments have been practically identical, namely, to act as personal bodyguard to the Sovereign and to assist in maintaining order, yet for the first century and a half of their existence the Blues occupied a status, so to speak, intermediate between the First and Second Life Guards, or true Household

Cavalry, and the Cavalry of the Line. It was not until after Waterloo that they were placed on an absolute equality with the other two Regiments. Meanwhile they usually occupied country quarters, a circumstance not altogether disadvantageous from the point of view of discipline and efficiency; and were more often sent abroad on active service, which has resulted in their gaining three battle honours not possessed by the other Regiments.

Considering their position, the Household Cavalry possess fewer peculiarities as compared with the rest of the army than might be supposed. That which comes most commonly to notice is that the word "Sergeant" does not exist: the Non-Commissioned Officers of that rank enjoy the good old-fashioned title of Corporal of Horse; Sergeant Majors are Corporal Majors, Quartermaster Sergeants are Quartermaster Corporals, and so on. The titular Colonelcy of our Regiments is nearly always given to a general officer of very great distinction, among whom, of late years, were Lord Wolseley, Lord Grenfell, Lord Haig, Lord Allenby, and it carries with it the high court appointment of Gold Stick. Under the Gold Stick comes the Silver Stick, a lieutenant-colonel of one of the Regiments, who issues, in the name of the Gold Stick, the orders for all State duties, and who attends, with him, all court functions of high importance. In these matters the Household Cavalry take orders direct from the Court and not from the superior military authority.

The general nature of the uniform is probably too well known to need description. The two Life Guard Regiments, red tunic and white plume, are almost indistinguishable to the non-expert eye; the Blues wear a blue tunic and red plume. All three Regiments are mounted on black horses, except the trumpeters, who ride greys.

The King's Life Guard mounts daily at the Horse Guards, a relic, of course, of the time when Whitehall was a Royal Palace. When the King or Queen are in London, it consists of an officer and about twenty-five other ranks; at other times, of a corporal of horse and twelve other ranks. It may have been noticed by those watching the Guard on the move that it is preceded and followed by advanced and rear points of two troopers; and it may interest them to know that these are usually selected as being the smartest men of the guard, and that they find the reliefs for the mounted sentries. As these only go on from 10 to 4 o'clock and have no other duty, they get off lighter, on the whole, than the rest of the guard.

Recruit Standards

The official height standard for a recruit is 5 feet 11 inches to 6 feet 1 inch. In the writer's Regiment, however, men a little shorter are occasionally accepted, and only very exceptionally is a man taken who weighs more than 160 pounds. The average weight in the Blues at the present moment is under 160 pounds—a fact which comes as a surprise to many. Every recruit is required to produce three characters, one of which ought to be from a minister of religion. From the day he joins he is taught the history of the Regiment, its duties, its privileges, and its special relationship to the Sovereign; and he is further made to realise that the reputation of the regiment depends upon his behaviour and appearance. The result is a body of men unequalled in any army in the

world, as the writer believes, for a combination of physique, intelligence, and general character.

With such men, under officers usually of high social standing, and with the traditions behind them of two and a half centuries of loyalty and gallantry in peace and war, it will be readily understood that *esprit de corps,* which perhaps plays a greater part in the British Army than in any other, is a plant which especially flourishes in the Household Cavalry. The Blues pride themserves particularly on being a solid happy family; and possibly they have some justification for this, for it is quite noticeable that persons who are attached for any reason seem almost invariably to be impressed by the total absence in the officers' mess of anything resembling a clique, and by the intimate relationship between officers and men, of which the latter never take undue advantage. At football matches the men are wont to encourage the regimental team with the words, "Come on, the Old Folks"—an expression which sums up as well as any other what we think are our special characteristics—an absence of flashiness or exaggeration and a spirit of comradeship which amounts to a family feeling. If any particular reason can be assigned for this, it may, perhaps, be that there are always several officers who have had relations in the Regiment before them; there are at the moment five whose fathers were Blues.

War Record

The Household Cavalry carry on their colours battle honours gained in the campaigns of Dettingen, Spanish Peninsula, Waterloo, Egypt 1882, South Africa 1899-1900, and many for the Late War. The Blues possess, in addition, three honours gained in the Flanders campaigns against the French of 1760 (Warburg) and 1794 (Beaumont and Willems).

For the last half century we have always, owing to our weak peace establishment, mobilised as a composite Regiment, each Regiment finding a squadron. In 1914, however, the war was hardly two months' old before a complete Household Cavalry Brigade (called the 7th) was in the field, in addition to the Composite Regiment which formed part of the original Expeditionary Force. The Regiments had been brought up to strength again by drafts of Line Cavalry Reservists, and the pick of the officers and non-commissioned officers were, of course, already abroad in the Composite Regiment—a state of affairs not altogether ideal for partaking in an entertainment like that provided by the Germans in the first battle of Ypres. But in those strenuous days the performances of the 7th Cavalry Brigade in no respect suffered by comparison with the rest of the Army. At the close of the First Battle of Ypres the Composite Regiment was split up, the squadrons each returning to their own regiment to fill up casualties. The three Regiments served throughout the war, being converted for the last six months into machine-gun battalions. In addition, the Household Cavalry produced, at one time or another, a cyclist company, an infantry battalion, and two batteries of artillery. The uniformly good records of all these units, however incongruous the work they were called upon to perform, is due chiefly to the fact that wherever a Household Cavalryman goes he never forgets his pride in his Regiment, nor does he ever fail to re-

spond to an appeal which strikes that note, so long as it strikes it truly. The men are marvellously quick—quicker, perhaps, than the ordinary regular soldier—to detect anything insincere, flashy, or theatrical; and any slip of that sort is probably promptly and heartily ridiculed in the privacy of the barrack room.

A Distinctive Custom

The last few words remind the writer of a custom in the Blues which he believes does not obtain very generally. We hold that it is extremely important to keep the non-commissioned officers entirely separate from the men. Consequently all non-commissioned officers, even lance-corporals, live and eat by themselves, and the senior trooper in each troop room is responsible for its orderly behaviour. For the same reason it is strictly forbidden to a non-commissioned officer to be seen "walking out" with a trooper. It is quite possible that with a different class of men, with shorter terms of service (the Household Cavalryman enlists for eight years with the Colours and four in the Reserve), these methods might not be suitable. That they seem to answer in the Blues is proved by the fact that in over two years of command the writer has only had to punish about three men for indiscipline. Yet, on the other hand, an observant visitor to the Regiment would probably be struck by the entire absence of anything resembling Prussianism. The men are led, not driven; ordered, indeed, but not shouted at.

From the points of view of administration, discipline, and smartness, the lot of a Commanding Officer of the Blues is an ideally happy one. The raw material with which he has to deal is altogether exceptionally good. In forming that material into the finished article he has it in his favour that the recruit joins direct, without going through preliminary training at a depot, and that the Regiment does not have to find drafts for overseas service; above all, there is the factor of *esprit de corps* in its highest form. It is, of course, possible to overdevelop that factor, so that a regiment becomes overconfident and, perhaps, rather offensively exclusive; but this danger has always been realised in the Blues and, as the writer hopes, successfully averted.

Training

As regards training for war, on the other hand, while the above advantages still take effect, the Household Cavalry suffer under certain very definite disadvantages. In the first place, the peace establishment is so very small—a little over 400, exclusive of officers and inclusive of recruits—that it becomes very difficult on the one hand to give any idea of the war organisation, and on the other to train the non-commissioned officers in the art of leading. The writer tries to get over the first difficulty by occasionally training with a composite squadron of one war establishment troop from each squadron, each troop finding a complete section for the war establishment troop. This plan, however, accentuates the second difficulty of training leaders; and this can only be met by special courses for non-commissioned officers, and by developing by every means possible their initiative and their sense of responsibility.

A more serious disadvantage is the location of the Regiment in London. Now that the Household Cavalry have been reduced to two regiments by the amalgamation of the First and Second Life Guards, there is only one Regiment in London, whereas formerly there were two; the amount of State duty to be done remains the same. It is necessary to relinquish any idea of regimental training, and to consider oneself very lucky if one can obtain for each squadron three days' troop and squadron training per fortnight. Before the squadron can commence work, it has to ride for over an hour through slippery streets. The majority of the men taking part will be for the King's Life Guard the following day, and will have to spend most of the evening cleaning up their equipment and horse furniture. It will be realised that, to obtain results under these conditions, requires from the rank and file a large measure of loyalty and good will, and from the officers determination and keenness tempered by tact and humanity.

In the winter each squadron is struck off duty for a month for individual training. On account of the special degree of smartness required and the heaviness of the men, we do more foot drill and physical exercise than is usually considered necessary for trained cavalrymen. Otherwise this phase of training follows the generally accepted lines—equitation, swordsmanship, map reading, lectures, and so on.

After two years in London, the Regiment goes to Windsor for a similar period. Here the conditions for training, with practically no duties and with Windsor Park half a mile from the barrack gate, are nearly ideal and compensate very soon for the rather deadening influence of soldiering in London.

Horsemastership

To conclude without any mention of horsemastership would be to leave out the most important part of the day's work of the British cavalryman. To the British public, and still more to the British officer, the horse, his conformation, his condition, his appearance, are still objects of the greatest interest. Comments passed by the man in the street about the Household Cavalry are almost invariably concerned with the horse, not the rider, in spite of the glittering appearance of the latter. In the writer's Regiment, stable hours are normally 6 to 7:30, 11:30 to 1, and 5 to 6. The horses are fed at 6, 9 (on return from exercise), 1, and 6. Each of these feeds consists of chaff and oats, most of which are crushed. Twice a week a bran mash, with boiled linseed and a certain amount of oats, is substituted for the above. Long hay is given with the second and fourth of these feeds and also at 10 at night. The Government ration is constant throughout the year, but the Commanding Officer has a forage running account, by means of which he can vary the ration or substitute equivalents, according to the work and time of year. The writer believes that in most regiments commanding officers delegate the variation of the ration to squadron leaders; he himself considers that this leads to unnecessary complications, and that no disadvantage accrues from centralisation, so long as the commanding officer encourages and is sympathetic to suggestions from the squadron leaders.

The black horse looks beautiful when he has his summer coat; at other times he is difficult to keep looking really well, because he is apt to bleach when exposed to sun and rain, and gets rusty in his winter coat; he also seems to show the dirt more than other colours. We believe in a great deal of wisping, and the writer has this done almost as a drill. At a whistle signal every man in the troop wisps as hard as he can for, say 2½ minutes on the near side; at a second signal he changes over and does 2½ minutes on the off side. The horses are clipped all over twice between October and March.

The manes and tails are, to the British eye at any rate, a most important part of the horse's appearance. In the Blues the whole of the tails of the Regiment are periodically cut to a uniform length by the Equitation Officer. The pulling of manes and tails is entrusted to two special men in each squadron; this is work which requires much more skill and experience than might be supposed, and leaving it to be done by troops was found to be a failure. The writer found at one time that the tails were getting thin and ragged at the end; he has altered this by allowing no one but the troop corporal of horse to use a comb on the horse's tail. While he believes that the secret of horsemastership is to encourage by every possible means the proprietary interest—of the major in his squadron, of the lieutenant in his troop, of the trooper in his own horse—he has found the above measures of centralisation to be necessary.

He would like, in conclusion, to assure any reader of these notes that, if he cares at any time to obtain a closer acquaintance with the Blues, he will receive a hearty welcome, either at Regents Park Barracks or at the Cavalry Barracks at Windsor.





MAJOR-GENERAL JOHN L. HINES, Chief of Staff

An active and enthusiastic lover of the horse, whose favorite constitutional is a brisk morning gallop with a few jumps for good measure; and who, in turn, as a Division Commander, a Corps Area Commander, and Deputy Chief of Staff, has done much for the promotion of riding and polo in the Army

In Summer Training Camp with the Citizen Cavalry

BY

Major WILLIAM WALLER EDWARDS, Cavalry*

IN PLANNING for a Citizens' Military Training Camp, it is vital that several objects which are seemingly dissimilar should be made to harmonize. The boy is to be given military training and discipline as an aid to citizenship and to making him a decided asset for national defense, and he must leave when the camp is over with the enthusiastic intention of coming back.

From a practical military standpoint, it is the latter consideration which makes the problem particularly difficult. Under a selective conscription, such as there is in Switzerland, which places the decision regarding the military obligation of citizenship in the hands of the nation instead of the individual, the matter would be rendered comparatively easy. The amount of personal liberty, spare time, and amusement which the boy thinks he ought to have would not enter into it.

But such a condition, being contrary to our national traditions, does not seem likely to obtain in peace time, and the reaction of the boy himself to the camp routine, must be carefully considered in all its varying phases.

Special Considerations

Many boys who come from cities, where their work has confined them indoors without much chance for regular physical exercise, must be accustomed to it gradually.

The best methods of instruction in a C. M. T. C. must conform to the characteristics, limitations, and requirements of the boys themselves. A man who had handled boys a good deal in a modern educational institution told me that he once had a number of them in a Y. M. C. A. swimming pool. The water was too warm and, thinking that he was carrying out the instructions of the engineer, he tried to turn off the steam, but very nearly caused an explosion, for the reason that having turned off the steam in one place, he forgot to turn it on in another.

The analogy holds true with the boy. It is impossible to hold his attention very long by a lecture; fifteen minutes is the limit. Demonstrations should likewise be short, with plenty of action. Very quickly he is ready to do the thing himself, and the best results are accomplished by letting him do it.

What an impetus it would give to the world if all the wasted energy of each rising generation could be controlled and directed into useful channels. We are fortunate indeed if we get some of it and turn it to account for the good of the country.

*Instructional Staff, C. M. T. C., Camp Knox, Kentucky, summers of 1923 and 1924.

Incentives to Enrollment

Boys come to the C. M. T. C. as an adventure, just as boys do many other things for the same reason. They want to camp; they want to shoot a rifle and pistol; they want to ride a horse.

It may be, and probably is, a fact that a "Basic Red" of the last camp decided to "take cavalry" at this, not because he knows anything about a horse, but because having seen a cavalry platoon trot by his infantry barracks last summer, he acquired an immediate desire to ride instead of walk—a desire which has persisted for twelve months. The fascination seems even to continue unabated after trial, as evidenced by the fact that though he has had



C. M. T. C. CAVALRY AT CAMP KNOX

mounted drill all week he is exceedingly anxious to have a horse to ride on Saturday afternoon.

Allotment of Time

Military work must be enlivened with athletics and amusement. The best proportion seems to be: Military in the morning, supervised athletics and amusement in the afternoon, and a daily program which, for the evenings, contempates open-air theaters in each area, with free movies, athletic contests, and amateur vaudeville stunts, otherwise the boy is apt to get into mischief. Also, there should be between taps and reveille, a sufficient period to permit at least eight hours of uninterrupted sleep.

Under these conditions, the boy should stand the discipline and training for a month and accumulate a surprising amount of general military knowledge without injury to his health or his morale.

Instructors and Schedules

Owing to the demands upon the regular organizations within a corps area, it is impossible to have officers and non-commissioned officers leave their various duties and report at camp except for a very short time—about a week at best—before the C. M. T. C. boys arrive. All available officers within the corps area are thrown together at that time; they become acquainted with each other and with their different tasks by the time the camp begins. Upon their ability in leadership its final success depends. They must be able to adapt themselves quickly to conditions and to co-ordinate along broad lines.

The work is first planned by a general schedule, which is superseded by weekly schedules. These, in order to be carried out properly, should contemplate short nightly study periods and conferences in troop barracks, among officers and non-commissioned officers, in order that not a moment of the daily instruction periods may be lost through lack of adequate preparation.

C. M. T. C. at Camp Knox

Camp Knox, Kentucky, may be taken as a typical citizens' military training camp. There we had this summer about 5,000 boys, selected at random through five States—a veritable cross-section of young American manhood.

In recruiting these boys, the requirement that they should each obtain the recommendations of two well-known citizens of their community has proved, I think, a sufficient safeguard against undesirables—at least, as sufficient as it is practicable to achieve. In so far as came under my observation, there was no flagrant violation of discipline during the camp. Part of the credit of this is undoubtedly due to the "sob board," which has recommended at opportune times, the return home of undesirable members before there was a chance of their contaminating others.

The camp was divided into three areas, and consisted of three infantry regiments, with auxiliary troops; a squadron of cavalry, a battalion of field artillery, a signal company, and a company of engineers.

Each of the three cavalry troops had a strength of fifty men. Two barracks were assigned to it, which provided ample space. The messes, of which there was one to every two organizations, were excellently conducted and proved a most important factor in preserving contentment throughout the camp.

Scope of Training

The cavalry training itself was what might be expected of the cavalry recruit in four weeks' time, if it is considered that the four weeks might end his military training entirely or at least for a year. The school of the soldier was given precedence, though approximately a week was allotted to each of the schools of the squad, the platoon, and the troop.

Owing to the lack of available horses, through which we were very badly hampered, there was practically but one full week of mounted drill, with minor tactics in the afternoons. In this week there was also crowded a morning class in equitation for those who had had previous cavalry camp experience.

A dismounted pistol course, preliminary and record, was finished by the "Reds," the "Whites," and the "Blues" acting as assistant instructors.

The target course, under most favorable conditions, was completed in two days, without accident or delay, and the range discipline was quite marked and beneficial. The possibility of qualification in marksmanship proved a great incentive to sustained effort. It seems rather remarkable that in this short time, with no previous experience and with such a complex mechanism as the Colt's automatic, two boys qualified as sharpshooters and seven as marksmen.

It is manifestly impossible to make the boy, despite his unbounded enthusiasm, a cavalry soldier in four weeks' time; but he can obtain a surprisingly good start on the road.

Instructor Needs

Instructors of the best sort are needed to properly direct these young active Americans. The troop officers' class each year from the Cavalry School could, I think, best supply the needs of the cavalry units in summer training camps, for they could give the newest information upon all cavalry subjects.

There was a decided lack of available regular cavalry officers this summer in our corps area. One of the troops was commanded by a field artillery captain, and instead of the five officers which the troop organization called for, there were but three, and only one in each troop was a regular. This number was supplemented the last ten days of the camp by officers from the 64th Cavalry Division of Organized Reserves, whose period of instruction fortunately ended in time for us to profit by their services.

The lack of cavalry training regulations upon subjects covered by the schedule was felt, not only by the instructors themselves, but also by the "Whites" and the "Blues" (boys with previous cavalry camp experience), who, as non-commissioned officers and assistant instructors, were expected to prepare each evening for the following day's instruction.

Mounts

But the greatest need of all was in regard to the horses. One troop—"G" of the 6th Cavalry—was able to supply about 50 horses, and these for only a week of the time, as they were also needed during the period of summer camps by the 64th Cavalry Division of the Organized Reserves.

As there were 150 boys, this emphasizes the need of more cavalry for citizen training. A squadron could be used to great advantage at Camp Knox, and this could be best supplied from a cavalry post within the corps area. There being no cavalry in the 5th Corps Area, our troop was sent from Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia.

A battalion of the 3d Field Artillery supplied most of our mounts, after providing for the R. O. T. C. and the C. M. T. C. artillery. These draft horses, though somewhat heavy and with backs a trifle broad, seemed to know instinctively what was expected of them and took the trot and gallop without the ordinary "aids" of which they were as ignorant as their riders. In our final

practice march one troop rode cavalry horses, one artillery horses, and one marched dismounted and carried the infantry pack.

Benefits of C. M. T. C.

Notwithstanding many obstacles and unavoidable shortcomings, the C. M. T. C. has some very distinct and tangible advantages, which are increasing and widening from year to year. It affords a recruiting field for the organized reserves. It opens a pathway for non-commissioned officers of the Regular Army and National Guard to obtain reserve commissions. It gives Reserve officers themselves an excellent opportunity to gain experience in command.

Troops are needed for the training of Reserve officers, who cannot be given the best military training except by having practice in command. At present the C. M. T. C. alone offers these facilities.

Finally, the C. M. T. C. builds a sound nationalism by destroying its worst enemy, localism. It makes the boy who participates feel what it is to be an American, and it makes him think more about it from that time on.

Development of Loyalty

The development of loyalty, the germ of patriotism, has been quite rapid in the camps I have attended. It was soon noticeable that boys were intensely interested in the proficiency of their respective troops; they were sure that their own troop officers were the best. During the demonstration in this summer's camp given by Troop G on the afternoon following the last drill day, many of the boys recognized immediately the horses they had each ridden, and their performance at the charge was roundly applauded.

It is upon such evidences of loyalty that we depend for inspiration in the continuance of military training and for its support in communities which the summer camps represent.

At Camp Knox the other day I was talking to a judge who came down from Cincinnati to visit us. He went to the first Plattsburg camp and looks upon his civic honors as nothing compared to his having been, within the first few days of camp, recommended for a sergeantcy. He raised a training battalion during the World War and he is now a local president of the Military Training Camps Association and as strong an advocate for national defense as we have. There are many others in camps today who are prepared to follow in his footsteps.

The Japanese Cavalry School

BY

Captain Y. INOUYE, Cavalry, Imperial Japanese Army

THE Japanese Cavalry School, which constitutes the foster-mother of the spirit of the cavalry in Japan, is located at Narashino, an army reservation in the Chiba District, about twenty miles west of Tokyo. Two cavalry brigades are stationed with the school, which occupies only one corner of the reservation. The whole area, however, is available for the activities of the students.



Captain K. Okada, Instructor at Cavalry School, on Happy Bamboo, French Anglo-Arab and Japanese Anglo-Arab

The courses at the Cavalry School are as follows:

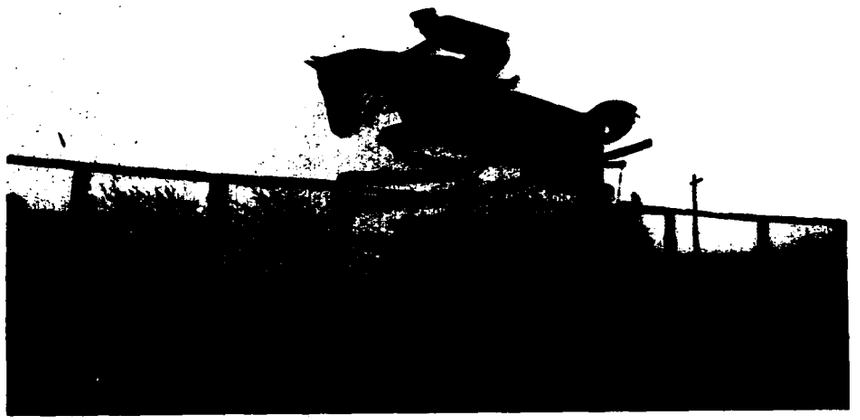
Basic Course,
Troop Officers' Course.

The former is taken by lieutenants for the term of one year. The latter by lieutenants and captains for about eight months. Some of those taking the Basic Course, whose proficiency in the work is sufficiently demonstrated at their graduation, are allowed to remain as students in an Advanced Riding Course for another year.

Field officers are summoned at times to be trained in the school for a brief period.

Subjects covered in the various courses are as follows:

Tactics for Cavalry and Combined Arms, Strategy.
Cavalry Drill, Troop Leading.
Cavalry Equipment.
Cavalry Signals.
Equitation, Theory and Practice.
Hippology.
Horse Administration of the Country (Remount Service).



Major X. Yamamoto, Instructor at Cavalry School, on Golden Forest, thoroughbred-hackney. Height of obstacle, 2.10 meters

In the Basic Course emphasis is laid on equitation and on all matters concerning horses. Tactics is the main study of the Troop Officer's Course, while the work in the Advanced Riding Course consists of advanced equitation and further study in horsemastership.

The education in the Cavalry School is, in short, based upon the actual experiences gained in past wars in which Japan has participated, together with the consideration of the necessity of improvement in the modern art of cavalry since the World War.

Cavalry Marches

BY

Lieutenant-Colonel GORDON JOHNSTON, Cavalry

THE essays recently published in the CAVALRY JOURNAL on the subject of cavalry marches were very interesting to me and brought several experiences of my own very vividly to mind. Some of these may be of interest to others, particularly on a subject of such vital concern to a cavalryman.

In April, 1913, my troop was supplied throughout with one of the first sets of equipment manufactured under the direction of the Cavalry Equipment Board. After having sufficient opportunity to familiarize ourselves with this equipment, a series of tests was ordered. The troop made five marches of one hundred miles each, with a period of several days in garrison between each march in which to make readjustments. Shortly after the conclusion of these marches the entire regiment marched from Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia, to Winchester, Virginia, and participated in the cavalry maneuvers and test of the new drill regulations.

Therefore, in a brief period, my troop had a good bit of marching to do under conditions which presented an unusual opportunity for observation and study.

THE MCCLELLAN SADDLE

It is not my intention to discuss particularly the matter of equipment, though I may as well admit at the very start that I am unalterably opposed to the McClellan saddle (with quarter straps). It has only one recommendation, if expense be left out of consideration, which is that it may be abused to almost any extent without becoming unserviceable. It violates almost every principle of mechanical action in the horse, causes injuries to back and withers, precludes good horsemanship, causes the blanket to slip, etc. There are many charges and specifications which could be brought against it aside from the fact that it is an antique. All other equipment of every arm of the service has been immensely improved since the Civil War, but this saddle remains practically the same.

However, it was not my idea to start an argument, but to discuss marches. The five marches referred to above were to be made at ordinary rates and under varied weather conditions, with the main purpose of observing and testing the equipment. As an opponent of the old saddle, I was quite keen to get the best results with the new type. It was not to be expected that it would prove a complete success from the start, but I felt that it had been designed by a good board, after a great deal of study and thought, and therefore entitled to the fairest sort of a test. Time and experience would doubtless bring modifications, but surely a real evolution in saddles would take place. This hope led to a very careful consideration of marching in general, as the troop commander was not restricted nor instructed in the conduct of his troop on the road or in camp. The marches

were made under normal field conditions, with escort wagons for forage and rations, the full pack with ammunition, shelter tents only, and with the addition of a light wagon drawn by spare horses. All serviceable horses were required to make the marches.

Points to be Considered

It seemed clear that the danger to the back of a horse was due primarily to the friction or to the limited area pressure caused by the saddle and the mechanical action of the horse. In action, the loins of a horse curve alternately upward and downward and the shoulder blades work approximately forward and backward. Now the pommel ends of the side bars (when practically straight) rest on or against the shoulder blades, and the cantle ends rest on the loins. This gives plenty of friction and causes the greater percentage of damages, at least until the poor brute of a horse learns to propel himself solely by the knees and hocks, thus leaving his most powerful muscles to atrophy. Next comes pressure on a limited area, which prevents the circulation of blood and damages the tissue. When this pressure is suddenly removed, the blood rushes to this abnormal area, is obstructed, and the familiar lump appears.

Consideration of these points led to the following conclusions:

(1) That the load should be on the animal's back for the briefest possible time, primarily on account of pressure and secondarily to avoid friction. Therefore speed was essential.

(2) That a consideration of the mechanics of gaits shows that the walk is the most dangerous, as the back muscles are slack and the loins tend to curve downward. The gallop is not a square gait, there being a decided oblique shift of the load, with a consequent tendency to increase and localize friction. On the other hand, the trot is a square gait; the hind legs, moving alternately, tend to keep the loins taut and in a fairly constant upward curve. Therefore this is the best gait for making time with full pack, being best adapted for even pressure and reduced friction.

(3) That horses' backs must be accustomed to the load gradually, and that "condition" is an essential element in successful marching. Horses which start fat soon get lean, and the change causes increase of both friction and pressure.

(4) That a down grade is most likely to do harm is well known. Fast gaits are almost prohibitive, as the shock to the horse is greater, the load shifts forward, the croup is high, and the loins press against the cantle ends of the side bars. The shock-absorbers (hocks) do not function properly and the front-leg tendons are strained. The upgrade throws the work on the lungs, but the loins and back are in good position to carry the load, while the hocks take up the jar. Therefore make speed on the level and easy upgrades, lead on the downgrades.

(5) That good road discipline saves a lot of unnecessary wear and tear. Frequent starts and stops, jamming and speeding up into place, standing still at obstacles and then rushing through, all take a lot out of both men and horses. Proper gaiting and smooth increase or decrease of speed are essential parts of

training. The checks can best be mastered by a certain flexibility in distance between troops in the column and by requiring the head of the column to make an increased effort. The leading element in each unit arriving at a check can do this better than the tail, and with less total expenditure of energy.

(6) That rests consume a lot of time, and, so far as the horse is concerned, he gets rest enough when being led. A rest within the first thirty minutes and after a trot is necessary for readjustment of saddle and equipment. Under the new saddles the blankets rarely slipped, so there was not the same necessity for frequent stops and impatient resaddling, as with the McClellan. When leading, the troopers kept the girth snug without halting, which was sufficient.

Routine of Day's March

A typical day's march under the test rides followed a regular routine, which varied but little for country or weather.

The escort wagons left about daylight, while the light wagon followed as soon as the picket line (if not packed on horse) and the cook's breakfast outfit could be loaded. In this wagon we had two milk cans packed in a box so constructed as to retain heat, one filled with coffee and the other with a hot, thick soup, both made at night. A box of bread already sliced was added.

The troop moved out about 7:30 a. m. and made the first halt before 8, but after a short trot to shake things down. Final adjustment was made, and the real work began within fifteen minutes. A pacemaker led and squads were allowed to take distances from 5 to 25 yards, conforming to the action of preceding units. The pace was a trot of nearly ten miles an hour, except on down grades and up steep slopes. At all down grades of any length all dismounted and led, conforming to the action of the leader of each unit. The leading was done at a brisk walk, about four miles per hour. It was astonishing how quickly the horses got onto the game and kept closed up. At the bottom of the grade each troop remounted and struck the full trot unless there was a steep upgrade ahead, in which case they rode at a walk. The spirit of "get over the road" seemed to enter both horses and men, and there was a keenness to get ahead. At checks the spirit of the leaders was to drive at it hard, so that the tail would come through in position. It worked better than the usual way, in which the tail-enders wait and then dash through, and have to increase the gait to catch up in case the leaders do not wait, which would mean loss of time. This method unquestionably kept the morale and good humor of the men in much better condition.

We generally stopped once for water if a good place presented itself. In this case the rear units closed up and followed out within the prescribed distance. In short marches I did not notice that the failure to water made much difference, but we were sure to make camp very near noon, having done about 30 miles. The pace from camp to camp was at the rate of about 7½ miles per hour. A gallop was taken daily, largely for the purpose of testing the equipment. Both men and horses enjoyed it, and the extra effort was compensated for by leading for a few minutes.

When the troopers got into good condition I have frequently seen them

leave the column, when leading, and run quite considerable distances to catch up when their purpose had been accomplished. The spirit of sport entered into the matter, and getting over the road in a businesslike way seemed to bring a real satisfaction.

It surely was more than pleasant for me. I was well mounted and could move from head to rear of the column and back with ease, or make excursions to the side to see how things were going. Near the tail, however, is the best place to be sure of what is going on and to make timely corrections. Horses or men who had to fall out were left on the road. Riders who damaged their horses through negligence or carelessness were put on the road at or before daylight, with their arms, and had to make their way on foot to the next camp. The remarks of the troopers as they passed the unfortunate one on the road were enough to cure him forever, if the hard walk failed to do so.

Procedure on Arrival in Camp

Arrived at camp, we first tied head and tail in the shade if possible. The light wagon was generally in on time, and each man got a cup of hot coffee, a big plate of soup, and thick slices of bread at once. There was time for a cigarette, and then we went after the horses. Upon first dismounting we had drawn the girths up snug instead of loosening them. The weight of pack and rider had suddenly been removed and it is better to relieve the pressure gradually so that the blood will not rush into the area under the saddle too quickly.

The horses were then unbridled, watered and fed, and tied on the line. If tied on the line at first, no number of guards can keep them from rolling. Saddles were removed and the blankets turned, wet side up, and fastened on with surcingles. Shelter-tent camp was then pitched as rapidly as possible, and equipment lined up. By this time, if there was sunshine, the blankets were dry, and were groomed with comb and brush or worked out with the fingers until entirely smooth. They were then put in the tents and generally wrapped up in slickers, for nothing can do as much damage to a horse's back as a dirty or stiff blanket. Grooming proceeded as usual, except that the first period was devoted entirely to massaging the back. After stables there was ample time for the men to bathe and wash clothing, as well as attend to the usual routine of camp. There was generally a chance to graze horses along the road, if no better places could be found. Before dark the picket line was thoroughly cleaned of gravel, stones, roots, etc., which could do harm when horses rolled.

Effect of Cold and Dampness

The first damage worthy of mention came after a night of cold rain which continued through the next morning. The horses were all standing, croup to the wind, legs bunched together, and backs arched. The hair on their backs seemed particularly thin, the skin being plainly visible. No one was in a particularly good humor after such a night in shelter tents into which the rain poured and we slept in puddles of water. There wasn't much of a breakfast to cheer things up, either. However, we had taken special care of the blankets,

and the usual routine was followed. There were "scalds" and lumps to a most discouraging extent when we unsaddled, while old scars gave promise of further trouble. It took an immense amount of pains, patience, and hard work to restore normal conditions. But the experience was well worth the cost, for a good lesson had been learned. I prayed for another such night, and it came on the very next 100-mile trip. We took extra precautions during the night. In most cases the blankets were wrapped up in slickers or secured in a tarpaulin, so they were dry, or comparatively so, in the morning. The routine was changed. We led out of camp. Within the first half hour we halted and changed the blanket, putting a dry fold next to the horse. After another period of leading the blankets were changed again, with a fresh fold placed underneath. The backs still seemed to be tender, so we did only about an hour of marching, and then again placed a fresh fold of blanket next to the horse. At each change there had been given a good hand massage to stimulate circulation. Conditions were good at the last change, so we "hit the road" and did our thirty miles by 12:30 p. m. There was practically no damage.

These notes are written on a long sea voyage from Manila to Suez, so I have not the exact data from my journals covering casualties. With the exception of horses whose action was so faulty that they were continually interfering and those with old "sit fasts" and rough, permanent scars, we could have marched indefinitely.

The subject of forced marches was very much in my mind, and the conclusion reached at the time was that in case of such a test I should follow the same procedure and routine in four-hour shifts, making a halt of not less than two hours after each shift. At each halt the same procedure as outlined for camping would be followed. Both men and horses would be fed and the same care of animals and equipment given.

These marches had been most enjoyable and so I looked forward to the great hike to Winchester with keenest anticipation. It turned out quite the contrary—a bitter and trying experience, as a defect in the equipment damaged the back of nearly every horse in the troop. However, the defect was remedied and the injured backs were cured before reaching Winchester. But it spoiled for me what should have been a glorious jaunt through the loveliest country in the world, the Valley of Virginia. That, however, is another story.



Army Polo and the Junior Championship

BY

Major L. A. BEARD, Q. M. Corps, Remount Service

THE main thought governing Army polo for the year 1924 was one of development of both ponies and players. The team sent to Camp Vail for the Junior Championship consisted of two older players and four of the many promising young players in the Army. This team was not chosen with the idea that it was the best that the Army could muster, but with a hope that by bringing up these young players, who have shown such good form at the various posts, a new lease on life could be given to Army polo.

A New Policy

The Chief of Staff and the Central Polo Committee were consulted about, and they approved, the policy which will send certain young players each year to compete in the match events on Long Island and other places in the East. This is purely a question of improving Army polo generally, giving an additional incentive to players, and developing individuals who can represent the Army with credit in the highest class of polo in which we have to compete.

This year's effort must not be thought of as a trial for the team to go to England in 1925. This team has no relation to that team, except as a pony or a player shows form which warrants further consideration. There are many older players, not up this year, who have demonstrated their ability and with whom we are familiar. There are other young players who are showing up well in other tournaments throughout the country. All of these will be given due consideration before the 1925 team will be chosen.

This status is a very desirable one, and it is exactly the status which the present policy will tend to create to a greater degree from year to year. If the service at large will understand that each year it is hoped that the War Department will be able to send up new players to learn polo; that these players will return to stations to develop themselves and to impart what they have learned to others; and that, finally, from all of them will be selected teams to represent the Army in its matches, then the idea of polo development will be easily understood.

Each year there must be some who deserve a trial who will not get it. Only a very few of many can be accommodated, and some will not be available. Those who lose out should hold on to the thought that another chance will be forthcoming, and that in any year the majority will be made up of newcomers. Whether or not a player will be one of the newcomers will depend upon his demonstrated ability on his own team—and on his zeal.

Benefits to be Derived from Policy

Many will question the good of all this. The answer is easy to both player and non-player. As far as the player is concerned, it may be said emphatically

that no one of us has ever had the proper conception of the game until he has played it in the fastest company. Polo can properly be compared to professional baseball in its various environments. From the "big leaguer" down to the "busher," there are many classes of players. The "busher" has all of his ability in the "bushes"; he is only a finished product by his development in competition with players of his class and better. So with polo, and it is demonstrated daily.

To the non-player who questions the benefit to the service, the answer is equally easy. In the first place, any officer is broadened by meeting new people, and especially new people in a different walk of life. Any representative of the Army who goes before the public and creates a good impression by his conduct and bearing sells the Army to that public. Again, by getting out of the ruts we are so apt to make for ourselves we will go back to our duties freshened and with new ideas. Sport itself develops any conscientious person morally, physically, and mentally; and these are essential to all. The American public is a sport-loving public and it likes those who excel in sports. Through excellence in sports, the Army will, therefore, gain the favor of the public, and the approved policies of the authorities will be furthered.

This digression from the main subject of this article was an intentional one, to combat a rather prevalent idea, that the Army polo scheme is useless and just a deadbeating job. It is hard work, and those who go in for it suffer real personal loss. Our compensation lies in the friendships made and in the confirmed knowledge that Army polo is helping the Army to a greater degree than is any other line of endeavor.

The Army Team This Year

The Army team this year has been vindicating the basic idea now governing Army polo. Every new member has improved a great deal and has learned things in mallet work and tactics which will materially assist in uplifting polo throughout the service.

Our development was slow—in fact, really hindered by bad weather until June 20, and by the presence of an unusually large number of players on Long Island for the International year. During the first month of our stay at Mitchell Field we were able, on account of rain, to play but seven of the scheduled nineteen games.

In the game with the Rockaway team, in which we were defeated by the score of 10 to 8, the team played excellent polo for four periods and had the upper hand in every department of the game, with a score in our favor of 8 to 4. In the fifth period the game turned against us and we were put on the defensive. After that time we could never get started on the offensive and lost the last four periods 6 to 0. Why a team will suffer such a rout is unexplainable, but a rout it was. No individual player can be blamed, for we were all equally off our game in position play and in mallet work. The team can undoubtedly go eight periods just as it went the first four, and would do so in the majority of games.

Olympia and the VIII Olympiade

BY

Major J. A. BARRY, Cavalry

EDITOR'S NOTE—This article was hastily written in order that it might appear in this number of the JOURNAL. It is expected that Major Barry's report to the War Department will include many matters of detail covering preliminary work, selection of horses, suggestions to future competitors, etc., which we hope to present to our readers in a future number.

THROUGH the generosity and sportsmanship of a number of civilians, a United States Army equestrian team showed this year at the International Horse Show, Olympia, London, and at the Olympic Games, Colombes, France.

The team consisted of Major C. P. George, Field Artillery; Major E. W. Taulbee, Cavalry; Major Sloan Doak, Cavalry; Captain V. L. Padgett, Cavalry; Lieutenant P. M. Robinett, Cavalry; Lieutenant F. L. Carr, Cavalry; Captain W. T. Bauskett, Cavalry; Lieutenant F. H. Bontecou, Cavalry Reserve Corps; Captain J. R. Underwood, Veterinary Corps, and Major J. A. Barry, Cavalry.

The horses taken, with owners, were as follows: *Nigra, Jack Snipe, Proctor, Joffre,* and *Miss America,* from the Cavalry School; *Sure Fire,* O. W. Lehman, Esq.; *Blank Check,* F. P. Garvan, Esq.; *Bally MacShane* and *Little Canada,* Lieutenant F. H. Bontecou; *Pathfinder,* Remount Service; *Ky,* Major E. W. Taulbee; *Brown Boy,* Lieutenant P. M. Robinett; *Roulette,* Captain J. R. Underwood; *Tango Dance,* Captain V. L. Padgett.

Preliminary Work

The nucleus of the team was assembled at Fort Myer in July, 1923, and, with some private mounts of officers of the Third Cavalry stationed there and the horses brought back from Germany by General Henry T. Allen, it attended many of the horse shows in the east—Rochester, Syracuse, Springfield, Brockton, Bryn Mawr, The National, and Toronto. The object was to get experience and to see in action the horses of that section. It was considered advisable to defer buying horses until they had been seen in competition. However, prior to leaving Fort Myer for the Eastern shows, we did buy *Dynamite,* generally considered one of the best, if not the best, jumper in Virginia. He proved a big disappointment.

We were generally and unusually successful at these shows, and accounted for nearly all the jumping classes, except those won by *Bally MacShane, Miss America, Little Canada,* and *Sure Fire.* These horses were not on our string at that time. *Miss America* was bought on this trip from Sir Adam Beck, of London, Ontario. The other three horses named were later loaned to the team. I mention these facts, not boastingly, but merely to show that we took over the best jumpers in the United States, in so far as jumpers were represented at

these shows. We left behind no horse that met us and consistently beat us. The Blue Book will verify this statement.

We accordingly returned to Fort Myer, confident that we had in our string jumpers that could hold their own in any company in the United States and felt that we were as well "horsed" in jumpers as could be expected. I do not mean to infer that there were not other jumpers we wanted. There were some, but they were either "unbuyable," "unleasable," "unborrowable," or held, in our opinion, at prohibitive prices.

For the other class at the Olympic Games, the Equestrian Championship, we had or obtained *Submersible* and *Blank Check,* loaned by F. P. Garvan, Esq., and *Tango Dance, Ky, Pathfinder, Proctor, Brown Boy,* and *Roulette.*



Captain Bourcier, France, winner of third place in Individual Training Competition, which was not entered by the American Team

Of these, all were clean bred except *Proctor* and *Brown Boy;* the former has every evidence of blood, but papers are lacking; the latter has little or no evidence of blood and was formerly a troop horse.

We made every effort to strengthen this string, but without success. Horses were either not for sale or lease, or were priced very high ($5,000-$8,000). Horses which were available were considered by us as inferior to those on hand.

On April 8th *Submersible* died very suddenly in an epileptic fit. He was generally considered, if not our top horse, at least in the first two.

The Team at Olympia

We sailed on the *Minnewaska* on May 31st, unloading at London on June 11th and going out to Mr. R. G. Heaton's farm at Northaw, about 15 miles north. Here we had palatial stalls for the horses and a lot full of Olympia jumps which we were unable to use on account of mud. We came into Olympia on June 18th and the show started on the 20th.

We won there a total of eleven ribbons, among them being two first, two or three seconds, a third in a charger class, a third in a team jump, and some lesser ribbons. All except the charger ribbon were won in jumping classes. The firsts were won by *Miss America* and *Bally MacShane*. *Proctor* won the charger third; *Bally* won a second and third. In the team event, the Prince of Wales Cup, we were third to England and Italy, beating France and Switzerland. The course was twice around, and the jumps, consisting of brush and bar, post and rail, stone wall, stile, wattle gate, triple bar, barred gate, etc., were nine in number, from 4½ to 5 feet in height.

Our team was composed of *Miss America, Bally MacShane,* and *Little Canada,* ridden by Barry, Bontecou and Taulbee. The various teams jumped the course in succession, England, for instance, sending in her first man to jump once around, then her second, and so on. This was repeated after all teams had jumped once. In this class *Miss America* made the highest individual score and *Bally MacShane* the third highest.

Joffre, in a class of 131, tied with three others for first place and was second in the jump-off. *Miss America* was fifth in the Scurry Stakes, with 150 entries. In the Daily Mail Championship Cup *Miss America* was clean up to the last jump, but the time bell rang as she was approaching it. Her rider, Barry, had consumed about three seconds too much time.

We did not win a cup at Olympia; we did win two firsts over Cup Courses, beating horses that won the cups. With a little more luck we would have done better; with a little less we would have done much worse.

Olympia was up to its usual high standard and its management is well-nigh perfect.

I wish to take this opportunity to express publicly our appreciation of the kindness and courtesy we received on all sides in London. Mr. R. G. Heaton, the managing director, was the soul of hospitality, and no member of the team ever expects or hopes to meet fairer or better sportsmen than the English we met at Olympia.

The Championnat Equestre at Colombes

From London on July 1st we departed for Roquencourt, about fifteen kilometers north of Paris, where Colonel R. M. Thompson, president of the American Olympic Committee had provided us with quarters and stabling. We worked at Roquencourt until July 21st, the first day of the equestrian games. We were entered in two classes, viz., the Championnat Equestre and the Prix des Nations. The former is a team event, each nation being limited to four horses and riders, the highest three scores to count. The event lasted three days, the first day being devoted to schooling, the second to an endurance test,

and the third to jumping. There were both team and individual prizes. In this class we entered *Pathfinder, Proctor, Brown Boy,* and *Miss America,* ridden by Doak, Carr, Padgett, and Barry.

The second day began with 4⅜ miles on roads in the Bois and then over the steeple-chase course at Auteuil—2½ miles at 20½ miles per hour—followed by 9 miles at 9 miles per hour along the Siene through St. Cloud, and thence northeast along roads to the beginning of the cross-country course—28 jumps scattered over the 5 miles—to be ridden at 17 miles per hour, and then 1¼ miles along roads to the finish. This made a total of 22⅛ miles to be covered in 2 hours and 2 minutes with 165 pounds up. The terrain, with the exception of the Auteuil course, was frightfully hard. The cross-country jumps consisted, for the most part, of banks with ditches on both sides. Where the ground was not rocky and steep it was baked until it was as hard as the parade ground at Fort Bliss.



Baron Fallon, Belgium, taking post and water jump in Equestrian Championship event

Miss America went out—exhausted on the cross-country—and *Brown Boy* went lame about 2 miles before reaching the start of the cross-country ride. This left us with only two horses in and eliminated any chance of a team prize, three having to finish. *Pathfinder* and *Proctor* finished, and that evening we were officially told that on the combination of the two days *Pathfinder* was first and *Proctor* seventh. Both made good performances over the jumps in the stadium on the third day, the former going clean. For the three days *Pathfinder* was eventually placed third over a protest to the Appeal Jury, at

whose meeting the American member, Colonel H. N. Cootes, was not present, and of which meeting he had not been informed. I might also add that a protest made by me to the same jury was disallowed at a meeting of which the American member was not informed and at which no American witness was called, although I had named four.

The Championnat Equestre was won by Holland, whose horses were Irish except one, which came from Germany.



Lieutenant Gemussens, Switzerland, winning first individual prize, Prix des Nations

The Prix Des Nations

In the Prix des Nations, a team-jumping event in the stadium, we entered *Nigra, Bally MacShane, Little Canada,* and *Joffre,* ridden by Barry, Bontecou, Padgett, and Doak. The jumps, seventeen in number, were up to 4 feet 8 inches in height and 14 feet in width. The course was 1,200 yards long and the track fetlock deep in sand. *Bally MacShane,* a roarer, could not get half way around. *Nigra* and *Joffre* finished with creditable performances.

The Prix des Nations was won by Sweden, whose horses were all bred by

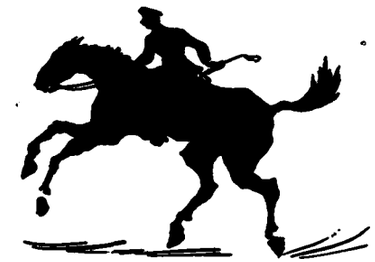
the Swedish Government. The horses of both Holland and Sweden were full of blood and in excellent condition.

In preparing at Roquencourt, *Tango Dance* and *Blank Check* went lame, forcing us to use *Miss America* in the Championnat, to which she was not suited, and depriving us of her use in the Prix des Nations, for which she was our best bet.

Expression of Appreciation

In conclusion, I wish to express our appreciation and gratitude to Colonel R. M. Thompson, President of the American Olympic Committee; to Colonel Pierre Lorillard, Jr., and to Colonel R. H. Williams and the other gentlemen of the Army Olympic Horse Show Committee and to the generous sportsmen who contributed thereto: to Mr. O. W. Lehman, of Chicago, and to Mr. Francis P. Garvan, of New York, for the unselfish loan of their fine horses: to the American Remount Service for its active and valued assistance; to Colonel H. S. Hawkins, commanding Fort Myer, for his many courtesies during our training period, and last, but not least, to Major C. L. Scott, of the Remount Service, without whose active assistance as quartermaster we would have been much embarrassed.

For the members of the team I have only the sincerest gratitude. Their support was loyalty itself, and any mistakes made were my own, for no man ever had his wishes more conscientiously observed than were mine during the past year's work with this team.



A Tribute to the Cavalry

IN AN address made on the occasion of the unveiling and dedication of the Cavalry War Memorial at Stanhope Gate, Hyde Park, London, May 21, 1924, Field Marshal the Earl of Ypres paid a glowing tribute to the cavalry. The Field Marshal said in part:

"They lost their lives in the greatest war the world has even seen, a war in which the cavalry played a part which has never been surpassed in its history.

"From time immemorial the work of cavalry in a campaign has been especially marked and important during its opening phases and towards its close. This was very apparent in the late war.

"They began it by their splendid work before and during the battle of Mons, in the great retreat, at the Battle of the Marne, on the Aisne, and in the great turning movement towards the north which finally secured and covered Ypres and the Channel ports and led them into the valley of the Lys in pursuit of the retreating enemy. Then, as you remember, enormous German reinforcements arrived and the cavalry was obliged to fall back, but only to perform one of the greatest deeds of the war; for they held the Wytschaete-Messines ridge, almost unsupported, against tremendous odds for forty-eight hours, until powerful French reinforcements arrived.

"Towards the close of the war we saw immense armies entrenched and facing one another along lines of almost incalculable extent.

"They reached, indeed, from the North Sea right across Europe into Asia. On the southeastern flank of this line, in Syria, cavalry and mounted troops were again concentrated. Handled by their great leader (Field Marshal Lord Allenby) with consummate skill, nothing could resist their victorious onslaught. They crushed in that flank, rolled up the Turco-German armies, and without doubt it was the beginning of the end.

"Thus, from the first to last, the cavalry carried out their great rôle, but on a vastly extended scale.

"Not only did they maintain their ancient prestige as regards the methods of their employment; not only did they vindicate and justify their plan in war; but the same elan and dash which has even characterised them, the same vigorous leading, the same daring attempts to attain the seemingly impossible, the same glorious spirit, was apparent in every part of the vast theater of war.

"France, the Dardanelles, Syria, and many other places, show vivid examples of this. Doubtless, in the midst of many successes there were some few failures to attain the object sought for; but, whether successes or failures, we must ever remember that they were the inevitable essence and outcome of that great cavalry spirit without which cavalry is not worthy of the name—a spirit which, whilst demanding a great toll in casualties, often achieves the greatest results and has sometimes turned apparent defeat into victory.

"Even in this new mechanical age, there are many indispensable tasks in war that only mounted men can perform. No general would undertake a command in the field without the assistance of mounted troops. It is a significant fact that, whilst we began the war with 17 regiments of cavalry, there were no less than 150 in the field at its close."

The Cavalry School Team in the Colorado Endurance Ride

BY

Major JOHN T. McLANE, Cavalry (D. O. L.)
Major C. C. BENSON, Cavalry (D. O. L.)

THE Colorado Endurance Ride of this year is unique in that, of the seventeen entries, not one finished the prescribed course. Various reasons may be ascribed for this, all equally cogent. It is not our purpose in this article, however, to make deductions on this score, but to present a recital of facts as affecting the horses entered by the Cavalry School, with the hope that our experience may be of value to others who may participate in future rides. Certain conclusions and suggestions based on these experiences have been included.

Preliminary Selection of Horses

Authority to send five officers, eight enlisted men, and seven horses to Colorado Springs was received from the Chief of Cavalry July 12, 1924, twenty-four days before the Endurance Ride began. Immediate steps were taken to select the horses. This was done by making a list of twenty-nine horses in the school stables from five to thirteen years old, having sufficient breeding to meet the requirements of the ride. These were then inspected by Major McLane, Major Benson, Captain Roffe, Captain Beeman, and Lieutenant Comfort, and eleven of the twenty-nine were eliminated. On July 13 the remainder were inspected in the West Riding Hall by Major Merchant, Director of Department of Horsemanship, and the above-named officers. Each horse was ridden by an officer, while the others observed the ways of performing at the walk and the trot. Only horses with no record of lameness, that traveled true, and possessed weight-carrying conformation were considered.

The following is a description of the horses finally selected:

Dixie Long: Breeding, ¾ T. B.; sex, M.; color, ch.; age, 5; height, 15-1; weight, 1,000 pounds; heart girth, 72″; front cannon, 8″; hind cannon, 8⅞″. Remarks: Disposition, excitable. Travels true, except slight paddle right fore.

Submarine: Breeding, T. B. Standard cross; sex, M.; color, bay; age, 12; height, 15-2½; weight, 1,065 pounds; heart girth, 72½″; front cannon, 8¼″; hind cannon 9½″. Remarks: Travels smooth, true, and close to ground. Disposition, spirited but not excitable.

Amherst: Breeding, ½ T. B.; sex, G.; color, bay; age, 8; height, 15-1¾; weight, 950 pounds; heart girth, 70″; front cannon, 8″; hind cannon, 8⅞″. Remarks: Travels true with plenty of clearance. Disposition, quiet.

Aline: Breeding, ¾ T. B.; sex, M.; color, gray roan; age, 6; height, 15-3¼; weight, 1,070 pounds; heart girth, 75″; front cannon, 7¾″; hind cannon, 8⅞″. Remarks: Travels true in front, with plenty of clearance, but a little close behind. Disposition, quiet.

Nottaway: Breeding, ¾ T. B.; sex, G.; color, bay; age, 8; height, 15-2; weight, 975 pounds; heart girth, 72½"; front cannon, 7¾"; hind cannon. 8½". Remarks: Travels true, with plenty of clearance. Disposition, obstinate.

Wineglass: Breeding, ½ T. B.; sex, M.; color, gray; age, 6; height, 15-2½; weight, 1,000 pounds; heart girth, 71"; front cannon, 7¾"; hind cannon, 8¼". Remarks: Shies very badly. Travels true, with plenty of clearance. Action, a little high in front. Disposition, calm.

Black Moon: Breeding, T. B. and Morgan cross; sex, G.; color, black; age. 10; height, 15-¼; weight, 940 pounds; heart girth, 70"; front cannon, 7½";



Captain A. W. Roffe, 9th Cavalry, with Wineglass

hind cannon, 8¼". Remarks: Travels a little close fore and hind; drags right fore at first half of stride. Disposition, sullen.

Of the above horses, all except *Black Moon* and *Amherst,* had been in the stables since the close of school, on June 10, with about one hour's exercise daily. *Black Moon* and *Amherst* had been in pasture since July 1 and had been fed no grain. All horses had been used during the school year in the instruction of student officers. Two of them, *Black Moon* and *Amherst,* had participated in the sixty-mile night ride held in June.

The horses were selected for breeding, conformation, and true gaits at the walk and trot, all considered in connection with their records at the Cavalry School. They should also have been tested as to disposition and way of going on the road under ordinary and exceptional traffic conditions. The horse that shies at everything along the road wastes much of his own and his rider's energy and is much more liable to injury from accidents than is a steady horse. He should have a good appetite, so that he will eat even when tired. A horse that is willing to go alone is a better bet than one that requires a team mate's presence

for best performance. *Aline* and *Wineglass* went farther than any others in the ride; had either gone out, it is believed that the other would not have put up so good a performance alone.

After the horse had been tentatively selected and *put in good condition* at his home station, he should be ridden sixty measured miles in nine hours with 225 pounds weight to test his ability. During this ride and after its finish the conduct and peculiarities of each horse should be noted. About two weeks later this same test should be repeated. If the horse appears suitable after these tests, it is worth while to continue his preparation for the ride; otherwise it will be a waste of time. Had we been able to test our horses in this way before going to Colorado Springs, three of the seven would have been left at Fort Riley.

Selection of Riders

The selection of riders was made from those officers who evidenced interest in the ride and made request for the detail. The following were designated by the commandant to go: Major J. T. McLane, 9th Cavalry; Major C. C. Benson, Cavalry; Captain A. W. Roffe, 9th Cavalry; Captain H. N. Beeman, V. C., and Second Lieutenant F. de L. Comfort, 2d Cavalry. Major McLane was elected team captain.

In selecting an Endurance Ride team, at least twice as many riders should compete for places as there are to be men on the team. Each man should ride every horse that is being considered. The rider's performance should be noted, especially his conduct and condition on the sixty-mile test rides. As to weight of riders, it is preferable that they strip to between 140 and 170 pounds, though lighter men can readily carry enough lead to make up the required 225 pounds. Captain Beeman and Captain Roffe, whose horses went forty-eight miles farther than any others in this year's Colorado Ride, were both well under 140 pounds—in fact, they weighed less than any other two men who rode. Half the team should be made up of youngsters who want to learn to know horses. Keen interest in the ride and willingness to do a lot of hard work should characterize every man who makes the team.

Selection of Equipment

The selection of equipment to be carried to Colorado Springs was given considerable thought. French type field saddles, with pommel and cantle pockets, were selected for each officer and two spares taken to provide for replacement in case of defects. This latter proved to be a wise provision, as one saddle had to be discarded on account of a broken tree. In this connection, equipment should be thoroughly tried out during conditioning and test rides, before going to Colorado Springs. Two stock saddles were also provided for possible use by officers who had to make a great amount of weight. Two saddle blankets per horse were taken, as well as extra leather and web girths. A small assortment of saddlers' tools, veterinary supplies, cleaning materials, short straps, buckles, and other saddle parts were also taken. Each girth was covered with sheepskin to prevent cinch sores. All horses were provided with snaffle bridles and a few curb bits included in the equipment for use in case of necessity. Practically all

army horses were ridden with single snaffle bits. Sheepskin-covered bandoleers, to be filled with lead wool; also field belts for the same purpose, were selected. After arrival at Colorado Springs two coolers per horse were received from the School Polo Team. A complete horseshoer's outfit and stock of shoes were carried along. These proved very valuable, as will appear later. For use in weighing equipment and riders, a set of folding scales was taken from Fort Riley. A light halter bridle is convenient, though not essential. In addition to strictly horse equipment and supplies, sufficient camp equipage to make the detachment self-sustaining was obtained from the quartermaster. This permitted officers and men to live in camp, be near the horses at Colorado Springs, and was a very satisfactory arrangement.

Preliminary Training

Upon completion of the selection of horses, a tentative assignment of riders was made. Major McLane was assigned *Dixie Long;* Major Benson, *Submarine* and *Amherst;* Captain Roffe, *Aline* and *Nottaway;* Captain Beeman, *Wineglass;* Lieutenant Comfort, *Black Moon.* All horses were stabled together and placed on a ration of fourteen pounds of oats per day, split into four feeds, with one-half pound of dry bran in each feed. Horses were given as much hay as they would eat. Exercise from July 13 to 16 consisted of from ten to twelve miles daily at the walk and trot across country. Weight carried was that of the rider and the stripped field saddle. Other duties of the officers designated for the ride would not permit of a greater amount of exercise being given at this time, nor was the condition of the horses such that more work was advisable.

Horses should be grain-fed for at least four months before the ride. If condition does not improve, with proper exercise, on the issue of ration, eliminate the horse. Except for the sixty-mile test rides mentioned above, each horse should be given such exercise as will improve his wind and muscle. Galloping over comparatively level ground under light weight will help his wind. Walking and trotting under heavier weight will improve muscle and toughen the back. Much of the exercise at the walk and trot should be up and down slopes. In the Colorado Ride it is frequently necessary to trot up and down slopes that would be taken at the walk by cavalry on the march. If horses have been grain-fed and are in good health, one month at Colorado Springs should be enough to prepare them for the ride. In preliminary work it should be remembered that the roads at Colorado Springs are hard-surfaced, and much work should be done on this kind of footing.

Riders should put themselves in condition by riding about four hours a day for two months before this ride. Several horses will be needed for this. If they have the time and opportunity for more riding, so much the better. Long hours in the saddle, mostly at the trot, will toughen the hide and muscles that are needed for endurance riding. However, it is a mistake to train so hard as to lose appetite and sleep, or to get your nerves too close to the surface. When a normally cheerful rider gets peevish and crabbed, make him lay off for a day or two. At the time when the horses are given their sixty-mile test rides, the condition of the riders should be excellent; otherwise a good horse may make a poor showing.

Shipment of Horses and Equipment

Authority for the shipment of horses was received at 3:30 p. m., July 16, and at 6:30 p. m. they left for Colorado Springs. Equipment to be used during the ride was loaded in the same car with the horses. After a fifty-two hour trip, the horses arrived at destination; unloading was completed about 11:30 a. m., July 19. Total time on car, sixty-six hours. All horses lost a little weight; otherwise their condition was excellent. They were also a little finicky about eating for two days after arrival, but from then on ate all that was given them.

Training at Colorado Springs—Exercise

In prescribing the amount of exercise to be taken each day, the idea was to accustom the horses to carrying weight, to acclimate them, and to build them up in muscle and wind. The amount of exercise was largely determined by each individual animal's condition. Beginning July 20, it varied from ten miles at a walk, climbing mountain trails, to nineteen miles in two hours and forty minutes. The factor of altitude entered into the matter, great care being exercised not to go for long distances at fast speed, as it was realized that the change from a low to a high altitude would at first be a serious tax on the horse's resources. Immediately preceding the ride, work was reduced to only enough to keep the horses in good health, the aim being to bring them into the ride high in spirits and supplied with reserve energy.

Had we reached Colorado Springs two weeks sooner, the horses would have been given harder work up to the last week before the ride. Even with such conditioning as we were able to give them in the short time available, the horses appeared to be in excellent shape when the ride started. Their condition was favorably commented upon by several officials of the ride at the preliminary judging on August 3. However, in view of later developments, we are satisfied that the horses could have been put in better condition if they had been in training for a longer period.

With reference to gaits, much time was spent in training the horses to take a jog trot of about six miles per hour. It was found that this seemed to take less out of the horse and rider and allowed time to be made on terrain unfit for their eight- or ten-mile trot. Over roads with any degree of slope, this gait is most essential.

It is essential for horses from low altitudes to be at or near Colorado Springs for at least a month before the ride. Even so, they will be somewhat handicapped, as compared to equally good local horses, by the high altitude, which varied from 6,000 to 7,700 feet on some of the routes covered during the ride. The riders should familiarize themselves with the routes that are to be used during the ride and should utilize part of each route during horse exercise each day. There are several good mountain roads close to the Broadmoor Hotel which provide excellent opportunities for climbing exercise. One road, starting

at the Broadmoor Golf Club, is very steep; another, up North Cheyenne Canyon, is more gradual. Little galloping, but lots of walking and trotting, is recommended for conditioning at Colorado Springs. Mountain-climbing should alternate with ordinary roadwork. The distance covered each day should be determined by the needs of each horse, but never more than thirty miles a day. The weight and condition of each horse should be noted upon arrival at Colorado Springs and a record kept on each horse every day. Weigh horses at least once a week. The best time to weigh is after exercise and before watering.

Weights Carried

For the first few days, the weight carried by each horse was confined to that of the rider and stripped field saddle. This varied from 152.5 pounds to 194 pounds, dependent upon the weight of the rider. As each officer rode every horse during the first week at Colorado Springs, the weight carried by each horse varied within the above limits. After July 26 more weight was added, until just before the ride each horse was carrying within a few pounds of the required weight (225 pounds).

Feeding

Hay in small quantities was fed frequently. All hay was hand-picked, as it was ordinary prairie and contained much foreign matter. Later on, No. 1 Timothy was provided. This can be obtained on requisition from the Remount Purchasing Headquarters at Colorado Springs. Grain was fed in four feeds of 3-3-3-4 pounds each, at 6:00 a. m., 11:30 a. m., 4:00 p. m. and 7:00 p. m. On July 22 the oat ration was increased to fourteen pounds daily, one pound being added to the 11:30 a. m. feeding. The grain ration was reduced on July 28 to twelve pounds daily, split into four feeds, as previously. At this time (five days before the ride) the amount of exercise was being tapered off. During the entire period bran was mixed in half-pound amounts with the second and last feedings. Salt was kept in feed-boxes at all times. Fresh water in buckets was kept in stalls constantly. During the late afternoons the horses were grazed for one-half hour; also during halts while on exercise.

Grooming

After breakfast horses were brushed off and groomed thoroughly on coming in from exercise and at 4:00 p. m. Proper grooming will do a lot towards conditioning. We made it a practice to follow the same routine for grooming after exercise that would be followed during the ride. The groom worked on the horse's legs and feet while the rider rubbed the back.

Shoeing

Shortly before leaving Fort Riley horses were shod all around with rolled toes in front and with slightly thickened heels front and hind. Beginning July 29, all horses, with the exception of *Black Moon*, were again shod with rolled toes in front and heels thickened front and hind for about 1⅛ inches to about 1⅔ thickness of the web, tapered from rear to front. This was done by turning back the uncut ends. In shoeing at first with a thickened heel, it was thought that this would give better support than plain calks. Calks were to be put on later, should horses show thickened tendons or undue strain. This proved to be satisfactory. *Black Moon* was shod with practically normal shoes front and hind, as the rolled toes in front caused him to brush his coronets, and swelled heels resulted in a tendency to knuckle over. *Aline* was shod with a light bar on both front shoes to give greater strength to the wall, which had broken away on the inside quarters. In shoeing, the minimum of horn was removed. It is essential that this be done, as it prevents tender feet and no doubt lessens the effect of the heated road surface on the sensitive structures of the foot. At times during the Colorado Ride the road surface registered a temperature of over 120° F. Both *Aline* and *Wineglass* had to be reshod on August 6 (third day of the ride), as the thickening on the heels of the old shoes had completely worn off. At this time half-inch heel calks were used all round, to relieve strain on tendons and raise the sole from the ground. Reasons for this excessive wear will be mentioned under "Roads."

Care of Feet

To overcome a tendency to develop dryness, all horses' feet were packed at night with white rock. Oil was used on hoofs to retain moisture.

Care After Exercise

On coming in from exercise, the saddle was left on for ten or fifteen minutes, then removed, and the blanket replaced, dry side down. During this time each foot was immersed in a bucket of water, legs sponged off, and legs then hand-rubbed until dry. If the horse was sufficiently cooled out, the blanket was then removed and the back massaged until dry. The horse was now thoroughly groomed, and lastly his back was bathed with salt water, which was allowed to dry. In cases where a horse came in hot, a cooler was put on and the horse walked around until cooled out, being given a swallow of water each alternate time that he passed the bucket. Water used for this was set in the sun for several hours to take off the chill. During the walking the horse was halted from time to time and hand-rubbed under the cooler.

Weather and Roads

During the period of training, the weather was very hot, with practically no rain. The early morning, however, was cool, as were the nights. The roads in the vicinity of Colorado Springs are hard-surfaced, with a loose screening of gravel and grit. Lack of rain for about two months prior to the ride had baked them to the hardness of concrete. The loose, gritty surface acted exactly as a rasp and wore down the horses' shoes excessively. To counteract this, hardened steel shoes would have been better than the issue shoes we used. In some cases soft footing could be found along the sides of the road, but in general this was uneven and, on account of liability to strain a tendon, less prefer-

able than the roadway itself. The change from the soft footing at Fort Riley to hard roads probably accounted for some of the lameness afterwards developed by our horses.

Altitude

During training the altitude apparently did not affect our mounts at all. On several occasions they were ridden nineteen miles at about seven miles per hour and came in without evidence of distress. The same remark applies to work in climbing steep trails. Results of the ride, however, showed that, over long distances at fast speed, the altitude did have a serious effect on horses not fully acclimated. It is not believed that the altitude seriously affected the riders.

Equipment

Both stock and field saddles were tried out by various officers. As a result, it was found that for one accustomed to ride a stock saddle it is very satisfactory. The advantages are that it weighs more than a field saddle, has a broader bearing surface, and by standing in the stirrups no jar is given the horse's back by a tired rider in posting. Of the five Cavalry School officers who rode in this ride, four elected to use field saddles. One defect of the field saddle is that the tread of the stirrup is too narrow, resulting in the feet becoming very tired on a sixty-mile ride without dismounting to lead. To prevent jar on the horse, especially after the rider becomes tired, it is necessary to ride with a long stirrup and get well out over the horse's neck, thereby bringing more than ordinary weight in the stirrups. One officer used an open, leather-covered McClellan stirrup and found it less fatiguing than the narrow-tread steel model.

Two blankets were used during training and during the ride. This gave better protection to the horse's back and permitted a change of blankets when the one next to the back became soaked with sweat. The blanket next to the horse should be softer than the comparatively hard-woven issue saddle blanket.

Methods of Carrying Dead Weight

The problem of making the required weight presented many difficulties. In one case the rider had to make over 100 pounds dead weight. This was accomplished by placing weight in the pommel and cantle pockets, on the stirrups, and in a weight pad. About eighteen pounds was carried in the pommel pockets and about twenty pounds in the cantle pockets. The remainder was made up of weight of saddle and blankets and lead in the weight pad. In one case a leather pistol belt filled with ammunition was worn by the rider, and in another a bandoleer, filled with lead wool, was carried around the horse's neck. The difficulty was to get the load properly balanced. As little weight as possible should be carried in the cantle pockets, if they are used. The reason for this is that it is impossible to prevent movement of these pockets, which results in continual pounding of the horse's loins. The best solution is the weight pad. Some of our riders carried as much as thirty pounds of lead in this way without injury to the horse's back. The weight pads we used were made at Colorado

Springs on the advice of Major C. L. Scott, who had used similar pads to advantage several times in the Eastern Endurance Rides. The weight pad is made of canvas, about the same size as the folded saddle blanket, shaped up at pommel and cantle, with a row of seven or eight small pockets along the bottom on each side. It can be made by any saddler. A flat slug of lead, about one pound per slug, is slipped into such pockets as are necessary to use, both sides being equally weighted. For pommel and cantle pockets, lead wool is the best material. It molds into the shape of the container and has no tendency to bounce around.

Results of Training and Conditioning

As a result of the training above outlined, all horses, with the exception of *Submarine,* gained from twenty-five to thirty-five pounds between July 15 and July 25. Except as noted later, their coats were good, flesh hard, eyes bright, and each in very high condition. *Submarine* and *Nottaway* showed a recurrence of a skin disease, more or less common at Fort Riley, consisting of small pimples on the loin, back, and sides. This gave considerable trouble, as the pimples had a tendency to swell after a hard workout under the saddle. White lotion applications and the use of zinc ointment greatly relieved this condition. *Amherst,* at first, seemed a little weak after a nineteen-mile ride and refused to eat his grain for several hours after returning to the stables. By July 29, however, he seemed to have gained his strength and endurance. *Submarine* did not show up well after the first week at Colorado Springs. She brushed her coronets, both front and hind, and developed a swollen right fore fetlock joint. Occasionally, on exercise, she would take a few lame steps. She lost weight instead of gaining. A peculiar thing about her way of going was, that at a fast trot she had plenty of clearance, both front and hind, whereas at the walk or jog trot she struck her coronets constantly. Finally, on August 1, it was decided to withdraw her as an entry and substitute *Amherst* instead. *Dixie Long* demonstrated early that she did not have the disposition for an endurance ride, being stubborn, flighty, and totally undisciplined.

Each day different horses were sent out in pairs or alone, with a view to determining which arrangement worked best. It was found that some horses worked best together, others alone. A notable example of pairs was *Aline* and *Wineglass;* neither would do her best without the other.

Final Selection and Assignment of Horses

The selection of horses for the ride was made on July 24 and was based on gaits, temperament, soundness, condition, and ability to travel true, even when tired. Each officer on the team rated the horses in order of excellence for the ride; all agreed to eliminate *Dixie Long.*

Assignment of riders was made on the basis of the amount of dead weight to be carried. Captains Beeman and Roffe had to make the most weight; hence they were given the two sturdy mares, *Aline* and *Wineglass.* Reference to the measurements will show that these two animals are weight-carriers par excellence. Major McLane was given *Submarine* for the same reason. Major

Benson had to make the least weight of anyone on the team; he was assigned to *Nottaway*, a strong horse, but one very prone to shy and difficult to handle. Much dead weight on him would have worn him out the first day. Lieutenant Comfort ranked fourth in weight to be carried. He was assigned to *Black Moon*, a good horse, who came in third in this year's night ride at the Cavalry School, but not as outstanding in weight-carrying characteristics as *Submarine*, *Wineglass*, and *Aline*.

Preliminary Judging

On August 3 all horses were given a preliminary examination by the officials of the ride. Horses were weighed and their measurements taken (heart girth, loin girth, fore and hind cannons.) The judges noted all blemishes and unsoundness. The normal respiration and temperature of each horse was recorded. They were then saddled and their manner of going observed at the walk, trot, gallop, and extended gallop. None of the horses were ridden by the judges. All seventeen entries were accepted as being suitable for the ride.

Riders were then weighed (stripped) and informed as to the amount of dead weight that each would have to carry. The stripped weight of riders varied from about 115 to 170 pounds; only two weighed in at exactly 155 pounds, the maximum live weight permitted without handicap under the rules of the ride.

Performance of Cavalry School Horses During the Ride

Seventeen horses started on the first day of the ride. The route was on the main road towards Denver, with midway point near Palmer Lake. Automobile traffic was heavy and weather hot, with fifteen-minute shower about 3:15 p. m.: roads hard-surfaced. *Aline* and *Wineglass* traveled together all day, shied considerably, but went along very well, and finished in nine hours in good condition. *Nottaway* traveled alone most of the time, expended a lot of energy by shying constantly, but was going strong enough to try to run away after fifty-two miles. He finished the first day in nine hours in good condition. *Black Moon* went alone most of the time, apparently unruffled by traffic or anything else. He showed some distress at the end of about fifty miles, and Lieutenant Comfort stopped to rest him. He finished in nine hours and seventeen minutes, very tired. *Amherst* traveled part of the time with *Nottaway*, part of the time with *Black Moon*, and about half the trip alone. Paid little attention to traffic and went strong for over fifty miles; then began to weaken. Major McLane rested him and brought him in the last six or seven miles at a walk. *Amherst* finished the first day's ride in nine hours and twenty-four minutes, very tired, but looking good. All horses were watered at least five times en route—*Amherst* and *Black Moon* oftener—and were sponged off while watering. With the exception of *Wineglass* and *Aline*, none of the horses would eat at the midday stop. At 8:00 p. m., when riders and grooms were required to leave the stables, *Aline*, *Wineglass*, and *Nottaway* appeared to be in excellent shape, but *Black Moon* and *Amherst* were doubtful. About 10:30 p. m. Monday night (August 4) *Amherst* was taken sick. He had been properly cooled out and well cared for. He was grazed a little, ate some hay, and had about half a pound of grain between 8:00 p. m. and the time he was taken sick. The official veterinarian was called, but he could no nothing to relieve the horse. *Amherst* died about midnight. Autopsy showed inflammation of both large and small intestines and an *ante mortem* blood clot in left ventricle of heart. Apparently this horse had a constitutional weakness not brought out during the short period of preliminary training.

Twelve horses started on the second day of the ride. The route lay over unfrequented country roads for the most part, footing good, up and down hills, with a net gain of about 1,400 feet to the midday halt. The weather was hot and clear; no rain at all. *Black Moon* was withdrawn by Lieutenant Comfort after he had gone about three miles—lame right fore. *Nottaway* was eliminated after eighteen miles—muscle lameness in left forearm which caused him to drag his foot. Both *Black Moon* and *Nottaway* were led most of the way back to the stables. About seven miles from the start, *Wineglass* shied and fell on her knees, both of which were badly cut. Captain Roffe seriously considered withdrawing her at that time, but after talking it over with Captain Beeman, who was with him on *Aline*, and examining the injuries, Captain Roffe decided to go on. *Aline* finished the second day's ride in nine hours and forty-seven minutes, in good condition, but tendons of right fore were somewhat swollen. *Wineglass* finished in ten hours and fifteen minutes. Her knees looked bad, but she was going strong and sound.



Captain H. N. Beeman, V. C., with Aline

Four horses—*Aline*, Captain Beeman up; *Wineglass*, Captain Roffe up; *Colorado Boy*, Mr. Curtis up; and *Sandy*, Mr. Hirsig up—started on the third day of the ride. The route was a hard one—lots of climbing; footing hard and dry, except twenty miles of loose stone surface, which was worse than the rest. Major McLane, Major Benson, and Lieutenant Comfort used Captain Beeman's

car to carry water to suitable points along the route, as follows: 10-mile point, 18, 27, 30, 33, 42, 46, 50 and 58. Water was also furnished by the above officers to the two civilian entries. The weather was terribly hot, with no rain all day. Both horses and riders were greatly refreshed by having water conveniently placed at prearranged intervals on the route. *Aline* and *Wineglass* finished the third day's ride together, in just a little less than ten hours, both very tired but sound. *Colorado Boy* and *Sandy* took ten hours and fifty-three minutes to finish on the third day. *Aline* and *Wineglass* had to be reshod all round. Half-inch heel calks were used all around to relieve strain on tendons and raise the sole from the ground. Calks on old shoes had been worn off. *Aline's* right fore tendon was swollen. *Aline* shied and went into a ditch with her haunches in a strained position, while going out during the morning, but pulled out all right and showed no ill effects from the accident.

Two horses, *Aline* and *Wineglass*, started on the fourth day's ride. *Aline* appeared to be in the better condition, though both were very stiff at the start. The route led through town for six and one half miles from the start, thence via Templeton Gap and Black Forest to a midday stop at a point about 1,700 feet higher than the start. Footing good, but a good deal of climbing. Both horses were watched very carefully with the idea of withdrawing one or both before they had gone far. However, they seemed to be going better at the eight-mile post than was expected, and at fifteen miles appeared to be even better. Water was provided at frequent points en route by Major McLane and Major Benson, using Captain Beeman's car. Both horses reached the midday halt in good condition and ate one and a half pounds of mixed bran and grain and some hay. After about half an hour's rest they started back, both very tired, but still going all right. Both were eliminated by the judges, at about the forty-eight-mile point for lameness. Both were dead tired, but still willing to go. Captain Roffe and Captain Beeman were sent back in a car, and the horses were led in with stripped saddles. They reached the stables at 7:20 p. m.—about thirteen hours from the time of starting. Both *Aline* and *Wineglass* came in looking good and taking an interest in everything around them, and neither one showed any lameness while being led in at the walk. Neither *Aline* nor *Wineglass* appears to have suffered any permanent injury from the ride. Both were weighed about twelve hours after their return from the fourth day's trip. *Aline* weighed fifty and *Wineglass* forty-five pounds less than when weighed the day before the ride.

Lessons Learned

We learned some things during the ride that may be of value to future competitors:

Do not be guided too much by previous records in endurance rides, but regulate your pace in accordance with existing weather and road conditions. Had we taken into account the fact that the first day of the ride this year averaged 15¾ degrees hotter than the first day of the ride last year, and the fact that the roads were as dry and hot as eight weeks' drought could make them, we might have been content to put our horses over the route in eleven hours instead of nine. Had we done so, they undoubtedly would have lasted longer, and two of them probably would have finished.

Water on the horse's legs is all right after you get back to stables, but causes scratches if used on the road during halts for water, when there is no time to rub the legs dry. On the road, wet legs collect dirt and grit, which soon cut the skin.

Feeding at mid-point halts should be restricted to a small quantity of grain and such hay or grass as the horse will eat. The grain should be fed first, by hand if necessary. If the horse refuses to eat grain at the mid-point halt, it is better to order none for him, so as to save the full fourteen-pound allowance for morning or evening feed. A pound of oats and half a pound of bran at noon suited *Aline* and *Wineglass* very well. They are good feeders and would have eaten more if it had been given them, but a heavier feed would probably have done them more harm than good. The remainder of the daily fourteen-pound grain allowance was fed as follows: Four pounds of oats and half a pound of bran at 5:00 a. m.; seven pounds of oats and one pound of bran at night; a pound or two about two hours after the day's ride; another pound or two about 6:30 or 7:00 p. m., and the remainder just before we were required to leave the stables, at 8:00 p. m.

Water horses at least five times between start and finish. The rider should know in advance where he will find water, otherwise he is likely to waste valuable time trying to utilize inconvenient places. If in doubt as to watering facilities, get a list of supply points from the routemaster before starting. If possible, water shortly before going in to the noon halt and a mile or two from the finish.

Cooling out your horses at the finish will be easy if you so regulate your ride as to walk the last mile and a half or two. It is a mistake to walk a tired horse for a long period around the picket line in order to cool him out, if you can bring him in fairly cool and finish the job by rubbing.

Hand rubbing of legs and back will help restore normal circulation and reduce the effects of hard roadwork. Select a groom who is able and willing to do a lot of hand rubbing and see that he does it properly.

If you can make your horse lie down and rest, do so; he will be in much better shape to go again in the morning than if he stands up all night.

Effect of the Ride on Riders

The average shrinkage of riders on the first day of the ride was about four pounds. Most of them regained their previous weight before weighing in the next morning. On subsequent days several riders registered a small net loss and had to add a few pounds of dead weight. A light breakfast—including several glasses of milk—a very light lunch, and a good square meal in the evening suited most riders the best.

Both civilian and Army riders were very tired at the end of each day's ride, largely because of the intense heat, the rapid pace necessary, and the fact that leading was prohibited. To make the ride in minimum time requires about seven hours' trotting out of nine hours on the road (time is computed from

start to finish, regardless of halts for watering, rest, or lunch). The prohibition of leading restricts the rider to practically one position and requires the use of the same set of muscles almost continuously, which is very trying for both horse and rider. The fact that each rider was permitted to have a groom care for his horse upon return to stables was an important factor in conserving the strength of the rider, and allowed him to take almost as good care of himself as he did of his horse.

Suggestions for Future Rides

The Colorado Ride this year was well managed. The following suggestions are offered without the slightest intention to criticize—rather with a view to making the ride more interesting for all concerned:

Double the amount of the prizes, so as to make it financially attractive for officers and civilians to feed and condition a larger number of suitable horses.

Place the minimum age of horses eligible for entry at six years. The present minimum of five years is likely to spread erroneous ideas as to the capabilities of a young horse.

Concentrate on one route over varied terrain, selected by a practical horseman as being suitable for the test. Ride the same route five times. Provide water for men and horses at prearranged intervals on the road. The horses will soon learn the road, but that will not lessen the amount of effort required to cover the distance. The use of a single route would greatly simplify official preparation for and supervision of the ride. It would focus the attention of spectators who are really interested in the ride. It would eliminate innumerable annoyances, such as motor cars, for the riders. The riders would know the exact distance of each day's ride—that is, it would be 60 miles every day instead of 62.5 one day and 57.5 the next. This is important, because 62.5 miles in nine hours on a tired horse is quite different from 57.5 miles in nine hours. Local riders would have no advantage as to knowledge of the road over riders from a distance. The use of a single route year after year would help to standardize the ride.

Permit leading on restricted portions of the route—for instance, up and down steep slopes, or into and out of watering places for a couple of hundred yards. This would enable the rider to stretch a leg now and then without detracting materially from the severity of the test on the horse.

Increase the total maximum time allowed from fifty to fifty-five hours.

Retain the present regulations regarding weight and distance.

Value of the Ride

There is no doubt that an endurance ride is replete with valuable information for a cavalry officer. He learns how to select a horse, to condition one for a hard test, how to get the most out of his mount, and how to care for a tired horse. No one can participate in an endurance ride without feeling that he has never before fully realized the capabilities of his mount. The rider has an exceptionally good opportunity to concentrate on the study of various types of horses—all of them working hard under identical conditions.

The ride furnishes an excellent test for articles of cavalry equipment—for example, saddle, blankets, stirrups. Data on improved equipment, or recommendations for improvement, should be submitted to the Cavalry Board, Fort Riley, for consideration.

Participation in an endurance ride demands excellent physical condition on the part of the rider. This implies an amount of riding and other exercise that cannot fail to establish a high standard of activity on the part of those who go into this event.

Much profit can be derived from contact with the officials and others connected with the ride. All of them are enthusiastic horsemen. They are always willing to help a rider in any way they can, both before and during the ride. A spirit of friendliness and good sportsmanship characterizes all who are connected with the ride, be they officials, riders, or spectators. It is a privilege to be admitted to their fellowship.

It is well for those who contemplate entering an endurance ride to realize that it is a hard test for both man and horse. Because it is a hard test and one that teaches things worth knowing, it should appeal to active cavalry officers. A cavalryman should win the ride next year.



The Cavalry Board

BY

Major K. S. BRADFORD, Cavalry, Recorder

THE work of the Cavalry Board naturally divides itself into four general heads, as follows: Training, armament, equipment, and miscellaneous.

TRAINING

During the past year the board has practically completed its original work on training regulations. All of the forty pamphlets on the list assigned to the board for preparation, under direction of the Chief of Cavalry, are now either in print or awaiting printing, except T. R. 425-120, Cavalry Pack Transportation, which will contain a description of the new Phillips pack saddle. Future work on training regulations will be in the nature of necessary revisions.

ARMAMENT

Saber.—The board has recommended a return of the metal saber scabbard to replace the present web-covered wooden scabbard. The advantages of the metal scabbard are that it is cheaper, lighter, better in appearance, and more comfortable for man and horse. Moreover, there is no rattling of the saber in the scabbard and the scabbard more nearly retains its original shape under rough treatment. A single loop saber knot has been recommended to replace the present knot, which is attached to the saber by a small leather loop secured by a stud. This is a source of weakness which results in many broken knots and disarmed troopers. A felt saber pad, designed to reduce the shock produced when the saber strikes a dummy, has been adopted. Without the pad, the saber hand is frequently bruised by contact with the steel saber guard, producing a reaction in the trooper similar to the flinching caused by a sore shoulder in rifle practice. With the pad, the trooper's confidence in his weapon is increased and more vigor is obtained in the attack. A pommel saber carrier is being designed to replace the present saber straps and experiments are being conducted to improve the quality of the present saber blade.

Pistol.—A number of modifications in the pistol, designed to correct the tendency to shoot low and to make the pistol easier to grasp, especially for men with small hands, have been adopted. The first result is accomplished by a bulging mainspring housing, which, pressing against the heel of the hand, elevates the muzzle slightly when the pistol is held with the normal grasp. The second result is accomplished by shortening the trigger and cutting away slightly the side surfaces of the receiver immediately in rear of the trigger guard. In addition, the front surface of the trigger and rear surface of the mainspring housing have been checked, or roughened, to prevent slipping in the hand, and the rear portion of the grip safety has been lengthened in order to correct the tendency of this part to pinch the skin in the angle between the

thumb and forefinger. An effort is being made to develop a stronger and more serviceable pistol lanyard.

Rifle.—A checked butt plate and a pistol grip stock have been recommended for the service rifle, with a view to increasing the ease and comfort of holding. Tests are now in progress on a non-removable front sight cover and a receiver type of rear sight. A jointed cleaning rod has been recommended. A cavalry



Saber Pad

carbine, which is in effect a modified Springfield rifle, has been recommended to be issued to troops in sufficient quantity to insure a conclusive test, but this project is being held up pending the possible development of an auto-loading shoulder rifle.

Machine Rifle.—The board has recommended a receiver sight and a blank firing attachment for the Browning machine rifle, as well as a standard bipod and a stock rest, which are designed to increase the stability of that weapon.

Machine-gun.—A set of machine-gun tripod metal base plates has been adopted to replace the wooden T-base. The advantages of the base plates over the T-base are that they are lighter, less bulky, and more easily carried; they can be attached and the tripod set up in a few seconds with no special preparation of the ground; the gun can be moved by hand with the plates attached; and the height of the gun can be adjusted to suit the individual gunner. An efficient flash-hider has been recommended for adoption and specifications have been submitted for an improved machine-gun tripod. A test is now being made of a .50 caliber machine-gun.



Machine-Gun Tripod Base Plates

Ammunition.—Recommendations have been made for the adoption of a type of boat-tail bullet which will have an effective range of about 4,000 yards, and of a type of tracer bullet which will have a visible tracing range of about 1,900 yards.

EQUIPMENT

Horse Equipment.—The board has recommended the modification of all McClellan saddles so as to do away with the quarter straps, spider rings, and cinchs, substituting therefor a girth similar to that used on a flat saddle, and leather skirts. The modified saddle gives a firmer and more comfortable riding seat, is more comfortable on the horse, more easily cleaned, more convenient to handle, better protects the trooper's clothing, and has a better appearance than the regulation saddle, without in any way detracting from the serviceability of the latter. A lighter stirrup strap, with the buckle down and forward under

the stirrup hood, has been recommended for this saddle. Patch pockets on the saddlebags will carry the extra horseshoes and grooming kit, leaving the insides of the bags for the clothing and toilet articles now carried in the cantle roll.



Vacuum Animal Cleaner

A vacuum-cleaner for horses and mules has been recommended for issue to each organization in which there are normally only a few men to care for a large number of animals, and also to each mounted organization, to be used as an adjunct to hand grooming. The machine is small, cheap, and portable.

It has a special nozzle, which takes the place of both currycomb and brush. The cost of operation is slight and the animal is groomed very thoroughly and quickly. The massage effect appears to improve the condition of the skin and the animals like the sensation of the machine. Its use before clipping saves clipping-machine blades, which are frequently ruined on dirty animals. The machine is not designed to replace "Stables," as it is unsuitable for caring for horses in large groups. Moreover, it still remains necessary to instruct men in hand grooming, which they must of necessity perform in the field.

Packs.—The Phillips pack saddle has been adopted and will be manufactured and issued as soon as funds are available for this purpose. All cavalry packs will be carried on this saddle by means of specially designed metal hangers, instead of lashings, which will greatly reduce the difficulty of finding and training efficient packers. The picket-line pack, pack cooking outfit, demolition pack, and pioneer pack are being designed for use on the Phillips saddle. The aparejo will be used only in pack-trains.

Clothing.—Continual efforts are being made to improve the material and cut of all enlisted men's clothing. A soft, all-leather leggin has been recommended to replace the present leather-reinforced leggin for mounted troops. Tests are now in progress on raincoats, waterproof clothing, and an improved bed blanket.

General.—A return to the metal punch and stencil method of marking equipment has been recommended. Radio and signal communication material of cavalry has undergone considerable improvement. A stable sergeant's veterinary set, containing simple medicines, bandages, and other material, for use when the services of a veterinarian are not obtainable, has been adopted. A combined horseshoer's and blacksmith's tool set and a new reserve ration have been recommended.

Miscellaneous

The board has recommended the adoption of a combined organization and equipment table for each unit of cavalry, which will make the unit commander independent of Tables of Organisation and Tables of Basic Allowances. It has recommended a reduction in the amount of supplies carried with troops in the field, a new blank form for reporting small-arms firing, a new set of specifications for promotion of reserve officers, and a course of reading for cavalry officers. It has undertaken a yearly revision of the cavalry correspondence courses, so that this form of instruction will be up to date at all times, and has started work on an R. O. T. C. Manual. The museum of cavalry equipment has been enlarged by the addition of over a ton of foreign and American equipment, which was originally collected by the Cavalry Equipment Board of 1912.

The Colorado Endurance Ride

BY

Major C. L. SCOTT, Q. M. Corps, Remount Service

I WAS able to observe only the preliminary judging and the first and second days of the recent Colorado endurance ride. As is known, none of the horses entered completed the ride, and unless careful thought is given to the result and the reasons therefor, the ride is liable to go on record as a failure. My opinion is, however, that it was directly the opposite of a failure. I think that the management of this endurance ride should be congratulated upon the great good which will be accomplished by it.

In the past the success of the winner has overshadowed the value of the main objects of the ride. The mistakes that were made in handling the horses which did not finish have been ignored and have not been properly studied. This year, as no one could get by, we asked why. We will carefully study the reasons for failure and should derive great benefit therefrom.

My opinion as to the result is, that it was due in the majority of instances to insufficiently trained horses, which were brought to a high altitude in hot weather and required to do an enormous amount of hard, fast work. We all know the effect of hot weather and the effect of high altitude on a soft horse. The combination of both of these conditions is almost insurmountable, except with the horse in the best of condition.

There were also the following defects among the entries noted: Overconditioned horses, poor shoeing, unsoundness, poor weight packing, and riding without judgment. The ride proved conclusively that to finish the ride successfully none of these points can be ignored.

I think probably, from some of the articles written on endurance rides, many people have gained erroneous ideas. For instance, it will be pointed out how a horse with practically no conditioning was able to complete a ride successfully. It has also been pointed out how a horse with an unsoundness has successfully completed the ride. The Colorado Endurance Ride of 1924 has proven that such conditions are an exception to the rule, and that if we wish to compete successfully it is necessary to get a sound, good, straight-going, courageous horse and train, pack, ride, and shoe him intelligently.

Value of Endurance Rides

To me the great value which the Army may derive from endurance rides lies in the preparation of the horse for the ride. This is the most important and the most instructive part of the ride, because all else depends on how this work is done. In training the horse, we spend many hours in the saddle; we must watch his coat, his appetite, his wind, his legs, his shoeing, and everything about him. It requires us to study minutely details of his make-up, from one end to the other, and in doing this we accumulate a vast amount of knowledge which otherwise would be ignored.

Personally, I feel that the Cavalry School and the Chief of Cavalry's Office have started one of the most instructive horse games that has even been devised. The cavalry officers who enter this ride should be better in every respect from the knowledge that they obtain in training for and in riding a horse during the ride. All cavalry officers who were present at Colorado Springs were most enthusiastic over what they had learned. They told me that they had gained a world of information and would go back to the Cavalry School urgently recommending more study along the line of training for long-distance riding.

The Cavalry School entries at Colorado Springs appeared to be in excellent condition, although afterwards, in my opinion, they turned out to be soft, even though they did go longer than anyone else. The team as a whole made a most favorable impression with everyone who saw them at Colorado Springs. One noticeable thing about the team was the care with which they rode their horses. They knew when their horses had enough and promptly and graciously fell out, thereby displaying the true instinct of a horseman.

In this article I am going to take the opportunity to repeat observations that I have made and that I have heard concerning the conduct of the officers and men of all teams that come from the Cavalry School. At all places where I have seen them, at horse shows and elsewhere, they have always been quiet, reserved, and willing to learn. They win modestly and lose graciously, and this indicates proper training and the instincts of true sportsmen. I am sure that the cavalry, having once entered these endurance rides, will never give them up and will derive great benefit therefrom. Having started in the game, and with their desire to compete, I am sure that the cavalry entries will wind up at the top, where they unquestionably belong. If there is any information or help that the Remount Service or the American Remount Association can render them, they will only have to call for it and it will be gladly furnished.



Graduation Exercises

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL

THE equestrian events of the 1924 graduation exercises were held during the first week in June and brought forth some interesting and spirited competition.

The Horseshoer's Cup was won by Captain A. M. Jones, with Captain Taylor second and Captain Hutchinson third. In this event each contestant was required to inspect the shoeing of the front feet of four horses, three minutes being allowed to each horse, and to note the irregularities found.

The Advanced Class Point to Point ride, about 5 miles, across country, over obstacles, in 12 minutes, was won by Lieutenant-Colonel Corbusier, with Lieutenant-Colonel Bull and Major Christy tied for second, Captain Cooksey third, and Colonel Williams fourth.

The Patton Cup for Swordsmanship, open to those troop officers making the 15 highest scores in the qualification course, was won by Captain Gay, on *Bledsoe,* with a score of 103 and a time of 1 minute and 6 seconds. Major Lyman was second, Lieutenant Beeman third, and Captain Woodruff fourth. The Combined Pistol and Saber Contest was also won by Captain Gay, with Lieutenant Woodward second, Captain Woodruff third, and Captain Washburn fourth.

The Fourth Platoon—Lieutenant Winchester, instructor—won the Squad Pistol Competition, with 72 hits out of a possible 96. The Third Platoon—Captain Kilbourne, instructor—was second, with 59 hits, and the Second Platoon—Captain Gerhardt, instructor—third, with 57 hits. Each platoon was represented by a squad of 8 men, which made two runs of 6 shots each, three at overhead targets in close order and three in extended order at targets arranged on the ground in a skirmish line. A composite platoon of the Troop Officers' Class gave a demonstration of a mounted attack from ambush against a force of cavalry and infantry, illustrating the combined use of the pistol and saber.

The first phase of the Remount Cup consisted of school movements prescribed by the Director of the Department of Horsemanship. The second phase consisted of a ride of about 12 miles over a flagged course, including jumps, firing at targets with the pistol, and running at heads with the saber. The event was won by Captain Upton, with Lieutenant Waddell second, Captain Grow third, and Captain Davis fourth.

The Troop Officers' Schooling Contest on schooled horses was won by Major Lyman, on *Bluemont.* Captain Gay was second, on *Selim;* Captain Allen third, on *Silver Pepper,* and Lieutenant Waddell fourth, on *Ona.* Lieutenant Beeman, on *Bob Powers,* won the Troop Officers' Indoor Jumping Championship, with Captain Gay, on *Lebanon,* second; Captain Fiske, on *Brookline,* third, and Lieutenant Waddell, on *Touraine,* fourth.

The Advanced Equitation Class Schooled Horse Competition was won by Captain C. C. Smith, on *Water Boy,* with Captain Falck, on *Orange Girl,* second.

Captain Baird, on *Minute Man,* and Captain Waters, on *Brown Berry,* tied for third.

THE HORSE SHOW

THE FOLLOWING EVENTS were combined into a Horse Show, which took place on the stadium on the Field of Mars:

The Advanced Class Jumping Contest, over a course of 10 jumps about 3½ feet high, was won by Major Stevenson, on *Barrister,* with a clean performance. Lieutenant-Colonel Bull, on his private horse, *Nancy,* was second; Major Taylor, on *Crowe,* was third, and Lieutenant-Colonel Richmond, on *Davidson,* fourth. The Troop Officers' Outdoor Jumping Championship, over the same course, was won by Captain Berlin, on *Reed,* with Captain Guenther, on *Touraine,* second; Captain DeLangton, on *Sam Houston,* third, and Captain Shea, on *Bob Foy,* fourth.

The Sportsman Cup, presented by Dr. F. W. O'Donnell, for the Advanced Equitation Class Jumping Event, over a course of obstacles 4 to 4½ feet high, similar to the Olympic course, was won by Captain Holman, on *Dick;* Captain Smith, on *Raven,* was second, and Captain Roffe, on *Sandy,* third. Captain Falck, on *Black Boy,* and Captain Holt, on *Mr. Green,* tied for fourth. The Ladies' Jumping Class, over a course of 10 jumps 3 feet high, was won by Mrs. Wilder, on *Bill Forsythe,* with Mrs. Creed, on *Smith,* second; Mrs. Andrews, on *John Barry,* and Mrs. Coe, on *Little Jack,* fourth.

The Officers' Charger Class for private mounts was won by Lieutenant Beeman, on *Lucky Seven.* Captain Coe, on *Dr. Fretz,* was second; Captain Creed, on *Charcotte,* third, and Major Aleshire, on *Moonshine,* fourth. The Green Polo Pony Class was won by Captain King, on *Jingle Wilson;* Captain Holt, on *Hindoo,* second; Captain Baird, on *Black Girl,* third, and Captain Waters, on *Duffy,* fourth. The Enlisted Men's Jumping Class was won by Corporal Duncan, Sergeant Irby second, Sergeant Holmes third, and Sergeant Starky fourth. The Class for Troopers' Mounts was won by Sergeant Irby, Sergeant Doyle second, Sergeant Duckworth third, and Corporal Turner fourth. The Wagoners' Contest was won by Private Will, Private Autry second, Private Mobley third, and Private Lopez fourth.

THE NIGHT RIDE

THE NIGHT RIDE for the Junction City Chamber of Commerce Cup was held on the night of June 6-7. The conditions governing the ride were in the nature of a tactical problem, it being assumed that a cavalry brigade was at Fort Riley with five reconnaissance detachments out to the north. Each contestant in the ride, of which there were 84, was required to leave Fort Riley, check out at one of the two outguards stationed at the Pumphouse and the Fire Station, deliver a message to each of the reconnaissance detachments, check in at the other outguard, and return to Fort Riley with a receipt from each reconnaissance detachment. The contestant was allowed to choose any route he desired. The shortest possible route over roads was about 50 miles. Each rider was given a small-scale blue-print map and a number of aërial photographs.

One reconnaissance detachment was near Alida, one near Milford, and three, within a few miles of each other, were south and southwest of Keat's Postoffice. Each reconnaissance detachment had radio and telephone communications with the West Riding Hall, where the progress of each rider was shown on a large chart to an interested audience, who stayed up all night and were served coffee and sandwiches. An officer at each station checked in the riders and examined the condition of the horses before they were allowed to proceed. The night was dark, but fairly cool. One horse, *Breakwater,* was killed by falling into a ditch in the darkness, and another had to be shot after nearly severing a front leg in a barbed wire fence. Three riders were hurt by piling up in the same ditch in which *Breakwater's* neck was broken.

The winner of the event was Captain Stickman, on *Selim,* who made the ride in 6 hours 29 minutes and 36 seconds. Captain Craig, on *Colonna,* was second; Captain Seabury, on *Black Moon,* third, and Captain Fiske, on *Lulu,* fourth. Lieutenant-Colonel Carson, 57 years old, successfully completed the ride and returned to Fort Riley after having made every station.

The arrangements for the ride, which was particularly well organized, were made by Captain Cheeves.

THE STANDARD STAKES

THE STANDARD STAKES, or Cavalry Pentathlon, was held on Monday morning, June 8.

In this event the contestants were started from the post laundry in pairs, at half-minute intervals, and proceeded on foot to their horses, which were tied in the vicinity of the race-track pasture. Here each contestant saddled his horse and raced over a course of 8 solid jumps along the Republican River to the Pistol Range. Arriving at the pistol range, horses were turned over to grooms 100 yards in rear of the firing line, and each contestant proceeded to the firing line, where he fired at a pint bottle, set up at a distance of 25 yards, until he broke it. He then mounted again and rode to the rifle range, where the conditions were the same as at the pistol range, except that the bottles were at a distance of 100 yards from the firing point.

On breaking his rifle target each contestant galloped to the river, where he crossed, mounted, at a point marked by flags, dropped a message in a barrel, turned over his horse, and recrossed the river dismounted. The river was low and required no swimming at the marked crossings. Arriving at the near side of the river, the contestants raced on foot about 200 yards to the finish.

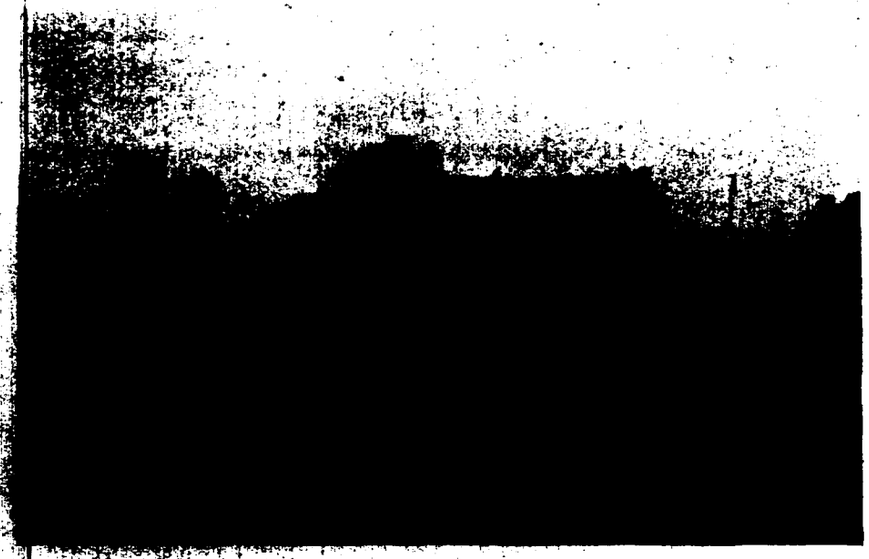
Disqualification resulted for any rider who failed to ride his own horse, failed to negotiate any obstacle, failed to break either pistol or rifle target, failed to deliver his message across the river mounted, or failed to return dismounted to the finish.

Captain C. C. Smith, mounted on his private mare, *Lady Thelma,* won this event in a few seconds over 25 minutes. Captain Washburn was second, Lieutenant Holbrook third, and Captain Seabury fourth. The Assistant Commandant, Colonel Henry, finished seventeenth out of 85 starters.

Horse Show of the 1st Cavalry Division, Fort Bliss, Texas

THE annual Horse Show of the 1st Cavalry Division was held at Fort Bliss on July 10, 11, and 12. The 1st Brigade of this division, stationed at Fort Clark and Marfa, Texas, was invited to enter, but only the 1st Cavalry was able to do so. This regiment sent a carload of horses, six officers, and ten enlisted men and we were fully aware of their presence throughout the show.

Fort Bliss has had good horse shows for years, but since the Division was formed, and under the guiding hand of Major-General Robert L. Howze and his able assistant, Major Adna R. Chaffee, both experienced and able show-ring



Lieutenant E. B. Boeserman, 8th Cavalry, on Rebel, winner of "Officer's Jumping" and "Pair Jumping"

judges, the horse shows at Fort Bliss, with respect to interesting classes, splendid horse flesh, and spectacular turn-outs, have grown to a marked degree. The show this year was particularly gala and highly interesting. The entire ring in front of the officers' quarters was a gay setting of flags and color, and the ten large boxes, one allotted to each organization of the Division, were decorated and made comfortable for the officers, their families and friends of El Paso, who were enthusiastic spectators.

Under the direction of Major W. H. Rucker, F. A., the show was handled in a most expert fashion, the judging of classes being executed with promptness and precision.

The Horse Show Committee was fortunate in securing Mr. Richard Waring, Lieutenant-Colonel M. G. Holliday, Quartermaster Corps; Lieutenant-Colonel Ralph M. Parker, Cavalry; Major E. G. Cullum, Quartermaster Corps, and Major Adna R. Chaffee, General Staff, as judges.

In all classes for officers or ladies silver trophies were given for blue-ribbon winners. There were cash prizes for all first and second ribbon winners for enlisted men.

The show had thirty-six classes, many open to civilian entries. Keen competition and special attention to details in turn-outs were particularly noticeable in all entries. The good breeding in private and government-owned horses was



Captain Paul H. Morris, 1st Cavalry, on Kapiki, winner of Remount Cup

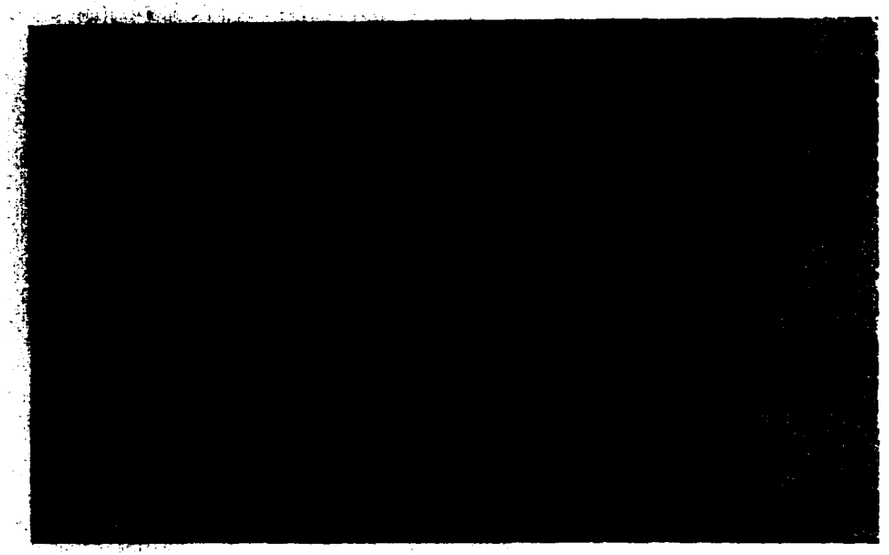
very obvious in performance, type, and conformation. There are many well-bred horses in the Division owned by officers. These were most numerous in the polo events and in officers' charger and jumping classes. The "Polo Class" had thirty-four entries, and it was no easy task for Mr. Waring and Major Cullum to place the ribbons. A finer collection of sleek polo ponies would have been hard to find anywhere.

There were many interesting jumping classes for officers, ladies, and enlisted men. Performance of horse alone counted in these events, except in the "Handy Jumper," in which manners had an equal share for honors.

There was a ladies' class every day and they drew large crowds. This was justly so, for each class that the ladies entered was showy and attractive. On the first day, in the Ladies' Saddle Class, Mrs. Adna R. Chaffee, a blue-ribbon winner here for several seasons, went second to Mrs. Harry Chamberlin's first; but Mrs. Chaffee came back with a blue to Mrs. Chamberlin's red in the last day's event, "The Pairs of Saddle Horses."

The jumps were all 3 feet 8 inches high, except for qualified jumpers, which had to clear an additional six inches. In the "Championship Jumper" class the last jump was a water jump fifteen feet wide.

The most difficult class, "The Remount Cup," was won by Captain Paul Morris, of the 1st Cavalry, on his Hawaiian Parker Ranch gelding *Kapiki*.



JETANGALE Photograph by First Photo Section

Thoroughbred, winner in Polo Class. Owned by Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin, Cavalry

This was a three-day event, the first day being a thirty-mile ride in 3¼ hours, no obstacles; the second day, schooling; and the third day the horse was taken over the course of jumps.

Some of the keenest competition was seen in the following classes, with cash prizes for enlisted men:

Light Wagons, Artillery Sections, Escort Wagons, Radio Sections, Machine-gun Detachments, and 1924 Enlistment Class.

The results of the classes for officers and ladies were:

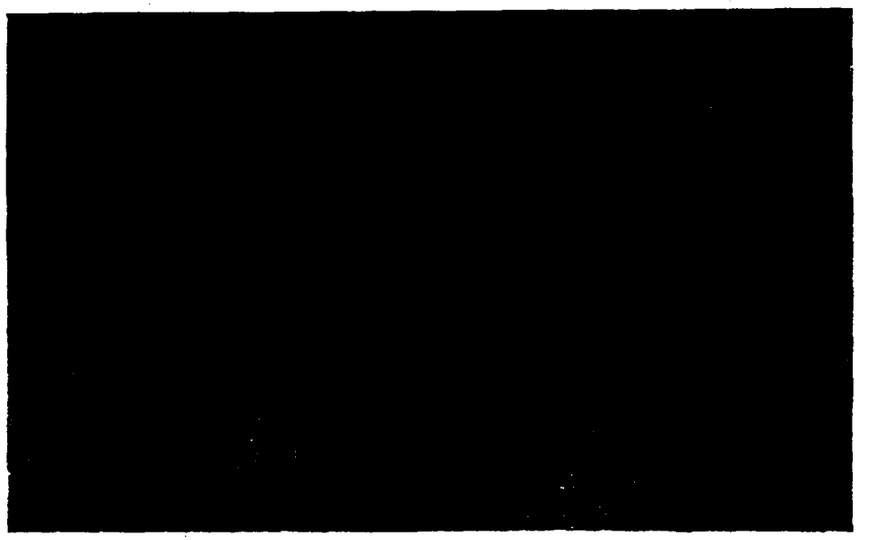
Remount Cup Contest.—Three-day test, won by Captain Paul Morris, 1st Cavalry, on *Kapiki*.

Ladies' Saddle Class.—First, Mrs. Harry Chamberlin, on U. S. Government *Joe;* second, Mrs. Adna Chaffee, on *Miss Bridges;* third, Mrs. George Cummins, on U. S. Government *Carlo*.

Polo Mounts.—First, First Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin, Division Headquarters, on *Jetangale;* second, Second Lieutenant Raymond Bosserman, 8th Cavalry, on *Jingles;* third, Major William Rucker, 82d Field Artillery Battalion, on *Miss Bridges*.

Stick and Ball Race.—First, Major Harry Chamberlin, 8th Cavalry, on U. S. Government *Tar Baby;* second, Captain Delmore Wood, 7th Cavalry, on U. S. Government *A. D.;* third, Major Howell Estes, 7th Cavalry, on U. S. Government *Red Boy*.

Handy Jumper.—First, Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin, Division Headquarters,



SKYROCKET Photograph by First Photo Section

Thoroughbred, winner in "Best Cavalry Horse" Class. Owned by Major Wm. H. Rucker, Field Artillery

on *Babe;* second, Lieutenant J. B. Robinson, 1st Cavalry, on U. S. Government *Snooks;* third, Captain R. R. Allen, 7th Cavalry, on *Chief*.

Officers Jumping.—First, Second Lieutenant Raymond Bosserman, 8th Cavalry, on U. S. Government, *Rebel;* second, First Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin, Division Headquarters, on *Babe;* third, Major Harry Chamberlin, 8th Cavalry, on U. S. Government *Bob*.

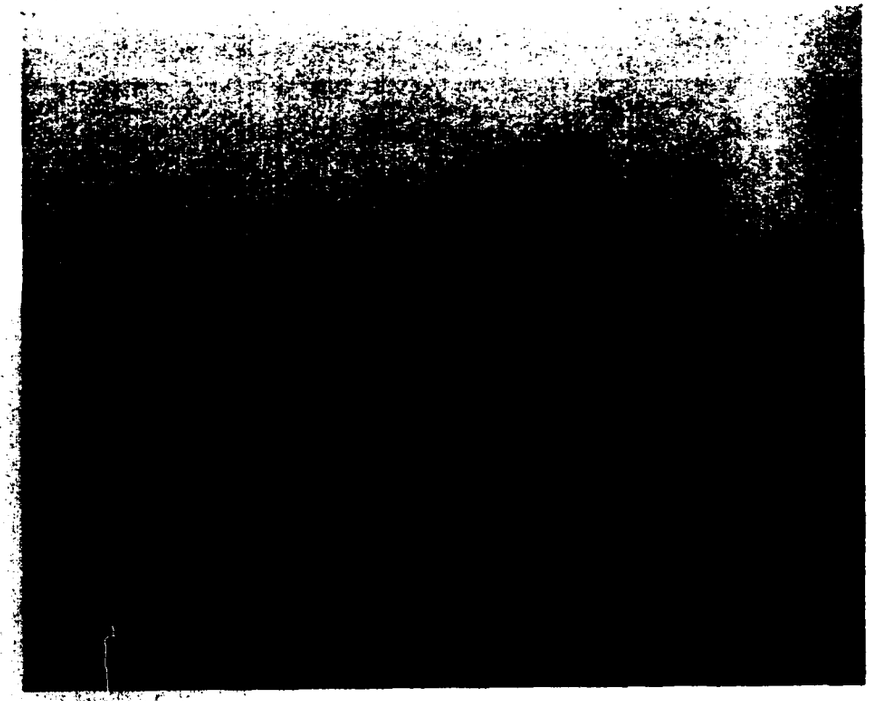
Officers' Private Horses Jumping.—First, First Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin, Division Headquarters, on *Babe;* second, Colonel Martin Crimmins, Division Headquarters, on *McElroy;* third, Captain Paul Morris, 1st Cavalry, on U. S. Government *Bob*.

Horses Suitable to Become Polo Mount.—First, Major William Rucker, 82d F. A. Battalion, on *Billy;* second, First Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin, Division

Headquarters, on *Skipper;* third, Captain J. G. Walker, 2d Machine Gun Squadron, on *Senator.*

Ladies' Jumping.—First, Mrs. Harry Chamberlin, on *Peanuts;* second, Miss Leona Robinson, on *America.*

Bending Race.—First, First Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin, Division Headquarters, on U. S. Government *Dan;* second, Captain W. D. Lattimore, 82d F. A. Battalion, on *Commander;* third, Captain William K. Harrison, on U. S. Government *Buddy.*



Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin, Cavalry, on Babe, thoroughbred, winner of "Officer's Charger," "Handy Jumper," and "Private Horses Jumping"

Pairs of Jumpers.—First, Second Lieutenant Raymond Bosserman and Captain Horace Forster, 8th Cavalry, on U. S. Government *Rebel* and *Bob;* second, First Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin and Lieutenant George Elms, Division Headquarters, on U. S. Government *Plutarch* and *Red.*

Officers' Chargers.—First, First Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin, Division Headquarters on bay gelding *Babe;* second, Major Harry Chamberlin, 8th Cavalry, on *Nicodemus;* third, Captain Paul Morris, 1st Cavalry, on *Kapiki.*

Championship Team Jumpers.—Won by 8th Cavalry Team, composed of Lieutenant-Colonel E. A. Keyes, on *Woodrow;* First Lieutenant W. R. Hamby, on *Jumbo;* Second Lieutenant Raymond Bosserman, on *Rebel;* Second Lieutenant D. F. J. De Bardelaben, on *Sandy;* First Lieutenant T. H. Collier, on *Peanuts.*

Polo Stake Race.—First, First Lieutenant Jess G. Boykin, Division Headquarters on U. S. Government *Dan;* second, Major Harry Chamberlin, 8th Cavalry, on U. S. Government *Joe;* third, Second Lieutenant Raymond Bosserman, 8th Cavalry, on U. S. Government *Jingles.*

Championship Jumper.—First, Captain B. M. Sawbridge, 82d F. A. Battalion, on U. S. Government *Red Boy;* second, Second Lieutenant D. F. J. De Bardelaben, 8th Cavalry, on U. S. Government *Sam;* Third, Second Lieutenant Edwin P. Crandall, 7th Cavalry, on U. S. Government *Darky.*

Pairs of Saddle Horses.—First, Major William Rucker and Mrs. Adna Chaffee, on *Paintrock* and *Skyrocket;* second, Major and Mrs. Harry Chamberlin, on *Betsy Bell* and *Toquita Daisy;* third, Lieutenant Harold and Miss Leona Robinson, on *Queen* and *Irish.*

High Jump.—First, First Lieutenant J. H. Collier, 8th Cavalry, on U. S. Government *Peanuts;* second, Captain Paul Morris, 1st Cavalry, on U. S. Government *A-24;* third, Second Lieutenant Raymond Bosserman, 8th Cavalry, on U. S. Government *Rebel.*

IMPORTANT, INTERESTING FIGURES

The paid membership of the Association, together with subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL, is higher than ever before, namely, above 1,860. Two thousand copies of the JOURNAL have been regularly printed for several years, with occasional small increases, and practically all issues are out of print. Of the Cavalry officers of the Army of the United States, 780 of the 1,025 Regulars, 390 of the 2,700 Reserves, and 165 of the 600 National Guardsmen are paid members. Libraries to the number of 101 subscribe for the JOURNAL; 118 regular troops and similar units of Cavalry, out of a possible 150, have the JOURNAL on their reading tables; 68 civilians are among our subscribers. Retired Cavalrymen and general officers total 79. Of other arms 82 officers hold associate membership; 18 National Guard units get the JOURNAL.

This is very gratifying to the management; it is hoped that these figures will penetrate the consciousness of the membership, and that each member will make an effort in the particular direction that is at hand to increase the roll. Slowly but *most surely* the Association is extending its membership and its legitimate sphere of influence in furthering National Defense. Only very limited clerical help prevents more rapid extension. Moreover, the management is of the opinion that, due to the very definite limits of our field as revealed by the figures above, progress must of necessity be gradual. The whole potential territory is being covered now in several ways through various channels. But these officers want occasionally to hear about something other than the Cavalry Association and the JOURNAL. This conviction has settled our present policy of going slowly, so long as we go ahead. The important matter to retain vividly in mind is that this is a co-operative Association, that the management in Washington can exert little influence compared to the member on the spot, and the Association will be at its greatest strength when each member is in fact an active member.

Editorial Comment

THE ASSOCIATION AND THE JOURNAL

IN ORDER TO PLACE the relationship of the Cavalry Association to the CAVALRY JOURNAL upon what is believed to be a more logical basis, the amendments to the Constitution referred to elsewhere in this number have been proposed.

Instead of making subscription to the JOURNAL a condition of membership, it is considered that membership should be based upon payment of annual dues, with the receipt of the JOURNAL as a prerogative thereof.

The publication of the JOURNAL is not the sole reason for the existence of the Association. There are other means for the promotion of the professional improvement of its members, the preservation and fostering of the spirit, traditions, and solidarity of the Cavalry of the Army of the United States, than by the publication of the JOURNAL. This being admitted, there rests a certain responsibility upon all members, and especially upon the Executive Council and the officers of the Association, which should not be lost sight of.

The JOURNAL, however, is, and should be, a very important means in the accomplishment of the objects for which the Association exists. But it is thought that members should regard the JOURNAL as the organ of the Association, which we are willing to support, and not as a commercial magazine, for which we pay so much a year. It is believed that members should regard it as the mouthpiece of the Association, which has done so much in the past and which should continue its good work into the future; as a medium of expression on all pertinent subjects, and for the presentation of suitable articles of professional interest and value.

This brings us to a consideration of the obligation resting upon cavalry officers to join the Association. Every cavalry officer should take pride in his profession as a soldier; he should take pride in his arm; he should enjoy association with his brother officers, in whatever legitimate form this association may take—social, athletic, or professional; he should avail himself of every means of improving himself professionally.

With these principles in mind, it would appear that in the Association as an association, with the JOURNAL supplementary thereto, we have something which is not only worthy of support, but which should be of much value, not only to individual members, but to the Cavalry Arm as a whole.

A PLEA FOR PROMPTNESS

IT IS HIGHLY DESIRABLE that membership in the Association should be continuous. From time to time you will receive a notification relative to your annual dues. Please co-operate; do not overlook or delay this little contribution, which is so vital to the success of the Association and the JOURNAL.

It is realized that, with the best of intentions, misunderstandings and errors will sometimes occur. Man is not infallible, nor are the mails. These matters

can, however, it is believed, be adjusted to the satisfaction of all concerned if the Golden Rule is applied by both sides.

THE CAVALRY FUND

THE RESPONSE TO THE REQUEST for contributions to the Cavalry Fund has so far been satisfactory, with a number of organizations yet to be heard from. At the date of going to press the following regiments were listed on the 100 per cent honor roll: 3d Cavalry, 5th Cavalry, 8th Cavalry, 11th Cavalry and the 14th Cavalry.

It is felt that the Cavalry Fund is an enterprise which merits support. All of the activities which it is designed to promote are of such a nature that they will tend to maintain the interest of the public in our arm, as well as to encourage individual and collective effort on the part of cavalry personnel to excel in various important phases of training.

THE ARMY AND MOUNTED COMPETITIONS

IN SOME OF THE NATIONAL and international mounted competitions of this year the Army has not had the success that was hoped for. But, while the results of these events were, to some extent, disappointing, there is no reason for discouragement, and our lack of success this year should only spur the mounted services to renewed efforts in future competitions.

Articles in this number of the JOURNAL deal with the conditions and circumstances affecting the results of the Olympic Equestrian events, the Junior Polo Championship, and the Colorado Endurance Ride. Some adverse conditions appear to have been unavoidable, in spite of hard and enthusiastic work of preparation by participants and the active support of the War Department and the Army.

We have learned through experience, an excellent teacher. The time, labor, and expense involved in these competitions have not been in vain. Not only shall we profit greatly by the lessons learned, but our service competitors have from all sides earned and received high praise for their conduct, bearing, and skill as worthy representatives of the Army of the United States.

THE RASP, 1924

THIS YEAR'S "RASP," the Cavalry School Annual, is a handsomely bound volume and contains a large number of excellent illustrations. It is dedicated to Brigadier-General Edward L. King, the Commandant.

The text is limited to class histories, courses of instruction, and other features intimately related to the School. General articles on various phases of horsemastership, etc., which have characterized some former *Rasps*, are not included in this one. An unusual and interesting feature is the reproduction of the front pages of twenty-eight numbers of *The Standard*, the weekly publication of the school.

NOTICE

ANNUAL MEETING OF THE UNITED STATES CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

The Annual Meeting of the United States Cavalry Association will be held at Washington, D. C., on Wednesday, January 14, 1925, at the Army and Navy Club. The election of officers and of members of the Executive Council will take place at this meeting.

The following amendments will be voted upon:

In Article III, Section 2, erase the words "and at such subscription price" and the words "which may be subscribed for by any person or organization," so that the section will read:

> "In furtherance of its aim and purpose, the Association shall publish, with such frequency as may be determined from time to time by the Executive Council, a professional and scientific journal, to be known as the CAVALRY JOURNAL, and conduct a Book Department for the sale, to its members and the public, of books, maps, and periodicals."

In Article IV, Section 2, to erase the words "for at least one year's subscription to the CAVALRY JOURNAL," substituting therefor the words "of at least one year's dues, the amount of which shall be determined from time to time by the Executive Council"; also erase the words "date at which his subscription to the JOURNAL is commenced"; so that the section will read:

> "Any person desiring to become an active or associate member shall make application to the Secretary, which application shall set forth facts establishing his eligibility, and be accompanied by the payment of at least one year's dues, the amount of which shall be determined from time to time by the Executive Council, and the applicant's eligibility appearing, the Secretary shall award him membership."

In Article IV, Section 3, erase the entire section and substitute for it the following:

> "All active and associate members shall receive the JOURNAL without other cost than the annual dues."

In Article IV, Section 4, erase the words "renew the annual subscription to the JOURNAL," substituting therefor the words "renew through payment of annual dues," so that the section will read:

> "Any member may withdraw from the Association at the end of any current year by tendering his resignation; and membership shall lapse, *ipso facto*, by failure to renew through payment of annual dues; but such withdrawal or lapse shall not operate to relieve such member from liabilities to or as a member of the Association, incurred prior thereto."

To Article IV add the following section:

> "SECTION 6. Any person or organization may become a subscriber to the CAVALRY JOURNAL upon the payment of a subscription price equivalent to the annual dues of the Association, and all such as are not regularly admitted and entered as active, associate, or honorary members shall be considered as subscribers merely."

All members of the Association who are not certain to be present in person are urgently requested to execute and forward to the Secretary a proxy, form for which is to be found below:

PROXY

I hereby constitute and appoint the Secretary of the United States Cavalry Association, or ....., my proxy, for me and in my name and behalf to vote at any election of officers and members of the Executive Council of the United States Cavalry Association upon any and all proposed amendments to the Constitution of the said Association and upon any and all other matters which may properly come before the annual meeting of the United States Cavalry Association in January, 1925, or any adjourned meeting thereof.

.....

Topics of the Day

A ONE THOUSAND DOLLAR FUND

AS A SEQUEL TO the recent Prize Essay Competition, the Executive Council takes pleasure in announcing that an enthusiastic Reserve Cavalry officer, who graduated in the Field Officers' Class at the Cavalry School in 1922, has donated *one thousand dollars,* to be utilized at the discretion of the Chief of Cavalry, in connection with a competition in the leadership of small cavalry units.

The donor, who, by the way, is the same officer that made possible the Prize Essay Competition, has been impressed with the view that the value of cavalry is largely measured by the prompt decision and aggressiveness of the leaders of its small units. He was much pleased with the essays submitted, and at his request the President of the Association appointed a committee consisting of Colonel J. H. Reeves, General Staff; Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, 3d Cavalry, and Lieutenant-Colonel Robert Mc. Beck, Jr., Cavalry, to prepare a plan for a competition based upon the principles and methods enunciated in the prize essays.

After a thorough study of the subject, the committee submitted its recommendations, which have been approved. In general, the two essentials of the plan are as follows:

First, that field sports, or feats involving nerve and endurance, form an integral and important part of the competition.

Second, that technical problems should be brief, simple, and settled when possible by concrete evidence (*e. g.,* hits in fire problems and conditions of horses after a march problem).

The test is to be in two phases; the first phase to be such as to test the individual military capacity bearing upon leadership of the officer and enlisted man, and will determine who will compete in the second phase; the second phase to be such as to test the ability of the officer to lead a unit, and also the teamwork of the men composing the unit.

The first test is to be held at the Cavalry School during the year 1925, the details of the test to be determined by the Commandant of the School.

It is desired that the development of the test be such that in the future the Cavalry personnel and the units of the Regular Army, the National Guard, the Organized Reserves, and the Reserve Officers' Training Corps may compete.

EQUESTRIAN EVENTS OF THE VIII OLYMPIADE

THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT of the equestrian events of the VIII Olympiade is based upon the report to the Remount Association made by Lieutenant-Colonel H. N. Cootes, the American member of the Jury of Appeals.

These events, which took place at Colombes July 21-27, 1924, brought together between fifty and sixty of the world's greatest horses and horsemen, and was the greatest exhibition of equestrian events shown in the history of the world.

In the first event, the Equestrian Championship, the competition was by teams of four competitors for each nation, the three highest individual scores to count. The event was divided into three phases. The first phase was individual schooling of the horse. The work of the American officers in this phase of the test was very good. Major Doak, Major Barry, Lieutenant Carr, and Captain Padgett gave their horses an excellent ride. Major Doak and Lieutenant Carr were two of the four who completed the course without a hitch. Holland took the first four individual places in this phase, with Swedish entries fifth, seventh, and eighth; France, sixth; Denmark, ninth; and France tenth. Major Doak, the senior man of the American entries, on *Pathfinder,* finished fifteenth.

The second phase of the Equestrian Championship was the endurance test, which consisted of riding 22½ miles in two hours two minutes and forty-two seconds, partly on roads, on cement pavement, on pathways through the country, and on a steeplechase course. Major Doak, on *Pathfinder,* won first place in this phase, and Lieutenant Carr, on *Proctor,* was third. Holland took second and fourth individual places.

The last phase of this event was obstacle jumping. Colonel Cootes states: "Major Doak made a splendid performance in this event, but when the final score sheets were given in it was found that he had been given one fault at the water jump, which took 80 points from his score (placing him eighth in this phase), and instead of finishing first, as the majority of competitors thought, he was placed third in the event, much to the surprise of a number of officers who were witnessing the competition." First individual place in the phase went to Holland, with Italy second and Belgium third and fourth. In the final individual classification Major Doak was, as stated above, third and Lieutenant Carr eighth. A Holland entry was first and Denmark second. By teams the results were Holland, first; Sweden, second; and Italy, third.

The United States had no entries in the Individual Training Competition, which was won by General de Linder, a retired officer of the Swedish Army, sixty years of age. "The event," says Colonel Cootes, "was probably the finest exhibition of schooled horsemanship that has ever taken place in the world."

The third and last event was the Prix des Nations, a jumping competition. The course was 1,070 meters in length, with fourteen jumps, to be negotiated in not to exceed two minutes and thirty-nine seconds. The difficulty of the test was much increased by reason of the entire course being covered by a thick layer of sand from fetlock to over angle deep in most places. It resulted in the majority of horses, after they had made a good performance over the first five or six jumps, becoming so tired that they repeatedly fell or knocked down fences over the remaining jumps.

Of the American entries, only Major Barry and Major Doak, on *Nigra* and *Joffre,* were able to finish, as both *Bally MacShane* and *Little Canada* refused the bank jump and were disqualified.

The first three individual places in this event went to Switzerland, Italy, and Poland. By teams, the order was Sweden, Switzerland, and Portugal.

To quote Colonel Cootes again: "Major Barry's selection as team Captain was an excellent one. He had many obstacles to overcome and, due to the difference of methods prevailing here, he had many petty annoyances, but he surmounted them and had the loyal support of all the team, without which the success which crowned their efforts could not have been obtained."

That the American team realized what it would have to meet in the way of competition is shown by the following statement, made by Major Barry on January 23, 1924:

"I have been to Europe on different occasions, have ridden over there in competition, and, I believe, know exactly what we are up against. I know that Europe has just as many good jumping horses as we have, and, between us, they really have many more. European riders are just as good, and possibly better than we are. . . . I stated that our chances were not one whit better than the mathematical odds indicated, and that will probably be at least 8 or 10 to 1 against. Of course, we all hope to win and all of our efforts will be directed towards winning, but I and the rest of them, and America too, for that matter, must not only be satisfied, but actually pleased, with any presentable, decent performances. The problem of jumping horses is much more 'chancy' than the racing of horses, and you know how horse races go."

THE 1924 ENDURANCE RIDE

THE ENDURANCE RIDE OF 1924 will be held in Virginia, the start being made from Warrenton on October 20. The conditions and regulations for the ride were published in the April number of the CAVALRY JOURNAL.

In view of the unsatisfactory ending of the Colorado Endurance Ride, special interest will attach to this ride to be held in the East. Competitors will not have to contend with the trying conditions of altitude and temperature which characterized the Colorado Ride, and the knowledge gained there will undoubtedly be utilized to good advantage by all participants.

The War Department has authorized the Commandant of the Cavalry School to send three officers and six horses to Fort Myer for the purpose of taking part in the ride. Captain Harold G. Holt, Captain Herbert L. Earnest, and Lieutenant Hugh B. Waddell have been designated as the three officers to represent the school.

There will be available a greater length of time for conditioning of mounts than was the case in the Colorado Ride, and it is confidently expected that these entries will make a most creditable showing.

RESERVE NEW MEMBER CONTEST

THE NEW MEMBER CONTEST conducted by the Association among the Reserves, the conditions of which were given in the July number of the JOURNAL, has ended. No division qualified for a prize.

The 310th Cavalry won the prize in the 63d Division, and the 313th Cavalry won the prize in the 64th Division. The 310th Cavalry also won the additional prize for setting the highest mark for new members.

The Association desires to thank all concerned, especially the officers on duty with the Reserves and the Commanding Officers of the units of the Reserves, for their assistance in obtaining new members.

The membership of the Association stands at the highest figure in its history, and the Reserve membership is also at its highest point.

THE OLYMPIC RIFLE AND PISTOL COMPETITIONS

THE EXCELLENT SHOWING of the American Olympic Rifle Team in the Olympic Games was on a par with that of our representatives in other sports.

The team was constituted as follows:

Team Captain—Major L. W. Waller, Jr., U. S. M. C.
Team Coach—Colonel C. E. Stodter, Cavalry, U. S. A.
Team Adjutant—Captain D. L. Brewster, U. S. M. C.
Team Spotter—Major John Dooley, Marine Corps, O. R. C.
Major J. K. Boles, Field Artillery, U. S. A.
Commander C. T. Osburn, U. S. Navy.
Lieutenant Sidney R. Hinds, 3d Infantry, U. S. A.
Sergeant Dennis Fenton, Infantry, U. S. A.
Gunnery Sergeant Morris Fisher, U. S. M. C.
Gunnery Sergeant Raymond Coulter, U. S. M. C.
Corporal Joseph W. Crockett, National Guard, District of Columbia.
Private Marcus Dinwiddie, National Guard, District of Columbia.
Mr. Walter R. Stokes, Washington, D. C.
Mr. Ralph C. Stokes, Washington, D. C.
Mr. John B. Grier, Wilmington, Delaware.
Mr. Paul Landrock, Weehawken, New Jersey.

The results of the various matches were as follows.

1. International match at 300 meters; 40 shots from each of the three positions, standing, kneeling, and prone; teams of five; both team and individual championships.

Won by the United States with a total score of 5,284. Switzerland, with a score of 5,184, was second, and France third. Fisher, of the United States, won the kneeling championship, and Stokes, of the United States, the prone. Team consisted of Coulter, Fisher, Boles, Osborn, and Stokes.

2. Olympic Individual Match at 50 meters with 22-caliber rifles; 40 shots standing; four entries per nation.

Won by De Lisle, of France, with a score of 398; Dinwiddie, of the United States, was second with a score of 396.

3. Olympic Team Match at 400, 600, and 800 meters; 10 shots at each range; teams of five.

Won by the United States with a total score of 676. France was second with a score of 646, and Haiti third, with the same score. The American team consisted of Hinds, Coulter, Crockett, Fisher, and W. Stokes.

4. The Olympic Individual Match at 600 meters; twenty shots; four entries per nation.

Won by Fisher, of the United States with a score of 95. Osborn, of the United States, was second, with the same score, and W. Stokes fourth.

5. Running Deer Matches; individual shot match won by Boles; individual double shots, no Americans were placed; team single shot, won by Norway, with the United States third; the team doubles match won by England, with the United States fifth.

6. Pistol Match: Three strings of six shots in ten seconds at the silhouette of a man at 20 meters.

Eight competitors made perfect scores. In the shoot-off of six shots in eight seconds, seven strings were required to decide the match. Bailey, of the United States, won, with every string a possible.

Final point standings of the nations for all the matches were as follows:

1. United States, 59 points.
2. Norway, 32 points.
3. Sweden, 26 points.
4. England, 23 points.
5. France, 15½ points.
6. Finland, 13 points.
7. Switzerland, 9 points.

THE COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE

THE COLORADO ENDURANCE RIDE came to a premature and unexpected end on the fourth day of the ride, Thursday, August 7. *Aline* and *Wineglass*, from the Cavalry School, the only two horses to start on the fourth day, were taken out on account of lameness, after covering 48 miles for the day and 228 miles for the four days.

The entries, with breeding, owners, and riders were as follows:

Amherst, Thoroughbred-Standard, from the Cavalry School; rider, Major J. T. McLane, 9th Cavalry.

Nottoway, three-quarter Thoroughbred, from the Cavalry School; rider, Major C. C. Benson, Cavalry.

Aline, three-quarter Thoroughbred; from the Cavalry School; rider, Captain H. N. Beeman, Veterinary Corps.

Wineglass, one-half Thoroughbred, from the Cavalry School; rider, Captain A. W. Roffe, 9th Cavalry.

Black Moon, Thoroughbred-Morgan, from the Cavalry School; rider, Lieutenant F. De L. Comfort, 2d Cavalry.

Colorado Boy, one-half Thoroughbred; owner and rider, O. E. Curtis.

Kansas, Saddle; owner, R. K. Dougherty; rider, Lieutenant M. McD. Jones, Cavalry.

Sandy, Thoroughbred-Standard; owner and rider, Mark Hirsig.

Diamond, Thoroughbred-Standard; owner, R. P. Lamont; rider, Ed Bronson.

Calvin Coolidge, Thoroughbred; owner, Spencer Penrose; rider, Elmer Barton.

Dawes, Thoroughbred-Morgan; owner, Spencer Penrose; rider, George Snurr.

Robin, one-half Thoroughbred; owner, E. A. Pring; rider, Wm. Johns.

Dennymeeker, three-quarter Thoroughbred; owner and rider, Captain L. A. Shafer, 13th Cavalry.

King, one-half Thoroughbred; owner and rider, Lieutenant Holden Spear, Quartermaster Corps.

Goldie, one-half Thoroughbred; owner, Lieutenant Holden Spear; rider, Captain John E. Selby, 13th Cavalry.

Bill, one-half Morgan; owner, Stratton Home; rider, J. B. Lewis.

Tad H., Thoroughbred; owner, Remount; rider, R. P. Lamont.

All entries completed the first day's ride, fourteen of them within the minimum time of nine hours. On the second day *Amherst, Calvin Coolidge, Dennymeeker,* and *Tad H.* failed to start and *Nottaway, Black Moon, Diamond, Dawes, Goldie,* and *Bill* dropped out during the day. Of the seven horses remaining at the end of the second day, *Kansas, Robin,* and *King* did not start on the third day. *Aline, Wineglass, Colorado Boy,* and *Sandy* finished on this day, but the two latter did not start on the fourth day.

Amherst finished the first day in minimum time, but died of colic that night at 12:30 a. m.

In future endurance rides, in order to make them a success and to prevent any possibility of injury to the horses entered, it is believed that measures should be taken by officials to obtain exact knowledge as to the amount of preparation each entry has had, and to arrange for more frequent and detailed examinations to be made during each day's ride.

The ride is discussed elsewhere in this number of the JOURNAL, but the following comments by an official of the ride may be of interest:

> "In brief, the horses were not properly prepared. This applies to all the civilian horses, and as to the Cavalry School horses, here are the facts, so you can judge for yourself.
>
> * * * * * * *
>
> "They shipped the men and horses on July 18; they arrived July 19; started training at Broadmoor July 20; weighed in for the ride on Sunday, August 3, and started the ride Monday, August 4. Neither officers nor horses had time to become acclimated and hardened to the work of carrying weights. These officers and horses were 100 per cent in every way, but they were asked to do the impossible on such short notice.
>
> "If it takes from six to ten months to so harden a green soldier that he can comfortably carry 75 pounds for 20 miles in a day and do it day after day, how can we expect a horse to carry 225 pounds in nine hours, 60 miles, day after day, on hard roads, and not suffer? I claim that a horse has to be worked under weight for a long enough time, so that he can do this stunt *as a regular day's work*. Their muscles and feet must be hardened and toughened, just as a veteran soldier's muscles and feet are toughened to carry his pack. The Army can afford to take the necessary time to do this thorough training and it ought to be a six months' detail:
>
> "With the meager purses offered, the ranchmen cannot afford to devote six months to training and the civilian millionaires *will not*, because they are not vitally interested. They get the 'fever' about three weeks before the ride, and pick up a horse and rider on a sporting spirit that is admirable, but not wise."

THE CAVALRY TEAM TRY-OUT MATCHES AT FORT DES MOINES

AT THE TRY-OUT MATCHES, held at Fort Des Moines during the month of July, the Cavalry Regimental Team Championship was won by the 7th Cavalry, which thereby obtained possession of the Championship Trophy for this year. The team members, each of whom received a bronze medal, were Second Lieutenant P. M. Martin and Sergeant W. P. Jackson, Troop F.

Corporal J. Adams, Troop E, 11th Cavalry, with a score of 287, won the Cavalry Individual Championship Match, and was awarded the Cavalry Individual Championship Trophy and a gold medal. Second Lieutenant P. M. Martin, 7th Cavalry, won second place and a silver medal. Corporal R. V. Wilzewski, Troop A, 11th Cavalry, was third and received a bronze medal.

The 200-yard Individual Championship Match was won by Lieutenant-Colonel I. S. Martin, 2d Cavalry, who received a silver medal. Second Lieutenant P. M. Martin, 7th Cavalry, won second place and a bronze medal.

Captain G. H. Milholland, 2d Cavalry, won the 1,000-yard Championship Match with a score of 94 and was awarded the Fort Bliss Trophy and a silver medal. Captain H. Herman, 1st Cavalry, was second and received a bronze medal.

The Holbrook Trophy, awarded to the competitor making the highest aggregate score in the first Rifle Elimination, was won by Corporal J. Adams, Troop E, 12th Cavalry, who also received a gold medal. Second Lieutenant P. M. Martin, 7th Cavalry, and Sergeant C. Miller, Troop E, 2d Cavalry, were, respectively, second and third, the former receiving a silver medal and the latter a bronze medal.

First Sergeant B. H. Harris, Troop A, 1st Machine-Gun Squadron, made the highest aggregate score in the first Pistol Elimination and was awarded a gold medal. Second Lieutenant C. A. Burcham, 14th Cavalry, second, received a silver medal, and Second Lieutenant G. A. Rehm, 14th Cavalry, third, a bronze medal.

MAILING LIST OF THE CAVALRY SCHOOL

IN THE ANNUAL REPORT of the Commandant, the Cavalry School recently received, it is stated that the school is desirous of including on the mailing list the names of such officers of cavalry of the Army of the United States as desire it. The material sent out from the school is of great professional value, and it is recommended that every cavalry officer, whether of the Regular Army, National Guard, or Organized Reserves, avail himself of this opportunity to obtain, without expense, valuable professional literature which deals with many phases of cavalry activity and sets forth the accepted cavalry doctrine.

CAVALRY C. M. T. C. AT CAMP MEADE, MARYLAND

CAPTAIN A. E. MERRILL, Cavalry, who was on duty at the Citizens' Military Training Camp at Camp Meade, Maryland, during July of this year, makes some observations on the cavalry training at the camp which will be of interest to all cavalry officers who have had or expect to have duty of this kind. Captain Merrill says:

> "The question is often asked, Is it possible to effectively train C. M. T. C. students assigned to the Cavalry in the thirty days allotted each year for such work? All agree that it is quite impossible to produce an efficient cavalry soldier with one, two, or even three months' train-

ing, but certainly the results obtained at Camp Meade, Maryland, during July of this year furnish conclusive proof that young men may at least get the fundamentals of cavalry training, and at the conclusion of thirty days' instruction leave the camp with the aggressive, enterprising spirit of true cavalrymen.

"One hundred and thirty-one students reported for cavalry instruction and were divided into the following classes: ninety-two, Red course; thirteen, White course; and twenty-six to the final or Blue course.

"The instruction was progressive for each class of students. The Reds, of course, were given basic cavalry instruction, mounted and dismounted, together with instruction in the combat weapons of the arm; also instruction in constructive citizenship and practical national defense.

"The course for the Whites differed from the above, in that it provided for additional training in the duties of non-commissioned officers; also some training with the machine-gun.

"The instruction of the Blue students was intended to give them as much experience as possible during the camp in the duties of junior officers, troop administration, and the tactical use of cavalry.

"Students at Camp Meade were especially fortunate this year in that always sufficient mounts were available to insure mounted instruction every day of the course. This added greatly to the morale of the boys. They soon learned to dress as cavalrymen and took great pride in the fact that they were actually learning to ride and manage a horse.

"As a result of sufficient training under the able direction of Major Wainwright, of the 3d Cavalry, before the close of the camp, the C. M. T. C. troop could execute very well all of the movements of troop drill and had a fair knowledge of the manual and use of cavalry weapons. However, the most important accomplishment of their training is the fact that they all left the camp sorry that their training for his year was completed, proud to be known among their fellow-students as cavalrymen, and with a sincere desire to obtain more training and in every way possible boost the cavalry course."

RESERVE OFFICERS TRAINING CORPS HORSE SHOW, MICHIGAN AGRICULTURAL COLLEGE, EAST LANSING, MICHIGAN

THE RESERVE OFFICERS' TRAINING CORPS of the Michigan Agricultural College gave a very successful horse show at East Lansing, Michigan, May 30-31, 1924. It drew entries from all over the State, especially from the exclusive hunt clubs in Detroit and Grand Rapids. The following were represented: Grosse Point Hunt Club, Detroit; the Detroit Riding and Hunt Club, Detroit; Bloomfield Open Hunt, Birmingham, Michigan, and the Kent Saddle Club, Grand Rapids, Michigan. In addition, there were entries from the Cavalry unit of the R. O. T. C., from the 119th Field Artillery and the 106th Cavalry of the Michigan National Guard, and from many other horsemen throughout the State.

THE CAVALRY TEAM AT THE NATIONAL MATCHES

AS A RESULT OF THE TRY-OUT held at Fort Des Moines, the following team is representing the Cavalry in the National Matches now taking place at Camp Perry, Ohio:

Lieutenant-Colonel A. H. Davidson, 14th Cavalry, team captain.
Lieutenant-Colonel I. S. Martin, 2d Cavalry, team coach.
Captain J. L. Rice, 11th Cavalry, supply officer.
Sergeant J. C. Ruff, Troop G, 14th Cavalry, supply sergeant.
Captain W. Kenahan, 10th Cavalry.
Captain L. L. Gocker, 13th Cavalry.
First Lieutenant L. A. Fudge, Cavalry.
First Lieutenant T. J. Heavey, 2d Machine-Gun Squadron.
1st Lieutenant J. E. Leahy, 5th Cavalry.
First Lieutenant P. A. Noel, 11th Cavalry.
Second Lieutenant C. A. Burcham, 14th Cavalry.
Second Lieutenant P. M. Martin, 7th Cavalry.
Second Lieutenant G. A. Rehm, 14th Cavalry.
Second Lieutenant C. D. Silverthorne, 5th Cavalry.
First Sergeant W. E. Fitzgerald, Headquarters Troop, 2d Cavalry Brigade
First Sergeant B. H. Harris, Troop A, 1st Machine-Gun Squadron.
Sergeant F. Barret, Troop G, 11th Cavalry.
Sergeant G. A. Cobler, Headquarters Detachment, 2d Squadron, 11th Cavalry.
Sergeant P. Jackson, Headquarters Troop, 14th Cavalry.
Sergeant C. Miller, Troop B, 2d Cavalry.
Sergeant J. Reed, Troop F, 5th Cavalry.
Corporal J. Adams, Troop E, 12th Cavalry.
Corporal J. B. Jensen, Troop A, 7th Cavalry.
Corporal R. W. Montgomery, Headquarters Troop, 8th Cavalry
Corporal R. V. Wilzewski, Troop A, 11th Cavalry.
Corporal J. Yersak, Troop A, 13th Cavalry.
Private H. Christensen, Troop E, 2d Cavalry.
Private C. E. Curry, Machine-Gun Troop, No. 1.
Private W. G. Seyk, Headquarters Troop, 14th Cavalry.



New Books Reviewed

THE HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES ARMY. By Major William Addleman Ganoe, Infantry, U. S. A. 609 pages. D. Appleton & Co., New York, 1924. (Price, $5.00.)

Reviewed by Colonel Geo. H. Cameron, U. S. Army, Retired.

From the foreword of this valuable book it appears that the Appletons suggested the work to the author, and to those of us who are familiar with Major Ganoe's qualifications it is also apparent that these discriminating publishers took no long shot.

His college and West Point training, his tour of duty in the Department of Languages, and later as Adjutant of the Military Academy, and his present detail as head of the Historical Section at the Infantry School, have all tended to fit him for this particular task.

At the outset one is impressed by this easy flowing, gripping narrative, so different from the customary dry-as-dust and soporific enumeration of bald facts. There is a telling dry humor and clever satire that leaves no sting. Yet the experienced Adjutant stands out in the precision and force of statement, the skillful winnowing of details, and the remarkable appendixes. And the reader cannot fail to grasp that every word is real history, painstakingly dug up from authentic documents and records.

The author modestly admits five years of research. In addition to the "Selected Bibliography," staggering to the layman, one realizes that Major Ganoe has had very unusual opportunities to explore dusty and forgotten manuscripts and has even had access to certain *sancta sanctorum*, so that he is able to announce: "There are statements in this volume that have been purposely withheld from general knowledge and others that have never been published at all."

Common sense has led the author to omit references to authority, "because of the fretting interruption to the reader," and to use marginal dates that not only permit ready tracing in the bibliography, but also give to this chronicle the same appeal as do those of the diary in Johnston's "The Corsican." There are footnotes, of course; here is a sample: "It is interesting to note that Abraham Lincoln was a captain of volunteers, who turned out for the Black Hawk War in 1835, and that Lieutenant Jefferson Davis, of the Regular Army, administered to him his first oath of allegiance."

The story of the Army from 1775 to the present day is told with fearless candor and with no cloaking of military or national blunders. Due credit is shrewdly bestowed, and throughout there is the spirit of patriotic loyalty; but the author never fails to point out constructively the recurring instances of the squandering of lives and money. "It is a curious thing," says he, "that we Americans, who are noted for our foresight in business and economics, are almost stupid in applying prevention to national perils."

Excepting a plate from an old manual of arms, the only illustrations are six excellent half-tone portraits. Above the list of the names of the subjects the author again departs from conventionality by boldly writing the scriptural "*These are they . . .*" When the reader lays down the book he will admit, inevitably and ungrudgingly, that Major Ganoe has selected six Army officers who truly "came out of great tribulation" and who, in the succeeding epochs of our existence as a nation, stood foremost in vision and lofty purpose. Their wisdom and their persistence in the face of discouragement and adversity were contributing factors to our high efficiency in the World War.

Every Army officer should possess this volume. The old-timer will get his money back in the mere refreshing of his recollections of life on the old frontier and of service in Cuba and the Philippines, at Vera Cruz and Dublan. The young officer gets an incomparable analytical review of changes in organization, drill regulations, weapons, equipment, and uniforms, together with a thrilling tale of the endurance, privations, and brave deeds of his predecessors, that is bound to make him sit up and think. Both old and young

will read with amazement incidents of our early wars that are here released for the first time.

And may the civilian readers be many, for they will get still greater value in a frank and convincing presentation of the Army view point.

A SATCHEL GUIDE TO EUROPE. By Rolfe and Crockett. 457 pages, index, maps. 44th annual edition. Houghton, Mifflin Co., 1924. (Price, $4.00.)

This is an instructive, entertaining, and useful book. It would seem to be a great aid to any one contemplating a tour in Europe, furnishing in succinct form the basis of a reading course preparatory to the journey and likewise a handy reference tool while actually making the trip.

The introduction gives the customary hints to the prospective sight-seer as to what preparations to make in the way of clothing, money, reservations, tourist agencies, information of the countries to be visited, and forwarding addresses. The descriptions of the countries and cities are given in the order of an economical and time-saving continuous journey through the whole of Europe, with profitable digressions offered, from debarkation to embarkation for the return home. The modes of travel from place to place are indicated, each with its peculiar advantage, along with the cost and distances. Fees at the points of interest are stated, and where entrance on certain days is free, that also is imparted. A brief history of the famous sections and towns makes the volume pleasant reading for any one.

Excellent maps are interspersed all the way through the work, giving in some instances the railroads and connections.

The authors have taken most of the trips described, which naturally and obviously renders the suggestions additionally valuable.

One might say that no more remunerative investment could be made when Europe is to be done.

A traveler's calendar of ecclesiastical and popular festivals, pilgrimages, fairs, etc., a hotel directory, and a bibliography for the European tourist, as well as a very good index, further embellish this time-proven effort.

MILITARY INTELLIGENCE—A NEW WEAPON IN WAR. By Lieutenant-Colonel Walter C. Sweeney, U. S. A. Frederick A. Stokes Company, New York. (Price, $2.50.)

Reviewed by Major Mark Brooke, General Staff, Chief, MI-4.

This is an excellent book, written in non-technical language and presented in such shape as to be interesting and clear to the layman as well as to the military man.

As the author states in his preface, probably no military activity is so shrouded in mystery or so generally misunderstood as that of military intelligence. No reader of this book could be left with any doubt as to what it is—a service for the collection and presentation in usable form to a commander of information of the enemy.

The volume comprises a brief description of the origin, functions, and history of military intelligence; the organization of the military intelligence service of the United States Army; a brief discussion of international relations; the problems of modern warfare and the relations of military intelligence thereto; a description of the intelligence service in the A. E. F., and a discussion of the functions and operation of military intelligence.

In the discussion of the problems of modern war, in Chapter IV, the author shows how the lack of preparedness on our part in 1917 caused the German General Staff to form an erroneous intelligence estimate of our military power, and to conclude that we would be less dangerous as an active enemy than as a neutral supplying the allies with munitions of war. The analogy made between the intelligence service and the supply services, in which the intelligence service is depicted as procuring the raw material, information, and converting it into the finished product, intelligence, is very interesting and serves to give a vivid picture of the functions of military intelligence.

While there appears to be considerable repetition, some subjects being discussed in Chapter III, "Organisation," and again in Chapters VI and VII, "Functions of Personnel" and "Collection of Information," respectively, it serves the purpose of emphasis and clarity.

The subtitle, "A New Weapon in War," is probably a device to arouse the interest of the general reading public, for, as the author states, the use of enemy information is as old as war itself; it is only the modern organisation for the systematic collection and use of this information which is new.

The author's statement on pages 50 and 51, that the War Department intelligence organisation is not prescribed, is not exactly correct, as there is an approved initial organisation for G-2 War Department in event of mobilization.

The discussions of the functions and operation of military intelligence and of the principles of command and staff are in accordance with American doctrines. The author rightly stresses the importance of the military side of the intelligence service, especially combat intelligence, and points out the decreasing importance, under conditions of modern warfare, of the obsolescent secret service and spy systems. It is a book which can be read with interest and profit by all civilians interested in military matters as well as by all Army officers.

TRAINING SCHEDULE FOR NATIONAL GUARD MACHINE-GUN COMPANIES. By Captain David P. Livingston, Iowa N. G. 48 pages. Quartermaster Association, Washington, D. C. (Price, 50 cents.)

As the title indicates, this work is in the form of a two-year schedule of instruction, together with a Training Guide, and contains suitable references to Training Regulations and other standard training publications. It is based upon a careful study of the Training Management Course at the Infantry School, where the author was a student in the 1924 class; conferences with instructors and department chiefs, and practical suggestions from other members of the author's class. The book should be of much value to all commanding officers of National Guard machine-gun companies.



Foreign Military Journals

Cavalry Journal (British), July, 1924.

The continuation in this number of "The Russian Cavalry Operations in East Prussia," by Major-General Sir Edmund Ironside, K. C. B., C. M. G., D. S. O., gives an interesting description of the defeat of Rennenkampf at Sotlmahnen and the Forest of Rominten, September 9 to 12, 1914.

Lieutenant-Colonel E. B. Maunsell describes an incident, generally known as the "Manchester Column Disaster," which occurred near Kifl, in the first phase of the Arab rebellion of 1920. It furnishes an excellent example of a cavalry rear-guard action.

A column consisting of two squadrons of the Scinde Horse, the 39th Battery, R. F. A., a battalion of Manchesters (less one company), and one company, 32d Pioneers, was ordered to proceed from Hillah to a point on the Kifl road seven miles from Hillah and form an intrenched camp.

Between Hillah and Kifl the country was flat, with a few mounds, the sites of ancient villages. There were also numerous dry irrigation channels with sheer banks, forming serious obstacles.

The movement was intended as a demonstration. As but little water was found at the designated point, the command pushed on eight miles farther the next day, to the Rustumiyah Canal. Here the camp was attacked that evening by about 2,000 Arabs.

On account of the weak garrison left at Hillah, where all the dumps were, and the difficulty of returning to that point should the Arabs block the roads, it was decided to withdraw, leaving the camp standing.

The battery, the Scinde Horse, less two squadrons, and the company of the 32d Pioneers formed the rear guard. The infantry started the withdrawal about 7:45 and had to fight its way out. The rear guard remained at the camp to cover the withdrawal of the transport. The latter was soon in confusion, and it was only with great difficulty that the camp was held until the transport had moved out.

The retiring force was boldly harassed by the Arabs, who were reinforced by hostile villagers en route. At one time the Arabs were within 80 yards of the guns, but a troop charged and gained sufficient breathing space for them to limber up and move off.

For the first three miles the squadrons retired alternately by bounds of about 400 yards each. Several other charges were made by the cavalry at critical moments, one of them being a bayonet charge.

The retiring infantry had great difficulty in the darkness and the broken country and many stragglers were picked up, some without clothing, and others only partially clothed.

After about seven miles, the pursuit ceased. By this time half of the horses were casualties and the troops were almost exhausted. The rear guard reached Hillah at 5:30 the next morning, after a retreat of about 16 miles under most difficult conditions.

It was subsequently estimated that some 5,000 tribesmen were engaged.

From a cavalry point of view, the following are the salient lessons for study:

(1) The supreme value of discipline and steadiness, particularly in a night retirement such as this, where the chances of faint-hearted or badly trained men to fade away are unbounded.

(2) A night retirement across intersected country, when in close contact with irregulars, can only lead to heavy casualties and may more probably lead to disaster.

(3) The value of the counter-charge, either mounted or dismounted.

(4) In close fighting of this description, Vickers guns and Hotchkiss rifles have great limitations, owing to the delay in loading them up when the time to retire arrives. Steady, carefully controlled rifle fire was found to be the most effective.

(5) The moral effect of arming cavalry with the bayonet, which rendered a countercharge on foot more than mere bluff.

(6) The enormous value of cavalry in Arab warfare. Without cavalry the infantry would have been almost helpless.

In this same number Lieutenant-Colonel W. J. Lambert, D. S. O., Royal Deccan Horse, describes a cavalry fight near Aleppo, October 26, 1918, which was the last fight against the Turks and Germans in Syria. The Imperial Service Cavalry Brigade, consisting of the Jodhpur Lancers, Mysore Lancers, and the Hyderabad Lancers, on October 26, 1918, marched from Khan Tumen with orders to occupy a position astride the Aleppo-Alexandretta road covering Aleppo from the northwest, and on the way to clear the ridge west of Aleppo, where the enemy was reported to be intrenched.

At about 11 a. m. an enemy force with artillery was encountered in position east of the road and about five miles from Aleppo. After development of the enemy by the advance guard, two squadrons of Jodhpur Lancers and a Machine-gun Squadron took up a fire position, while the Mysore Lancers and the Jodhpur Lancers (less two squadrons) moved east to attack the enemy mounted. The enemy discovered the movement and turned the fire of several guns on the maneuvering force, but without causing any casualties.

When a favorable opportunity offered, the Mysore Lancers charged, pivoting on the Hotchkiss guns. The charge went home, the horsemen galloping through line of infantry, mostly Germans, lying down. Fifty of the enemy were killed and more than twenty prisoners taken, but when they found out how weak the charging force was they began firing into their rear. The Jodhpur Lancers were too far to the rear to act as an effective support, and as they came up ran into a line of German infantry. The Mysore Lancers rallied in rear of the Hotchkiss position and took up a dismounted position, where they were joined by the Jodhpur Lancers. The action thus far had forced the enemy to reveal his whole strength, which was estimated at about 3,000 infantry, 400 cavalry, with eight to twelve guns of various caliber and 30 to 40 machine-guns and automatic rifles. With this force the enemy advanced as if to attack, but at 800 yards halted and began to dig in. They, however, withdrew during the night.

The following points are worthy of study in connection with an action of this kind:

(1) The moral effect of cavalry (to take on and hold up a force so very much numerically stronger and to inflict appreciable casualties).

(2) Cavalry while moving suffers few casualties from gun fire.

(3) To bring off a really successful cavalry action, one must have depth and therefore weight.

(4) Mounted attacks should, whenever possible, be supported by artillery and machine-gun fire.

Journal of the United Service Institution of India, July, 1924.

In this number the operations around Valenciennes by the First Army, October-November, 1918, are described in an interesting manner by Major-General Sir W. H. H. Anderson, K. C. B. (late Major-General, General Staff, First Army). Special emphasis is laid on the co-ordination of plans and co-operation in action between the various elements of the British force.

Lieutenant-Colonel A. B. Beauman, D. S. O., the York and Lancaster Regiment, has an interesting and instructive article on "Military Reading." He believes that the motto for those officers who wish to read and those who wish to encourage reading should be, "Don't be narrow and always mix your reading." By narrowness he means the theory that tactics, strategy, organisation, and armaments are the only subjects that are worthy of the attention of the military reader. In the author's opinion, military biography is the most important form of military reading. Another form of narrowness referred to is the theory that only books that deal directly or indirectly with military subjects and personalities are worth reading. He goes on and explains the importance of military men having considerable general knowledge.

Colonel C. Kirkpatrick, C. B. E., 3-12 Frontier Force Regiment, contributes an article on "Some Thoughts on Frontier Fighting," based upon experiences in Waziristan and dealing mainly with hill tactics.

Reviews by Major Harold Thompson, Cavalry

Revista Militar (Argentina), April, 1924.

Major Brihuega, Argentine Army, in a brief article, entitled "Military Literature," compares the efforts of French cavalry, infantry, and artillery officers, in writing articles for their respective service journals with those of the Argentine military service. The figures are based upon the issues of February to September, inclusive, 1923. Several deductions are interesting: The majors lead in both forces in contributing professional articles, with lieutenant-colonels and colonels a fair second; the Argentine lieutenants lead the French lieutenants. Subalterns invariably treat of concrete cases or of subjects in which they themselves function, whereas field officers write of broad subjects, as unification of doctrines and exercises. It is interesting to note that the author states that only 13 per cent of the works published by the "Officers' Library" are by national authors.

In this same number appears the first of a series of articles on "Mounted Infantry," by Captain LaVandeira, cavalry, Argentine Army. Attention is called to the introductory remarks, quoting the Inspector General of the Army: "The mounted infantry, as a rule, ought not to fight mounted, the horses serving as a means of mobility, which will permit the mounted infantry to march with the speed of the cavalry. For this reason," he states, "mounted instruction will be limited to—

"1. Knowledge of care of the horse; to saddle, mount, and dismount, individually and by groups.

"2. Control of different gaits, in so far as it may be necessary to move across country, as individuals and as groups.

An interesting feature of this article is the table of classifications proposed by the writer. This includes a classification of the men by temperament, previous experience, training, etc.; one classification of the horses to be used and one of instructors. The difference in these suggested classes of instructors is largely one of training. The author proposes that classes of men, horses, and instructors correspond, his reasons for each class being given in each case, all approved ones.

The latter part of the article is a brief compendium of instruction, the whys and wherefores of each article, mode of doing, etc. All very clearly explained and in detail. Many paragraphs might be likened to corresponding ones in the 1917 N. C. O. Manual, except that they are more erudite.

The concluding article of "The Cavalry as a Reserve and in the Break-through," by Lieutenant-colonel Brandt, herein appears. Many of the ideas presented are deduced from results of the World War.

The Colonel makes this significant statement: "Before the war, the German High Command did not, as a rule, decide to maintain the army cavalry as a reserve; this in spite of its mobility. On the contrary, it preferred to employ it otherwise, even when it could reasonably expect great successes, as the prevailing ideas at that time could not entertain the thought of a large cavalry reserve being inactive while the infantry was fighting."

But the continuous fronts, such as were met with during the World War, again placed the army cavalry where it should be—a reserve at the disposition of the High Command and as a means in the great rupture of a line.

The difference between a break-through in position warfare and that of movement is briefly explained. In the war of movement, open warfare, in the East as well as West, the case presented itself where flanks were in the air and gaps existed between armies, where it was possible to employ cavalry in agreement with its characteristics. Consequently the idea was not entertained as to holding it as a reserve. Nevertheless, in this same phase of open warfare, cases occurred where the cavalry ought to have been employed as a reserve force; for example, at the beginning of operations, when the general advance was initiated from the concentration zone.

The Colonel reasons that in open warfare it is necessary to establish a center of gravity at a certain point, and that the repulse of an enemy attack and the oscillations of the fighting line make impossible the dispatch of fighting-line troops and the consequent continuity of the line. For this reason, he argues, it will be rare in open warfare, that the army cavalry will be employed as a reserve.

Although the World War presented no cases of immediate use of cavalry, in mass, joined on the battlefield for a particular combat mission, there were some approximations or parallel cases. The German Cavalry at Vilna and the British horse in the different Battles of Gaza, for example.

All American cavalrymen will agree with the writer when he questions himself and gives this answer. Who would dare to deny that army cavalry may not be used in some future war in its true rôle—battle cavalry—to decide the issue? Cavalry will decide the success of battle, despite its reduced effectives and in spite of all new inventions, avers the author.

With the constantly increasing impedimenta of the infantry, due to vehicles, increased consumption of munitions, heavier armament and equipment, the sister arm is becoming slower and less mobile, not only in the field, but even on roads. These factors teach us that the power *of cavalry is in the conservation of its mobility, which should be continually developed.*

The author calls attention to what happened frequently on the eastern front, namely, a mobile cavalry reserve, which was launched at critical moments, in position warfare, against threatened points. Many examples are mentioned, the various divisional cavalry units, dates, places, and successes being cited. The Allied cavalry forces, however, he states, were frequently better employed when retained as army cavalry reserves.

The principal mission of army cavalry, retained as a reserve by the High Command, should be, in the opinion of the Colonel, to stop the attempts of a break-through by the enemy, and, on the other hand, to employ it when the rupture has taken place, in order to accelerate a further retreating movement.

Cases are cited, with author's reasons, why the French cavalry, in parallel cases did not obtain certain successes, the stated cause generally being the weak cavalry forces employed. Thence he deduces that only powerful cavalry groups can exploit similar successes, and then only when retained as army cavalry reserves.

It is well to note that the author emphasizes that in position warfare the place of rupture is known, or can be known, beforehand better than in warfare of movement. Examples from British, French, and Italian sources illustrate this point.

In the résumé of the special mission of modern cavalry, Colonel Brandt emphasizes again—

That frontier protection is not the true rôle of cavalry;

Distant scouting by cavalry (independent) has been modified by aërial reconnaissance, perfection of communication elements, and the use of auto-vehicles;

Cavalry should take advantage of the pursuit, or retreat as the past World War has demonstrated no change in this subject;

Cavalry, from the World War experiences, must be employed as a reserve, either tactically by the High Command or in a less pronounced rôle;

Raids have still a paramount importance.

With all these and knowing the "pros" and "cons" stated by the Colonel, it is interesting to note his conclusion as to the principal mission of modern cavalry: "It's most ample participation in attack, by movement against the most vulnerable point of the enemy, in order to annihilate him."

As a parting caution he quotes Frederick the Great in his admonition to cavalry leaders: "The cavalry leader who wishes to command a unit should not only know thoroughly the cavalry service, but that of the infantry."

The last paragraphs are of more than passing interest, particularly in view of the writer's experience in the field. The cavalry, he deduces, has the same right as the infantry, in peace time as well as in war, to demand an organization adequate to war time—that is, large units, well organized and armed, with all the auxiliaries. He states that the German cavalry suffered in the years preceding the World War, being divided into divisional cavalry, and was, as compared with the German infantry, inadequately armed.

Italy, which experienced little or no war of movement, has held on to the idea, he adds, of divisional cavalry, despite the lessons learned by the British, French, and Polish mounted arms. The Colonel hastens to question somewhat the predilection for the fire-fight, as advocated by the French. His last comments concerning the appearance of complete Bolshevist cavalry armies in 1922 against the Poles and the Turkish cavalry corps in the same year (Asia Minor) amplify still more his belief in the use of the arme blanche for the cavalry of the future.

Revista Militar (Argentina), May, 1924.

A translation of "The Principles and Methods of Training of the United States Army of North America," which appears in the April number of this review, serves as the raison d'être of Lieutenant Quiroga's article, "Argentine Artillery." In glowing terms he analyzes various parts of the translated United States Army document, emphasizing, under the caption of "Stimulation," the patriotic ideas underlying the reasons for serving the country, and he concludes with these words: "Our (Argentine) Army does not ask for gratuities nor money consideration; it only asks for the constant and decided support of the nation, in order to fulfill its military mission."

In this same number Captain Lavandeira, Argentine Cavalry, concludes his paper on "Mounted Infantry."

The second part of the article, preceded by the Captain's remarks on the more common accidents and diseases to be met with, outlines certain instruction, in the time period recommended, relative to the proposed horse equipment, explaining the use of the various parts, their care, cleaning, etc., all in very simple terms. Suggestions are made as to making up the saddle pack and a scheme is suggested for carrying the mounted infantryman's weapons and ammunition. He favors carrying the rifle slung across the back, from left shoulder to the right side.

The fourth part of the article concerns the mounted instruction, the work following closely the various paragraphs of the drill regulations. The sixth part continues more varied work in equitation, both in open and closed riding halls, all mounted exercises thus far being with the snaffle bit.

In the seventh part of the author's paper, corresponding to the fourth month of training, work with the curb bit and spurs is advised, the exercises of the preceding period being repeated, and, in addition, he advises the free crossing of varied ground at the different gaits, a weekly march of twenty-five kilometers with full field equipment, and the swimming of the horses.

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish), March, 1924.

In this issue Captain Durango's prize essay continues. Intellectual training of officers is condensed under the plea for more active and advanced studies, once passed out of the various service schools. He proposes initial military training, beginning in the secondary schools, and would have it successively in the more advanced ones, and presents a general plan for this. In addition, he suggests the formation of a general academy, which would specialise in the physical and military education necessary to all arms; creation of schools of application for cavalry, infantry, engineers, artillery and quartermaster corps, where the specialties incident to the particular arm would be studied; changing the schools of fire (artillery, cavalry, and infantry, as they actually exist) to tactical schools, and the creation of an advanced war academy, of which the tactical schools and general academy would form a part.

In considering the various officer (professional) sources, the writer's suggestions embody usages very similar to our own, as follows: College graduates to pass through the General Academy, take a course of two years, and then to enter, as student second lieutenants, the academy of the arm selected, the time to be two years for cavalry, in-

fantry, and quartermaster corps, three years for the artillery, and four years for engineers, graduation to be dependent upon successful work accomplished and a professional thesis. (A considerable amount of elimination is apparent here.) Such student officers to be commissioned first lieutenants on graduation and to then enter their regiments.

A second source of potential officers would be certain classes from the ranks. The author would have a college degree a requisite for one-year volunteers, selected, of course, and for men having less than six years with the colors. These aspirants would enter the General Academy and academies of the various arms, as already described, and follow the regular courses. Those enlisted men of more than six years' service to have the degree qualification waived, otherwise they would carry on as illustrated.

Warrant officers of more than ten years' service to undergo special preparatory courses in the military preparatory schools, and then to enter directly their respective schools of application, and there to continue courses of two, three, or four periods of six months; these to be followed by a year in the establishments, depending upon the respective arm; employment in the regiment as second lieutenants to follow, and promotion to first lieutenant, based upon certain conditions of efficiency, to follow two years later.

Officers of complement should come, so reasons the author of the essay, from two sources; officers of the Regular Army, separated from active service, or from the class known as one-year volunteers. Those latter must possess the college degree and to be following the second year of career training, not admitting the candidate to this class of officer material, except in the arm with the closest connection to his studies. Provision is made for yearly training periods, necessarily brief, through an approved cycle.

As to the officers who would form the territorial group (or second reserve) these, the captain suggests, would come from those retired officers whose physical conditions would permit them to function, for a period of four years after retirement. In addition, officers of complement (first reserve), on attaining an age to be determined by law, would automatically pass to this mentioned class, to remain there until no longer needed. Also, such individuals from the ranks who by their known qualities would be useful for this class of reserve officers might also be a potential source of supply. Such class of officers, necessarily employed in the services of supply, would also be used in certain mobilized national industries.

J. de Bustamente, in the article titled "Advice to Horsebreeders," first pays deserved tribute to the Army Remount and Breeding Association of 1921-1922. He points out Andalusia as an example, where so many mares are bred, and the general custom of grazing is followed nearly through the year, a pernicious practice especially in the case of growing animals, which need more bone-forming elements in their food. This would also apply to the mares in foal, and as the important grazing periods are in the spring, when the grasses reach their maximum in nutritive power, and the autumn, with the rains, which may, however, be scanty, a condition arises wherein such animals, despite the scanty offerings given in the winter, truly suffer hunger. Animals foaled under such conditions and condemned to suffer insufficient nourishment during their early years of growth necessarily are slow in coming to maturity, and then are deficient in stamina. This is well evidenced by the fact that cavalry animals are invariably described as Remount Animals (where the feeding and care are highly scientific), and those bought and described as open-market purchases. The economic phases are touched upon in a fitting manner, the writer understanding that horse-breeding is secondary to crop production.

Columns of figures appear relative to feeding amounts of approved foods for various ages of colts, the comparisons being from French sources. Understanding then, the difficulties that beset most breeders, and the various problems encountered, the writer offers the suggestion that the problem to be solved is one of nourishing and economical feeding, which, in his opinion, may be obtained largely by changing existing systems of grain and herbage cultivation. To do this, his idea is, instead of continuing the practice of allowing land to lie fallow to gather its strength, to immediately, after harvesting, plant leguminous crops; these, after replowing under the soil, would provide the necessary nitrogenous material so much needed and which would be given forth in grains and grasses with a much more nitrogeneous content. (Cheap fertilizer is one of the important needs of the agricultural regions in both the south and southeast of Spain.)

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish), April, 1924.

In this number Captain José Durango, Spanish Cavalry, concludes his prize essay on Obtainment of Officer Material for the Army. The first part discusses the promotion systems, the writer making broad statements in favor of both promotion by seniority, selection, and a combination of the two. He also enumerates certain known disadvantages, all of which have been discussed before by our own authorities. If anything, he is distinctly against promotion by the first-named method, because no classification scheme has been used.

Actually the method favored is one combining features of both the two named in order, the writer being careful to point out certain existing weaknesses inherent in promotion by selection. It is interesting to note that Captain Durango does not believe that the officer's efficiency report is a faithful reflection of his physical, moral, and intellectual qualities.

He proposes, then, promotion to captain be by seniority, conditions being satisfied as to fitness and to actual troop service, no promotions to be made for war merits.

For promotion to major he suggests that 75 per cent of the vacancies in grade be filled by seniority and 25 per cent by election. In the first case the conditions imposed include, aside from an honorable record, certain service with troops, a performance of duty while acting as a field officer, and attendance at two field maneuvers, large scale while commanding troops.

Those captains who elect the second method and who comply with the foregoing conditions enumerated the author would have enter the tactical schools for one year to take a course for majors.

Those who receive a rating of excellent, very good, or good would then give a lecture, theoretical-practical, to the captains and majors of their respective regiments—a lecture based upon their personal work in the course. The captains and majors would then vote on the promotion of the captain candidate. For those receiving the rating of "good," the result of the vote, together with lecture, would be forwarded to the office of the chief of branch concerned. Then if the vote should be upheld, promotion would follow, or, in case a negative decision were reached, the general staff would resolve the matter definitely, those receiving a rating of "not apt" for promotion to remain one year in grade without promotion.

For promotion to colonel a similar procedure would be followed, so Captain Durango proposes, with the difference that an equal number of vacancies should be filled by seniority and by election.

In the elective scheme, a method similar to that in case of captains would be employed. Here, however, those who vote on the candidate for colonelcy would be the field officers and colonel of the unit.

Captain Durango adds that his suggestions refer particularly to the combat arms—infantry, cavalry, artillery, engineers, civil guard, and carabineers.

For captains and majors proposed for promotion, due to valor, a tribunal would judge the acts, together with the officers' records, and the recommendation made by the immediate superior concerned. The final decision in such cases, especially where a discrepancy might exist, to be reached by the Supreme War and Navy Council.

In concluding, this writer, while briefly proposing the plans for promotion to brigadier-general, major-general and general, which, with the exception of the first-named grade, are all to be by election, emphasizes the fact that war is an instrument of progress, and that such progress can only be obtained when the officer classes are cultured and capable leaders.

Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish), May, 1924.

To Colonel Miguel Ponte y Manso de Zúñiga, Marquise of Bóveda, has been awarded the second prize of the series of essays by cavalry officers on the theme "Means of Recruit-

ment of the Officer Class and Promotions in This Class." This distinguished officer has had a long and varied service in the cavalry, and has only recently returned to duty, after a long convalescence from wounds received in the Morocco campaign. Let it be understood, also, that Colonel Ponte has the reputation of being extremely frank in his statements.

Beginning with the statement that "the officer class is the soul of the army," the colonel rapidly pushes forward, with few or no remarks, to what he believes is the keynote of the theme:

The officer class should be composed of officers of combat arms, of the auxiliary services, of the complement (reserve), and of an administrative service.

Resuming, the writer, after describing well-known results of promotion according to seniority in the respective branches, believes that the various troublous problems arising from the previously mentioned condition can be obviated by a single list in the combat arms and in the auxiliary ones. The reasons stated are tersely stated and explained, all agreeing with our own ideas of the single list promotion.

After reviewing the present situation relevant to the procurement of officers, the examinations of the aspirants to cadetships, further academic and physical training, he comes to the conclusion that this process of selection is not thorough enough, and the reasons that are given are varied and quite national. The conclusion arrived at is that each candidate for cadetship serve with troops for one year as a soldier, entrance to the particular academy being based upon the aptitude and enthusiasm shown for the military service. Then, during the ensuing years at the academy, the cadet should receive a far more careful scrutiny as to certain moral virtues than he receives now. Continual reference is made to the honor code. In all this the principal mission of the officer is impulsion—a fact never to be overlooked.

Major Bianor Sánches-Mesas, a well-known equestrian, in discussing some of the instructions of the cavalry and equitation pamphlets, which treat of the means to stimulate the audacity, coolness, and initiative of young cavalry officers, makes a strong plea for polo.

As Major Sánchez-Mesas states, the work outlined—such as obstacle races, jumping, hunts, and cross-country riding—is splendid, but the work is individual, while competitive; but in none of these equestrian sports is disciplined co-ordination taught as in polo. The efforts of both American and British cavalry officers are highly praised, particularly in view of the long struggle our service has had in order to put polo definitely on the army map.

He definitely indicates the existing difficulties: lack of instructors, lack of suitable mounts, and the novelty of the proposition. Major Sánchez-Mesas believes that, as the various civilian French polo societies in France helped the mounted units of their army to develop instructors in regiments, so, too, would the Royal Spanish Polo Association aid the Spanish units to develop skilled instructors.

As to the second difficulty, the Major is equally ready with this statement: that once the game be authorised as an official sport, there will always be good types to be found in the various squadrons, and if these be given a methodical training they will be found to be fit types indeed. Field officers, however, would have to use vigilance during the training of such mounts, just as they now do when certain animals are being prepared for the military races and obstacle rides.

[TRANSLATER'S NOTE.—A large proportion of the animals of the Spanish cavalry units are very well bred, the Anglo-Arab-Spanish type itself being a splendid example of the light cavalry horse.]

The author quotes Captain Malcor, 10th French Chasseurs, as an authority in pleading for animals of the Anglo-Arab type, not alone for their conformation and general qualities, but particularly for their aptitude for the gallop.

Dismissing the third objection as not worthy of comment, the author suggests that equipment can be purchased and maintained with the costs prorated among officers, with a small special sum from the government.

Boletin del Centro Naval (Argentina), November-December, 1923.

Naval Lieutenant G. Coelho continues his article on "Gas in Modern Warfare." The portion of his paper in this number, Chapter V, describes the standard toxic and asphyxiating gases, chlorine being the first treated. Its physical and chemical properties, reactions, preparation (decomposition of perchlorides, action of oxidising agents on chloride of hydrogen and electrolysis), method of bioxide of manganese, Deacon's and Weldon's processes and electrolytic methods for its preparation are graphically described. A very interesting part of the paper is that devoted to the manufacture of chlorine at Edgewood Arsenal, with excellent photographs and sketches.

Boletin del Centro Naval (Argentina), January-February, 1924.

"Gas in Modern Warfare," by Naval Lieutenant Coelho, is continued. Phosgene, its properties, both physical and chemical, reactions; protection against the gas; its preparation and manufacture; tactical employment of the gas, and a brief résumé of the method of filling grenades, as employed at Edgewood Arsenal.

"Dominion of the Sea, and the Capital Ship," is a theme based upon Lord Beatty's lecture, by Captain (Navy) Jorge Games.

Boletin del Centro Naval (Argentina), March-April, 1924.

In Chapter VII Lieutenant Coelho, Argentine Navy, continues his series of articles on gas warfare. The subject commences with mustard gas, an historical résumé, touching early experiments by both English and German chemists during the period 1854 to 1917, inclusive, with especial attention being given to the research work of Professor Meyer in 1886. The author then treats of the physical properties of the gas, its chemical properties and reactions.

Methods for detection of mustard gas include the use of selinious acid and the lantern trial; also special methods used by the Germans, such as plates covered with a yellow chemical substance, composition not known, which, when placed in captured trenches, turned black in the presence of the gas.

The physiological action of the gas is then treated in great part, the author noting the effects of perspiration, susceptibility of different parts of the body to the gas, effects upon animals, with many attached marginal notes. The tactical uses of the gas are then discussed, with copious examples from various sources.

In concluding his article, Lieutenant Coelho states his belief, that in future wars one of the important tactical means of employment of this gas will be the placing of huge drums of the gas in the terrain over which enemy troops will march, exploding them later, as field mines are exploded.

Reviews by Captain Royden Williamson, Fifth Cavalry

Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires, February, 1924.

Nothing in the field of military studies is more impressive than the constancy with which European authorities turn to the American War of Secession for the lessons, tactical and strategical, it affords. Major Barthelemi's succinct study of this great conflict, which has been running for some time in this magazine, is concluded in the February issue. He carries his readers through the campaign of 1864-65 to and including the surrender at Appomattox, and discusses in detail Grant's plan of campaign, which resulted in Lee's final and complete capitulation.

Grant's letter of instructions to Butler, dated April 2, 1864, for the employment of the latter's forces south of the James, and his letter of instruction to Meade, Ord, and Sheridan, dated March 24, 1865, for the general advance against Richmond and Danville are given verbatim. Save for these exceptions, the study is terse and greatly condensed, though thoroughly analytical. Statistics of the opposing forces, their man power, organization, and losses, are a feature.

But it is in his deductions of the principles and methods of war as exhibited by

Grant and Lee that the unusual value of this study lies. The concluding paragraph of the lessons of the war as Major Barthelemi deduces them, will serve as an example:

"The army raised by the Confederacy," he writes, "was almost always numerically inferior; yet it held the Federal forces in check. The Confederate leaders found in the element of morale a way to re-establish in their favor the relation of the opposing numbers. In fact:

"a. The Federals utilized converging lines of maneuver where the effort was divided in time and space. The Confederates, on the other hand, held to the active defense, maneuvering on interior lines.

"b. The Confederates were more skillful in maneuver, knowing how to multiply effort by rapidity.

"c. The Confederates took up positions only to mask their movements or to re-establish thereon their defensive front during the course of battle, thus applying the principle of economy of force.

"d. Lee maneuvered nearly always according to the intelligence which he knew how to demand of his cavalry. He never permitted his maneuvering space to be violated and he operated with greatest possible mass of his troops, (reunion).

"e. It was by maneuvering against his enemy's communications that Lee forced his adversary to give battle. By proportioning the effort to the obstacle, he turned his enemy's position.

"The study of the War of Secession shows the existence of principles of war and their application by those who have succeeded in their enterprises. If leaders like Lee and Jackson, notwithstanding their knowledge, could not win in the end, although adhering to all the rules of war, it was because of the fact that the relation of the required force to the moral force (troop value, leadership value) to balance the general relationship of the contending forces was too great, exceeding by more than half the numbers contending. Hence, it is not astonishing that they were submerged, even as was Napoleon in the campaign of 1814."

A series of strategical sketches accompanies this illuminating study.

***Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires*, March, 1924.**

Despite the limitations imposed by Article 160 of the Treaty of Versailles, Germany has succeeded in a very modern reorganisation of her armed forces, of which the President of the Reich is, after the model of the United States, the commander-in-chief.

The complete scheme upon which this new German army of 100,000 is based is the subject of several interesting pages in this number of the Bulletin, and it is of particular significance that, notwithstanding this limitation of the forces, the Cavalry arm remains proportionately large and of undiminished importance. Upon a basis of 21 regiments of infantry, of three battalions each and one company of minenwerfer, and, in addition, 21 training battalions, there are not less than 18 regiments of cavalry. These are of four squadrons each—seven independent squadrons and 18 training squadrons.

A division of cavalry consists of a headquarters, six regiments, and one group of 3 batteries of horse artillery equipped with 77 milimeter guns. The 17th cavalry regiment, which belongs to the VII Bavarian Division at Munich, is directly under the *Heeresleitung*, or Chief of the Direction of the Army, such that the 3d Cavalry Division consists of but five regiments. Uniformly, the sixth squadron of each regiment is divisional cavalry.

Another similarity to the American service is the adoption of yellow as the distinguishing color for the Cavalry arm.

In the domain of major tactics, students will welcome the fourth installment of Major Jobé's study, "Le Principe de la Bataille," while Captain-Commandant Menzel's essay on the employment of cover, drawn from tactical dispositions in the War of 1870 and the World War, is of sustaining interest and profit to students of every combatant arm.

***Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires*, April, 1924.**

The second part of the new French Cavalry Regulations, that part which treats of the employment of cavalry, is succinctly, but completely, discussed in this number. And so

trenchantly does the reviewer contravert those opponents of the mounted service that one cannot refrain from quoting some of his observations and conclusions:

"During and after the war of 1914-18," he writes, "the utility of cavalry was greatly contested. It was reproached with not having rendered the services expected of it.

"This bad impression is now almost completely effaced, since the history of the war, become little by little more exact, has brought to light many facts which show that the cavalry did not fail in its peculiar rôle. Where it had occasion to intervene, it did so with its traditional sting and brought, by its very nature, successes which no other arm, less supple, less mobile, less rapid, could have obtained. Often, indeed, its absence was greatly regretted in operations where, by its special qualities, it alone might have re-established a situation or given the knockout blow to a beaten enemy.

"What brought the cavalry into disrepute in the beginning of the war was its conception of combat mounted. Its dash was broken by the fire power of modern arms. Consequently it became necessary to reform its procedure of combat, renouncing, save in exceptional cases and for small units, the combat mounted for combat dismounted. The firearm, hitherto an accessory to the cavalry, supplanted *l'arme blanche* and became its principal weapon.

"As soon as the cavalry was provided with a power of fire reinforced by automatic weapons, armored cars, artillery, aviation, etc., it proved, before the end of the war, that it could assure, as formerly, the fulfillment of every mission calling for speed."

The new regulations of the French Cavalry thus date from 1923, based upon four years of study of the teachings of the war.

After reviewing the various forms of cavalry employment and its organization under these new regulations, the matter of armament, with its imposing array of new powers of attack and defense, is discussed. The new system calls for an immensely augmented number of automatic arms and, in addition, artillery and infantry cyclists, which afford it a great fire power, reinforcing its capacity for combat. In addition to rifles and bayonets for close combat, it is now furnished, like the infantry, with entrenching tools, gas masks, grenades, and every available means of communication, retaining as well the saber and pistol for eventual action mounted.

The organization of the cavalry and the methods of combat imposed by these new regulations are such as to fit it to render the greatest of service when and wherever it becomes necessary to operate fast, far, and by surprise.

It is now a fire mass which is able to move over every sort of ground with speed double that of the infantry and capable of marching 100 kilometers in twenty-four hours.

Despite its vulnerabilities, gas, horseflesh, cost, etc., it is a tool to be relied upon, always upon condition that it is employed with knowledge and address, that it is not used up prematurely, but with appreciation of its limitations. What solidity it lacks in comparison with the infantry it compensates for by its mobility and speed.

Perhaps the best endorsement of the utility of cavalry, after all, is to be found in the fact that the French infantry regiment is now endowed with a cavalry platoon.

The study of Major Jobé, "Le Principe de la Bataille," is concluded in this number. As illustrated by the campaigns of both the western and the eastern fronts, the author shows how the principle of battle lies in the envelopment of the adversary, either by two wings, as in the battle of Tannenberg, by the envelopment of one wing of the enemy, as in the battle of the Marne and the battle of Galicia, or by rupture of a part of the adverse front where the flanks are inaccessible, as was the case with the Russian center at Austerlitz.

After elaborating this theme through numerous carefully studied examples, "the art of war," Major Jobé concludes, "consists in following a system based upon the geographic conditions and the resources of the opposing forces. It should be pursued without let-up, to a final success. Any abandonment of the system adopted cannot but lead to incomplete results, and any system not adequate to the respective resources of the adversaries leads to a dispersion of forces always detrimental and often fatal to the successful conclusion of the war."

[redacted]

[redacted]

Grant and Lee that the unusual value of this study lies. The concluding paragraph of the lessons of the war as Major Barthelemi deduces them, will serve as an example:

"The army raised by the Confederacy," he writes, "was almost always numerically inferior; yet it held the Federal forces in check. The Confederate leaders found in the element of morale a way to re-establish in their favor the relation of the opposing numbers. In fact:

"*a.* The Federals utilized converging lines of maneuver where the effort was divided in time and space. The Confederates, on the other hand, held to the active defense, maneuvering on interior lines.

"*b.* The Confederates were more skillful in maneuver, knowing how to multiply effort by rapidity.

"*c.* The Confederates took up positions only to mask their movements or to re-establish thereon their defensive front during the course of battle, thus applying the principle of economy of force.

"*d.* Lee maneuvered nearly always according to the intelligence which he knew how to demand of his cavalry. He never permitted his maneuvering space to be violated and he operated with greatest possible mass of his troops, (reunion).

"*e.* It was by maneuvering against his enemy's communications that Lee forced his adversary to give battle. By proportioning the effort to the obstacle, he turned his enemy's position.

"The study of the War of Secession shows the existence of principles of war and their application by those who have succeeded in their enterprises. If leaders like Lee and Jackson, notwithstanding their knowledge, could not win in the end, although adhering to all the rules of war, it was because of the fact that the relation of the required force to the moral force (troop value, leadership value) to balance the general relationship of the contending forces was too great, exceeding by more than half the numbers contending. Hence, it is not astonishing that they were submerged, even as was Napoleon in the campaign of 1814."

A series of strategical sketches accompanies this illuminating study.

Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires, March, 1924.

Despite the limitations imposed by Article 160 of the Treaty of Versailles, Germany has succeeded in a very modern reorganization of her armed forces, of which the President of the Reich is, after the model of the United States, the commander-in-chief.

The complete scheme upon which this new German army of 100,000 is based is the subject of several interesting pages in this number of the Bulletin, and it is of particular significance that, notwithstanding this limitation of the forces, the Cavalry arm remains proportionately large and of undiminished importance. Upon a basis of 21 regiments of infantry, of three battalions each and one company of minenwerfer, and, in addition, 21 training battalions, there are not less than 18 regiments of cavalry. These are of four squadrons each—seven independent squadrons and 18 training squadrons.

A division of cavalry consists of a headquarters, six regiments, and one group of 3 batteries of horse artillery equipped with 77 millimeter guns. The 17th cavalry regiment, which belongs to the VII Bavarian Division at Munich, is directly under the *Heeresleitung*, or Chief of the Direction of the Army, such that the 3d Cavalry Division consists of but five regiments. Uniformly, the sixth squadron of each regiment is divisional cavalry.

Another similarity to the American service is the adoption of yellow as the distinguishing color for the Cavalry arm.

In the domain of major tactics, students will welcome the fourth installment of Major Jobé's study, "Le Principe de la Bataille," while Captain-Commandant Menzel's essay on the employment of cover, drawn from tactical dispositions in the War of 1870 and the World War, is of sustaining interest and profit to students of every combatant arm.

Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires, April, 1924.

The second part of the new French Cavalry Regulations, that part which treats of the employment of cavalry, is succinctly, but completely, discussed in this number. And so

trenchantly does the reviewer contravert those opponents of the mounted service that one cannot refrain from quoting some of his observations and conclusions:

"During and after the war of 1914-18," he writes, "the utility of cavalry was greatly contested. It was reproached with not having rendered the services expected of it.

"This bad impression is now almost completely effaced, since the history of the war, become little by little more exact, has brought to light many facts which show that the cavalry did not fail in its peculiar rôle. Where it had occasion to intervene, it did so with its traditional sting and brought, by its very nature, successes which no other arm, less supple, less mobile, less rapid, could have obtained. Often, indeed, its absence was greatly regretted in operations where, by its special qualities, it alone might have re-established a situation or given the knockout blow to a beaten enemy.

"What brought the cavalry into disrepute in the beginning of the war was its conception of combat mounted. Its dash was broken by the fire power of modern arms. Consequently it became necessary to reform its procedure of combat, renouncing, save in exceptional cases and for small units, the combat mounted for combat dismounted. The firearm, hitherto an accessory to the cavalry, supplanted *l'arme blanche* and became its principal weapon.

"As soon as the cavalry was provided with a power of fire reinforced by automatic weapons, armored cars, artillery, aviation, etc., it proved, before the end of the war, that it could assure, as formerly, the fulfillment of every mission calling for speed."

The new regulations of the French Cavalry thus date from 1923, based upon four years of study of the teachings of the war.

After reviewing the various forms of cavalry employment and its organization under these new regulations, the matter of armament, with its imposing array of new powers of attack and defense, is discussed. The new system calls for an immensely augmented number of automatic arms and, in addition, artillery and infantry cyclists, which afford it a great fire power, reinforcing its capacity for combat. In addition to rifles and bayonets for close combat, it is now furnished, like the infantry, with entrenching tools, gas masks, grenades, and every available means of communication, retaining as well the saber and pistol for eventual action mounted.

The organization of the cavalry and the methods of combat imposed by these new regulations are such as to fit it to render the greatest of service when and wherever it becomes necessary to operate fast, far, and by surprise.

It is now a fire mass which is able to move over every sort of ground with speed double that of the infantry and capable of marching 100 kilometers in twenty-four hours.

Despite its vulnerabilities, gas, horseflesh, cost, etc., it is a tool to be relied upon, always upon condition that it is employed with knowledge and address, that it is not used up prematurely, but with appreciation of its limitations. What solidity it lacks in comparison with the infantry it compensates for by its mobility and speed.

Perhaps the best endorsement of the utility of cavalry, after all, is to be found in the fact that the French infantry regiment is now endowed with a cavalry platoon.

The study of Major Jobé, "Le Principe de la Bataille," is concluded in this number. As illustrated by the campaigns of both the western and the eastern fronts, the author shows how the principle of battle lies in the envelopment of the adversary, either by two wings, as in the battle of Tannenberg, by the envelopment of one wing of the enemy, as in the battle of the Marne and the battle of Galicia, or by rupture of a part of the adverse front where the flanks are inaccessible, as was the case with the Russian center at Austerlitz.

After elaborating this theme through numerous carefully studied examples, "the art of war," Major Jobé concludes, "consists in following a system based upon the geographic conditions and the resources of the opposing forces. It should be pursued without let-up, to a final success. Any abandonment of the system adopted cannot but lead to incomplete results, and any system not adequate to the respective resources of the adversaries leads to a dispersion of forces always detrimental and often fatal to the successful conclusion of the war."

Bulletin Belge des Sciences Militaires, May, 1924.

Major tactics again plays a leading rôle in this number of this erudite publication; for no sooner is Major Jobé's profound study, entitled "Le Principe de la Bataille," concluded, in the April number, than an equally exhaustive treatise, under the caption, "L'Enveloppement à la Guerre," from the pen of a foremost Belgian authority, Lieutenant-General Baron de Heusch, is begun with the May issue. The two articles tie in most happily.

After exposing the German shortsightedness of abandoning Clausewitz in favor of von Schlieffen, in whom they professed to see the inventor of a superior and wholly Teuton system of strategy, which was to throw Napoleon in the shade, General de Heusch turns to history as the great master to which it is always necessary to appeal to establish a thesis, and traces from successive examples of Bonaparte's campaigns the versatility with which the great Corsican employed the principle of envelopment.

The riposte to envelopment is to operate on interior lines and to attack the enemy columns in march, defeating them separately. To accomplish this it is necessary to have space and rapid means of communication. The offensives must be such that the assailants cannot arrive on the field in time to become mutually supporting. When these conditions fail, then maneuver on interior lines may become critical.

So much for the strategical envelopment which, since armies have become more and more numerous and laden with immense material on greatly extended fronts, have little space for maneuver, while the aviation makes it possible for the adversary to take note of the marches of concentration of groups while they are yet far off.

As for the tactical envelopment, it has no advantage over any other mode of attack save when it is obtained by surprise.

And from the campaigns of 1805, 1806, Eylau, Friedland, Wagram, 1812 and 1813, the author demonstrates his point. He says, in conclusion of this first installment:

"The operations of envelopment of one or two flanks of an adversary in position are subject to conditions of time and space, such that, if these are not fulfilled, they are bound to fail. If it is a matter of an attack on a tactical flank, to meet which the adversary almost always succeeds in changing his front, it is the combative value of the troops engaged which is the principle element of success.

"But if it is a question of envelopment prepared from afar, and which should always culminate at the point and at the hour chosen, then the determining element, over and above the valor of the troops, is the skill of the chief who conducts the operation."

This study is continued.

Cyclist troops have never found favor in America. Whether through the almost complete decadence of the bicycle, the rise of Henry Ford, or the conditions of roads in this country, there has not seemed a place for them in our service.

Nevertheless, cavalrymen may read with much profit the account of the rôle played by such troops in the recent war, as given by Capitaine-Commandant Dujardin, which is begun in this number, and reflect upon the part they have and can fulfill as infantry support to cavalry. These troops were destined to aid and reinforce the cavalry in every circumstance of the war.

At the beginning of the campaign the cyclist units attached to the cavalry were few. In Belgium and France there was a battalion or group with each of the cavalry divisions. This battalion had an effective strength inferior to that of an infantry battalion, but the teachings drawn from maneuvers showed that the company was insufficient, while the battalion was too large. In Germany battalions of chasseurs in trucks marched with the cavalry, furnishing each one cyclist company. The Belgian battalion of *carabiniers cyclistes* per cavalry division in 1914 was 450 rifles; in France a group of chasseurs cyclistes was 400 rifles.

That a cyclist corps can never replace cavalry, the author conclusively demonstrates, and cites numerous incidents of their employment in maintenance of his view. Cyclists, he points out, are weakest on reconnaissance. He strongly supports, on the other hand, the value of these troops as constituting a precious aid in fire power in case of combat and in their capacity to take over from the cavalry the duty of guarding roads and posts to assure the return of information from the advance patrols.

The experience of the French cavalry maneuvers in the valley of the Rhone in September, 1923, where a light division, provided with every form of modern material, caterpillar tractors, armored cars, etc., demonstrated that "the mounted squadrons were to be preferred to cyclists, slaves to the road; to caterpillar tractors, less fluid than the cavalry, and to all vehicles not armored, as being very exposed to the effects of surprise."

The case of second group of French Chasseurs Cyclistes during the offensive of Soissons, in July, 1918, is given as an example of their suppleness over troops in trucks. This unit, upon leaving Coupvray, doubled in the night an entire cavalry division, and upon leaving Saint-Mard the following evening pushed through a train of camions for forty kilometers in single column, which the infantry in trucks could never have done, to arrive in time to be certainly and immediately ready for action.

En résumé, Captain Dujardin holds that the cavalry remains the arm *par excellence* of ground reconnaissance, being best fitted for the task of seeking enemy information; but he believes that cyclist troops aid it in this work in assuring to it, when needed, the power of their infantry fire, without in the least hampering the cavalry's mobility, and that, through increase of the number of its units with cavalry, it can permit the cavalry commander to withstand what he has most to fear, the sudden arrival against him of infantry in trucks.

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands), April 1924.

Use of the Light Brigade.—In this article by Wirix the subject is treated under six heads.

1st. The Air Service, on reconnaissance, informs the Light Brigade of the general form of the enemy's movements, and the latter is to fill in the details. It should get into contact with the enemy along as broad a front as possible. It should act by surprise. The Light Brigade covers a space of 30 kilometers, more or less, in front of the army, while the air reconnaissance extends from 30 to 60 kilometers in front of the army. The work is to be done by reconnaissance detachments, supported by the main body of the Light Brigade. These detachments must not be held up by small parties of the enemy, but must get in contact with his main forces.

2d. If the Light Brigade is to hold a given line until relieved by infantry, a position must be selected that can be easily defended. The Light Brigade must cover a wide front. The infantry should be put in the front line, and also the cavalry and cyclists not needed for the reserve, which should be as large as possible.

3d. Screening is not of such importance as formerly. If the Light Brigade is to cover a troop movement, the same disposition should be made as stated in the preceding paragraph, natural cover being utilized.

4th. During a general action the Light Brigade is placed on one of the wings of the army, so that it can move forward or to the side to strike the enemy's flank or to protect our flank. The infantry and cyclists are put in front and the cavalry kept as a mounted reserve. A number of scouting planes should be put at the disposal of the commander of the Light Brigade.

5th. The Light Brigade will be used as a fire reserve only in those rare cases where both flanks of the army are inaccessible to the enemy.

6th. If the enemy retreats, cyclist detachments are to be sent ahead to intercept him; at the same time, the rest of the Light Brigade makes a flank attack on as broad a front as possible. If our army retreats, the Light Brigade must resist the enemy's light troops. It is assumed that in either case the Light Brigade is on one wing of the army.

The writer believes that a squadron of airplanes should be attached to the Light Brigade, to save time in the work of reconnaissance.

Although modern cavalry often has to fight on foot, it should maintain its distinctive organization and not imitate that of the infantry.

The Rate of March of the Light Brigade, by H. Mathon.—It is a mistake to assume that any organization can move as rapidly in war time as it does during maneuvers. Before the war, 6 or 7 kilometers per hour was considered a good rate of movement for a reconnaissance detachment; but this is altogether too high.

In 1914 Richthofen's cavalry marched 110 kilometers in five days and fought one engagement (August 22-26).

The Dutch Light Brigade will probably never have as much room for maneuvering as Richthofen did, and must be ready to meet the enemy at any moment. Its gait must be governed by that of the slowest units.

The development of aërial reconnaissance, improved methods of liaison, and the use of armored automobiles by reconnaissance detachments are three factors that have changed conditions greatly since 1914.

There is a tendency in the Dutch Army to send cyclist units ahead of the cavalry. The cyclists, however, cannot defend themselves if attacked. Hence they must be closely followed by cavalry, and in some cases by auto-machine guns and the like.

The Operations of the French Second Cavalry Corps at Mt. Kemmel, in Flanders, April 9 to May 3, 1918 (conclusion), by J. E. Feenstra.—The following points are to be specially noted:

1. Unless used in regular position warfare, the cavalry should maintain its own organization and with this its quickness and flexibility of action.

2. Where all other means of liaison fail, mounted orderlies can get messages through. Brilliant work of this kind was done at Mt. Kemmel by the French Cavalry, particularly the 2d Cavalry Division.

3. The staff of a large cavalry unit should be organized in time of peace and should be familiar with all problems likely to be met in warfare. The 2d Cavalry Corps was confronted with the difficult question of supplying ammunition, food, etc., in immense quantities, evacuating wounded, maintaining liaison, police work, etc., while fighting in a British sector. Thanks to the training gained during the war, these problems were successfully solved.

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands), May, 1924.

The Conquest of Syria, by J. C. Manger Cats.—A description of the fighting in Syria from September 18 to October 1, 1918. Has two maps. The Turkish line was held by 104,000 men, while General Allenby had 70,000, including four cavalry divisions.

Allenby concealed his preparations so well that the Turk was taken entirely by surprise. He was kept on the move by the use of cavalry and horse artillery. Infantry was transported by motor trucks. The cavalry carried no tents, only one blanket per man, and rations for two or three days. In twelve days three of Allenby's divisions had covered 320 kilometers and taken 60,000 prisoners, 140 cannon, and 500 machine-guns. Thanks to their great dash and the proper use of cavalry charges supported by artillery, the English forces lost only 125 dead, 365 wounded, and 43 missing. The Turks were hampered by the lack of good cavalry and airplanes.

Principles for the March Tactics of the Light Brigade, by H. Mathon.—As no such organization as the Dutch Light Brigade was employed during the World War, little has been written about its use; but, judging from the map exercises and actual maneuvers held, the following principles may be advocated:

1. As a rule, the Light Brigade should march in several columns, with not more than three companies of cyclists in one column.

2. As the cyclists cannot protect themselves, cavalry should be assigned to the cyclist columns that march in the first echelon.

3. As the cyclists have to stay on hard-surfaced roads, the distance between the lines of march of the first echelon may be so great that the first columns cannot support each other directly in combat; hence each should be able to fight independently and should have some artillery available.

4. The second echelon, with which the commander of the Light Brigade marches, as a rule, should be close enough to the first echelon to come to its support quickly, but far enough behind it to have complete freedom of movement.

5. If an enveloping movement is attempted by the second echelon, care should be taken that the cyclists do not take roads that lead them too far to the side; they may become involved in some other combat.

6. If the cavalry and horse artillery make an attack on the enemy's flank, a few cyclists should join them, to augment the power of fire of the cavalry.

7. The motor vehicle columns should be assigned such a position in the line of march that special protection is not required for them.

8. In some cases—for instance, where a defile is to be held—the infantry can be sent ahead on foot, and then, after the rest of the brigade has passed through the defile and it is no longer necessary to hold it, the infantry follows the rest of the brigade.

9. The different groups move forward by rushes.

10. Liaison between the commander of the Light Brigade and the commanders of the different groups must be maintained constantly, either by telephone or by radio.

Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands), June, 1924.

The Battle of Lavrov, by Colonel Egon Bar. Waldstätten, retired.—The writer states that he has based this article on the report on the combat made by General Lello Spannocchi.

In the fall of 1914 the Austrians and Germans were driven back by the Russians toward the Carpathians. On October 23 Brusiloff made a breach of about 20 kilometers between the VII and XII Corps of the Austrian Second Army. The quick arrival of the 4th Cavalry Division (sent from the Third Army) enabled Böhm-Ermolli to stop the Russians.

On October 18 the 4th Cavalry Division was at Zurawica, north of Przemysl, as reserve for the Third Army. On October 24 it was placed at the disposal of the Second Army. Between noon of that day and 10 p. m. it marched 52 kilometers in a hard rain, passing through the train of the army. On the next day General von Berndt, in command of the 4th Cavalry Division, sent Kopachek's cavalry brigade and one battery of horse artillery to hold the Russians in Lenina Valley. The main body of the cavalry division moved to Msaniec, which was reached at 3 p. m., after hard marching over mountain roads.

On October 26 the cavalry division was ordered to move to Lavrov by the shortest route, across the mountains. At 8:30 a. m. von Berndt ordered his division to attack the Russians on the heights of Spas. Kopechek was ready to join the attack when the main body came up. Because it seemed that there was a better chance of making an enveloping movement, the order for attack was countermanded at 11 a. m. and the troops ordered to hold the Javorniska-Hill 723-Leninavka line. On the night of October 26 it was reported that a detachment under Krautewald was being rushed toward the breach in the line, but could not arrive before the morning of the 27th.

Polo

THE JUNIOR CHAMPIONSHIP

At Rumson, N. J., August 16th, the Junior Polo Championship of the United States was won by the strong Midwick team of California, when it defeated the Rockaway team by a score of 16 to 3.

The results of the games prior to the finals were as follows:

Meadowbrook	9	Bryn Mawr	8
Midwick	12	Rumson	7
Midwick	14	Meadowbrook	2
Rockaway	10	Army	8

In the game between the Army and Rockaway the line-ups were as follows:

Army	Positions	Rockaway
Major A. H. Wilson	No. 1	R. Penn Smith, Jr.
Captain A. H. Gerhardt	No. 2	Raymond Belmont
Major J. L. Devers	No. 3	J. Cheever Cowdin
Major L. A. Beard	Back	Dr. J. R. Richards

After the completion of the Junior Championship Tournament, the Army team played in the Herbert Memorial Cup Tournament, which it won by defeating the Rumson Elephants by a score of 16 to 10.

THE WAR DEPARTMENT TEAM AT PHILADELPHIA

On May 19 a War Department polo team, composed of Major J. C. Montgomery, No. 1; Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin, No. 2; Major J. K. Herr, No. 3, and Major H. D. Higley, No. 4, invaded Bryn Mawr and Philadelphia to take part in four tournaments, three of which, the Wooten Challenge Cup, the Bryn Mawr Cups, and the President's Cup were won by the War Department last year, the Morrell Fund Cup being the only event not won. This spring, 1924, all were won by the War Department team except the President's Cup.

On May 19 the War Department team won the first game of the Wooten Challenge Cup from a low-goal Bryn Mawr Freebooter team by the score of 23–10, the latter being handicap. May 23 saw the semi-final of the same tournament, in which game the War Department team won by a score of 25–10 against the weak Penlyn team, the 10 goals being handicap.

The finals of the above tournament were not played until June 24, due to rain and the fact that other preliminary games were played in between. The War Department won this tournament by defeating the Bryn Mawr team by the score of 10–9. The latter was a 14-goal team, composed of G. H. Earle, No. 1; W. S. Stokes, No. 2; B. McFadden, No. 3, and A. Smith, No. 4. The game went 4½ minutes of an extra period. This victory gave the War Department team two legs on the Wooten Challenge Cup. It will be noted that in the first two games of this tournament the War Department team ran wild and scored 48 goals without being scored on.

On May 31 the War Department team played its first game of the Bryn Mawr Cups Tournament and defeated the Philadelphia Country Club team by the score of 15–7, after giving it three goals. In this game Lieutenant-Colonel N. E. Margetts replaced Major J. K. Herr, as the latter was playing in the International Trial games being played at the Philadelphia Country Club. The above game put the War Department in the finals of the Bryn Mawr Cups against the Bryn Mawr team, which game was won by the War Department in the ninth period by the score of 10–9. Both teams played on the flat, as their handicaps were the same. Mr. W. Randolph substituted for Mr. G. Earle, who had received a previous injury. In this game Major Montgomery's mount fell during the seventh period, Major Montgomery falling on his shoulder and fracturing his collar-bone.

He was removed to the hospital, but managed to return to Washington that same evening with the rest of the team.

The War Department's first game in the Morrell Fund Cup Tournament was on June 10 against the Rumson four, which was composed of W. C. Jones, Jr., General Borden, C. Leonard, and J. F. Johnson, Jr. The War Department won this game by the score of 11–9, after giving away three goals. In speaking of this game, the press stated that "the Army four featured through their wonderful knowledge of each other's style of game. When Higley had occasion to dribble the ball, Major Herr or Jadwin generally retreated to the back position. It was also the same with the other players when they advanced with the ball out of their positions, a game that is hard to beat, especially against such an evenly balanced aggregation as this Army four." On June 18 the War Department went into the finals of this tournament against the same Bryn Mawr team and, after giving it one goal handicap, won by a score of 13–8. This victory gave the War Department team its first leg on the Morrell Fund Cup, as this cup was not won last year.

On June 7 the War Department played its first game in the President's Cup Tournament, at the Philadelphia Country Club, against a 13-goal team, Green River. Playing on this team were W. Seligman, W. Randolph, O. Lehman, and C. S. Lee. Giving Green River two goals handicap, the War Department won from them by the score of 18–4. This game put the War Department into the finals against Bryn Mawr, which won by the score of 6–5.

From the above it will be seen that the War Department team has made a very creditable showing at Philadelphia and Bryn Mawr for the last two years. Last spring it won 8 out of 9 games played and three out of the four tournaments, making a grand total for the last two years, at Philadelphia, of a string of 16 victories out of 18 games and six out of eight tournaments.

The above War Department team has been broken up, as Major Herr has been ordered to Fort Riley, Major Higley to Fort Sill, and Major Montgomery to Fort Huachuca. However, there are many strong players on duty in Washington now, and the War Department will be well represented next spring. Among those now playing triweekly at Potomac Park are Colonel C. S. Babcock, Lieutenant-Colonel N. E. Margetts, Lieutenant-Colonel W. V. Morris, Lieutenant-Colonel J. A. Baer, Major T. J. Johnson, Major Cortlandt Parker, Major J. B. Coulter, Lieutenant-Colonel Bruce Palmer, Captain R. Walsh, Captain R. Wipprecht, Captain H. O. Richardson, and Lieutenant C. C. Jadwin.

SUMMER TOURNAMENT AT COLORADO SPRINGS

The result of the tournament held at Colorado Springs during June and July was a triumph for the Fort Sam Houston Polo Team, which won every event. The results of the games in which this team participated were as follows:

Broadmoor Cup (Handicap)

Fort Sam Houston	13 (5)	Fort Leavenworth	4
Fort Sam Houston	11 (3)	Colorado Springs	7

Foxhall Keene Cup (Handicap)

Fort Sam Houston	14	Colorado Springs	4 (2)
Fort Sam Houston	12 (1)	Fort Riley	5

Marland Trophy (Flat)

Fort Sam Houston	13	Fort Riley	1
Fort Sam Houston	12	Fort Leavenworth	7

TOURNAMENT AT FORT D. A. RUSSELL

During the latter part of June the 13th Cavalry held a very successful Polo Tournament at Fort D. A. Russell, which was commented on by the Post Commander as follows:

"This was the best-conducted polo tournament I have ever seen. The splendid high-handicapped teams from Colorado Springs, Fort Riley, and Fort Leavenworth gave exhibitions of the highest type of polo and sportsmanship, which made a great impression on the younger players of the 13th and 14th Cavalry, whose subsequent playing was marked by great improvement.

"The conduct and bearing of the individual members was satisfactory in the extreme. They made an exceptionally good impression in the post and in the city. All credit is due Colonel Boniface and his assistants."

THE PHILIPPINE CIRCUIT CHAMPIONSHIP

The Philippine Circuit Championship Tournament held at Manila, P. I., June 8-19, 1924, was won by the 26th Cavalry "A" team.

The tournament was held at the Manila Polo Club and the teams participating were the Manila Polo Club Greens, Manila Polo Club Yellows, Fort William McKinley, 24th Field Artillery, 26th Cavalry "A," and 26th Cavalry "B."

The results of the games were as follows:

Manila Polo Club Yellows	8	Manila Polo Club Greens	7
26th Cavalry (A)	9	24th Field Artillery	4
26th Cavalry (B)	10	Fort William McKinley	3
26th Cavalry (A)	10	26th Cavalry (B)	5
26th Cavalry (A)	9	Manila Polo Club Yellows	4

NINTH CORPS AREA POLO CHAMPIONSHIP

A polo tournament was held under the auspices of the Boise Polo Club, at Boise, Idaho, May 30 to June 11, 1924, at which were decided the Ninth Corps Area Polo Championship and the Northwestern Polo Championship.

Four teams participated, the Boise Polo Club (civilian), 13th Cavalry (Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming), 10th Field Artillery (Camp Lewis, Washington), and the 7th Infantry (Vancouver Barracks).

The Ninth Corps Area Championship was won by the 13th Cavalry, which defeated both of the other Army teams. The 13th Cavalry lost the first game of the tournament to the Boise team, and in playing off for the Northwestern Championship they were again defeated by the Boise team.

The 13th Cavalry team played a very good brand of polo, displaying the best teamwork of any of the Army teams at the tournament. Their mounts were not noticeably superior to those of the other two Army teams and their games were won through better teamwork and more heady play than that of their opponents.

The National Guard

FIFTY-FIRST CAVALRY BRIGADE—New York National Guard

Brigadier-General Mortimer D. Bryant, Commanding

The brigade, less the 102d Cavalry, New Jersey National Guard, and plus the Provisional Squadron of the 1st New York Cavalry, comprising, therefore, all the units of the New York National Guard Cavalry, performed its field training at Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont, this year again, July 5-20, after an absence of two years.

By evening of Sunday, July 6, all of the organizations had completed their detraining and were settled under canvas on the camp ground west of the post. Frame mess shacks and shower baths were provided for the comfort of the men.

Each organization brought its own horses (Government, private, and hired), and the number available was sufficient to mount the entire brigade.

On Monday morning an intensive schedule of field training commenced, which, by the end of the tour, progressed to include the school of the regiment.

Two tactical rides were held for all officers of the brigade, regimental, and squadron staffs. These rides were held under the direction of Major C. L. Stevenson, who returned to the brigade from Fort Riley as an instructor for the camp.

Record course in rifle marksmanship was fired by all troops except the 51st Machine-Gun Squadron, which held machine-gun practice at 1,000-yard and 600-yard ranges. One of the best scores made in the brigade was by the Commanding General, who qualified as expert rifleman.

A field maneuver was held July 17 and 18, the 101st Cavalry making its overnight camp on Mallett's Bay, and a Provisional Regiment, composed of the 51st Machine-Gun Squadron and Provisional Squadron, 1st Cavalry, on Shelburne Bay. The two regiments maneuvered on the morning of July 18 with Fort Ethan Allen as their objective.

Several polo games were played on the post polo field, the results being as follows: Second Squadron, 101st Cavalry, defeated 1st Squadron, 101st Cavalry; 51st Machine-Gun Squadron defeated 1st Squadron, 101st Cavalry; 51st Machine-Gun Squadron defeated 2d Squadron, 101st Cavalry; Instructors' Team defeated the 2d Squadron, 101st Cavalry.

Two mounted reviews were tendered during the encampment—one to Major-General Charles Berry, Commanding General, N. Y. N. G., and one to Lieutenant Governor F. S. Billings, of Vermont, and Adjutant General Johnson.

On Wednesday, July 16, the Second Annual Horse Show of the Brigade was held in a specially constructed ring near the camp. Unfortunately, a rainstorm marred the show, but notwithstanding there were some excellent performances. The success of the show was largely due to the untiring efforts of Major Kenneth Townson, of Rochester, and his show committee. *Blarney Boy*, of the Brigade Headquarters Troop, was the winner of the Show Championship, and the Buffalo Troop won the Point Trophy. Over two hundred and fifty entries were received for the show, among those entering outside the brigade being the 3d Cavalry and 7th Field Artillery.

The Brigade Show is held annually, wherever the two weeks' encampment takes place, and it is desired that all officers and men of the Regular service, National Guard, or the O. R. C. know that they are cordially invited to make entries in the show whenever circumstances permit.

The entertainment activities of the camp consisted of nightly band concerts and moving pictures and one evening of vaudeville and boxing. Passes were issued from Saturday noon of the 12th to Sunday night, the 13th. Many of the men took advantage of this leave to visit surrounding resorts.

The brigade wishes to express in these columns its appreciation for the hearty co-operation extended by the officers and men stationed at Fort Ethan Allen, especially Lieutenant-Colonel Thomas Holliday, 7th Field Artillery Commandant, and Captain Robert Bathhurst, 7th Field Artillery Adjutant, and by the following officers of the Regular Cavalry attached to the brigade as instructors: Lieutenant-Colonel Sayles, Majors Newman, Robenson, Stevenson, and Clifford and Captains Besse and Cullinane.

The entraining for home stations commenced on Saturday morning, and by late afternoon every unit had cleared Fort Ethan Allen. The two weeks' encampment was declared the most successful and enjoyable the New York Cavalry has ever attended.

FIFTY-SIXTH CAVALRY BRIGADE

Brigadier-General Jacob F. Wolters, Texas National Guard, Commanding

The Texas units of the 56th Cavalry Brigade, part of the 23d Cavalry Division, consisting of Headquarters and Headquarters Troop, 56th Cavalry Brigade, 112th Cavalry, and 56th Machine-Gun Squadron, held their annual encampment of field training and instruction at Camp Stanley, Texas, July 7-21, inclusive. The 111th Cavalry (New Mexico), a part of the brigade, was at the same time in camp at Fort Bliss, Texas.

General Wolters, accompanied by Captains Clifford A. Eastwood, Cavalry D. O. L., and John O. Lawrence, Cavalry D. O. L., rode horseback from Houston to Fort Sam Houston, via Old Spanish Trail. The ride was made according to one of the tables of the Cavalry School—walk 1 minute, trot 11 minutes, lead 7 minutes, trot 10 minutes, ride 8 minutes, trot 10 minutes, halt 1 minute, walk 12 minutes; rate, 5.1 miles per hour. The table was rigidly adhered to, and although the temperature was approximately 100°, and some days higher, 40 miles per day were covered and a total distance made of 227 miles. The officers and their mounts reached Fort Sam Houston in first-class condition.

An advanced program and schedule of training and instruction was carried out to the letter during the encampment. The instructors on duty were: Major Victor S. Foster, senior instructor; Captain Henry McE. Pendleton, Captain Clifford A. Eastwood, and Captain John O. Lawrence, assistant instructors. These officers have been on duty with the 56th Cavalry Brigade for approximately two years, and the officers and men of the command have become very much attached to them. Major Foster, after the encampment, was relieved in order to attend the War College. Captain Pendleton has been detailed as senior instructor, and Captain Perry E. Taylor has been ordered to report for duty with the organizations, with station at Dallas.

Lieutenant-Colonel Edward Davis spent two days at the encampment, during which time he delivered two lectures, one illustrated with slides and moving pictures, on Allenby's campaign. These lectures were both interesting and instructive.

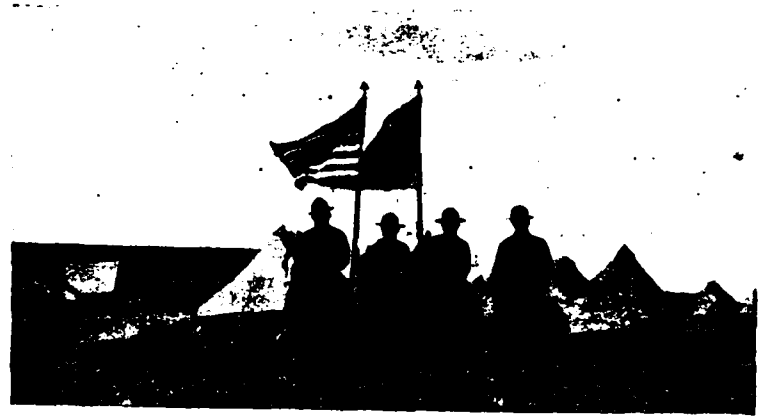
The interesting feature of this encampment was that the organizations had fired the rifle on range at home stations and therefore were not required to go on the range during the encampment. All concerned attribute the absolute unanimity of the satisfaction expressed by all members of the command to the elimination of this, which is always a burdensome duty to National Guardsmen at an encampment. Another interesting feature of the encampment was that approximately 75 per cent of the men who attended the camp in 1923 were in attendance upon this camp; 82.5 per cent of the enlisted strength of the command attended the encampment and only two officers, on account of sickness, were not present.

The encampment was visited by Major-General Ernest Hinds, 8th Corps Area Commander; Colonel John F. Preston, Chief of Staff; Colonel Paul A. Wolf, officer in charge National Guard affairs. The entire command, its equipment and records, were inspected during the encampment by Lieutenant-Colonel Dan Tompkins, Inspector General's Department. Many other Regular Army officers from Fort Sam Houston visited the encampment. Governor Pat M. Neff also visited the camp and watched the troops work out advance-guard problems by squadrons.

110th CAVALRY, MASSACHUSETTS NATIONAL GUARD

Lieutenant-Colonel Dana T. Gallup, Commanding

During the spring of 1924 the lieutenant-colonel and part of the regimental staff of the 110th Cavalry were recognized by the War Department. Prior to that, while all of the regiment that was organized was assigned to Massachusetts, there was no telling where the balance might be sent. Shortly before the tour of camp duty, orders came out placing the organization on a strictly regimental basis, instead of, as before, on the basis of a squadron with headquarters and service troops attached. The men of the regiment are looking forward to the time, which all hope will be soon, when the second squadron will be authorized, giving Massachusetts a full regiment of cavalry.



Colors of 110th Cavalry, Massachusetts N. G.

For the second time the Massachusetts cavalry spent their tour of camp duty on the old Rhode Island camp grounds at Quonset Point, on the west shore of Narragansett Bay. Troop C and Headquarters Troop took the horses over the road, making three marches of a little over twenty miles each. Troop A met them in Providence and took the Rhode Island cavalry horses to camp. The Connecticut horses were sent up by train. This was in pursuance of the policy established last year by the three States in pooling their cavalry horses for the tours of camp. This results in a great saving in expense to the Government and a great deal more satisfaction from the point of view of training. Even the worst horses in each group were at least bridle-wise, which could not be said of all the horses, when it was necessary to hire them in order to mount all the men.

Special emphasis during the camp period was laid on the work of cavalry patrols. This culminated in a maneuver, near the end of camp, in which, on a frontage of about ten miles, the squadron successfully covered all roads leading to camp.

Plans are now under way for the third annual 110th Cavalry Horse Show, which will be held at the Commonwealth Armory September 24, 25, 26, and 27. Last year there were well over four hundred entries in the show, mostly of local horses. With the show coming this year between the Springfield and Brockton shows, there is every prospect that this number will be materially increased and that many horses from out of the State will be entered.

The 110th Cavalry was given the honor of being the first unit of the Army to escort the world fliers after their arrival on United States soil. A squadron of airplanes had met them about fifty miles up the coast and escorted them into Boston. A battalion of the 13th Infantry formed a guard of honor as they stepped ashore, but did not escort

them. The fliers then went direct to their hotel, where they were met by a composite troop from the 110th Cavalry and escorted to the State House, where they were met by the Governor and representatives of the Legion, the 26th Division, the Ancient and Honorable Artillery Company, and the Boston Chamber of Commerce. They then went to the City Hall and met the mayor and returned to their hotel.

HEADQUARTERS TROOP, 103d CAVALRY, PENNSYLVANIA NATIONAL GUARD

Headquarters Troop, 103d Cavalry, gave its Second Annual Inter-Platoon meet at the Cavalry Armory, 32d and Lancaster Avenue, on Monday night, June 30. The Staff Platoon won by three events to two over the Communication Platoon, but the meet was in reality most closely contested and was "nip and tuck" until the Obstacle Race was won by Sergeant Ramon J. Cabrera, of the Staff Platoon. This meet is an annual affair and each platoon has a leg on the Captain F. E. Spohn Cup, the Communication Platoon having won in 1923.

The first event, a competitive exhibition of the Manual of Arms, was won by the Communication Platoon, Lieutenant Charles T. Cabrera commanding and Sergeant Louis E. Narbonne, platoon sergeant.

The second event, competitive shelter-tent pitching, wherein alignment counted 40 per cent, substantiality 40 per cent, and time 20 per cent, was captured by the Staff Platoon, Lieutenant Donald C. Rowe commanding and Sergeant Ramon J. Cabrera, platoon sergeant.

The third event, mounted wrestling, teams of 8 men each, was won by the Staff Platoon.

The next two events, not counting in competition, were a demonstration of a dismounted attack by the Staff Platoon. They were fired on and advancing by rushes, two squads covering the advance of the third by rifle fire. The assumed strong point being taken, the Communication Platoon immediately rushed out with switchboard and field telephones, thus establishing two trunk lines to the two representative Squadron Headquarters, which would function in the field. At the same time the Radio and Panel Section of the Communication erected the field wireless.

A mounted tug of war evened the count for the Communication Platoon after the two platoons, each pulling the opposite way, had had three hotly contested bouts.

An obstacle race followed. Sergeant Ramon J. Cabrera won the event and the match for the Staff Platoon.

Captain George Goodyear, the Regular Army Cavalry instructor, then presented the cup to the winning platoon, complimenting both platoons on the excellence of their work and the splendid spirit shown.

The Organized Reserves

65th CAVALRY DIVISION HORSE SHOW AND MILITARY TOURNAMENT

The First Horse Show and Military Tournament of the 65th Cavalry Division Association was held at the International Amphitheater, U. S. Yards, Chicago, May 9 and 10, 1924, the horse show being put on the evenings of the 9th and 10th and the military tournament the afternoon of Saturday, the 10th.

The show, and particularly the military tournament, was designed to inspire in the youth of Chicago a spirit of patriotism, to promote preparedness, and to combat the Pacifist propaganda which has been carried on in all parts of the country recently.

That interest in our four-footed friends and man's most faithful companion has not been diminished by steel and gas was proven by the enthusiastic audience which filled the large amphitheater. Every one of the 4,000 seats were sold out for Saturday evening's performance, and the 82 boxes were filled with Chicago's best society and military and horse lovers.

The military organizations co-operating and participating in the show were 14th U. S. Cavalry, 14th U. S. Field Artillery, 2d U. S. Infantry, 122d and 124th Field Artillery Regiments, Illinois National Guard, and the 162d Infantry, Illinois National Guard.

Troop A, of the 14th U. S. Cavalry, noted throughout the Army for its dash, daring, and skill, at each performance gave a thrilling exhibition of Cossack and Roman riding, and jumps over living hurdles. Each evening performance was closed with the spectacular jumps through the fire hurdle, the lights being turned off and the troops racing at breakneck speed through the flaming hoops of fire.

The Military Tournament on Saturday was arranged with a view to stimulate interest in the Citizens' Military Training Camp. The events furnished to the uninitiated an opportunity to see what our soldiers are doing toward preparing themselves to defend the country when necessary.

The winners of first places were:

Three-gaited mare or gelding.—Dude; owner and rider, Myles Camaven.

Officers' charger.—The Gray Parson, owned and ridden by Captain W. Dirk Van Ingen.

Light-weight class.—Great Scott; owner, O. W. Lehmann; rider, A. Colina.

Ladies' saddle horse.—Chloe Malone; owner, Mrs. James G. Alexander; rider, Miss Robertson.

Five-gaited open.—Elmay; owner, Elias Mayer; rider, E. D. Moore.

Riding teams (walk, trot, and canter).—*Wildflower;* Mrs. J. M. Harris, owner and rider, and *Lady Mary;* owner, Fred J. Hisgen, Jr.; rider, B. Benson.

Amateur hunting class (eight four-foot jumps).—*Dr. Buckner;* owner, Captain W. D. Van Ingen; rider, Miss "Blinks" Thomas.

Children's class.—Princess Leona; owner and rider, Miss Marion M. Carter.

Chicago equestrian event.—Entry; owner, Fred J. Hisgen, Jr.; rider, Miss Lucile Riser.

Troopers' mounts.—Coalci, Troop C, 14th Cavalry.

Ladies' saddle horse.—Chloe Malone; owner, Mrs. James G. Alexander; rider, Miss Robertson.

Middle or heavy-weight hunters.—Wee McGregor; owner, O. W. Lehmann; rider, Joe Bernofo.

Three-gaited.—The Dude; owner and rider, Myles Camaven.

Five-gaited open.—Elmay; owner, Elias Mayer; Ed. Moore, rider.

Performance class.—The Gray Parson; owner and rider, Captain W. D. Van Ingen.

Combination harness and saddle horses.—Blue Grass; owner, Mrs. Rodger Pemberton; rider, D. E. Holman.

Ladies' hunters.—Underfire; owner, O. W. Lehmann; rider, Miss "Blinks" Thomas.

Gaited class (stallion, mare, or gelding).—*Blue Grass;* owner, Mrs. Rodger Pemberton.

Hunter pair class.—Wee McGregor; owner, O. W. Lehmann; rider, Arthur Colina; and *Landsdown;* owner, O. W. Lehmann; rider, Joe Colina.

On the whole, the show was a success, even beyond the hope of the members of the Association. It excelled all similar events in the past and has put the 65th Cavalry Division on the map as the livest unit of the Organized Reserves.

311th CAVALRY—San Antonio, Texas

Eighteen officers of the 311th Cavalry and Headquarters, 156th Cavalry Brigade, completed a most successful camp of instruction at Fort Clark, Texas, during the period July 1-15. The success of the camp was due to the untiring efforts the camp commander, Colonel Wallace B. Scales, 5th Cavalry, ably assisted by Lieutenant-Colonel O. P. M. Hazzard, senior instructor, and the officers of the staff of the 1st Cavalry Brigade, the 5th Cavalry, and the 1st Machine-Gun Squadron. Each Reserve officer was attached to an appropriate unit of the 5th Cavalry, where he learned the routine duties of his grade, commanded the unit at all drills, ceremonies, and tactical exercises, under the instruction of the Regular officers of the units concerned. The methods of instruction and the demonstrations staged by the troops at Fort Clark represented the last word in the handling of cavalry as evolved by the 1st Cavalry Division. All of the Reserve officers present were very enthusiastic about the methods pursued and expressed the hope that the camp of instruction for next year would be held again at Fort Clark.

322d CAVALRY—Des Moines, Iowa

The unit training camp for the 322d Cavalry (66th Cavalry Division), at Fort Riley, Kansas, July 13-27, was attended by 51 officers, the senior being the regimental commander, Colonel H. H. Polk, of Des Moines, Iowa.

The training schedule this year contained a feature greatly appreciated by the Reserve officers, in that the latter were given an opportunity to function in command appropriate to their respective grades. They were attached to the 2d Cavalry during the entire camp, which included phases of routine garrison training, in the field, and on the march.

The facilities of the Cavalry School and of Fort Riley were made available to the Reserve officers, whose interest and appreciation never abated. The exceptionally helpful and courteous attitudes of General Edward L. King, commandant of Fort Riley, and of the camp, and of Colonel George Williams, commanding officer of the 2d Cavalry, were invariably reflected in all their assistants and subordinates. Friendliness and cordiality characterized the personal and official relations among the Regular and Reserve officers to a degree impossible to surpass.

The officers of the 2d Cavalry gave a reception to the Reserve officers, who responded with a smoker. Polo, cross-country riding, picnics, and swimming parties were popular diversions during the camp. All Regular Army officers on duty with the 66th Cavalry Division attended the camp, including Lieutenant-Colonel W. L. Luhn, Cavalry, Chief of Staff of the Division, and Captain Joseph L. Philips, Cavalry, D. O. L., Executive Officer, 322d Cavalry. The camp was inspected by Major-General George B. Duncan, Commanding General, Seventh Corps Area.

The location of the Cavalry School at Fort Riley gives Reserve Cavalry officers of the Seventh Corps Area a great advantage in the matter of facilities for training that are not equaled elsewhere, and it remains the earnest hope of all who attended the camp that future camps will continue to be held there.

Regimental Notes

SECOND CAVALRY (CAVALRY SCHOOL REGIMENT)—Fort Riley, Kansas
Colonel George Williams, Commanding

On May 31, 1924, Colonel C. A. Romeyn relinquished command of the regiment and reported for duty at Headquarters, 1st Corps Area, as Chief of Staff, 94th Division. After two very successful years under Colonel Romeyn, the entire regiment feels his loss most keenly, and every officer and man in the regiment wishes him satisfaction and success in his new duties.

Troop F, Captain Palmer commanding, made a 350-mile march to Lincoln, Nebraska and return and took part in a civic program held there May 22, 23, 24, and 25.

Regimental Day, the eighty-eighth anniversary of the organization of the regiment, was celebrated May 23 by a horse show, in which all of the organizations present participated. The Headquarters Troop, winning the greater number of points, became the custodian of the Regimental Cup for the coming year.

Troop E, Captain McDonald commanding, marched to Alta Vista for the purpose of taking part in the American Legion 4th of July celebration at that place. The troop gave an exhibition of jumping, mounted gymnastics, and various other phases of cavalry training. About 2,000 people attended and pronounced the show a great success.

One platoon of Troop G, Lieutenant Wofford commanding, marched to Manhattan and participated in a colonial pageant, held on July 4th, representing the bodyguard of President Washington. The troopers donned the uniform of Colonial troopers, receiving enthusiastic applause from a large crowd.

Troop C, Captain Byrne commanding, left the post July 8 for Fort Leavenworth, to take part in the C. M. T. C. held there. The troop returned to the post on September 8, completing the 140-mile march in excellent condition.

The officers of the 66th Cavalry Division were attached to the regiment from July 14 to 26, and participated in the drills, marches, and maneuvers held during that time. They gained practical experience in the handling of troops by actually assuming command of the units during various phases of the training. A feeling of friendship and a spirit of co-operation between the officers of the regiment and the reserve officers was developed to a marked degree during the time they served together.

The following extract of the report of the unit training of the 322d Cavalry exemplifies this spirit:

HEADQUARTERS 322D CAVALRY, 66TH CAVALRY DIVISION,
OFFICE OF THE COMMANDING OFFICER
1215 HIPPEE BUILDING, DES MOINES, IOWA, *August* 1, 1924.

Subject: Report on Unit Training Camp, 322d Cavalry, Fort Riley, Kansas, July 13-27, 1924.

To: Commanding General, Seventh Corps Area, Army Building, Omaha, Nebraska (Through Chief of Staff, 66th Cavalry Division).

3. (f)—*Treatment and Friendly Relations*—Both personally and officially, the attitude of the officers of the Cavalry School and of the 2d Cavalry was friendly, cordial, and helpful, and the possibility of relations more friendly than those that at all times existed is difficult to conceive. The Commandant of the Cavalry School and the Commanding Officer of the 2d Cavalry were exceptionally courteous and helpful, and their attitudes were invariably reflected in all their respective assistants and subordinates. A more favorable impression of the Regular Army has never been obtained by the Reserve Officers of any camp than prevailed in this one.

H. H. POLK,
Colonel, 322d Cavalry.

During the summer the regimental band has made trips to the following towns within the State, furnishing music for various civic programs and American Legion celebrations: Clay Center, Beloit, Manhattan, Green and Barnes. One trip was made to Milford, where the concert was broadcasted.

The regiment was paraded July 19 in honor of the Reserve Officers, at which time the Regimental Cup won by Headquarters Troop on Regimental Day was presented to Lieutenant Thornburgh. The Reserve officers and the officers of the garrison witnessed the parade, after which a buffet luncheon in honor of the Reserve officers was served at the Regimental Club.

The Regimental Polo team, consisting of Colonel Williams (1), Captain Creed (2), Lieutenant Wofford (3), Lieutenant Baker (4), and Lieutenant Holbrook, made the first trip away from the post in three years, when it went to Fort Snelling, Minn., to participate in a tournament held there August 7-12, bringing back with them the Northwest Tournament Cup. On the return trip the team stopped at Des Moines, Iowa, playing two games with the Wakonda Country Club. The members of the team were unanimous in their praise of the kind and courteous treatment accorded them, both by the military personnel of Fort Snelling and the citizens of St. Paul and Des Moines.

Headquarters Troop, under the command of Lieutenant Thornburgh, executed a night problem on August 19 in the vicinity of Cameron Spring. The problem assumed the 2d Cavalry to be holding an outpost line of a brigade. The troop estalished wire communication from the supports to regimental and brigade headquarters and radio communication with the latter. Tests were conducted to determine the comparative speed of transmitting messages by mounted courier and by wire and radio.

General Pershing paid a farewell visit to the post on August 25. The Second Squadron, under command of Major J. K. Brown, acted as his escort upon his entrance into and departure from the reservation. The regiment was inspected dismounted, and was then marched to the E. and R. Theater, where the retiring Chief of Staff gave a farewell address.

The following letter of commendation was received after the departure of General Pershing:

THE CAVALRY SCHOOL, OFFICE OF THE COMMANDANT

FORT RILEY, KANSAS, *August* 26, 1924.

Subject: Commendation of General Pershing.
To: Commanding Officer, Second Cavalry, Fort Riley, Kansas.

It gives me great pleasure to inform you that General Pershing stated to me, while going from my quarters to the station, that the Cavalry squadron which was escorting him was the best-looking cavalry he had ever seen.

I hope you will let the members of the 2d Cavalry know this, as I considered it a very splendid compliment. The appearance of the squadron could not be surpassed.

EDW. L. KING.
Brigadier General, U. S. A., Commandant.

THIRD CAVALRY (less First Squadron)—Fort Myer, Virginia

Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, Commanding

The Second Squadron, commanded by Major J. M. Wainwright, left the post May 12 for Camp Meade, Maryland, for the usual target practice. This work was completed by June 16, with the very satisfactory result of having 98 per cent of the squadron qualified—a higher percentage than that of any unit of any of the other branches of the service firing on the same range during that period.

The duties of the squadron then turned to the instructing of the R. O. T. C. Cavalry units up until July 30, while during the last thirty days of that period the additional task of training the C. M. T. C. Cavalry was included.

During the next fifteen days the squadron participated in Regular Army maneuvers and conducted training of about fifty Reserve officers from the 62d Cavalry Division, the majority of whom were of the 306th Cavalry, a Baltimore regiment commanded by Colonel John P. Hill, a congressman.

While at Camp Meade, a horse show was held August 10, when the squadron competed with the 6th Field Artillery. The 3d Cavalry captured all the blue ribbons and all second and third places excepting two of each of the latter colors. The squadron returned to Fort Myer August 18.

Memorial Day brought the usual big crowd and heavy traffic to Fort Myer and Arlington National Cemetery. The operation of reliefs on traffic guard on such occasions takes practically all available men and officers.

A special drill was given in the riding hall to entertain a convention of the Greeters of America on July 11. The program included the 3d Cavalry Band, mounted, mounted fencing by Troop F, saber drill by Headquarters Troop, schooled horse exhibition by Corporal Matheson, Troop F, jumping by enlisted men, artillery drill by a battery of the 16th Field Artillery, and the F Troop Rough Riders.

A polo game between the officers of the 3d Cavalry and the officers from the Office of the Chief of Cavalry, followed by a reception and tea dance, was held July 23 in honor of Major-General Willard A. Holbrook, who was about to be retired. Among the guests were Deputy Chief of Staff of the Army, Major-General John L. Hines; Major-General Henry T. Allen, the Assistant Secretary of War, and Mrs. Dwight Davis, Major-General and Mrs. William J. Snow, Brigadier-General Samuel D. Rockenbach, Colonel Lloyd M. Brett, and Colonel George C. Barnhardt.

In spite of the fact that most of the officers were with the 2d Squadron at Camp Meade during most of this quarter, polo has been kept up, the officers playing on the Fort Myer field two days per week, followed by a Saturday game on the Potomac Park field with the War Department players.

FIRST SQUADRON, THIRD CAVALRY—Fort Ethan Allen, Vermont

Lieutenant-Colonel H. E. Mann, Commanding

The squadron, less Troop C, made a pleasant march of 212 miles to Camp Devens from June 9 to 19th. The weather was ideal, the townspeople along the route were most cordial, and men and horses arrived in good condition. Use was made of the march for tactical work in advance and outpost problems. Each non-commissioned officer received instruction in road sketching.

A detail of five officers and fifty men went to Plymouth, Vermont, to keep the road open and clear between Ludlow, Vermont, and Plymouth, and to act as a guard at the funeral of the President's son. This duty was performed with efficiency and letters of commendation were received from President Coolidge, the Secretary of War, the Governor of Vermont, and the Corps Area Commander.

The squadron performed its part in the training of R. O. T. C., the C. M. T. C., and the Organized Reserves. Troop A was parent organization of the C. M. T. C. Cavalry, and this plan worked out very successfully. A schedule was prepared and the officers of the squadron acted as instructors in the work of the Cavalry Reserve Officers' Course.

Polo has been very popular at Camp Devens this season. Colonel Mann, the camp polo representative, managed a tournament between teams from the 3d Cavalry, 7th Field Artillery, 5th Infantry, 13th Infantry, and Staff Corps. The 7th Field Artillery won out, with the 3d Cavalry second.

The polo ponies and selected jumpers and officers' mounts left today for the New England Fair at Worcester, Massachusetts. It is hoped that we will be as successful this year as we were last year.

In a few days the squadron will start the march back to Fort Ethan Allen. There will be about 30 Reserve Officers of the 315th Cavalry make the march with us.

The squadron will be turned over to these officers, who will have actual experience in conducting the march and in various tactical problems.

During the regular season's rifle practice, which was completed before the squadron left for Camp Devens, all the troops did very good work, Headquarters Detachment coming out in the lead with 94.4 per cent. Pistol and saber practice will be completed as soon as possible after the return of the squadron to Fort Ethan Allen. The Annual Camp Devens Horse and Vehicle Show was held on August 15 and the 3d Cavalry won out by a large margin of 32 points from its nearest competitor, the 7th Field Artillery.

Troop C was left back at Fort Ethan Allen this year to act as the parent organization for the New York C. M. T. C. Cavalry, which camp was commanded by Colonel George Vidmer, Cavalry.

FOURTH CAVALRY (Less First Squadron)—Fort McIntosh, Texas
Colonel T. Q. Donaldson, Commanding

The target season closed in June with the following results:

Organization.	Percentage qualified.
Headquarters Troop	87. 3
Service Troop	87. 7
Headquarters Detachment, 2d Squadron	100
Troop E	95. 5
Troop F	92.75
Troop G	96. 3

The officers and ladies of the post entertained with a dinner and dance at Nuevo Laredo in honor of General E. E. Booth prior to his departure for his new station, Fort Clark, Texas. The transfer of General Booth is keenly regretted by the entire personnel of this station.

A new sand ring has recently been completed and is in constant use by the officers for the purpose of training a number of thoroughbred horses recently purchased from the King's Ranch.

The polo stables have been reorganized and polo practice started for the fall games.

Much interest has been shown in athletics during the past quarter. The post baseball schedule has included two or three games per week. The swimming pool has been the scene of many hotly contested swimming meets, of which the most interesting was held for the children of the post. Prizes were presented by General Booth.

FIFTH CAVALRY—Fort Clark, Texas
Colonel Wallace B. Scales, Commanding

Troop G is expected to return to Fort Clark about September 12 from duty with the summer training camps at Fort Sam Houston. It has been on that duty since May 11.

All target practice in the regiment has been completed except Troop G with the automatic rifle and pistol mounted and dismounted. The following results were obtained:

With the rifle, out of 560 firing, 135 qualified as expert riflemen, 149 as sharpshooters, 256 as marksmen, and 20 were unqualified—a percentage of qualification of 96.42.

With the automatic rifle, out of 70 firing, 57 qualified as expert riflemen, 11 as sharpshooters, and 2 as marksmen, with none unqualified—a percentage of 100.

With the pistol, dismounted, out of 482 firing, 155 qualified as expert pistol shots, 169 as sharpshooters, 112 as marksmen, and 46 unqualified—a percentage of 90.45.

With the pistol, mounted, out of 441 firing, 409 qualified as expert pistol shots, 26 as sharpshooters, and 6 as marksmen, with none unqualified—a percentage of 100.

All lettered troops excepting Troop G fired the prescribed combat practice and proficiency tests and the results were satisfactory.

On August 30 all troops excepting Troop G fired the National Rifle Association Mounted Pistol Match, with the following results:

Troop E, 142; Headquarters Troop, 138; Troop C, 138; Troop B, 135; Service Troop, 129; Troop A, 128; Troop F, 126.

On September 12 the regiment sent two polo teams to Fort Bliss, Texas, to participate in the Senior and Junior Polo Tournaments, to be held during the period September 18 to October 3. The composition of the teams was as follows:

Senior.—No. 1, Captain J. M. Tully; No. 2, First Lieutenant C. E. Snyder; No. 3, Captain E. M. Daniels; No. 4, Captain M. F. Meador.

Junior.—No. 1, Second Lieutenant E. C. Johnston; No. 2, First Lieutenant A. W. Johnson; No. 3, Captain F. H. Barnhart; No. 4, First Lieutenant J. N. Greene.

SIXTH CAVALRY—Fort Oglethorpe, Georgia
Colonel Robert Fleming, Commanding

The 6th Cavalry less the 2d Squadron, arrived at Camp McClellan, Alabama, on May 23, after a five-day march, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Oscar A. McGee.

During the summer camp the regiment acted as one of the training units, fostering the Cavalry C. M. T. C. Squadron, which was organized and trained by First Squadron of the 6th Cavalry. The regiment also assisted in the training of the Cavalry Reserve Officers' Training Camp, the Organized Reserves, and the National Guard.

On July 17, the Anniston Army Horse Show was successfully staged by the citizens of Anniston and members of Camp McClellan. A large and enthusiastic crowd encouraged the well-filled classes of civilian and military entries. Performances were excellent, particularly in the jumping classes. The 6th Cavalry entries succeeded in capturing the majority of cups and ribbons which were so generously donated by the citizens of Anniston.

On Friday evening, August 29, the officers and ladies of the 2d Squadron who have been at the post during the summer months entertained with a dance in honor of the return of the regiment from Camp McClellan.

During the target practice of the 2d Squadron, less Troop G, commanded by Major Charles W. Foster, some very commendable records were established. Troop E, Captain Milton H. Patton, commanding, particularly distinguished itself by qualifying 100 per cent with rifle, 100 per cent (experts) with automatic rifle, 100 per cent with pistol, mounted, and 98.33 per cent with pistol, dismounted.

Of the above, it is especially noteworthy that with the automatics the 100 per cent qualified were all experts. Captain Patton and the members of Troop E have received special commendation from both squadron and regimental commanders for their fine record.

SEVENTH CAVALRY—Fort Bliss, Texas
Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, Commanding

The quarter just past has been crowded with many activities. The usual round of summer-training phases, involving target practice with the several arms, field problems, and proficiency tests, have followed one another in rapid succession. The regiment has acquitted itself with credit in all events. In addition to the full program of training, the regimental polo and baseball teams have been through a more or less hectic siege, the polo team at present being in the throes of a three-way tie with the 8th Cavalry and 82d Field Artillery for high honors in the summer Handicap Tournament, all other teams having been eliminated, and the baseball team having just won the Fort Bliss League pennant for the second successive year. The regiment as a whole participated in the 1st Cavalry Division Horse Show at this station on July 10, 11, and 12 and made a most creditable showing.

On July 3 the second contingent, the last, of the regiment to fire the rifle this year at the Doña Ana target range in New Mexico returned to Fort Bliss. The qualification percentage attained with this arm was 96.40 for the entire regiment.

Coincidentally with the completion of rifle practice, troops completed also their automatic rifle practice, the regimental qualification attained being 98.80 per cent.

In dismounted pistol practice, completed during June, the regimental percentage qualified was 96.86. In the mounted phase with this arm the percentage qualified was 99.79.

On July 10, at the Cavalry Team tryouts at Fort Des Moines, Iowa, the 7th Cavalry Team, composed of Second Lieutenant P. M. Martin and Sergeant Wilbur P. Jackson, won the Cavalry Regimental Championship Match and silver cup, making a team score of 544.

During June two members of the regiment, Sergeants Kenneth C. Williams, Troop B, and Amos W. Shafer, Troop E, were cited in War Department Orders for gallantry in action, the citations having been earned in Mexico during 1916.

The following-named officers, following long tours of duty with the 7th, left the regiment during July and August: Major S. W. Winfree, Captain R. H. Gallier, and Captain G. W. Fitz Gerald. Major Winfree goes to Fort Leavenworth, Kansas, where he will attend the Staff and Command School during the 1924-25 term; Captain Gallier will at the same time attend the Troop Officers' Course at the Cavalry School at Riley, and Captain Fitz Gerald goes to assume the rôle of Assistant P. M. S. & T. at the Kansas University State Agricultural College at Manhattan, Kansas.

Officers leaving have been replaced by new assignments to the regiment. Major V. W. Cooper has joined to command the 2d Squadron in place of Major Winfree. Captain Daniel S. Robertson relieves Captain Fitz Gerald as regimental veterinarian. Other officers joining were Captains J. M. Lile and A. W. Howard and Lieutenants C. Burgess, R. P. Lyman, and H. E. Engler.

On May 12 the enlisted personnel of the regiment was also enhanced by a very valuable addition, Sergeant Felin York, a former 7th Cavalryman and a first cousin of the Sergeant York, of World War fame.

On July 1 a Swimming Contest was held, in which teams from the Service Troop, the Headquarters Troop, and Troops of the 1st Squadron participated. Cash prizes were given entrants winning first, second, and third places in the several events, which comprised eight separate features. Competition was keen between the individual teams and many good records were made. The Service Troop won the meet, with a total of 40 points; Headquarters Troop was second, with 26 points.

On Sunday, August 24, the baseball team played the 82d Field Artillery nine for the Post Championship, winning by the score of 8 to 4, the contest being a run-off game to decide the Post Championship, the 7th Cavalry and the 82d Field Artillery having each lost 2 games out of 14 in the Post League. The baseball team, as a result of having won the post honors, is now en route to Fort Sam Houston, Texas, at which place they will play the League winners of that station for the Corps Area Championship.

The band, under the leadership of Warrant Officer Price, has gained a very enviable reputation during the past months through the medium of weekly concerts on the post and in El Paso. Several concerts have also been broadcast, with the result that cards of appreciation have been received from radio fans in all parts of the United States and several from Canada.

During the period July 7 to 21, officers and selected non-commissioned officers of the regiment assisted in the instruction of the New Mexico National Guard, then in training at this station.

The regiment has been minus a chaplain since May 20, Chaplain G. J. McMurry having since that date been on detached service with the Summer Training Camps at Fort Huachuca, Arizona.

On Monday, August 18, First Sergeant Harry C. Demarest, Troop F, was placed on the retired list, after having completed 24 years 1 month and 3 days service, 6 years 1 month and 25 days being foreign service. He had been a member of this regiment for over 17 years. He was a captain of cavalry for two years during the World War. Sergeant Demarest was tendered a review by the regiment, when he was presented with a gold watch, a token of felicitation from members of the organization. Following the review, a banquet in his honor was given by the Non-commissioned Officers' Club.

Withal, the three months just past have been a season of many activities, each day featuring a new and interesting event. Through all, whether at work or at play, whether winning or losing, the morale of the regiment has been extraordinarily high; a determined tenacity, coupled with clean sportsmanship, has been constantly manifest; the result is that in all phases of activity a marked, if not phenomenal, success has been achieved.

EIGHTH CAVALRY, Fort Bliss, Texas

Colonel A. G. Lott, Commanding

Training since the middle of April has been strenuous for the entire regiment. Practice with rifle, automatic rifle, and pistol has been completed with very satisfactory results.

The results of collective firing were especially gratifying, as they demonstrated emphatically the fire proficiency of the regiment and the overwhelming fire power obtainable from organizations composed of individually trained riflemen.

On July 10, 11, and 12 the regiment participated in the annual First Cavalry Division Horse Show at Fort Bliss. Although there was no official tabulation of points gained by units and separate organizations, the 8th galloped away with enough ribbons and cups to convince the most casual observer that interest in the horse is fostered and stimulated throughout the regiment. By those who appraised the results of the show, it was rumored that, after our winning horse had cleared the high jump and all was over, the regiment was some thirty points ahead of its nearest rival.

Prospects for a superior polo team are excellent. Recent arrivals have strongly reinforced the polo department and make certain a fast team for the Divisional Tournament next month.

A handicap event now going on between post units is offering excellent practice in preparation for the September tournament and is stimulating regimental interest in the galloping game.

The regimental baseball team, which showed splendid form early in the season, has been materially handicapped by the loss of several experienced players. The team has not been as successful as was hoped and anticipated.

The construction of the New 8th Cavalry Area Service Club has been completed, with the exception of a few minor additions and refinements. It is a splendid building, excellently constructed and capable of a variety of uses. The entire regiment will undoubtedly derive benefit and pleasure from it.

NINTH CAVALRY—Fort Riley, Kansas

Lieutenant-Colonel K. T. Riggs, Commanding

The 9th Cavalry has held two benefit boxing tournaments, the proceeds of which have been turned over to the fund for the establishment of the Marshall Field Monument, erected at the Air Service field at this post in honor of the late Colonel Francis C. Marshall.

Lieutenant-Colonel K. T. Riggs, our new commanding officer, joined the regiment on August 22. Major J. F. Richmond has been appointed Executive Officer for the 9th Cavalry. Captains Berry, Gibson, and Parker are to attend the Cavalry School this year, and Captains Perry, Bonsteel, Gibney, and McDowell, graduates of last year's class, are now on duty with the regiment.

A number of enlisted men have recently retired, including Master Sergeant C. E. Wallace, First Sergeant Jackson Kendall, and Sergeants Boner and Rich.

On July 1 the regiment began range practice, and for this purpose was divided into three groups, each of which spent two weeks on the range. In order that the camp might be established in rear of the 600-yard firing point, the regiment put down a fifty-foot well.

Each group while on the range did nothing but shoot, and, considering the short time and the fact that some eighty recruits fired, the results were quite gratifying. First Sergeant Charles Davis, Troop G, was high man of the regiment with a score of 326.

The 9th Cavalry Farm has been a great success and, in addition to furnishing hogs for various regimental barbecues, has supplied the regimental mess with vegetables to the value of $1,200. The mess has also put up a great quantity of sauerkraut, tomatoes, and beets.

The houses in Rileyville have all been recently repainted. A new schoolhouse has also been constructed, by regimental labor, for the children of Rileyville and will open the first week of September.

On July 4 a regimental picnic was held at the regimental picnic grounds. After the lunch the crowd journeyed to the Junction City baseball park, where the 9th Cavalry Baseball Team played Salina. On July 28 another picnic was held at the same place to celebrate Organization Day. Numerous stunt events were held, and late in the afternoon a history of the regiment was read by Staff Sergeant H. L. Myall and Sergeant Norris P. Gregory.

The recent tables of organization authorize the 9th Cavalry to have 444 men and increases the non-commissioned staff by two staff sergeants, four corporals, and one specialist, 2d class, but takes away two sergeants, one specialist, 3d class; two specialists, 5th class, and four specialists, 6th class. Recent instructions from the War Department direct us to cut down the regiment to a total of 417 men—94 per cent of authorized strength.

TENTH CAVALRY—Fort Huachuca, Arizona

Colonel J. C. Rhea, Commanding

On July 26, 29, and 30, 1924, the Post Commander held his annual tactical inspection. For this inspection the regiment performed a route march; a convoy problem Cavalry against Cavalry (the squadrons being opposed); a halt for the night; and a reconnaissance problem, the regiment preceding a reinforced infantry brigade (imaginary) moving against another (outlined) reinforced infantry brigade.

July 28 was the 66th anniversary of the organization of the regiment and was observed as a holiday. The morning was given over to a horse show of 16 classes. In the gait-setters class, over a measured course of unannounced length, to be covered at an 8-mile trot (no time pieces or coaching being allowed), two contestants finished in exact time. Third place was won by a contestant who traveled the course five seconds too fast. The course was about two miles long.

In a driving contest with four-line mule teams considerable cleverness on the part of the teamsters and training of the mules was demonstrated. The best turned-out troopers' mount, full-pack class, occupied the judges for quite a while; recourse was finally taken to a minute inspection of arms to select the winner.

The ladies' classes included an equitation class, a jumping class, and a race.

The judges were the cavalry officers on temporary duty at this post in connection with the summer camps.

In the afternoon there was a baseball game between the officers and old-timers—five fast, furious rounds to a draw.

Colonel Rhea addressed the assembled regiment at retreat. In the evening there was a regimental barbecue, followed by dancing.

On the 1st of August Lieutenant-Colonel George Grunert and Major J. C. Montgomery joined for duty. Each of these officers have recently been on general staff duty in Washington.

R. O. T. C. and C. M. T. camps have occupied most of our personnel since June 1.

ELEVENTH CAVALRY—Presidio of Monterey, California

Colonel H. J. Brees, Commanding

During the summer the regiment has been busily engaged in activities in connection with the summer training camps. Troop F was on duty at Camp Lewis, Washington, from June 4 until August 22. Troop E was at Camp Del Monte, California, from June 3 to August 19. In addition to the above-mentioned troops, many officers and enlisted men were used as instructors and for administrative work at Camp Del Monte.

A novel feature in connection with the summer camps was the method employed in training the Cavalry Reserve officers of the 323d and 324th regiments and 162d Machine-Gun Squadron. There were about forty-five officers in this group. They were attached to the regiment and given practical training and instruction for a two-week period. This method permitted more valuable and instructive training than would have been possible in the ordinary training camps. The officers were given command of troops for drills and combat problems and acquitted themselves admirably. The Reserve officers were unanimous in their praise of the system employed, and it is thought that a precedent has been established which will be more extensively employed in the future.

The officers and men of the regiment are beginning to resemble the soldier of the Indian War days, in so far as hirsute facial decorations are concerned. The commanding officer is encouraging the growing of beards. This is in co-operation with the citizens of the Monterey Peninsula, who are staging the Serra Pilgrimage, October 12 to 19, a celebration commemorative of the early Spanish days of California. One of the unique methods of advertising and indorsing this celebration was the growing of the old Spanish type of beard.

Preparations are under way for the regiment to take a hike in September. It is expected to march to the Big Trees, north of Santa Cruz. The march will combine both entertainment and instructive features. It is expected to lay over a day in Santa Cruz, where the polo team will engage the Santa Cruz team.

The baseball team has enjoyed a very successful season, winning practically all games played. Among the most noteworthy victories were the defeats of the battleship *Mississippi's* team and the 30th Infantry's team.

A post field meet has been arranged for August 27, in which the regiment will compete against the other organizations of the post, the strongest rival being the 2d Battalion, 76th Field Artillery.

A polo team is to be sent to Fresno to participate in a polo tournament during the week the Fresno County Fair is in progress.

The regiment engaged in a series of maneuvers held August 20, 21, and 22. Troops in these maneuvers composed all branches, the 11th Cavalry, 30th Infantry, 2d Battalion, 76th Field Artillery, and Company E, 6th Engineers. Much valuable training and experience was gained, which will be of great benefit in future exercises of this character.

TWELFTH CAVALRY—Fort Brown, Fort Ringgold and Sam Fordyce, Texas

Colonel John M. Morgan, Commanding

During the present quarter the regiment has devoted considerable attention to tactical instruction in preparation for the annual tactical and training inspection of the Corps Area Commander, which will be conducted at Fort Brown September 17 and 18 and at Fort Ringgold commencing the 19th. One squadron or regimental tactical problem has been conducted each Friday, and great interest has been manifested in this phase of training by officers and enlisted men.

The regular target season was completed with satisfactory results. Every man firing record practice in the automatic rifle qualified—58 as experts, 9 as sharpshooters, and 5 as marksmen. The regiment qualified 91.5 per cent in rifle practice, 75 qualifying as experts, 136 as sharpshooters, and 253 as marksmen. In dismounted pistol practice, 95.5 per cent of those firing were qualified, while 99.8 per cent were qualified in mounted pistol practice, only one man failing to qualify. In the saber, the regiment qualified 42 experts, 246 as excellent swordsmen, and 148 as swordsmen, this including all men required to run the course, and in addition thereto 87 who were authorized but not required to run.

Colonel John M. Morgan conducted the regimental commander's annual tactical inspection at Fort Ringgold June 23 and 24 and at Fort Brown June 26 and 27.

Athletics have attracted considerable attention during the past three months. An enthusiastic boxing program was conducted at Fort Brown the night of June 27, the attendance including civilians from Brownsville as well as officers and men from the post.

The Fort Brown baseball season was successfully closed in July. Headquarters Troop was awarded the Reach Cup for having won 15 out of 20 games. Troop B came next, with 14 won and 6 lost, while Troop A was third, with 13 won and 7 lost. Each troop had a team and a sixth team was made up of the various detachments.

At Fort Ringgold, on July 17, 18, and 19, the troops of the 2d Squadron engaged in a contest of varied athletic and equestrian events in which there was exhibited a high organizational *esprit*. Troop E placed first, with Troops F and G close competitors.

A series of three baseball games between Fort Brown and Fort Ringgold was held at Fort Ringgold August 29, 30, and 31. Fort Brown won the first game, but the second and third went to Fort Ringgold, each by a one-point margin, thus giving the series to Fort Ringgold.

The regiment is taking a renewed interest in polo, the squads at both posts conducting regular practices. At Fort Ringgold two games are being played each week and new men and horses are being developed. At Fort Brown the time is being devoted to individual practice at the present time, local games to be conducted after a month has been devoted to individual practice. The squad practices twice each week at Fort Brown.

THIRTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort D. A. Russell, Wyoming

Colonel J. J. Boniface, Commanding

The past three months have been full ones for the 13th Cavalry. Although the training of the National Guard units from Utah, Colorado, and Wyoming and range work have taken up the major portion of time, the regiment has found time for gymkhanas, field days, polo tournaments, and more than the usual number of inspections and reviews.

Units from the Colorado National Guard were here for instruction from May 30 to June 12; Utah National Guard was here from June 14 to June 28; Wyoming National Guard at Pole Mountain from July 1 to July 23.

General C. G. Morton, Commanding General, 9th Corps Area, conducted our annual tactical inspection from July 16 to July 21. He was accompanied by Lieutenant-Colonel Roger S. Fitch.

In addition to weekly inspections and reviews, there have been several occasions where the regiment proudly exhibited itself. A review was given for General Pershing on August 23; for Governor Ross, of Wyoming, on June 9; for the Chief of Artillery and for Corps Area Commander. The regiment presents a fine appearance with new white tie-ropes and yellow brow bands.

A post gymkhana was held the last of May, in which the 13th took a prominent part. A field-day meet between the 1st Squadron and the Colorado National Guard was won by our 1st Squadron on June 7. The regimental Athletic Cup was won by Troop A in July.

During Cheyenne Frontier Days, July 22-25, the entire 13th Cavalry was used in demonstrations and various competitions. As a result of our prominent part in this celebration, the regiment received a total of sixteen silver cups. These cups were presented by the Chamber of Commerce of Cheyenne. One handsome cup was presented Colonel Boniface for his active co-operation and one to the regiment; the other cups went to organizations and individuals taking part.

The 13th Cavalry Musical Drill Squad, composed of members of Troop C, is making a decided hit wherever seen. This drill was shown daily at the Cheyenne Frontier Days; it then went to the Colorado Springs, Colorado, Rodeo, where it was enthusiastically received, and it still has two more engagements. It goes to Greeley, Colorado, and to Douglas, Wyoming, during September to participate in State fairs.

A number of changes in the officer personnel have taken place recently. Major Mack Garr has arrived and is assigned to command the 1st Squadron. Second Lieutenants Boyle and Eckert have also recently joined. The regiment regrets very much the loss of several officers who have been with the 13th from two to four yars. Major J. A. Warden has left for Fort Leavenworth; Captain Hyndman, Captain Larson, and Captain Dodge have departed for Fort Riley, Kansas; Captain Latimer is leaving for duty with the National Guard of New Mexico; Lieutenant Hoffman has been assigned to duty at West Point.

The 13th Cavalry Polo Team has had the opportunity this summer to take part in three tournaments. In June this team won the 9th Corps Area Championship Tournament at Boise, Idaho. From June 21 to 29 the 13th Cavalry staged one of the best tournaments ever held in this part of the West. Teams from Fort Riley, Fort Leavenworth, Fort Des Moines, Colorado Springs, and our team took part. The tournament was a success from every viewpoint. The Colorado Springs team captured the first prize trophies and Fort Riley won the Runner-up Cups. From August 15 to 28 our team, with the addition of Major W. W. Erwin, won two out of three tournaments at Colorado Springs.

Captain Leo Gocker and Corporal Yersak have been selected to represent the Cavalry on the Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Team and are now at Camp Perry, Ohio.

FOURTEENTH CAVALRY—Fort Des Moines, Iowa

Colonel Frank M. Caldwell, Commanding

On May 2 and 3, Troop A, Captain David A. Blakelock, put on an exhibition for Northwestern University Circus, at Evanston, Illinois.

The 1st Squadron, stationed at Fort Sheridan, participated in and won many laurels at the 65th Cavalry Division Association Horse Show and Military Tournament, held at the Dexter Park Pavilion, Chicago, Illinois, May 16 and 17.

The 1st Squadron (less Troop A) left Fort Sheridan, Illinois, May 20, marching for Camp Custer, Michigan, for duty in connection with summer camps.

The 2d Squadron participated in Memorial Day services and a parade in the city of Des Moines, Iowa, on May 30.

Troop A participated in the 15th Annual Horse Show of the South Shore Country Club at Chicago, Illinois, June 6 to 17. The troop, while in camp at Galine, Michigan, June 20, lost four horses killed and two enlisted men injured through heavy windstorms and tornado.

Five reserve officers of the 65th Cavalry Division were attached to the 1st Squadron from June 15 to 30 for active duty and intensive training.

Troop F, consisting of 2 officers and 52 enlisted men, Captain H. N. Christman commanding, left Fort Des Moines, Iowa, June 16, marching for Fort Snelling, Minnesota, for duty in connection with summer camps.

An Invitation Polo Tournament was held at Fort Des Moines June 7 to 11, in which the following clubs participated: Ak Sar Ben Polo Club of Omaha, Nebraska; Wakonda Polo Club of Des Moines, Iowa; First and Second teams of the 14th Cavalry.

The 14th Cavalry 1st Team won the tournament, defeating Ak Sar Ben in the finals, the score being 16 to 4.

A garrison review was held on June 28 at Fort Des Moines, the occasion being a presentation of battle streamers to the regiment for engagements during the Philippine insurrections. The garrison troops, consisting of the 3d Battalion, 3d Infantry; 2d Battalion, 17th Infantry; the 9th Field Artillery Battalion, and the 14th Cavalry (less 1st Squadron), participated in the review. The standards of the regiment were decorated in the presence of these troops by Brigadier-General Halstead Dorey, 14th Infantry Brigade, commanding Fort Des Moines.

The 1st Squadron participated in a tactical inspection of the 12th Infantry Brigade from July 2 to 7.

Nineteen Reserve officers were attached to the 1st Squadron from July 12 to 26 for active duty and intensive training.

Colonel Joseph A. Baer, War Department, General Staff, on July 11 made a tactical inspection of all Regular Army troops at Fort Des Moines, which were organized into a provisional brigade, the 2d Squadron (less Troop F) forming a part thereof.

The following-named members of the regiment were successful in making the Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Teams in the Elimination Competitions held at Fort Des Moines July 7 to August 5:

RIFLE ELIMINATION COMPETITIONS

Second Lieutenant George A. Behm finished in first place.
Sergeant Philip Jackson, Headquarters Troop, finished in thirteenth place.
Nineteen shooting members selected for the team.

PISTOL ELIMINATION COMPETITIONS

Second Lieutenant George A. Behm finished in first place.
Second Lieutenant Clyde A. Burcham finished in eighth place.
Private G. B. Lewis, Headquarters Troop, finished in thirteenth place.
Thirteen shooting members selected for the team.

Troop G has been on special duty with the Cavalry Rifle Team since July 7. Troop E was selected as the parent organization for the C. M. T. C. Cavalry Troop at Fort Des Moines.

Colonel Frank M. Caldwell assumed command of the regiment August 15.



The Cavalry Journal

PUBLISHED BY THE UNITED STATES
CAVALRY ASSOCIATION

Index to Volume XXXIV, Numbers 138-141
January-April-July-October, 1925

Index of Authors

	No.	Page
Babcock, Colonel Conrad S., Cavalry		
A Century of Cavalry March Regulations	141	423
Berdoulat, General Pierre Emile		
First and Second American Divisions in the Offensive of July 8, 1918	141	407
Bradford, Major K. S., Cavalry		
Graduation Exercises, The Cavalry School	140	326
Bradford, Captain W. B., Cavalry		
Cavalry Armored Cars	140	229
Brown, Colonel W. C., United States Army		
A Word as to Field Maps	139	194
Bush, Captain Robert A., O. R. C.		
The Cavalry School	139	202
Carter, Major General William Harding		
Early History of American Cavalry	138	7
Caffee, Major Adna R., Cavalry		
James Harrison Wilson, Cavalryman	139	271
Colby, Captain Elbridge, Infantry		
The Legal Status of the National Guard	140	321
Three Critical Defeats of Our History	139	136
Davidson, Lieutenant Colonel A. H., 14th Cavalry		
The 1924 Cavalry Rifle and Pistol Teams	138	42
Davidson, Major P. R., Cavalry		
The Service Coat	139	197
Dinsmore, Wayne		
What Every Horseman Should Know	140	292
Everett, Lieutenant Guerra		
Impressions of a Reserve Cavalry Officer at Camp Meade	138	47
Fickett, Captain Edward M., Cavalry		
The International Polo Tournament, Mexico City	139	185
Foch, Marshal Ferdinand		
Letter to U. S. Cavalry Association	139	135
Gregory, Captain H. M., 10th Cavalry		
Horse Feeds and the Forage Ration	140	315

	No.	Page
Hawkins, Colonel Hamilton S., 3d Cavalry		
German Ideas on Modern Cavalry—Comments and Translation	139	155
Hefferman, Major Leo G., Air Service		
Co-operation Between Cavalry and Air Service	139	147
Helmick, Major General Eli A., The Inspector General		
The Necessity for Correct Standards in Training	138	23
Holbrook, Major General W. A.		
Annual Report of the Chief of Cavalry	138	77
Irving, Minna		
The Empty Saddle	140	325
Kidwell, Captain W. R., V. C., 116th Cavalry, Idaho N. G.		
The Boise, Idaho Endurance Ride	139	205
Liddell-Hart, Captain B. F.		
Two Great Captains: Junghiz Khan and Subutai	140	302
Lininger, Lieutenant Colonel Clarence, Cavalry		
Mobility, Fire Power and Shock	139	178
McKee, Oliver, Jr.		
With the "Cavalree" at Fort Riley	138	71
Matheson, Private Samuel J., Troop "F", 3d Cavalry		
Winning the 1924 Endurance Ride	138	29
Milburn, Devereux		
The Science of Hitting in Polo	141	469
Phillips, Lieutenant Colonel A. E., Cavalry		
The Phillips Pack Saddle	141	413
Pride, Lieutenant Woodbury F., Cavalry		
How a Platoon Won $1,000	141	454
Rhoads, Lieutenant Mark, Cavalry		
Liaison Instruction, Post Schools at Fort Bliss	141	478
Romeyn, Colonel Charles A., Cavalry		
The First Sergeant	140	296
Salas, Gustavo A.		
The Fight at Haelen, August 12, 1914, and Its Lessons	141	472
Scott, Major C. L., Remount Service		
Photographing Horses	141	476
Sullivan, Lieutenant Mortimer F., 2d Cavalry		
Training of Cavalry Radio Squads	139	169
Thomas, Captain Kramer, Cavalry		
Some Training Principles for National Guard Cavalry	139	182
Williamson, Captain Royden, 5th Cavalry		
The Story of an Officer's Patrol (Translated from "La Revue de Cavalerie")	138	50

Index of Subjects

	No.	Page
Advertisers, Our		
Editorial Comment	141	482
"Allons"		
Mark VII	138	34
American Cavalry, Early History of		
Major General William Harding Carter	138	7
Animal Allowances for National Guard	140	371
Annnual Dues		
Editorial Comment	139	209
Armored Cars. Cavalry		
Captain W. B. Bradford, Cavalry	140	299
Army Reorganization of The—Japan		
Foreign Military Notes	141	490
Army Team, Preparation By		
Topics of the Day	139	216
Boletin del Centro-Naval (Argentina)		
Periodicals (Review)		
May-June, 1924	138	93
July-August, 1924	138	94
British Team, The		
Topics of the Day	129	216
"Cavalree" at Fort Riley, With the		
Oliver McKee, Jr.	138	71
Chief of Cavalry, Annual Report of the		
Major General W. A. Holbrook	138	77
Cavaleristisch Tijdschrift (Netherlands)		
Periodicals (Review)		
July, 1924	138	95
October, 1924	138	96
November, 1924	139	225
December, 1924	139	226
January, 1925	139	226
March, 1925	140	356
May, 1925	141	503
Cavalry and Air Service, Co-operation Between		
Major Leo G. Hefferman, Air Service	139	147
Canadian Defence Quarterly		
Periodicals (Review)		
January, 1925	139	224
July, 1925	141	501
Cavalry Association, Proceedings of the Annual Meeting of the	139	242
Cavalry, An Appreciation of		
Topics of the Day	138	87
Cavalry Fund, The		
Editorial Comment	139	211
	140	333

	No.	Page
Cavalry Journal (British)		
Periodicals (Review)		
January, 1925	139	224
April, 1925	140	355
July, 1925	141	501
Cavalry of the Red Army	141	465
Cavalry Radio Squads, Training of		
Lieutenant Mortimer F. Sullivan, 2d Cavalry	139	169
Cavalry Service, Improving—Japan		
Foreign Military Notes	140	342
Cavalrymen Awarded the D. S. C.		
Topics of the Day	140	337
Cavalry School, Graduation Exercises		
Major K. S. Bradford, Cavalry	140	326
Cavalry School Notes	138	111
	139	248
	140	380
Cavalry School, The		
Captain Robert A. Bush, O. R. C.	139	202
Cavalry School, The—Italy		
Foreign Military Notes	141	486
Cavalry School Team, The		
Topics of the Day	141	484
Cavalry Teams, Tryout For		
Topics of the Day	140	337
Chief of Cavalry, A Commendation by The		
Topics of the Day	138	87
Coat, The Service		
Major P. R. Davidson, Cavalry	139	197
Colonial Army, The French		
Foreign Military Notes	140	340
Competition, One Thousand Dollar		
Editorial Comment	140	333
Defeats of Our History, Three Critical		
Captain Elbridge Colby, Infantry	139	136
Dogs, Training, For War—Argentina		
Foreign Military Notes	141	489
Dress Uniform		
Editorial Comment	139	208
Duty, In Line of		
Topics of the Day	140	336
Echo de Paris (France)		
Periodicals (Review)	138	94
Editorial Comments		
Skeptics	138	81
Authors, Responsibility for Views of	138	81
Association, The, and the Journal	138	82
Saddle Equipment, Marquis	138	82
Cavalry Fund, The	138	83
Membership, Organizations 100% In	138	83
Dress Uniform	139	208
International Aspect of Army Polo	139	209
Annual Dues	139	209
Membership, 100 Per Cent	139	209
Horse, The	139	210

	No.	Page
Reserve Cavalry Divisions, Bulletins of	139	210
Members, Service to	139	210
Membership Records, National Guard	139	210
Index to Volume XXXIII	139	211
Cavalry Fund	139	211
Membership, Certificate of	139	211
Major General William Harding Carter	140	332
Regimental Rosters	140	332
Competition, One Thousand Dollar	140	333
Fight	140	333
Marquis Equipment	140	333
Cavalry Fund	140	333
National Defense	141	481
Size of the Journal	141	482
Our Advertisers	141	482
Empty Saddle, The (poem)		
Minna Irving	140	325
Endurance Ride, Colorado		
Topics of the Day	140	334
	141	483
Endurance Ride, The Boise, Idaho		
Captain W. R. Kidwell, V .C., 116th Cavalry, Idaho N. G.	139	205
Endurance Ride, The, 1924	138	61
Endurance Ride, The 1925		
Topics of the Day	139	212
Endurance Ride, Winning the 1924		
Private Samuel J. Matheson, Troop "F", 3d Cavalry	138	29
Equipment, Marquis		
Editorial Comment	140	333
Feng Yu-Hsiang, With the Army of	141	440
Fiddlers Green in Prose		
C. S. C.	138	46
Field Maps, A Word as to		
Colonel W. C. Brown, United States Army	139	194
Fight		
Editorial Comment	140	333
First Sergeant, The		
Colonel Charles A. Romeyn	140	296
Haelen, The Fight at, August 12, 1924, and Its Lessons		
Gustavo Salas	141	472
Hofreitschule, The Spanish	138	19
Holland, 1925		
Topics of the Day	139	217
Horse and Mule in Modern Warfare	139	220
Horse, Exit The (?)	139	220
Horse Feeds and the Forage Ration		
Capt. H. M. Gregory, 10th Cavalry	140	315
Horse in War, The	141	412
Horse Race, A 900 Mile	141	476
Horse Show, Michigan Agricultural College, R. O. T. C.		
Topics of the Day	139	216
Horse Shows		
Cavalry School	140	343
First Cavalry Division	140	344
Presidio—Del Monte	140	347

	No.	Page
Horse Still Necessary for Draft Purposes	140	354
Horse, The	139	219
Horse, The		
Editorial Comment	139	210
	140	338
Horseman, What every, Should Know		
Wayne Dinsmore	140	292
Horses and Mules, Purchase of		
Topics of the Day	138	84
Horses, Better Riding	141	468
Horses, Photographing		
Major C. L. Scott, Remount Service	141	476
How a Platoon Won $1,000		
Lieutenant Woodbury F. Pride, Cavalry	141	454
Index to Volume XXXIII		
Editorial Comment	139	211
Infantry School Recreation Center		
Topics of the Day	139	213
Jenghiz Khan and Subutai, Two Great Captains		
Captain B. D. Liddell-Hart	140	302
Journal of the Royal United Service Institution (British)		
Periodicals (Review)		
February, 1925	139	225
May, 1925	140	356
Journal of the United Service Institution of India		
Periodicals (Review)		
January, 1925	139	224
April, 1925	140	355
July, 1925	141	502
Journal, Size of the		
Editorial Comment	141	482
Liaison Instruction, Post Schools, Fort Bliss		
Lieutenant Mark Rhoads, Cavalry	141	478
March Regulations, A Century of Cavalry		
Colonel Conrad S. Babcock, Cavalry	141	423
Membership, Certificates of		
Editorial Comment	139	211
Membership, 100 Per Cent		
Editorial Comment	138	209
Members, Service to		
Editorial Comment	139	210
Memorial de Caballeria (Spanish)		
Periodicals (Review)		
September, 1924	138	90
November, 1924	139	227
December, 1924	139	228
January, 1925	139	229
February, 1925	140	358
March, 1925	140	361
April, 1925	140	360
May, 1925	141	504
June, 1925	141	505

	No.	Page
Military Journals, Foreign	138	90
	139	224
	140	355
	141	501
Military Notes, Foreign		
Superior War Council—France	139	318
Colonial Army, The French	140	340
Cavalry Service, Improving—Japan	140	342
Cavalry School, The—Italy	141	486
Remount Service—Hungary	141	388
Dogs, Training for War—Argentina	141	488
Army, Reorganization of the—Japan	141	490
Mobility, Fire Power and Shock		
Lieutenant Colonel Clarence Lininger, Cavalry	139	178
Modern Cavalry, German Ideas On—Comments and Translation		
Colonel Hamilton S. Hawkins, 3d Cavalry	139	155
National Defense		
Editorial Comment	141	481
National Guard Membership Records		
Editorial Comment	139	210
National Matches, The		
Topics of the Day	140	337
New Books Reviewed		
Horse Sense and Horsemanship of Today—Geoffrey Brooke	138	88
Map Reading and Sketching, Modern Military—F. J. Pearson	138	88
Separate Branches, Tactics and Technique of—G. S. S.	138	88
Close Order Drill, The Cadence System of—Lentz	138	89
Napoleon: An Outline—Ballard	139	221
War, The Genesis of the—Asquith	139	222
Horses, Saddles and Bridles—Carter	139	222
Armaments Year Book of the League of Nations	139	223
Training Schedules for National Guard Rifle Companies, Howitzer Companies, Battalion and Brigade Headquarters Companies—Livingston	139	223
Japanese Life, Military Side of—Kennedy	140	352
Equitation, Principles of—de Souza	140	352
Soldier's Memories—In Peace and War—Younghusband	140	353
Army Instruction and Study—U. S. Infantry Association	140	353
Field Artillery Manual, Vol. I—Wilson	140	354
Rifle Drill, Musical—Butts	140	354
Memories of Forty-Eight Years' Service—Smith-Dorrien	141	498
Official History of the Canadian Forces in the Great War—The Medical Services—MacPhail	141	499
Warfare—Spaulding, Nickerson, Wright	141	499
Memories of Long Ago—Hein	141	500
Let 'er Buck—Furlong	141	500
National Guard, The	138	106
	139	237
	140	368
	141	491
National Guard Cavalry, Some Training Principles For		
Captain Kramer Thomas, Cavalry	139	182
National Guard, The Legal Status of the		
General Pierre Emile Bordoulat	141	407
Offensive of July 8, 1918, First and Second American Divisions in the		
Captain Elbridge Colby, Infantry	140	321

	No.	Page
Officer's Patrol, The Story of An		
Translated from "La Revue de Cavalerie" by Captain Royden Williamson, 5th Cavalry	138	50
Olympiad, The VIII		
Topics of the Day	138	86
Organized Reserves, The	138	109
	139	240
	140	373
	141	495
Pack Saddle, The Phillips		
Lieutenant Colonel A. E. Phillips, Cavalry	141	413
Polo	138	97
	139	232
	140	362
	141	506
Polo, International Aspect of Army		
Editorial Comment	139	209
Polo Ponies, Prize		
Topics of the day	141	485
Polo, The International Military Championship		
Topics of the Day	139	214
Polo, The International Tournament, Mexico City		
Captain Edward N. Fickett, Cavalry	139	185
Polo, The Science of Hitting In		
Devereux Milburn	141	469
Rasp, The		
Topics of the Day	139	216
Reel Cart, Relief for the		
Topics of the Day	139	217
Regimental Notes	138	112
	139	250
	140	382
	141	514
Regimental Rosters		
Editorial Comment	140	332
Remount Conference at Fort Reno		
Topics of the Day	141	484
Remount Depot, The, Melton Mowbray	140	290
Remount Service—Hungary		
Foreign Military Notes	141	488
Reserve Cavalry Divisions, Bulletins of		
Editorial Comment	139	210
Reserve Cavalry Officer at Camp Meade, Impressions of A		
Lieutenant Guerra Everett, Cavalry Reserve Corps	138	47
Revista Militar (Argentina)		
Periodicals (Review)		
June, 1924	138	90
July, 1924	138	93
November, 1924	139	231
Revue de Cavalerie (France)		
Periodicals (Review)		
March-April, 1925	240	357
May-June, 1925	141	502
Rifle and Pistol Teams, The 1924 Cavalry		
Lieutenant Colonel A. H. Davidson, 14th Cavalry	138	42
Saddle Equipment, Marquis		
Editorial Comment	138	82

	No.	Page
Shannon, Colonel James A., Memorial Tablet to		
Topics of the Day	140	339
Size of the Journal		
Editorial Comment	141	482
Skeptics		
Editorial Comment	138	81
Topics of the Day		
Horses and Mules, Purchase of	138	84
Olympiade, The VIII	138	86
Chief of Cavalry, A Commendation by the	138	87
Cavalry, An Appreciation of	138	87
Endurance Ride, The 1925	139	212
Recreation Center, Infantry School	139	213
Polo Championship, The International Military	139	214
Army Team, Preparation by	139	216
British Team, The	139	216
Horse Show, R. O. T. C., Michigan Agricultural College	139	216
Rasp, The	139	217
Holland, 1925	139	217
Reel Cart, Relief for the	139	217
Endurance Ride, Colorado	140	334
Uniform, Dress and Service	140	334
Duty, In Line of	140	335
Matches, The National	140	337
Cavalry Teams, Tryout for	140	337
Horses and Mules, Purchase of	140	338
D. S. C., Awards to Cavalrymen	140	338
Colonel James A. Shannon, Memorial Tablet	140	339
Try-Out Matches, The Cavalry	141	483
Endurance Ride, Colorado	141	483
Cavalry School Team, The	141	484
Remount Conference at Fort Reno	141	484
Polo Ponies, Prize	141	485
Training, The Necessity for Correct Standards in		
Major General Eli A. Helmick, The Inspector General	138	23
Try-Out Matches, The Cavalry		
Topics of the Day	141	483
Uniform, The, Dress and Service		
Topics of the Day	140	334
War Council, Superior		
Foreign Military Notes	139	318
Wilson, James Harrison, Cavalryman		
Major Adna R. Chaffee, Cavalry	140	271